# CERTIFICATE

## By Authority Of
## THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
## Legally Binding Document

By the Authority Vested By Part 5 of the United States Code § 552(a) and Part 1 of the Code of Regulations § 51 the attached document has been duly INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE and shall be considered legally binding upon all citizens and residents of the United States of America. ***HEED THIS NOTICE***: Criminal penalties may apply for noncompliance.

**Document Name:** NEMA MG-1: Motors and Generators

**CFR Section(s):** 10 CFR 431

**Standards Body:** National Electrical Manufacturers Association


*Official Incorporator:*
THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR
OFFICE OF THE FEDERAL REGISTER
WASHINGTON, D.C.

# NEMA MG 1

## MOTORS

## AND

## GENERATORS

# NEMA Standards Publication MG 1-2009

*Motors and Generators*

*Published by:*

**National Electrical Manufacturers Association**
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209

www.nema.org

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association. All rights including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, and the International and Pan American Copyright Conventions.

## NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER

The information in this publication was considered technically sound by the consensus of persons engaged in the development and approval of the document at the time it was developed. Consensus does not necessarily mean that there is unanimous agreement among every person participating in the development of this document.

The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards and guideline publications, of which the document contained herein is one, are developed through a voluntary consensus standards development process. This process brings together volunteers and/or seeks out the views of persons who have an interest in the topic covered by this publication. While NEMA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not write the document and it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy or completeness of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its standards and guideline publications.

NEMA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, application, or reliance on this document. NEMA disclaims and makes no guaranty or warranty, express or implied, as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein, and disclaims and makes no warranty that the information in this document will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. NEMA does not undertake to guarantee the performance of any individual manufacturer or seller's products or services by virtue of this standard or guide.

In publishing and making this document available, NEMA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity, nor is NEMA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances. Information and other standards on the topic covered by this publication may be available from other sources, which the user may wish to consult for additional views or information not covered by this publication.

NEMA has no power, nor does it undertake to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this document. NEMA does not certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for safety or health purposes. Any certification or other statement of compliance with any health or safety–related information in this document shall not be attributable to NEMA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

## Changes made for MG 1-2009 are marked by a red line to the left of the changed material

Note—Where text has been revised in more than one version, only the most recent is color-coded

Example of change made for MG 1-2009

**Section I, Part 1**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1.1 | Added: Reference to IEC 60034-30-2008 |
| 1.16 | Deleted section |
| 1.41.3 | Added: Premium Efficiency Motor |

**Section I, Part 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2.2 | Added: "To prevent confusion with the numerals 1 and 0, the letters "I" and "O" shall not be used."<br>Updated footnote references<br>Added and revised markings<br>Added: Reference to 2.67 for auxiliary devices |
| 2.60.1.2 | Revised Figure 2-48B for clarity |
| 2.67 | Added: Auxiliary Devices (entire section) |

**Section I, Part 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| Table 4-2 | Dimension revised in column 6 |

**Section II, Part 10**

| | |
|---|---|
| Table 10-5 | Adjusted table |

**Section II, Part 12**

| | |
|---|---|
| 12.41 | In table, corrected synchronous speed of the 50 Hz machine |
| 12.60.3 | Added: Additional paragraphs, equation, and table |
| Table 12-14 | Replaced Table 12-14 |
| 12.62 | Revised 12.62a<br>For 12.62b and 12.62d, revised minimum insulation resistance<br>Added: Note |
| 12.63 | Note 2: Updated reference to 20.8 |

**Section II, Part 13**

| | |
|---|---|
| 13.2 | Revised frame size |

**Section II, Part 18:**

| | |
|---|---|
| 18.131 | Figure 18-16: Dimension revised to 5.875 |

**Section III, Part 20:**

| | |
|---|---|
| 20.18.1 | Revised 20.18.1a<br>For 20.18.1b and 20.18.1d, revised minimum insulation resistance |
| 20.18.2 | Revised 20.18.2a<br>For 20.18.2b and 20.18.2d, revised minimum insulation resistance<br>Added: Note |

**Section IV, Part 30:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Table 30-1 | Revised footnote G.1 reference to 12.53 |

## Changes made for MG 1-2006 Revision 1, published Nov. 20, 2007 (includes MG 1-2006 Errata) are marked by a blue line to the left of the changed material

Note—Where text has been revised in more than one version, only the most recent is color-coded

Example of change made for MG 1-2006 Revision 1

**Contents**

Entire Table of Contents was revised due to added sections and repagination

**Section I, Part 1**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1.16 | NEMA PREMIUM® EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTOR<br>Changed ™ to ®<br>Deleted general paragraph, added: |
| 1.16.1 | 60 Hz |
| 1.16.2 | 50 Hz |

**Section I, Part 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2.2 | TERMINAL MARKINGS Footnotes |
| 2.20.2 | Induction Machines |
| 2.24 | DIRECTION OF ROTATION |
| 2.60.1.1 | Terminal Markings Using "T" |
| 2.60.1.2 | Terminal Markings in Accordance with IEC 60034-8 Using U, V, W |
| FIGURE 2-48B | Added figure |
| 2.61.6 | Sixth<br>Revised text |

**Section I, Part 3**

| | |
|---|---|
| 3.1.8 | Accessories and Components<br>Inserted sentence |

**Section I, Part 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| 4.9.4 | Parallelism of Keyseats to Shaft Centerline |
| 4.9.5 | Lateral Displacement of Keyseats |
| Figure 4-7 | Corrected specifications |
| 4.9.8 | Shaft Extension Key(s) |
| Table 4-7 | Corrected specifications |

**Section II, Part 10 Ratings—AC Motors**

| | |
|---|---|
| 10.38 | NAMEPLATE TEMPERATURE RATINGS FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS<br>Corrected reference 12.42.3 |
| 10.40.1 | Medium Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors<br>Corrected references in text and footnote 2 |
| 10.42.2 | Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors<br>Corrected references in text |

**Section II, Part 10 Ratings—DC Motors**

| | |
|---|---|
| 10.66.2 | Small Motors Except Those Rated 1/20 Horsepower and Less<br>Corrected footnote references |

**Section II, Part 12 Ratings Tests and Performance —AC Motors**

12.42.4 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
(Added section)

12.43.2 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
(Added section)

12.60 EFFICIENCY LEVEL OF PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS
(Added ® throughout)

Tables 12-12 through 12-14 (Added ®)

12-13 FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES FOR 60 HZ NEMA PREMIUM® EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS (Added ®), edited table title

12.62 MACHINE WITH ENCAPSULATED OR SEALED WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TESTS
(Clarified text in b and d)

**Section II, Part 12 Ratings Tests and Performance —DC Motors**

12.67.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
Added section

**Section II, Part 15**

15.41.2 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C
Added section

**Section III, Part 20**

20.8.1 Machines with a 1.0 Service Factor at Rated Load
Corrected reference in footnote

20.8.2 Machines with a 1.15 Service Factor at Service Factor Load
Corrected reference in footnote

20.18.1 Test for Stator Which Can Be Submerged
Clarified text in b and d

20.18.2 Test for Stator Which Can Be Submerged
Clarified text in b and d

**Section III, Part 20**

21.10.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Motors for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
Deleted lower ambients in a and b

21.28.3 Unusual Service Conditions
Corrected references in subclause b.

21.37 COMPRESSOR FACTORS
Corrected reference

21.38 SURGE CAPABILITIES OF AC WINDINGS WITH FORM-WOUND COILS
Corrected reference

**Section III, Part 23**

23.9.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
Added section

**Section III, Part 24**

24.40.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C
Added section

**Section IV, Part 31**

| | |
|---|---|
| 31.4.1.6 | Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C<br>Added section |

**Section IV, Part 32**

| | |
|---|---|
| Table 32-3 | corrected reference |
| 32.6.2 | Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C<br>Added section |
| 32.26 | GENERATOR TERMINAL HOUSING<br>Added "housing" |

**Section IV, Part 33**

| | |
|---|---|
| 33.3.2.5 | Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C<br>Added section |

## Changes made for MG 1-2003 Revision 2, published as MG 1-2006, are marked by a purple line to the left of the changed material

Note—Where text has been revised in more than one version, only the most recent is color-coded

Example of change made for MG 1-2003 Revision 2, published as MG 1-2006

**Section I, Part 1**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1.1 | Referenced Standards updated to reflect current editions |
| 1.70 | NAMEPLATE MARKING<br>Entire section added |

**Section I, Part 3**

| | |
|---|---|
| 3.1.8 | Accessories and Components<br>Correction |
| 3.1.11 | Tests of an Assembled Group of Machines and Apparatus<br>Correction |

**Section I, Part 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| 4.4.1 | Dimensions for Alternating-Current Foot-Mounted Machines with Single Straight-Shaft Extension<br>Notes correction |
| 4.4.2 | Notes correction |
| 4.4.3 | Notes correction |
| 4.5.1 | Notes correction |
| 4.5.2 | Notes correction |
| 4.5.3 | Notes |
| 4.9.3 | Bottom of Keyseat to Shaft Surface |
| Figure 4-7 | Corrected dimension |
| 4.9.8 | Shaft Extension Key(s)<br>correction |

**Section I, Part 9**

| | |
|---|---|
| 9.1 | SCOPE<br>changed “electrical motors” to “machines” |
| 9.4 | METHODS OF MEASUREMENT<br>updated references to ANSI standards |
| 9.4.2 | “The” (added; “Either” deleted) method specified in ANSI S12.56 may be used. |
| 9.6.2 | Corrected reference to 9.6.2b |
| Table 9-4 | Updated ANSI standard references; added third column |

**Section II, Part 10**

| | |
|---|---|
| 10.39 | corrected section reference |
| 10.39.6 | deleted |
| 10.40.1 | Medium Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors<br>corrected section reference |
| 10.66 | NAMEPLATE MARKING<br>correction |
| 10.66.3 | Medium Motors<br>correction |

**Section II, Part 12**

| | |
|---|---|
| 12.3 | HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST VOLTAGES FOR UNIVERSAL, INDUCTION, AND DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Corrections to Effective Test Voltage |
| | Corrections to Note 3— 80 percent |
| 12.35 | LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF 3-PHASE SMALL AND MEDIUM SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS |
| | deleted reference "60-hertz" and "rated at 230 volts" |
| 12.40.1 | Design A and B Motors |
| | The pull-up torque of Design A and B |
| | Added: 60- and 50-hertz |
| 12.40.2 | Design C Motors |
| | The pull-up torque of Design C |
| | Added: 60- and 50-hertz, single speed, polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors |
| 12.54.1 | Normal Starting Conditions |
| 12.54.3 | Considerations for Additional Starts |
| Table 12-7 | SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS |
| | Revised specifications |

**Section II, Part 14**

| | |
|---|---|
| 14.43 | ASEISMATIC CAPABILITY |
| Table 14-1 | MEDIUM MOTORS—POLYPHASE INDUCTION |
| | Correction to conventional specifications |

**Section II, Part 15**

| | |
|---|---|
| 15.12 | NAMEPLATE MARKING |

**Section II Part 18**

Added and corrected headers throughout (editorial)

- DEFINITE PURPOSE MACHINES
- MOTORS FOR HERMETIC REFRIGERATION COMPRESSORS
- SMALL MOTORS FOR AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSERS AND EVAPORATOR FANS
- SMALL MOTORS FOR GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMPS
- SMALL MOTORS FOR HOME LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT
- MEDIUM AC POLYPHASE ELEVATOR MOTORS
- MEDIUM AC CRANE MOTORS
- MEDIUM SHELL-TYPE MOTORS FOR WOODWORKING AND MACHINE-TOOL APPLICATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| 18.9 | VARIATIONS |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.27 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.41 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.52 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.74 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.101 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.111 | NAMEPLATE MARKING |
| 18.116 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.128 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.142 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY |
| | updated reference to 12.44 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 18.152 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.153 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.165 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.166 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.177 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.178 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.210 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.211 | NAMEPLATE MARKING |
| 18.216 | NAMEPLATE MARKING (Revised reference) |
| 18.225 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.230 | DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS<br>Deleted note |
| 18.247 | VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY<br>updated reference to 12.44 |
| 18.264 | NAMEPLATE MARKING |
| 18.269.1 | AC Torque Motors |
| 18.269.2 | DC Torque Motors |

**Section III Part 20**

| | |
|---|---|
| 20.5 | VOLTAGE RATINGS (complete replacement of existing text) |
| 20.7.3.1 | General |
| 20.8.5 | Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0 ° C<br>Added section |
| 20.10.3 | Motor Torques When Customer Specifies A Custom Load Curve<br>Added |
| 20.10.4 | Motor with 4.5 pu and Lower Locked-Rotor Current<br>Added |
| 20.11 | LOAD WK2 FOR POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS |
| 20.24.2 | Voltage Unbalance Defined<br>Corrected specification in example |
| 20.25 | For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2. |
| 20.25.5 | Deleted |
| 20.27 | EMBEDDED TEMPERATURE DETECTORS<br>Revised text and dimensions in table |
| 20.31.3 | Units for Capability Requirements |
| 20.35.8 | Test Voltage Values |

**Section III Part 21**

| | |
|---|---|
| 21.5 | VOLTAGE RATINGS<br>Revised specification |
| 21.5.1 | Voltage Ratings<br>Added |
| 21.5.2 | Preferred motor output/voltage rating<br>Added |

| | |
|---|---|
| 21.8.3.1 | General |
| 21.10.5 | Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Motors for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but not Below 0° C<br>Added section |
| 21.11 | deleted text |
| 21.11.1 | General<br>Added |
| 21.11.2 | Motor Torques When Customer Supplies Load Curve |
| 21.25 | For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.<br>Added |

**Section III Part 23**

| | |
|---|---|
| 23.13 | EFFICIENCY |
| 23.24 | For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.<br>Added |

**Section III Part 24**

| | |
|---|---|
| 24.61 | NAMEPLATE MARKING |

**Section IV Part 30**

| | |
|---|---|
| 30.1.3 | Power Factor Correction |
| Figure 30-2 | THE EFFECT OF REDUCED COOLING ON THE TORQUE CAPABILITY AT REDUCED SPEEDS OF 60 HZ NEMA DESIGN A AND B MOTORS |
| 30.2.2.2.4 | Motor Torque During Operation Above Base Speed |
| 30.2.2.8 | Voltage Stress |

**Section IV Part 31**

| | |
|---|---|
| 31.5.1 | Variable Torque Applications |

**Section IV Part 30**

| | |
|---|---|
| 32.24 | NAMEPLATE MARKING<br>Revised additional information |

**Section IV Part 30**

| | |
|---|---|
| 33.3.2.2 | Embedded Temperature Detectors |

**Index**

Revised references throughout

## Changes made for MG 1-2003, Revision 1-2004 are marked by a green line to the left of the changed material

Note—Where text has been revised in more than one version, only the most recent is color-coded

Example of change made for MG 1-2003 Revision 1-2004

**Contents**

pages vii, viii, xii, xv, xxvii

**Section I, Part 5**

| | |
|---|---|
| 5.1 | Scope |
| 5.3.4 | Table 5-1 |
| 5.4.1 | Indication of Degree of Protection |
| 5.6 | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR TESTS |
| 5.7 | TESTS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL |
| Table 5-3: | TEST AND ACCEPTANCE CONDITIONS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL |
| 5.8.1 | Test Conditions |
| 5.8.2.1 | Allowable Water Leakage |
| 5.8.2.2 | Post Water Electrical Test |
| Figure 5-1: | STANDARD TEST FINGER NOTES— |
| Figure 5-2 | Added: (Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.) |
| Figure 5-3 | Added: (Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.) |
| Figure 5-4 | Added: (Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.) |
| Figure 5-5 | Added: (Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.) |
| Figure 5-6 | Added: (Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.) |

**Section II, Part 12**

| | |
|---|---|
| 12.51.1 | General-Purpose Alternating-Current Motors of the Open Type |
| Table 12-4 | Note: *In the case of polyphase squirrel-cage motors, these service factors apply only to Design A, B, and C motors. |
| 12.51.2 | Other Motors |
| 12.58.2 | Efficiency of Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Medium Motors with Continuous Ratings |

**Section II DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**

Added Header (editorial) to odd pages

**Section II, Part 14**

| | |
|---|---|
| 14.3 | UNUSUAL SERVICE CONDITIONS<br>b. Operation where: (revised text)<br>1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage or frequency, or both (see 12.44 for alternating current motors and 12.68 for direct-current motors)<br>3. The alternating-current supply voltage is unbalanced by more than 1 percent (see 12.45 and 14.36) |
| 14.42 | APPLICATION OF V-BELT SHEAVES TO ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS |
| 14.42.1 | Dimensions |
| 14.42.1.1 | Selected Motor Ratings |
| 14.42.1.2 | Other Motor Ratings |
| 14.42.2 | Radial Overhung Load Limitations |
| Table 14-1 | Note: The width of the sheave shall be not greater than that required to transmit the indicated horsepower but in no case shall it be wider than 2(N-W) - 0.25. |
| Table 14-1A | Added 2004 |

**Section III, Part 20**

| | |
|---|---|
| 20.17.2 | Test Voltage—Primary Windings Footnote |

**Section III, Part 21**

| | |
|---|---|
| 21.35.1 | Undamped Natural Frequency |

**Section IV, Part 30**

| | |
|---|---|
| 30.0 | SCOPE |
| 30.2.2.2.2 | Torque Derating Based on Reduction in Cooling |
| 30.2.2.2.4 | Motor Torque During Operation Above Base Speed |
| Figure 30-4 | Notes |
| Figure 30-4 | Note: a. Standard NEMA Design A and B motors in frames per Part 13. |

**Index**

Revised references on pages 3, 4, 5

# CONTENTS

Page No.

Foreword ..... xxxv

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**

**Part 1—REFERENCED STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS** ..... 1-1
1.1 REFERENCED STANDARDS ..... 1-1
**DEFINITIONS** ..... 1-5
**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO SIZE** ..... 1-5
1.2 MACHINE ..... 1-5
1.3 SMALL (FRACTIONAL) MACHINE ..... 1-5
1.4 MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINE ..... 1-5
1.4.1 Alternating-Current Medium Machine ..... 1-5
1.4.2 Direct-Current Medium Machine ..... 1-5
1.5 LARGE MACHINE ..... 1-5
1.5.1 Alternating-Current Large Machine ..... 1-5
1.5.2 Direct-Current Large Machine ..... 1-6
**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO APPLICATION** ..... 1-6
1.6 GENERAL PURPOSE MOTOR ..... 1-6
1.6.1 General-Purpose Alternating-Current Motor ..... 1-6
1.6.2 General-Purpose Direct-Current Small Motor ..... 1-6
1.7 GENERAL-PURPOSE GENERATOR ..... 1-6
1.8 INDUSTRIAL SMALL MOTOR ..... 1-6
1.9 INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTOR ..... 1-6
1.10 INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATOR ..... 1-6
1.11 DEFINITE-PURPOSE MOTOR ..... 1-7
1.12 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS ..... 1-7
1.13 METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS ..... 1-7
1.14 REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS ..... 1-7
1.15 SPECIAL-PURPOSE MOTOR ..... 1-7
**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE** ..... 1-8
1.17 GENERAL ..... 1-8
1.17.1 Electric Motor ..... 1-8
1.17.2 Electric Generator ..... 1-8
1.17.3 Electric Machines ..... 1-8
1.18 ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS ..... 1-9
1.18.1 Induction Motor ..... 1-9
1.18.2 Synchronous Motor ..... 1-9
1.18.3 Series-Wound Motor ..... 1-10
1.19 POLYPHASE MOTORS ..... 1-10
1.19.1 Design Letters of Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Medium Motors ..... 1-10
1.20 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS ..... 1-10
1.20.1 Design Letters of Single-Phase Small Motors ..... 1-10
1.20.2 Design Letters of Single-Phase Medium Motors ..... 1-11
1.20.3 Single-Phase Squirrel-Cage Motors ..... 1-11
1.20.4 Single-Phase Wound-Rotor Motors ..... 1-12
1.21 UNIVERSAL MOTORS ..... 1-12
1.21.1 Series-Wound Motor ..... 1-12
1.21.2 Compensated Series-Wound Motor ..... 1-12
1.22 ALTERNATING-CURRENT GENERATORS ..... 1-12
1.22.1 Induction Generator ..... 1-12
1.22.2 Synchronous Generator ..... 1-13
1.23 DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ..... 1-13
1.23.1 Shunt-Wound Motor ..... 1-13
1.23.2 Series-Wound Motor ..... 1-13

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

1.23.3 Compound-Wound Motor ....1-13
1.23.4 Permanent Magnet Motor ....1-13
1.24 DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS ....1-13
1.24.1 Shunt-Wound Generator ....1-13
1.24.2 Compound-Wound Generator ....1-13
**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND METHODS OF COOLING** ....1-14
1.25 OPEN MACHINE (IP00, IC01) ....1-14
1.25.1 Dripproof Machine (IP12, IC01) ....1-14
1.25.2 Splash-Proof Machine (IP13, IC01) ....1-14
1.25.3 Semi-Guarded Machine (IC01) ....1-14
1.25.4 Guarded Machine (IC01) ....1-14
1.25.5 Dripproof Guarded Machine (IC01) ....1-17
1.25.6 Open Independently Ventilated Machine (IC06) ....1-17
1.25.7 Open Pipe-Ventilated Machine ....1-17
1.25.8 Weather-Protected Machine ....1-17
1.26 TOTALLY ENCLOSED MACHINE ....1-17
1.26.1 Totally Enclosed Nonventilated Machine (IC410) ....1-17
1.26.2 Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Machine ....1-17
1.26.3 Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Guarded Machine (IC411) ....1-18
1.26.4 Totally Enclosed Pipe-Ventilated Machine (IP44) ....1-18
1.26.5 Totally Enclosed Water-Cooled Machine (IP54) ....1-18
1.26.6 Water-Proof Machine (IP55) ....1-18
1.26.7 Totally Enclosed Air-to-Water-Cooled Machine (IP54) ....1-18
1.26.8 Totally Enclosed Air-to-Air-Cooled Machine (IP54) ....1-18
1.26.9 Totally Enclosed Air-Over Machine (IP54, IC417) ....1-18
1.26.10 Explosion-Proof Machine ....1-19
1.26.11 Dust-Ignition-Proof Machine ....1-19
1.27 MACHINE WITH ENCAPSULATED OR SEALED WINDINGS ....1-19
1.27.1 Machine with Moisture Resistant Windings ....1-19
1.27.2 Machine with Sealed Windings ....1-19
**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO VARIABILITY OF SPEED** ....1-19
1.30 CONSTANT-SPEED MOTOR ....1-19
1.31 VARYING-SPEED MOTOR ....1-19
1.32 ADJUSTABLE-SPEED MOTOR ....1-20
1.33 BASE SPEED OF AN ADJUSTABLE-SPEED MOTOR ....1-20
1.34 ADJUSTABLE VARYING-SPEED MOTOR ....1-20
1.35 MULTISPEED MOTOR ....1-20
**RATING, PERFORMANCE, AND TEST** ....1-20
1.40 RATING OF A MACHINE ....1-20
1.40.1 Continuous Rating ....1-20
1.40.2 Short-Time Rating ....1-20
1.41 EFFICIENCY ....1-20
1.41.1 General ....1-20
1.41.2 Energy Efficient Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Induction Motor ....1-20
1.41.3 Premium Efficiency Motor ....1-21
1.42 SERVICE FACTOR—AC MOTORS ....1-21
1.43 SPEED REGULATION OF DC MOTORS ....1-21
1.43.1 Percent Compounding of Direct-Current Machines ....1-21
1.44 VOLTAGE REGULATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS ....1-21
1.45 SECONDARY VOLTAGE OF WOUND-MOTOR ROTORS ....1-21
1.46 FULL-LOAD TORQUE ....1-21
1.47 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE (STATIC TORQUE) ....1-21
1.48 PULL-UP TORQUE ....1-21
1.49 PUSHOVER TORQUE ....1-21
1.50 BREAKDOWN TORQUE ....1-22

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

1.51 PULL-OUT TORQUE ........ 1-22
1.52 PULL-IN TORQUE ........ 1-22
1.53 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ........ 1-22
1.54 NO-LOAD CURRENT ........ 1-22
1.55 TEMPERATURE TESTS ........ 1-22
1.56 AMBIENT TEMPERATURE ........ 1-22
1.57 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ........ 1-22
1.58 STARTING CAPACITANCE FOR A CAPACITOR MOTOR ........ 1-22
1.59 RADIAL MAGNETIC PULL AND AXIAL CENTERING FORCE ........ 1-23
1.59.1 Radial Magnetic Pull ........ 1-23
1.59.2 Axial Centering Force ........ 1-23
1.60 INDUCTION MOTOR TIME CONSTANTS ........ 1-23
1.60.1 General ........ 1-23
1.60.2 Open-Circuit AC Time Constant ........ 1-23
1.60.3 Short-Circuit AC Time Constant ........ 1-23
1.60.4 Short-Circuit DC Time Constant ........ 1-23
1.60.5 X/R Ratio ........ 1-23
1.60.6 Definitions (See Figure 1-4) ........ 1-23
**COMPLETE MACHINES AND PARTS** ........ 1-24
1.61 SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR—COMPLETE ........ 1-24
1.61.1 Belted Type ........ 1-24
1.61.2 Engine Type ........ 1-24
1.61.3 Coupled Type ........ 1-24
1.62 DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATOR—COMPLETE ........ 1-24
1.62.1 Belted Type ........ 1-24
1.62.2 Engine Type ........ 1-24
1.62.3 Coupled Type ........ 1-24
1.63 FACE AND FLANGE MOUNTING ........ 1-25
1.63.1 Type C Face ........ 1-25
1.63.2 Type D Flange ........ 1-25
1.63.3 Type P Flange ........ 1-25
**CLASSIFICATION OF INSULATION SYSTEMS** ........ 1-25
1.65 INSULATION SYSTEM DEFINED ........ 1-25
1.65.1 Coil Insulation with its Accessories ........ 1-25
1.65.2 Connection and Winding Support Insulation ........ 1-25
1.65.3 Associated Structural Parts ........ 1-25
1.66 CLASSIFICATION OF INSULATION SYSTEMS ........ 1-25
**MISCELLANEOUS** ........ 1-26
1.70 NAMEPLATE MARKING ........ 1-26
1.70.1 Nameplate ........ 1-26
1.70.2 Additional Nameplate Markings ........ 1-26
1.71 CODE LETTER ........ 1-27
1.72 THERMAL PROTECTOR ........ 1-27
1.73 THERMALLY PROTECTED ........ 1-27
1.74 OVER TEMPERATURE PROTECTION ........ 1-27
1.75 PART-WINDING START MOTOR ........ 1-27
1.76 STAR (WYE) START, DELTA RUN MOTOR ........ 1-27
1.77 CONSTANT FLUX ........ 1-27
1.78 DEVIATION FACTOR ........ 1-28
1.79 MARKING ABBREVIATIONS FOR MACHINES ........ 1-28

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 2—TERMINAL MARKINGS**
**GENERAL** ........ 2-1
2.1 LOCATION OF TERMINAL MARKINGS ........ 2-1
2.2 TERMINAL MARKINGS ........ 2-1

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

2.3 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....2-2
2.3.1 Alternating-Current Machines ....2-2
2.3.2 Direct-Current Machines ....2-2
2.3.3 Motor-Generator Sets ....2-2
**DC MOTORS AND GENERATORS** ....2-2
2.10 TERMINAL MARKINGS ....2-2
2.10.1 General ....2-2
2.10.2 Armature Leads ....2-2
2.10.3 Armature Leads—Direction of Rotation ....2-2
2.11 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DUAL VOLTAGE SHUNT FIELDS ....2-2
2.12 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....2-3
2.12.1 Direct-Current Motors ....2-3
2.12.2 Direct-Current Generators ....2-3
2.12.3 Reverse Function ....2-3
2.13 CONNECTION DIAGRAMS WITH TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ....2-3
2.14 CONNECTION DIAGRAMS WITH TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS ....2-7
**AC MOTORS AND GENERATORS** ....2-9
2.20 NUMERALS ON TERMINALS OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT POLYPHASE MACHINES ....2-9
2.20.1 Synchronous Machines ....2-9
2.20.2 Induction Machines ....2-9
2.21 DEFINITION OF PHASE SEQUENCE ....2-9
2.22 PHASE SEQUENCE ....2-9
2.23 DIRECTION OF ROTATION OF PHASORS ....2-9
2.24 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....2-10
**AC GENERATORS AND SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS** ....2-10
2.25 REVERSAL OF ROTATION, POLARITY AND PHASE SEQUENCE ....2-10
2.30 CONNECTION AND TERMINAL MARKINGS—ALTERNATING-CURRENT GENERATORS AND SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS—THREE-PHASE AND SINGLE-PHASE ....2-10
**SINGLE PHASE MOTORS** ....2-11
2.40 GENERAL ....2-11
2.40.1 Dual Voltage ....2-11
2.40.2 Single Voltage ....2-11
2.41 TERMINAL MARKINGS IDENTIFIED BY COLOR ....2-12
2.42 AUXILIARY DEVICES WITHIN MOTOR ....2-12
2.43 AUXILIARY DEVICES EXTERNAL TO MOTOR ....2-12
2.44 MARKING OF RIGIDLY MOUNTED TERMINALS ....2-12
2.45 INTERNAL AUXILIARY DEVICES PERMANENTLY CONNECTED TO RIGIDLY MOUNTED TERMINALS ....2-13
2.46 GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS ....2-13
2.46.1 First Principle ....2-13
2.46.2 Second Principle ....2-13
2.46.3 Third Principle ....2-13
2.47 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR SPLIT-PHASE MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE ....2-14
2.47.1 Without Thermal Protector ....2-14
2.47.2 With Thermal Protector ....2-14
2.48 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR CAPACITOR-START MOTORS—REVERSIBLE ....2-15
2.48.1 Single-Voltage Capacitor-start Motors—Reversible ....2-15
2.48.2 Dual-Voltage Capacitor-start Motors—Reversible ....2-16
2.49 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR TWO-VALUE CAPACITOR

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE ....... 2-20
2.49.1 Without Thermal Protector ....... 2-20
2.49.2 With Thermal Protector ....... 2-21
2.50 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE ....... 2-22
2.51 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR UNIVERSAL MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE ....... 2-23
2.52 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR REPULSION, REPULSION-START INDUCTION, AND REPULSION-INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 2-24
2.53 SHADED-POLE MOTORS—TWO SPEED ....... 2-25
2.60 GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 2-25
2.60.1 Method of Marking ....... 2-25
2.60.2 Three-Phase, Two Speed Motors ....... 2-27
2.60.3 Two-Phase Motors ....... 2-27
2.61 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE SINGLE-SPEED INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 2-27
2.61.1 First ....... 2-27
2.61.2 Second ....... 2-27
2.61.3 Third ....... 2-27
2.61.4 Fourth ....... 2-27
2.61.5 Fifth ....... 2-27
2.61.6 Sixth ....... 2-28
2.62 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR Y- AND DELTA-CONNECTED DUAL VOLTAGE MOTORS ....... 2-28
2.63 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE TWO-SPEED SINGLE-WINDING INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 2-28
2.64 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR Y- AND DELTA-CONNECTED THREE-PHASE TWO-SPEED SINGLE-WINDING MOTORS ....... 2-28
2.65 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS HAVING TWO OR MORE SYNCHRONOUS SPEEDS OBTAINED FROM TWO OR MORE INDEPENDENT WINDINGS ....... 2-34
2.65.1 Each Independent Winding Giving One Speed ....... 2-34
2.65.2 Each Independent Winding Reconnectible to Give Two Synchronous Speeds ....... 2-34
2.65.3 Two or More Independent Windings at Least One of Which Gives One Synchronous Speed and the Other Winding Gives Two Synchronous Speeds ....... 2-35
2.66 TERMINAL MARKINGS OF THE ROTORS OF WOUND-ROTOR INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 2-38
2.67 TERMINAL MARKINGS ....... 2-38

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 3—HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS**

3.1 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ....... 3-1
3.1.1 Safety ....... 3-1
3.1.2 Definition ....... 3-1
3.1.3 Procedure ....... 3-1
3.1.4 Test Voltage ....... 3-1
3.1.5 Condition of Machine to be Tested ....... 3-1
3.1.6 Duration of Application of Test Voltage ....... 3-1
3.1.7 Points of Application of Test Voltage ....... 3-2
3.1.8 Accessories and Components ....... 3-2
3.1.9 Evaluation of Dielectric Failure ....... 3-2
3.1.10 Initial Test at Destination ....... 3-2
3.1.11 Tests of an Assembled Group of Machines and Apparatus ....... 3-2

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

3.1.12 Additional Tests Made After Installation ........ 3-3

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 4—DIMENSIONS, TOLERANCES, AND MOUNTING**

4.1 LETTERING OF DIMENSION SHEETS ........ 4-1
4.2 SYSTEM FOR DESIGNATING FRAMES ........ 4-10
4.2.1 Frame Numbers ........ 4-10
4.2.2 Frame Letters ........ 4-11
4.3 MOTOR MOUNTING AND TERMINAL HOUSING LOCATION ........ 4-12
4.4 DIMENSIONS—AC MACHINES ........ 4-14
4.4.1 Dimensions for Alternating-Current Foot-Mounted Machines with Single Straight-Shaft Extension ........ 4-14
4.4.2 Shaft Extensions and Key Dimensions for Alternating-Current Foot-Mounted Machines with Single Tapered or Double Straight/Tapered Shaft Extension ........ 4-16
4.4.3 Shaft Extension Diameters and Key Dimensions for Alternating-Current Motors Built in Frames Larger than the 449T Frames ........ 4-17
4.4.4 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Foot or Footless Alternating-Current Motors ........ 4-17
4.4.5 Dimensions for Type FC Face Mounting for Accessories on End of Alternating-Current Motors ........ 4-18
4.4.6 Dimensions for Type D Flange-Mounting Foot or Footless Alternating-Current Motors ........ 4-19
4.5 DIMENSIONS—DC MACHINES ........ 4-20
4.5.1 Dimensions for Direct-Current Small Motors with Single Straight Shaft Extension ........ 4-20
4.5.2 Dimensions for Foot-Mounted Industrial Direct-Current Machines ........ 4-21
4.5.3 Dimensions for Foot-Mounted Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-25
4.5.4 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Direct-Current Small Motors ........ 4-26
4.5.5 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-26
4.5.6 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-27
4.5.7 Dimensions for Type D Flange-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-27
4.5.8 Base Dimensions for Type P and PH Vertical Solid-Shaft Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-28
4.5.9 Dimensions for Type FC Face Mounting for Accessories on End Opposite Drive End of Industrial Direct-Current Motors ........ 4-28
4.6 SHAFT EXTENSION DIAMETERS FOR UNIVERSAL MOTORS ........ 4-28
4.7 TOLERANCE LIMITS IN DIMENSIONS ........ 4-29
4.8 KNOCKOUT AND CLEARANCE HOLE DIAMETER FOR MACHINE TERMINAL BOXES ........ 4-29
4.9 TOLERANCES ON SHAFT EXTENSION DIAMETERS AND KEYSEATS ........ 4-29
4.9.1 Shaft Extension Diameter ........ 4-29
4.9.2 Keyseat Width ........ 4-29
4.9.3 Bottom of Keyseat to Shaft Surface ........ 4-29
4.9.4 Parallelism of Keyseats to Shaft Centerline ........ 4-30
4.9.5 Lateral Displacement of Keyseats ........ 4-30
4.9.6 Diameters and Keyseat Dimensions ........ 4-30
4.9.7 Shaft Runout ........ 4-30
4.9.8 Shaft Extension Key(s) ........ 4-31
4.10 RING GROOVE SHAFT KEYSEATS FOR VERTICAL SHAFT MOTORS ........ 4-32
4.11 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT OF SHAFT RUNOUT AND OF ELECTRICITY AND FACE RUNOUT OF MOUNTING SURFACES ........ 4-32
4.11.1 Shaft Runout ........ 4-32
4.11.2 Eccentricity and Face Runout of Mounting Surfaces ........ 4-32

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

4.12 TOLERANCES FOR TYPE C FACE MOUNTING AND TYPE D FLANGE MOUNTING MOTORS ....... 4-33
4.13 TOLERANCES FOR TYPE P FLANGE-MOUNTING MOTORS ....... 4-33
4.14 MOUNTING BOLTS OR STUDS ....... 4-33
4.15 METHOD TO CHECK COPLANARITY OF FEET OF FULLY ASSEMBLED MOTORS ....... 4-34
4.16 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT OF SHAFT EXTENSION PARALLELISM TO FOOT PLANE ....... 4-34
4.17 MEASUREMENT OF BEARING TEMPERATURE ....... 4-34
4.18 TERMINAL CONNECTIONS FOR SMALL MOTORS ....... 4-35
4.18.1 Terminal Leads ....... 4-35
4.18.2 Blade Terminals ....... 4-35
4.19 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS ....... 4-35
4.19.1 Small and Medium Motors ....... 4-35
4.19.2 Dimensions ....... 4-35
4.20 GROUNDING MEANS FOR FIELD WIRING ....... 4-41

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 5—ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—CLASSIFICATION OF DEGREES OF PROTECTION PROVIDED BY ENCLOSURES FOR ROTATING MACHINES**
5.1 SCOPE ....... 5-1
5.2 DESIGNATION ....... 5-1
5.2.1 Single Characteristic Numeral ....... 5-1
5.2.2 Supplementary Letters ....... 5-1
5.2.3 Example of Designation ....... 5-2
5.2.4 Most Frequently Used ....... 5-2
5.3 DEGREES OF PROTECTION—FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL ....... 5-2
5.3.1 Indication of Degree of Protection ....... 5-2
5.3.2 Compliance to Indicated Degree of Protection ....... 5-2
5.3.3 External Fans ....... 5-2
5.3.4 Drain Holes ....... 5-3
Table 5-1 ....... 5-3
5.4 DEGREES OF PROTECTION—SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL ....... 5-4
5.4.1 Indication of Degree of Protection ....... 5-4
5.4.2 Compliance to Indicated Degree of Protection ....... 5-4
Table 5-2 ....... 5-4
5.5 MARKING ....... 5-5
5.6 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR TESTS ....... 5-5
5.6.1 Adequate Clearance ....... 5-5
5.7 TESTS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL ....... 5-5
Table 5-3 ....... 5-6
5.8 TESTS FOR SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL ....... 5-7
5.8.1 Test Conditions ....... 5-7
Table 5-4 ....... 5-8
5.8.2 Acceptance Conditions ....... 5-10
5.8.3 Allowable Water Leakage ....... 5-10
5.9 REQUIREMENTS AND TESTS FOR OPEN WEATHER-PROTECTED MACHINES ....... 5-10
Figure 5-1 ....... 5-11
Figure 5-2 ....... 5-12
Figure 5-3 ....... 5-13
Figure 5-4 ....... 5-14
Figure 5-5 ....... 5-15
Figure 5-6 ....... 5-16

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 6—ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—METHODS OF COOLING (IC CODE)**


6.1 SCOPE ....... 6-1
6.2 DEFINITIONS ....... 6-1
6.2.1 Cooling ....... 6-1
6.2.2 Coolant ....... 6-1
6.2.3 Primary Coolant ....... 6-1
6.2.4 Secondary Coolant ....... 6-1
6.2.5 Final Coolant ....... 6-1
6.2.6 Surrounding Medium ....... 6-1
6.2.7 Remote Medium ....... 6-2
6.2.8 Direct Cooled Winding (Inner-cooled Winding) ....... 6-2
6.2.9 Indirect Cooled Winding ....... 6-2
6.2.10 Heat Exchange ....... 6-2
6.2.11 Pipe, Duct ....... 6-2
6.2.12 Open Circuit ....... 6-2
6.2.13 Closed Circuit ....... 6-2
6.2.14 Piped or Ducted Circuit ....... 6-2
6.2.15 Stand-by or Emergency Cooling System ....... 6-2
6.2.16 Integral Component ....... 6-2
6.2.17 Machine-Mounted Component ....... 6-3
6.2.18 Separate Component ....... 6-3
6.2.19 Dependent Circulation Component ....... 6-3
6.2.20 Independent Circulation Component ....... 6-3
6.3 DESIGNATION SYSTEM ....... 6-3
6.3.1 Arrangement of the IC Code ....... 6-3
6.3.2 Application of Designations ....... 6-4
6.3.3 Designation of Same Circuit Arrangements for Different Parts of a Machine ....... 6-4
6.3.4 Designation of Different Circuit Arrangements for Different Parts of a Machine ....... 6-4
6.3.5 Designation of Direct Cooled Winding ....... 6-5
6.3.6 Designation of Stand-by or Emergency Cooling Conditions ....... 6-5
6.3.7 Combined Designations ....... 6-5
6.3.8 Replacement of Characteristic Numerals ....... 6-5
6.4 CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL FOR CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENT ....... 6-5
6.5 CHARACTERISTIC LETTERS FOR COOLANT ....... 6-6
6.6 CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL FOR METHOD OF MOVEMENT ....... 6-7
6.7 COMMONLY USED DESIGNATIONS ....... 6-8
6.7.1 General Information on the Tables ....... 6-8


**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 7—MECHANICAL VIBRATION-MEASUREMENT, EVALUATION AND LIMITS**
***(Entire Section Replaced)***


7.1 SCOPE ....... 7-1
7.2 OBJECT ....... 7-1
7.3 REFERENCES ....... 7-1
7.4 MEASUREMENT QUANTITY ....... 7-1
7.4.1 Bearing Housing Vibration ....... 7-1
7.4.2 Relative Shaft Vibration ....... 7-1
7.5 MEASUREMENT EQUIPMENT ....... 7-2
7.6 MACHINE MOUNTING ....... 7-2
7.6.1 General ....... 7-2
7.6.2 Resilient Mounting ....... 7-2
7.6.3 Rigid Mounting ....... 7-2
7.6.4 Active Environment Determination ....... 7-3


© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

7.7 CONDITIONS OF MEASUREMENT .......... 7-3
7.7.1 Shaft Key .......... 7-3
7.7.2 Measurement Points for Vibration .......... 7-3
7.7.3 Operating Conditions .......... 7-4
7.7.4 Vibration Transducer Mounting .......... 7-4
7.8 LIMITS OF BEARING HOUSING VIBRATION .......... 7-7
7.8.1 General .......... 7-7
7.8.2 Vibration Limits for Standard Machines .......... 7-9
7.8.3 Vibration Limits for Special Machines .......... 7-9
7.8.4 Vibration Banding for Special Machines .......... 7-9
7.8.5 Twice Line Frequency Vibration of Two Pole Induction Machines .......... 7-10
7.8.6 Axial Vibration .......... 7-11
7.9 LIMITS OF RELATIVE SHAFT VIBRATION .......... 7-11
7.9.1 General .......... 7-11
7.9.2 Standard Machines .......... 7-12
7.9.3 Special Machines .......... 7-12

**Section I GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 9—ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—SOUND POWER LIMITS AND MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES**
9.1 SCOPE .......... 9-1
9.2 GENERAL .......... 9-1
9.3 REFERENCES .......... 9-1
9.4 METHODS OF MEASUREMENT .......... 9-1
9.5 TEST CONDITIONS .......... 9-2
9.5.1 Machine Mounting .......... 9-2
9.5.2 Test Operating Conditions .......... 9-2
9.6 SOUND POWER LEVEL .......... 9-2
9.7 DETERMINATION OF SOUND PRESSURE LEVEL .......... 9-3
Table 9-1 .......... 9-4
Table 9-2 .......... 9-5
Table 9-3 .......... 9-5
Table 9-4 .......... 9-6

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 10—AC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**
10.0 SCOPE .......... 10-1
10.30 VOLTAGES .......... 10-1
10.31 FREQUENCIES .......... 10-1
10.31.1 Alternating-Current Motors .......... 10-1
10.31.2 Universal Motors .......... 10-1
10.32 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS .......... 10-2
10.32.1 Small Induction Motors, Except Permanent-Split Capacitor Motors Rated 1/3 Horsepower and Smaller and Shaded-Pole Motors .......... 10-2
10.32.2 Small induction Motors, permanent-Split Capacitor Motors Rated 1/3 Horsepower and Smaller and Shaded-Pole Motors .......... 10-2
10.32.3 Single-Phase Medium Motors .......... 10-3
10.32.4 Polyphase Medium Induction Motors .......... 10-3
10.32.5 Universal Motors .......... 10-4
10.33 HORSEPOWER RATINGS OF MULTISPEED MOTORS .......... 10-4
10.33.1 Constant Horsepower .......... 10-4
10.33.2 Constant Torque .......... 10-5
10.33.3 Variable Torque .......... 10-5
10.34 BASIS FOR HORSEPOWER RATING .......... 10-5
10.34.1 Basis of Rating .......... 10-5

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

10.34.2 Temperature ....................................................... 10-5
10.34.3 Minimum Breakdown Torque ....................................................... 10-5
10.35 SECONDARY DATA FOR WOUND-ROTOR-MOTORS ....................................................... 10-8
10.36 TIME RATINGS FOR SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ....................................................... 10-8
10.37 CODE LETTERS (FOR LOCKED-ROTOR KVA) ....................................................... 10-8
10.37.1 Nameplate Marking ....................................................... 10-8
10.37.2 Letter Designation ....................................................... 10-8
10.37.3 Multispeed Motors ....................................................... 10-8
10.37.4 Single-Speed Motors ....................................................... 10-9
10.37.5 Broad- or Dual-Voltage Motors ....................................................... 10-9
10.37.6 Dual-Frequency Motors ....................................................... 10-9
10.37.7 Part-Winding-Start Motors ....................................................... 10-9
10.38 NAMEPLATE TEMPERATURE RATINGS FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS ....................................................... 10-9
10.39 NAMEPLATE MARKING FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS ....................................................... 10-9
10.39.1 Alternating-Current Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors, Except Those Included in 10.39.2, 10.39.3, and 10.39.4 ....................................................... 10-9
10.39.2 Motors Rated Less than 1/20 Horsepower ....................................................... 10-10
10.39.3 Universal Motors ....................................................... 10-10
10.39.4 Motors Intended for Assembly in a Device Having its Own Markings ....................................................... 10-10
10.39.5 Motors for Dual Voltage ....................................................... 10-10
10.40 NAMEPLATE MARKING FOR MEDIUM SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ....................................................... 10-11
10.40.1 Medium Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors ....................................................... 10-11
10.40.2 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors ....................................................... 10-12

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 10—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**
10.0 SCOPE ....................................................... 10-13
10.60 BASIS OF RATING ....................................................... 10-13
10.60.1 Small Motors ....................................................... 10-13
10.60.2 Medium Motors ....................................................... 10-13
10.61 POWER SUPPLY IDENTIFICATION FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS ....................................................... 10-13
10.60.1 Supplies Designated by a Single Letter ....................................................... 10-13
10.60.2 Other Supply Types ....................................................... 10-13
10.62 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS ....................................................... 10-14
10.62.1 Direct-Current Small Motors ....................................................... 10-14
10.62.2 Industrial Direct-Current Motors ....................................................... 10-15
10.63 NAMEPLATE TIME RATING ....................................................... 10-15
10.64 TIME RATING FOR INTERMITTENT, PERIODIC, AND VARYING DUTY ....................................................... 10-15
10.65 NAMEPLATE MAXIMUM AMBIENT TEMPERATURE AND INSULATION SYSTEM CLASS ....................................................... 10-15
10.66 NAMEPLATE MARKING ....................................................... 10-17
10.66.1 Small Motors Rated 1/20 Horsepower and Less ....................................................... 10-17
10.66.2 Small Motors Except Those Rated 1/20 Horsepower and Less ....................................................... 10-18
10.66.3 Medium Motors ....................................................... 10-18

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 12—TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—AC AND DC MOTORS**

12.0 SCOPE ....... 12-1
12.2 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST—SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND TEST PROCEDURE ....... 12-1
12.3 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST VOLTAGES FOR UNIVERSAL, INDUCTION, AND DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ....... 12-1
12.4 PRODUCTION HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTING OF SMALL MOTORS ....... 12-2
12.4.1 Dielectric Test Equipment ....... 12-3
12.4.2 Evaluation of Insulation Systems by a Dielectric Test ....... 12-3
12.5 REPETITIVE SURGE TEST FOR SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS ....... 12-3
12.6 MECHANICAL VIBRATION ....... 12-4
12.7 BEARING LOSSES—VERTICAL PUMP MOTORS ....... 12-4

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 12—TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—AC MOTORS**

12.0 SCOPE ....... 12-5
12.30 TEST METHODS ....... 12-5
12.31 PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS ....... 12-5
12.32 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS OF SINGLE-PHASE GENERAL-PURPOSE INDUCTION MOTORS ....... 12-5
12.32.1 Breakdown Torque ....... 12-5
12.32.2 Locked-rotor Torque of Small Motors ....... 12-6
12.32.3 Locked-rotor Torque of Medium Motors ....... 12-6
12.32.4 Pull-Up Torque of Medium Motors ....... 12-6
12.33 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF SINGLE-PHASE SMALL MOTORS ....... 12-6
12.33.1 Design O and Design N Motors ....... 12-6
12.33.2 General-Purpose Motors ....... 12-7
12.34 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF SINGLE-PHASE MEDIUM MOTORS, DESIGNS L AND M ....... 12-7
12.35 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF 3-PHASE 60-HERTZ SMALL AND MEDIUM SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS RATED AT 230 VOLTS ....... 12-7
12.35.1 60-Hertz Design B, C, and D Motors at 230 Volts ....... 12-7
12.35.2 50-Hertz Design B, C, and D Motors at 380 Volts ....... 12-9
12.36 INSTANTANEOUS PEAK VALUE OF INRUSH CURRENT ....... 12-9
12.37 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS OF POLYPHASE SMALL MOTORS ....... 12-9
12.38 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS ....... 12-10
12.38.1 Design A and B Motors ....... 12-10
12.38.2 Design C Motors ....... 12-10
12.38.3 Design D Motors ....... 12-11
12.39 BREAKDOWN TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS ....... 12-11
12.39.1 Design A and B Motors ....... 12-11
12.39.2 Design C Motors ....... 12-11
12.40 PULL-UP TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS ....... 12-12
12.40.1 Design A and B Motors ....... 12-12
12.40.2 Design C Motors ....... 12-13
12.41 BREAKDOWN TORQUE OF POLYPHASE WOUND-ROTOR MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS ....... 12-13
12.42 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS ....... 12-14

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

12.42.1 Alternating-Current Small Motors—Motor Nameplates Marked with Insulation System Designation and Ambient Temperature ..... 12-14
12.42.2 Universal Motors ..... 12-15
12.42.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ..... 12-15
12.42.4 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C but Not Below 0° C ..... 12-16
12.43 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR MEDIUM SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ..... 12-17
12.43.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ..... 12-17
12.43.2 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C ..... 12-18
12.44 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 12-19
12.44.1 Running ..... 12-19
12.44.2 Starting ..... 12-19
12.45 VOLTAGE UNBALANCE ..... 12-19
12.46 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED ..... 12-19
12.47 NAMEPLATE AMPERES—ALTERNATING-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS ..... 12-19
12.48 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT ..... 12-19
12.49 STALL TIME ..... 12-20
12.50 PERFORMANCE OF MEDIUM MOTORS WITH DUAL VOLTAGE RATING (SUGGESTED STANDARD FOR FUTURE DESIGN) ..... 12-20
12.51 SERVICE FACTOR OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS ..... 12-20
12.51.1 General-Purpose Alternating-Current Motors of the Open Type ..... 12-20
12.51.2 Other Motors ..... 12-21
12.52 OVERSPEEDS FOR MOTORS ..... 12-21
12.52.1 Squirrel-Cage and Wound-Rotor Motors ..... 12-21
12.52.2 General-Purpose Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors ..... 12-21
12.52.3 General-Purpose Design A and B Direct-Coupled Drive Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors ..... 12-23
12.52.4 Alternating-Current Series and Universal Motors ..... 12-23
12.53 MACHINE SOUND (MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS) ..... 12-25
12.54 NUMBER OF STARTS ..... 12-25
12.54.1 Normal Starting Conditions ..... 12-25
12.54.2 Other than Normal Starting Conditions ..... 12-25
12.54.3 Considerations for Additional Starts ..... 12-25
12.55 ROUTINE TESTS FOR POLYPHASE MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS ..... 12-25
12.55.1 Method of Testing ..... 12-25
12.55.2 Typical Tests on Completely Assembled Motors ..... 12-26
12.55.3 Typical of Tests on Motors Not Completely Assembled ..... 12-26
12.56 THERMAL PROTECTION OF MEDIUM MOTORS ..... 12-27
12.56.1 Winding Temperature ..... 12-27
12.56.2 Trip Current ..... 12-29
12.57 OVERTEMPERATURE PROTECTION OF MEDIUM MOTORS NOT MEETING THE DEFINITION OF "THERMALLY PROTECTED" ..... 12-29
12.57.1 Type 1—Winding Running and Locked Rotor Overtemperature Protection ..... 12-29
12.57.2 Type 2—Winding Running Overtemperature Protection ..... 12-29
12.57.3 Type 3—Winding Overtemperature Protection, Nonspecific Type ..... 12-29
12.58 EFFICIENCY ..... 12-29
12.58.1 Determination of Motor Efficiency and Losses ..... 12-29
12.58.2 Efficiency of Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Medium Motors with Continuous Ratings ..... 12-30
12.59 EFFICIENCY LEVELS OF ENERGY EFFICIENT POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS ..... 12-31

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

12.60 EFFICIENCY LEVEL OF PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS ........ 12-32
12.60.1 60 Hz Motors Rated 600 Volts or Less (Random Wound) ........ 12-32
12.60.2 60 Hz Motors Rated Medium Voltage, 5000 Volts or Less (Form Wound) ........ 12-32
12.60.3 50 Hz Motors Rated 400 Volts or Less (Random Wound) ........ 12-32
12.61 REPORT OF TEST FOR TESTS ON INDUCTION MOTORS ........ 12-32
Table 12-11 ........ 12-33
Table 12-12 ........ 12-35
Table 12-13 ........ 12-37
Table 12-14 ........ 12-38
12.62 MACHINE WITH ENCAPSULATED OR SEALED WINDING CONFORMANCE TESTS ........ 12-40
12.63 MACHINE WITH MOISTURE RESISTANT WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TEST ........ 12-40

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 12—TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**
12.0 SCOPE ........ 12-41
12.65 TEST METHODS ........ 12-41
12.66 TEST POWER SUPPLY ........ 12-41
12.66.1 Small Motors ........ 12-41
12.66.2 Medium Motors ........ 12-41
12.67 TEMPERATURE RISE ........ 12-43
12.67.1 Direct-Current Small Motors ........ 12-43
12.67.2 Continuous-Time-Rated Direct-Current Medium Motors ........ 12-43
12.67.3 Short-Time-Rated Direct-Current Medium Motors ........ 12-44
12.67.4 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ........ 12-44
12.67.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C ........ 12-45
12.68 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE ........ 12-46
12.69 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO LOAD ........ 12-46
12.69.1 Straight-Shunt-Wound, Stabilized-Shunt-Wound, and Permanent-Magnet Direct-Current Motors ........ 12-46
12.69.2 Compound-Wound Direct-Current Motors ........ 12-46
12.70 VARIATION IN BASE SPEED DUE TO HEATING ........ 12-46
12.70.1 Speed Variation with Temperature ........ 12-46
12.70.2 Resistance Variation with Temperature ........ 12-47
12.71 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED ........ 12-47
12.72 MOMENTARY OVERLOAD CAPACITY ........ 12-47
12.73 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION ........ 12-47
12.74 OVERSPEEDS FOR MOTORS ........ 12-47
12.74.1 Shunt-Wound Motors ........ 12-47
12.74.2 Compound-Wound Motors Having Speed Regulation of 35 Percent or Less ........ 12-47
12.74.3 Series-Wound Motors and Compound-Wound Motors Having Speed Regulation Greater Than 35 Percent ........ 12-47
12.75 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ........ 12-48
12.76 ROUTINE TESTS ON MEDIUM DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ........ 12-48
12.77 REPORT OF TEST FORM FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MACHINES ........ 12-48
12.78 EFFICIENCY ........ 12-48
12.78.1 Type A Power Supplies ........ 12-48
12.78.2 Other Power Supplies ........ 12-49
12.79 STABILITY ........ 12-49
12.80 OVER TEMPERATURE PROTECTION OF MEDIUM DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ........ 12-49
12.81 DATA FOR DIRECT CURRENT MOTORS ........ 12-50
12.82 MACHINE SOUND OF DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS ........ 12-51

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 13—FRAME ASSIGNMENTS FOR ALTERNATING CURRENT INTEGRAL HORSEPOWER INDUCTION MOTORS**

13.0 SCOPE ..... 13-1
13.1 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR SINGLE-PHASE DESIGN L, HORIZONTAL, AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 230 VOLTS AND LESS ..... 13-1
13.2 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGNS A, B, AND E, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS ..... 13-2
13.3 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGNS A, B, ND E, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED TYPE, 1.0 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS ..... 13-3
13.4 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGN C, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS ..... 13-4
13.5 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGN C, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED TYPE, 1.0 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS ..... 13-5

**SECTION II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL MACHINES)**
**Part 14—APPLICATION DATA—AC AND DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MACHINES**

14.0 SCOPE ..... 14-1
14.1 PROPER SELECTION OF APPARATUS ..... 14-1
14.2 USUAL SERVICE CONDITIONS ..... 14-2
14.2.1 Environmental Conditions ..... 14-2
14.2.2 Operating Conditions ..... 14-2
14.3 UNUSUAL SERVICE CONDITIONS ..... 14-2
14.4 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 14-3
14.4.1 Motors with Class A or Class B Insulation Systems ..... 14-3
14.4.2 Motors with Service Factor ..... 14-3
14.4.3 Temperature Rise at Sea Level ..... 14-3
14.4.4 Preferred Values of Altitude for Rating Motors ..... 14-4
14.5 SHORT-TIME RATED ELECTRICAL MACHINES ..... 14-4
14.6 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 14-4
14.7 APPLICATION OF PULLEYS, SHEAVES, SPROCKETS, AND GEARS ON MOTOR SHAFTS ..... 14-4
14.7.1 Mounting ..... 14-4
14.7.2 Minimum Pitch Diameter for Drives Other than V-Belt ..... 14-4
14.7.3 Maximum Speed of Drive Components ..... 14-5
14.8 THROUGH-BOLT MOUNTING ..... 14-5
14.9 RODENT PROTECTION ..... 14-5

**SECTION II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 14—APPLICATION DATA—AC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**

14.0 SCOPE ..... 14-7
14.30 EFFECTS OF VARIATION OF VOLTAGE AND FREQUENCY UPON THE PERFORMANCE OF INDUCTION MOTORS ..... 14-7
14.30.1 General ..... 14-7
14.30.2 Effects of Variation in Voltage on Temperature ..... 14-7

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

14.30.3 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Power Factor ... 14-7
14.30.4 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Starting Torques ... 14-7
14.30.5 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Slip ... 14-7
14.30.6 Effects of Variation in Frequency ... 14-8
14.30.7 Effect of Variations in Both Voltage and Frequency ... 14-8
14.30.8 Effect on Special-Purpose or Small Motors ... 14-8
14.31 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNDERGROUND SYSTEM ... 14-8
14.32 OPERATION OF ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY OR VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLIES, OR BOTH ... 14-8
14.32.1 Performance ... 14-8
14.32.2 Shaft Voltages ... 14-9
14.33 EFFECTS OF VOLTAGES OVER 600 VOLTS ON THE PERFORMANCE OF LOW-VOLTAGE MOTORS ... 14-9
14.34 OPERATION OF GENERAL-PURPOSE ALTERNATING-CURRENT POLYPHASE, 2-, 4-, 6-, AND 8-POLE, 60-HERTZ MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS OPERATED ON 50 HERTZ ... 14-9
14.34.1 Speed ... 14-9
14.34.2 Torques ... 14-9
14.34.3 Locked-Rotor Current ... 14-10
14.34.4 Service Factor ... 14-10
14.34.5 Temperature Rise ... 14-10
14.35 OPERATION OF 230-VOLT INDUCTION MOTORS ON 208-VOLT SYSTEMS ... 14-10
14.35.1 General ... 14-10
14.35.2 Nameplate Marking of Useable @ 200 V ... 14-10
14.35.3 Effect on Performance of Motor ... 14-10
14.36 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ... 14-10
14.36.1 Effect on Performance—General ... 14-11
14.36.2 Unbalance Defined ... 14-11
14.36.3 Torques ... 14-11
14.36.4 Full-Load Speed ... 14-11
14.36.5 Currents ... 14-11
14.37 APPLICATION OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS WITH SERVICE FACTORS ... 14-12
14.37.1 General ... 14-12
14.37.2 Temperature Rise—Medium Alternating-Current Motors ... 14-12
14.37.3 Temperature Rise—Small Alternating-Current Motors ... 14-12
14.38 CHARACTERISTICS OF PART-WINDING-START POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS ... 14-12
14.39 COUPLING END-PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR HORIZONTAL ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS ... 14-12
14.39.1 Preferred Hp Ratings for Motors with Ball Bearings ... 14-12
14.39.2 Limits for Motors with Sleeze Bearings ... 14-13
14.39.3 Drawing and Shaft Markings ... 14-13
14.40 OUTPUT SPEEDS FOR MEDIUM GEAR MOTORS OF PARALLEL CONSTRUCTION ... 14-14
14.41 APPLICATION OF MEDIUM ALTERNATING-CURRENT SQUIRREL-CAGE MACHINES WITH SEALED WINDINGS ... 14-14
14.41.1 Usual Service Conditions ... 14-14
14.41.2 Unusual Service Conditions ... 14-14
14.41.3 Hazardous Locations ... 14-15
14.42 APPLICATION OF V-BELT SHEAVES TO ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS ... 14-15
14.42.1 Dimensions ... 14-15

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

14.42.2 Radial Overhung Load Limitations ..... 14-15
14.43 ASEISMATIC CAPABILITY ..... 14-15
14.44 POWER FACTOR OF THREE-PHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS ..... 14-17
14.44.1 Determination of Power Factor from Nameplate Data ..... 14-17
14.44.2 Determination of Capacitor Rating for Connecting Power Factor to Desired Value ..... 14-17
14.44.3 Determination of Corrected Power Factor for Specified Capacitor Rating ..... 14-18
14.44.4 Application of Power Factor Correction Capacitors on Power Systems ..... 14-18
14.44.5 Application of Power Factor Correction Capacitors on Motors Operated from Electronic Power Supply ..... 14-18
14.45 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING ..... 14-18
14.46 ROTOR INERTIA FOR DYNAMIC BREAKING ..... 14-18
14.47 EFFECTS OF LOAD ON MOTOR EFFICIENCY ..... 14-18

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 14—APPLICATION DATA—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS**
14.0 SCOPE ..... 14-21
14.60 OPERATION OF SMALL MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT ..... 14-21
14.60.1 General ..... 14-21
14.60.2 Form Factor ..... 14-21
14.61 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT ..... 14-22
14.62 ARMATURE CURRENT RIPPLE ..... 14-23
14.63 OPERATION ON A VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY ..... 14-23
14.64 SHUNT FIELD HEATING AT STANDSTILL ..... 14-24
14.65 BEARING CURRENTS ..... 14-24
14.66 EFFECTS OF 50-HERTZ ALTERNATING-CURRENT POWER FREQUENCY ..... 14-24
14.67 APPLICATION OF OVERHUNG LOADS TO MOTOR SHAFTS ..... 14-25
14.67.1 Limitations ..... 14-25
14.67.2 V-Belt Drives ..... 14-26
14.67.3 Applications Other Than V-Belts ..... 14-27
14.67.4 General ..... 14-27
14.68 RATE OF CHANGE OF ARMATURE CURRENT ..... 14-28

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 15—DC Generators**
15.0 SCOPE ..... 15-1
15.10 KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 15-1
15.10.1 Standard Ratings ..... 15-1
15.10.2 Exciters ..... 15-2
15.11 NAMEPLATE TIME RATING, MAXIMUM AMBIENT TEMPERATURE, AND INSULATION SYSTEM CLASS ..... 15-2
15.12 NAMEPLATE MARKING ..... 15-2
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 15-2
15.40 TEST PERFORMANCE ..... 15-2
15.41 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 15-2
15.41.1 Temperature Rise for Maximum Ambient of 40°C ..... 15-2
15.41.2 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ..... 15-3
15.41.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C ..... 15-3
15.42 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION ..... 15-4
15.43 OVERLOAD ..... 15-4

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

15.44 VOLTAGE VARIATION DUE TO HEATING ..... 15-4
15.45 FLAT COMPOUNDING ..... 15-4
15.46 TEST FOR REGULATION ..... 15-4
15.47 OVERSPEEDS FOR GENERATORS ..... 15-5
15.48 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 15-5
15.48.1 Safety Precautions for Test Procedure ..... 15-5
15.48.2 Test Voltage ..... 15-5
15.49 ROUTINE TESTS ..... 15-5
15.50 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS ..... 15-5
15.51 REPORT OF TEST FORM ..... 15-6
15.52 EFFICIENCY ..... 15-6
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 15-7
15.60 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 15-7
15.61 EQUALIZER LEADS OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS ..... 15-7

**Section II SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES**
**Part 18—DEFINITE PURPOSE MACHINES**
18.1 SCOPE ..... 18-1
**MOTORS FOR HERMETIC REFRIGERATION COMPRESSORS** ..... 18-1
18.2 CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-2
**RATINGS** ..... 18-3
18.3 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-3
18.3.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-3
18.3.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ..... 18-3
18.4 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-3
18.5 SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-3
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-3
18.6 OPERATING TEMPERATURE ..... 18-3
18.7 BREAKDOWN TORQUE AND LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS ..... 18-3
18.7.1 Breakdown Torque ..... 18-3
18.7.2 Locked-Rotor Current ..... 18-3
18.8 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-5
18.9 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-5
18.10 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-5
18.11 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS ..... 18-5
18.12 METHOD TEST FOR CLEANLINESS OF SINGLE-PHASE HERMETIC MOTORS HAVING STATOR DIAMETERS OF 6.292 INCHES AND SMALLER ..... 18-5
18.12.1 Stators ..... 18-6
18.12.2 Rotors ..... 18-6
18.13 METHOD OF TEST FOR CLEANLINESS OF HERMETIC MOTORS HAVING STATOR DIAMETERS OF 8.777 INCHES AND SMALLER ..... 18-6
18.13.1 Purpose ..... 18-6
18.13.2 Description ..... 18-6
18.13.3 Sample Storage ..... 18-6
18.13.4 Equipment ..... 18-6
18.13.5 Procedure ..... 18-7
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-7
18.14 ROTOR BORE DIAMETERS AND KEYWAY DIMENSIONS FOR 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS ..... 18-8
18.15 DIMENSIONS FOR 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS ..... 18-9
18.16 FORMING OF END WIRE ..... 18-9
18.17 THERMAL PROTECTORS ASSEMBLED ON OR IN END WINDINGS OF HERMETIC MOTORS ..... 18-9

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.18 LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR HERMETIC MOTORS FOR HERMETIC COMPRESSORS ..... 18-10
**SMALL MOTORS FOR SHAFT-MOUNTED FANS AND BLOWERS** ..... 18-12
18.19 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-12
**RATINGS** ..... 18-12
18.20 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-12
18.20.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-12
18.20.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ..... 18-12
18.21 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-12
18.22 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-12
18.22.1 Single-Speed Motors ..... 18-12
18.22.2 Two-Speed Motors ..... 18-12
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-13
18.23 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-13
18.24 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ..... 18-13
18.25 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT—SINGLE-PHASE ..... 18-13
18.26 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ..... 18-13
18.27 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-13
18.28 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-13
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-13
18.29 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-13
18.30 DIMENSIONS AND LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR SHAFT-MOUNTED FANS AND BLOWERS ..... 18-13
18.31 TERMINAL MARKINGS ..... 18-13
18.32 TERMINAL LEAD LENGTHS ..... 18-14
**SMALL MOTORS FOR BELTED FANS AND BLOWERS BUILT IN FRAMES 56 AND SMALLER** ..... 18-16
18.33 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-16
**RATINGS** ..... 18-16
18.34 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-16
18.34.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-16
18.34.2 Polyphase Motors ..... 18-16
18.35 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-16
18.36 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-16
18.36.1 Single-Speed Motors ..... 18-16
18.36.2 Two-Speed Motors ..... 18-16
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-17
18.37 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-17
18.38 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ..... 18-17
18.39 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ..... 18-17
18.40 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-17
18.41 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-17
18.42 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-17
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-17
18.43 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-17
18.44 LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR BELTED FANS AND BLOWERS ..... 18-18
**SMALL MOTORS FOR AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSERS AND EVAPORATOR FANS** ..... 18-19
18.45 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-19
**RATINGS** ..... 18-19
18.46 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-19
18.47 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-19
18.48 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-19
18.48.1 Horsepower Ratings ..... 18-19
18.48.2 Speed Ratings ..... 18-19

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ........ 18-19
18.49 TEMPERATURE RISE ........ 18-19
18.50 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS ........ 18-19
18.51 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ........ 18-20
18.52 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ........ 18-20
18.53 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED ........ 18-20
18.54 TERMINAL MARKINGS—MULTISPEED SHADED-POLE MOTORS ........ 18-20
**MANUFACTURING** ........ 18-20
18.55 TERMINAL MARKINGS ........ 18-20
18.56 TERMINAL LEAD LENGTHS ........ 18-21
18.57 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ........ 18-21
18.58 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR NON-POLE-CHANGING MULTISPEED SINGLE-VOLTAGE NONREVERSIBLE PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS AND SHADED POLE MOTORS ........ 18-22
18.59 DIMENSIONS OF SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS HAVING A P DIMENSION 4.38 INCHES AND LARGER ........ 18-24
18.60 DIMENSIONS OF SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS HAVING A P DIMENSION SMALLER THAN 4.38 INCHES ........ 18-25
18.61 DIMENSIONS FOR LUG MOUNTING FOR SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS ........ 18-25
**APPLICATION DATA** ........ 18-26
18.62 NAMEPLATE CURRENT ........ 18-26
**RATINGS** ........ 18-26
18.63 EFFECT OF VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE UPON OPERATING SPEED ........ 18-26
18.64 INSULATION TESTING ........ 18-26
18.64.1 Test Conditions ........ 18-26
18.64.2 Test Method ........ 18-27
18.65 SERVICE CONDITIONS ........ 18-27
**SMALL MOTORS AND SUMP PUMPS** ........ 18-30
18.66 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ........ 18-30
**RATINGS** ........ 18-30
18.67 VOLTAGE RATINGS ........ 18-30
18.68 FREQUENCIES ........ 18-30
18.69 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ........ 18-30
18.69.1 Horsepower Ratings ........ 18-30
18.69.2 Speed Ratings ........ 18-30
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ........ 18-30
18.70 TEMPERATURE RISE ........ 18-30
18.71 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS ........ 18-30
18.72 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS ........ 18-30
18.73 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ........ 18-31
18.74 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ........ 18-31
18.75 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ........ 18-31
**MANUFACTURING** ........ 18-31
18.76 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ........ 18-31
18.77 DIMENSIONS FOR SUMP PUMP MOTORS, TYPE K ........ 18-31
18.78 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER ........ 18-31
**SMALL MOTORS FOR GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMPS** ........ 18-33
18.79 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ........ 18-33
**RATINGS** ........ 18-33
18.80 VOLTAGE RATINGS ........ 18-33
18.80.1Single-Phase Motors ........ 18-33

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.30.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ....................................................... 18-33
18.81 FREQUENCIES ....................................................... 18-33
18.82 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ....................................................... 18-32
18.82.1 Horsepower Ratings ....................................................... 18-32
18.82.2 Speed Ratings ....................................................... 18-33
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....................................................... 18-33
18.83 TEMPERATURE RISE ....................................................... 18-33
18.84 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS ....................................................... 18-34
18.85 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE ....................................................... 18-34
18.86 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ....................................................... 18-34
18.87 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ....................................................... 18-35
18.88 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ....................................................... 18-35
18.89 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....................................................... 18-35
**MANUFACTURING** ....................................................... 18-35
18.90 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ....................................................... 18-35
18.91 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER ....................................................... 18-35
18.92 DIMENSIONS FOR GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMP MOTORS, TYPE G ....................................................... 18-36
**SMALL MOTORS FOR OIL BURNERS** ....................................................... 18-37
18.93 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ....................................................... 18-37
**RATINGS** ....................................................... 18-37
18.94 VOLTAGE RATINGS ....................................................... 18-37
18.95 FREQUENCIES ....................................................... 18-37
18.96 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ....................................................... 18-37
18.96.1 Horsepower Ratings ....................................................... 18-37
18.96.2 Speed Ratings ....................................................... 18-37
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....................................................... 18-37
18.97 TEMPERATURE RISE ....................................................... 18-37
18.98 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ....................................................... 18-38
18.99 LOCKED-ROTOR CHARACTERISTICS ....................................................... 18-38
18.100 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ....................................................... 18-38
18.101 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ....................................................... 18-38
18.102 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....................................................... 18-38
**MANUFACTURING** ....................................................... 18-38
18.103 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ....................................................... 18-38
18.104 DIMENSIONS FOR FACE-MOUNTING MOTORS FOR OIL-BURNERS, TYPES M AND N ....................................................... 18-39
18.104.1 Dimensions ....................................................... 18-39
18.105 TOLERANCES ....................................................... 18-39
18.106 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER ....................................................... 18-39
18.106.1 Suffix Letter M ....................................................... 18-39
18.106.2 Suffix Letter N ....................................................... 18-40
**SMALL MOTORS FOR HOME LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT** ....................................................... 18-41
18.107 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ....................................................... 18-41
**RATINGS** ....................................................... 18-41
18.108 VOLTAGE RATINGS ....................................................... 18-41
18.109 FREQUENCIES ....................................................... 18-41
18.110 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ....................................................... 18-41
18.110.1 Horsepower Ratings ....................................................... 18-41
18.110.2 Speed Ratings ....................................................... 18-41
18.111 NAMEPLATE MARKING ....................................................... 18-41
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....................................................... 18-42
18.112 TEMPERATURE RISE ....................................................... 18.42
18.113 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ....................................................... 18-42
18.114 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ....................................................... 18-42

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.115 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-42
18.116 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-42
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-42
18.117 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-42
18.118 DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR HOME LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT ..... 18-43
**MOTORS AND JET PUMPS** ..... 18-44
18.119 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-44
**RATINGS** ..... 18-44
18.120 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-44
18.120.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-44
18.120.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ..... 18-44
18.121 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-44
18.122 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND SERVICE FACTOR RATINGS ..... 18-44
**TEST AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-45
18.123 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-45
18.124 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ..... 18-45
18.125 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS ..... 18-45
18.126 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ..... 18-45
18.127 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-45
18.128 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-45
18.129 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-45
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-45
18.130 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-45
18.131 DIMENSION FOR FACE-MOUNTED MOTORS FOR JET PUMPS ..... 18-46
18.132 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER ..... 18-47
**SMALL MOTORS FOR COOLANT PUMPS** ..... 18-48
18.133 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-48
**RATINGS** ..... 18-48
18.134 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-48
18.134.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-48
18.134.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ..... 18-48
18.134.3 Direct-current Motors ..... 18-48
18.135 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-48
18.136 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-49
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-50
18.137 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-50
18.138 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ..... 18-50
18.139 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS ..... 18-50
18.140 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ..... 18-50
18.141 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-50
18.142 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-50
18.143 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-50
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-51
18.144 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-51
**SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—4-INCH** ..... 18-52
18.145 CLASSIFICATION TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-52
**RATINGS** ..... 18-52
18.146 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-52
18.146.1 Single-Phase Motors ..... 18-52
18.146.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ..... 18-52
18.147 FREQUENCIES ..... 18-52
18.148 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-52
18.148.1 Horsepower Ratings ..... 18-52
18.148.2 Speed Ratings ..... 18-52
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-53
18.149 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ..... 18-53

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.150 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ............ 18-53
18.150.1 Single-Phase Small Motors ............ 18-53
18.150.2 Single-Phase Medium Motors ............ 18-53
18.152.3 Three-Phase Medium Motors ............ 18-53
18.151 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ............ 18-53
18.152 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX ............ 18-53
18.153 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY ............ 18-53
18.154 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ............ 18-53
18.155 THRUST CAPACITY ............ 18-53
**MANUFACTURING** ............ 18-53
18.156 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS ............ 18-53
18.157 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ............ 18-54
**SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—6-INCH** ............ 18-55
18.158 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ............ 18-55
**RATINGS** ............ 18-55
18.159 VOLTAGE RATINGS ............ 18-55
18.159.1 Single-Phase Motors ............ 18-55
18.159.2 Polyphase Induction Motors ............ 18-55
18.160 FREQUENCIES ............ 18-55
18.161 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ............ 18-55
18.161.1 Horsepower Ratings ............ 18-55
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ............ 18-55
18.162 BASIS FOR HORSEPOWER RATING ............ 18-55
18.163 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ............ 18-55
18.164 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ............ 18-56
18.165 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX ............ 18-56
18.166 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY ............ 18-56
18.167 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ............ 18-56
18.168 THRUST CAPACITY ............ 18-56
**MANUFACTURING** ............ 18-56
18.169 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS ............ 18-56
18.170 GENERAL-MECHANICAL FEATURES ............ 18-57
**SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—8-INCH** ............ 18-58
18.171 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ............ 18-58
**RATINGS** ............ 18-58
18.172 VOLTAGE RATINGS ............ 18-58
18.173 FREQUENCIES ............ 18-58
18.174 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ............ 18-58
18.174.1 Horsepower Ratings ............ 18-58
18.174.2 Speed Ratings ............ 18-58
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ............ 18-58
18.175 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT ............ 18-58
18.176 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ............ 18-58
18.177 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX ............ 18-59
18.178 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY ............ 18-59
18.179 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ............ 18-59
18.180 THRUST CAPACITY ............ 18-59
18.181 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ............ 18-60
**MEDIUM DC ELEVATOR MOTORS** ............ 18-61
18.182 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO TYPE ............ 18-61
18.182.1 Class DH ............ 18-61
18.182.2 Class DL ............ 18-61
**RATINGS** ............ 18-61
18.183 VOLTAGE RATINGS ............ 18-61
18.184 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ............ 18-61
18.184.1 Class DH ............ 18-61

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.184.2 Class DL ..... 18-61
18.185 BASIS OF RATING ..... 18-62
18.185.1 Class DH ..... 18-62
18.185.2 Class DL ..... 18-62
18.186 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS ..... 18-62
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-62
18.187 ACCELERATION AND DECELERATION CAPACITY ..... 18-62
18.188 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO LOAD ..... 18-62
18.188.1 Class DH ..... 18-62
18.188.2 Class DL ..... 18-62
18.189 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED ..... 18-62
18.190 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO HEATING ..... 18-62
18.190.1 Open-Loop Control System ..... 18-62
18.190.2 Closed-Loop Control System ..... 18-63
18.191 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-63
18.192 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-63
**MOTOR-GENERATOR SETS FOR DC ELEVATOR MOTORS** ..... 18-64
**RATINGS** ..... 18-64
18.193 BASIS OF RATING ..... 18-64
18.193.1 Time Rating ..... 18-64
18.193.2 Relation to Elevator Motor ..... 18-64
18.194 GENERATOR VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-64
18.194.1 Value ..... 18-64
18.194.2 Maximum Value ..... 18-64
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-64
18.195 VARIATION IN VOLTAGE DUE TO HEATING ..... 18-64
18.195.1 Open-Loop Control System ..... 18-64
18.195.2 Closed-Loop Control System ..... 18-64
18.196 OVERLOAD ..... 18-64
18.197 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-65
18.198 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE ..... 18-65
18.199 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-65
18.200 COMBINED VARIATION OF VOLTAGE AND FREQUENCY ..... 18-65
18.201 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-65
18.201.1 Induction Motors ..... 18-65
18.201.2 Direct-Current Adjustable-Voltage Generators ..... 18-65
**MEDIUM AC POLYPHASE ELEVATOR MOTORS** ..... 18-66
18.202 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-66
18.202.1 AH1 ..... 18-65
18.202.2 AH2 ..... 18-66
18.202.3 AH3 ..... 18-66
**RATINGS** ..... 18-66
18.203 BASIS OF RATING—ELEVATOR MOTORS ..... 18-66
18.204 VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-66
18.205 FREQUENCY ..... 18-66
18.206 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-67
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-67
18.207 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE FOR SINGLE-SPEED SQUIRREL-CAGE ELEVATOR MOTORS ..... 18-67
18.208 TIME-TEMPERATURE RATING ..... 18-67
18.209 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-67
18.210 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-67
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-68
18.211 NAMEPLATE MARKING ..... 18-68
**MEDIUM AC CRANE MOTORS** ..... 18-69
**RATINGS** ..... 18-69

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.212 VOLTAGE RATINGS ........ 18-69
18.213 FREQUENCIES ........ 18-69
18.214 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ........ 18-69
18.215 SECONDARY DATA FOR WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS ........ 18-70
18.216 NAMEPLATE MARKING ........ 18-70
18.217 FRAME SIZES FOR TWO- AND THREE-PHASE 60-HERTZ OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS HAVING CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEMS ........ 18-71
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ........ 18-71
18.218 TIME RATINGS ........ 18-71
18.219 TEMPERATURE RISE ........ 18-71
18.220 BREAKDOWN TORQUE ........ 18-71
18.220.1 Minimum Value ........ 18-71
18.221.2 Maximum Value ........ 18-71
18.222 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ........ 18-71
18.223 OVERSPEEDS ........ 18-72
18.224 PLUGGING ........ 18-72
18.225 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ........ 18-72
18.226 ROUTINE TESTS ........ 18-72
18.227 BALANCE OF MOTORS ........ 18-72
18.228 BEARINGS ........ 18-72
18.229 DIMENSIONS FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT WOUND-ROTOR OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED CRANE MOTORS ........ 18-73
18.230 DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS ........ 18-74
**MEDIUM SHELL-TYPE MOTORS FOR WOODWORKING AND MACHINE-TOOL APPLICATIONS** ........ 18-76
18.231 DEFINITION OF SHELL-TYPE MOTOR ........ 18-76
18.232 TEMPERATURE RISE—SHELL-TYPE MOTOR ........ 18-76
18.233 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR 60-HERTZ SHELL-TYPE MOTORS OPERATED ON 50-HERTZ ........ 18-76
18.234 OPERATION AT OTHER FREQUENCIES—SHELL-TYPE MOTORS ........ 18-76
18.235 RATINGS AND DIMENSIONS FOR SHELL-TYPE MOTORS ........ 18-76
18.235.1 Rotor Bore and Keyway Dimensions, Three-Phase 60-Hertz 40°C Open Motors, 208, 220, 440, and 550 Volts ........ 18-76
18.235.2 BH and BJ Dimensions in Inches, Open Type Three-Phase 60-Hertz 40°C Continuous, 208, 220, 440, and 550 Volts ........ 18-77
18.236 LETTERING FOR DIMENSION SHEETS FOR SHELL-TYPE MOTORS ........ 18-78
**MEDIUM AC SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS** ........ 18-78
18.237 DIMENSION FOR TYPE VP VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT, SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE, DIRECT CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS ........ 18-79
18.238 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE P AND PH ALTERNATING-CURRENT SQUIRREL-CAGE VERTICAL HOLLOW-SHAFT MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS ........ 18-81
18.238.1 Base Dimensions ........ 18-81
18.238.2 Coupling Dimensions ........ 18-82
**MEDIUM AC SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR CLOSE-COUPLED PUMPS** ........ 18-83
**RATINGS** ........ 18-83
18.239 VOLTAGE RATINGS ........ 18-83
18.240 FREQUENCIES ........ 18-83
18.241 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS ........ 18-83

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.242 NAMEPLATE RATINGS ..... 18-83
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-83
18.243 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-83
18.244 TORQUES ..... 18-83
18.245 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENTS ..... 18-83
18.246 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ..... 18-83
18.247 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ..... 18-83
18.248 BALANCE OF MOTORS ..... 18-83
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-83
18.249 FRAME ASSIGNMENTS ..... 18-83
18.250 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE JM AND JP ALTERNATING-CURRENT FACE-MOUNTING CLOSE-COUPLED PUMP MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS ..... 18-84
18.251 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE LP AND LPH VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE DIRECT-CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS (HAVING THE THRUST BEARING IN THE MOTOR) FOR CHEMICAL PROCESS IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS ..... 18-89
18.252 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE HP AND HPH VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE DIRECT-CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR PROCESS AND IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS ..... 18-91
**DC PERMANENT-MAGNET TACHOMETER GENERATORS FOR CONTROL SYSTEMS** ..... 18-93
18.253 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ..... 18-93
18.254 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO OUTPUT VOLTAGE RATING ..... 18-93
**RATINGS** ..... 18-93
18.255 OUTPUT VOLTAGE RATINGS ..... 18-93
18.256 CURRENT RATING ..... 18-93
18.257 SPEED RATINGS ..... 18-93
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ..... 18-93
18.258 TEST METHODS ..... 18-93
18.259 TEMPERATURE RISE ..... 18-93
18.260 VARIATION FROM RATED OUTPUT VOLTAGE ..... 18-94
18.260.1 High-Voltage Type ..... 18-94
18.260.2 Low-Voltage Type ..... 18-94
18.261 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ..... 18-94
18.261.1 Test ..... 18-94
18.261.2 Application ..... 18-94
18.262 OVERSPEED ..... 18-94
18.263 PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS ..... 18-94
18.263.1 High-Voltage Type ..... 18-94
18.263.2 Low-Voltage Type ..... 18-95
**MANUFACTURING** ..... 18-95
18.264 NAMEPLATE MARKING ..... 18-95
18.264.1 High-Voltage Type ..... 18-95
18.264.2 Low-Voltage Type ..... 18-95
18.265 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ..... 18-95
18.266 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES ..... 18-95
18.266.1 High-Voltage Type ..... 18-96
18.266.2 Low-Voltage Type ..... 18-96
18.267 TERMINAL MARKINGS ..... 18-96
**TORQUE MOTORS** ..... 18-97
18.268 DEFINITION ..... 18-97
18.269 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS ..... 18-97
18.269.1 AC Torque Motors ..... 18-97
18.269.2 DC Torque Motors ..... 18-97
**SMALL MOTORS FOR CARBONATOR PUMPS** ..... 18-98

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

18.270 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE ....18-98
**RATINGS** ....18-98
18.271 VOLTAGE RATINGS ....18-98
18.272 FREQUENCIES ....18-98
18.273 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATING ....18-98
18.273.1 Horsepower Ratings ....18-98
18.273.2 Speed Ratings ....18-98
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....18-98
18.274 TEMPERATURE RISE ....18-98
18.275 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING ....18-98
18.276 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ....18-98
18.277 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT—SINGLE PHASE ....18-98
18.278 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ....18-98
18.279 DIRECTION OF ROTATION ....18-98
**MANUFACTURING** ....18-99
18.280 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURE ....18-99
18.281 DIMENSIONS FOR CARBONATOR PUMP MOTORS ....18-99

**Section III LARGE MACHINES**
**Part 20—LARGE MACHINES—INDUCTION MACHINES**
20.1 SCOPE ....20-1
20.2 BASIS OF RATING ....20-1
20.3 MACHINE POWER AND SPEED RATINGS ....20-1
20.4 POWER RATINGS OF MULTISPEED MACHINES ....20-2
20.4.1 Constant Power ....20-2
20.4.2 Constant Torque ....20-2
20.4.3 Variable Torque ....20-2
20.5 VOLTAGE RATINGS ....20-3
20.6 FREQUENCIES ....20-3
20.7 SERVICE FACTOR ....20-3
20.7.1 Service Factor of 1.0 ....20-3
20.7.2 Service Factor of 1.15 ....20-3
20.7.3 Application of Motors with a Service Factor of 1.15 ....20-3
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....20-4
20.8 TEMPERATURE RISE ....20-4
20.8.1 Machines with a 1.0 Service Factor at Rated Load ....20-4
20.8.2 Machines with a 1.15 Service Factor at Service Factor Load ....20-5
20.8.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ....20-5
20.8.4 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters) ....20-5
20.8.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40°C, but Not Below 0°C ....20-5
20.9 CODE LETTERS (FOR LOCKED-ROTOR KVA) ....20-6
20.10 TORQUE ....20-7
20.10.1 Standard Torque ....20-7
20.10.2 High Torque ....20-8
20.10.3 Motor Torques When Customer Specifies A Custom Load Curve ....20-8
20.10.4 Motor With 4.5 pu and Lower Locked-Rotor Current ....20-8
20.11 LOAD $WK^2$ FOR POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CASE INDUCTION MOTORS ....20-8
20.12 NUMBER OF STARTS ....20-9
20.12.1 Starting Capability ....20-9
20.12.2 Additional Starts ....20-9
20.12.3 Information Plate ....20-9
20.13 OVERSPEEDS ....20-9
20.14 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY ....20-11

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

20.14.1 Running ... 20-11
20.14.2 Starting ... 20-11
20.15 OPERATION OF INDUCTION MACHINES FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY OR VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLIES, OR BOTH ... 20-11
20.16 TESTS ... 20-12
20.16.1 Test Methods ... 20-12
20.16.2 Routine Tests on Machines Completely Assembled in Factory ... 20-12
20.16.3 Routine Tests on Machines Not Completely Assembled in Factory ... 20-12
20.17 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ... 20-12
20.17.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure ... 20-12
20.17.2 Test Voltage—Primary Windings ... 20-12
20.17.3 Test Voltage—Secondary Windings of Wound Rotors ... 20-12
20.18 MACHINE WITH SEALED WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TESTS ... 20-13
20.18.1 Test for Stator Which Can be Submerged ... 20-13
20.18.2 Test for Stator Which Cannot be Submerged ... 20-13
20.19 MACHINE SOUND ... 20-13
20.20 REPORT OF TEST FORM FOR INDUCTION MACHINES ... 20-14
20.21 EFFICIENCY ... 20-14
20.22 MECHANICAL VIBRATION ... 20-14
20.23 REED FREQUENCY OF VERTICAL MACHINES ... 20-15
20.24 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS ... 20-15
20.24.1 Effect on Performance—General ... 20-16
20.24.2 Voltage Unbalance Defined ... 20-16
20.24.3 Torques ... 20-16
20.24.4 Full-Load Speed ... 20-16
20.24.5 Currents ... 20-16
**MANUFACTURING** ... 20-16
20.25 NAMEPLATE MARKING ... 20-16
20.25.1 Alternating-Current Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors ... 20-17
20.25.2 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors ... 20-17
20.25.3 Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Generators ... 20-17
20.25.4 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Generators ... 20-18
20.26 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS AND BOXES ... 20-18
20.26.1 Box Dimensions ... 20-18
20.26.2 Accessory Lead Terminations ... 20-18
20.26.3 Lead Terminations of Accessories Operating at 50 Volts or Less ... 20-18
20.27 EMBEDDED TEMPERATURE DETECTORS ... 20-19
**APPLICATION DATA** ... 20-21
20.28 SERVICE CONDITIONS ... 20-21
20.28.1 General ... 20-21
20.28.2 Usual Service Conditions ... 20-21
20.28.3 Unusual Service Conditions ... 20-21
20.29 END PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR COUPLED SLEEVE BEARING HORIZONTAL INDUCTION MACHINES ... 20-22
20.29.1 General ... 20-22
20.29.2 Limits ... 20-22
20.29.3 Marking Requirements ... 20-22
20.30 PULSATING STATOR CURRENT IN INDUCTION MOTORS ... 20-23
20.31 ASEISMATIC CAPABILITY ... 20-23
20.31.1 General ... 20-23
20.31.2 Frequency Response Spectrum ... 20-23
20.31.3 Units for Capability Requirements ... 20-23
20.31.4 Recommended Peak Acceleration Limits ... 20-23

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

20.32 BELT, CHAIN, AND GEAR DRIVE ........ 20-24
20.33 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING ........ 20-24
20.33.1 Slow Transfer or Reclosing ........ 20-24
20.33.2 Fast Transfer or Reclosing ........ 20-24
20.34 POWER FACTOR CORRECTION ........ 20-25
20.35 SURGE CAPABILITIES OF AC WINDINGS WITH FORM-WOUND COILS ........ 20-25
20.35.1 General ........ 20-25
20.35.2 Surge Sources ........ 20-25
20.35.3 Factors Influencing Magnitude and Rise Time ........ 20-25
20.35.4 Surge Protection ........ 20-26
20.35.5 Surge Withstand Capability for Standard Machines ........ 20-26
20.35.6 Special Surge Withstand Capability ........ 20-26
20.35.7 Testing ........ 20-26
20.35.8 Test Voltage Values ........ 20-26
20.36 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM ........ 20-26
20.37 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT ........ 20-27

**Section III LARGE MACHINES**
**Part 21—LARGE MACHINES—SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS**
**RATINGS** ........ 21-1
21.1 SCOPE ........ 21-1
21.2 BASIS OF RATING ........ 21-1
21.3 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS ........ 21-2
21.4 POWER FACTOR ........ 21-2
21.5 VOLTAGE RATINGS ........ 21-2
21.5.1 Voltage Ratings ........ 21-2
21.5.2 Preferred Motor Output/Voltage Rating ........ 21-3
21.6 FREQUENCIES ........ 21-3
21.7 EXCITATION VOLTAGE ........ 21-3
21.8 SERVICE FACTOR ........ 21-3
21.8.1 Service Factor of 1.0 ........ 21-3
21.8.2 Service Factor of 1.15 ........ 21-3
21.8.3 Application of Motor with 1.15 Service Factor ........ 21-3
21.9 TYPICAL KW RATINGS OF EXCITERS FOR 60-HERTZ SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS ........ 21-4
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ........ 21-9
21.10 TEMPERATURE RISE—SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS ........ 21-9
21.10.1 Machines with 1.0 Service Factor at Rated Load ........ 21-9
21.10.2 Machines with 1.15 Service Factor at Service Factor Load ........ 21-9
21.10.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ........ 21-10
21.10.4 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters) ........ 21-10
21.10.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Motors for Ambients Lower than 40°C, but Not Below 0°C ........ 21-10
21.11 TORQUES ........ 21-11
21.11.1 General ........ 21-11
21.11.2 Motor Torques When Customer Supplies Load Curve ........ 21-11
21.12 NORMAL $WK^2$ OF LOAD ........ 21-11
21.13 NUMBER OF STARTS ........ 21-12
21.13.1 Starting Capability ........ 21-12
21.13.2 Additional Starts ........ 21-12
21.13.3 Information Plate ........ 21-12
21.14 EFFICIENCY ........ 21-12
21.15 OVERSPEED ........ 21-13
21.16 OPERATION AT OTHER THAN RATED POWER FACTORS ........ 21-13
21.16.1 Operation of an 0.8 Power-factor Motor at 1.0 Power-factor ........ 21-13

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

21.16.2 Operation of a 1.0 Power-factor Motor at 0.8 Power-factor....21-14
21.17 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY....21-14
21.17.1 Running....21-14
21.17.2 Starting....21-14
21.18 OPERATION OF SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY POWER SUPPLIES....21-14
21.19 SPECIFICATION FORM FOR SLIP-RING SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS....21-18
21.20 SPECIFICATION FORM FOR BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS....21-19
21.21 ROUTINE TESTS....21-20
21.21.1 Motors Not Completely Assembled in the Factory....21-20
21.21.2 Motors Completely Assembled in the Factory....21-20
21.22 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS....21-20
21.22.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure....21-20
21.22.2 Test Voltage—Armature Windings....21-20
21.22.3 Test Voltage—Field Windings, Motors with Slip Rings....21-20
21.22.4 Test Voltage—Assembled Brushless Motor Field Windings and Exciter Armature Winding....21-20
21.22.5 Test Voltage—Brushless Exciter Field Winding....21-21
21.23 MACHINE SOUND....21-21
21.24 MECHANICAL VIBRATION....21-21
**MANUFACTURING**....21-21
21.25 NAMEPLATE MARKING....21-21
21.26 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS AND BOXES....21-22
21.26.1 Box Dimensions....21-22
21.26.2 Accessory Lead Terminations....21-22
21.26.3 Lead Terminations of Accessories Operating at 50 Volts or Less....21-22
21.27 EMBEDDED DETECTORS....21-24
**APPLICATION DATA**....21-25
21.28 SERVICE CONDITIONS....21-25
21.28.1 General....21-25
21.28.2 Usual Service Conditions....21-25
21.28.3 Unusual Service Conditions....21-25
21.29 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS....21-26
21.29.1 Effect on Performance....21-27
21.29.2 Voltage Unbalanced Defined....21-27
21.30 COUPLING END PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR HORIZONTAL MOTORS....21-27
21.31 BELT, CHAIN, AND GEAR DRIVE....21-27
21.32 PULSATING ARMATURE CURRENT....21-27
21.33 TORQUE PULSATIONS DURING STARTING OF SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS....21-28
21.34 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING....21-28
21.34.1 Slow Transfer of Reclosing....21-28
21.34.2 Fast Transfer of Reclosing....21-28
21.34.3 Bus Transfer Procedure....21-29
21.35 CALCULATION OF NATURAL FREQUENCY OF SYNCHRONOUS MACHINES DIRECT-CONNECTED TO RECIPROCATING MACHINERY....21-29
21.35.1 Undamped Natural Frequency....21-29
21.35.2 Synchronizing Torque Coefficient, $P_r$....21-29
21.35.3 Factors Influencing $P_r$....21-29
21.36 TYPICAL TORQUE REQUIREMENTS....21-29
21.37 COMPRESSOR FACTORS....21-34
21.38 SURGE CAPABILITIES OF AC WINDINGS WITH FORM-WOUND COILS....21-35
21.39 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM....21-35

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

21.40 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT ....... 21-35

**Section III LARGE MACHINES**
**Part 23—LARGE MACHINES—DC MOTORS LARGER THAN 1.25 HORSEPOWER PER RPM, OPEN TYPE**
**CLASSIFICATION** ....... 23-1
23.1 SCOPE ....... 23-1
23.2 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS ....... 23-1
23.3 METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS ....... 23-1
23.3.1 Class N Metal Rolling Mill Motors ....... 23-1
23.3.2 Class S Metal Rolling Mill Motors ....... 23-1
23.4 REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS ....... 23-1
**RATINGS** ....... 23-2
23.5 BASIS OF RATING ....... 23-2
23.6 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS ....... 23-3
23.6.1 General Industrial Motors and Metal Rolling Mill Motors, Classes N and S ....... 23-3
23.6.2 Reversing Hot Mill Motors ....... 23-4
23.7 SPEED RATINGS BY FIELD CONTROL FOR 250-VOLT DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ....... 23-5
23.8 SPEED RATINGS BY FIELD CONTROL FOR 500- OR 700-VOLT DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ....... 23-6
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE** ....... 23-8
23.9 TEMPERATURE RISE ....... 23-8
23.9.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C ....... 23-9
23.9.2 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters) ....... 23-9
23.9.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C ....... 23-9
23.10 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY ....... 23-10
23.10.1 General Industrial Motors ....... 23-10
23.10.2 Metal Rolling Mill Motors (Excluding Reversing Hot Mill Motors)—Open, Forced-Ventilated, and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled ....... 23-10
23.10.3 Reversing Hot Mill Motors—Forced-Ventilated and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled ....... 23-11
23.11 MOMENTARY LOAD CAPACITY ....... 23-11
23.12 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION ....... 23-11
23.13 EFFICIENCY ....... 23-11
23.14 TYPICAL REVERSAL TIME OF REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS ....... 23-12
23.15 IMPACT SPEED DROP OF A DIRECT-CURRENT MOTOR ....... 23-12
23.16 OVERSPEED ....... 23-12
23.17 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE ....... 23-13
23.17.1 Steady State ....... 23-13
23.17.2 Transient Voltages of Microsecond Duration ....... 23-13
23.18 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ....... 23-13
23.19 ROUTINE TESTS ....... 23-14
23.20 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST ....... 23-14
23.20.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure ....... 23-14
23.20.2 Test Voltage ....... 23-14
23.21 MECHANICAL VIBRATION ....... 23-14
23.22 METHOD OF MEASURING THE MOTOR VIBRATION ....... 23-14
23.23 CONDITIONS OF TEST FOR SPEED REGULATION ....... 23-14
**MANUFACTURING** ....... 23-14
23.24 NAMEPLATE MARKING ....... 23-14
**APPLICATION DATA** ....... 23-15

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

23.25 SERVICE CONDITIONS....23-15
23.25.1 General....23-15
23.25.2 Usual Service Conditions....23-15
23.25.3 Unusual Service Conditions....23-15
23.26 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT....23-16
23.26.1 General....23-16
23.26.2 Operation on Parallel with Power Supply with High Ripple....23-16
23.26.3 Bearing Currents....23-17
23.27 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS BELOW BASE SPEED BY REDUCED ARMATURE VOLTAGE....23-17
23.28 RATE OF CHANGE OF LOAD CURRENT....23-17

**Section III LARGE MACHINES**
**Part 24—LARGE MACHINES—DC GENERATORS LARGER THAN 1.0 KILOWATT PER RPM, OPEN TYPE CLASSIFICATION**
24.0 SCOPE....24-1
24.1 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL GENERATORS....24-1
24.2 METAL ROLLING MILL GENERATORS....24-1
24.3 REVERSING HOT MILL GENERATORS....24-1
**RATINGS**....24-1
24.9 BASIS OF RATING....24-1
24.10 KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS....24-2
**TESTS AND PERFORMANCE**....24-3
24.40 TEMPERATURE RISE....24-3
24.40.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C....24-4
24.40.2 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)....24-4
24.40.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*....24-4
24.41 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY....24-5
24.41.1 General Industrial Generators....24-5
24.41.2 Metal Rolling Mill Generators (Excluding Reversing Hot Mill Generators)—Open, Forced-Ventilated, and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled....24-5
24.41.3 Reversing Hot Mill Generators—Forced-Ventilated and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled....24-5
24.42 MOMENTARY LOAD CAPACITY....24-5
24.43 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION....24-6
24.44 OUTPUT AT REDUCED VOLTAGE....24-6
24.45 EFFICIENCY....24-6
24.46 OVERSPEED....24-7
24.47 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS....24-7
24.48 ROUTINE TESTS....24-7
24.49 HIGH POTENTIAL TESTS....24-7
24.49.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure....24-7
24.49.2 Test Voltage....24-8
24.50 CONDITIONS OF TESTS FOR VOLTAGE REGULATION....24-8
24.51 MECHANICAL VIBRATION....24-8
**MANUFACTURING**....24-8
24.61 NAMEPLATE MARKING....24-8
**APPLICATION DATA**....24-8
24.80 SERVICE CONDITIONS....24-8
24.80.1 General....24-8
24.80.2 Usual Service Conditions....24-9
24.80.3 Unusual Service Conditions....24-9

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

24.81 RATE OF CHANGE OF LOAD CURRENT ........ 24-9
24.82 SUCCESSFUL PARALLEL OPERATION OF GENERATORS ........ 24-10
24.83 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS IN PARALLEL WITH RECTIFIED ALTERNATING-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY ........ 24-10
24.83.1 General ........ 24-10
24.83.2 Operation in Parallel with Power Supply with Ripple ........ 24-10
24.83.3 Bearing Currents ........ 24-10
24.84 COMPOUNDING ........ 24-11
24.84.1 Flat Compounding ........ 24-11
24.84.2 Other ........ 24-11

**Section IV PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 30—APPLICATION CONSIDERATIONS FOR CONSTANT SPEED MOTORS USED ON A SINUSOIDAL BUS WITH HARMONIC CONTENT AND GENERAL PURPOSE MOTORS USED WITH ADJUSTABLE-VOLTAGE OR ADJUSTABLE-FREQUENCY CONTROLS OR BOTH**
30.0 SCOPE ........ 30-1
30.1 APPLICATION CONSIDERATIONS FOR CONSTANT SPEED MOTORS USED ON A SINUSOIDAL BUS WITH HARMONIC CONTENT ........ 30-1
30.1.1 Efficiency ........ 30-1
30.1.2 Derating for Harmonic Content ........ 30-1
30.1.3 Power Factor Correction ........ 30-2
30.2 GENERAL PURPOSE MOTORS USED WITH ADJUSTABLE-VOLTAGE OR ADJUSTABLE-FREQUENCY CONTROLS OR BOTH ........ 30-2
30.2.1 Definitions ........ 30-2
30.2.2 Application Considerations ........ 30-5

**Section IV PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 31—DEFINITE-PURPOSE INVERTER-FED POLYPHASE MOTORS**
31.0 SCOPE ........ 31-1
31.1 SERVICE CONDITIONS ........ 31-1
31.1.1 General ........ 31-1
31.1.2 Usual Service Conditions ........ 31-1
31.1.3 Unusual Service Conditions ........ 31-1
31.1.4 Operation in Hazardous (Classified) Locations ........ 31-2
31.2 DIMENSIONS, TOLERANCES, AND MOUNTING FOR FRAME DESIGNATIONS ........ 31-2
31.3 RATING ........ 31-3
31.3.1 Basis of Rating ........ 31-3
31.3.2 Base Horsepower and Speed Ratings ........ 31-3
31.3.3 Speed Range ........ 31-4
31.3.4 Voltage ........ 31-4
31.3.5 Number of Phases ........ 31-4
31.3.6 Direction of Rotation ........ 31-5
31.3.7 Service Factor ........ 31-5
31.3.8 Duty ........ 31-5
31.4 PERFORMANCE ........ 31-5
31.4.1 Temperature Rise ........ 31-5
31.4.2 Torque ........ 31-9
31.4.3 Operating Limitations ........ 31-9
31.4.4 Insulation Considerations ........ 31-10
31.4.5 Resonances, Sound, Vibration ........ 31-12
31.4.6 Bearing Lubrication at Low and High Speeds ........ 31-12
31.5 NAMEPLATE MARKING ........ 31-13
31.5.1 Variable Torque Applications ........ 31-13
31.5.2 Other Applications ........ 31-13

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

31.6 TESTS ....31-13
31.6.1 Test Method ....31-13
31.6.2 Routine Tests ....31-14
31.6.3 Performance Tests ....31-14
31.7 ACCESSORY MOUNTING ....31-14

**Section IV PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 32—SYNCHRONOUS GENERATORS (EXCLUSIVE OF GENERATORS COVERED BY ANSI STANDARDS C50.12, C50.13, C50.14, AND C50.15 ABOVE 5000 kVA) RATINGS**

32.0 SCOPE ....32-1
32.1 BASIS OF RATING ....32-1
32.2 KILOVOLT-AMPERE (KVA) AND (KW) RATINGS ....32-1
32.3 SPEED RATINGS ....32-1
32.4 VOLTAGE RATINGS ....32-3
32.4.1 Voltage Ratings for 60 Hz Circuits, Volts ....32-3
32.4.2 Voltage Ratings for 50 Hz Circuits, Volts ....32-3
32.5 FREQUENCIES ....32-3
32.6 TEMPERATURE RISE ....32-3
32.6.2 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C ....32-5
32.7 MAXIMUM MOMENTARY OVERLOADS ....32-5
32.8 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY ....32-6
32.9 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT ....32-6
32.10 MAXIMUM DEVIATION FACTOR ....32-6
32.11 TELEPHONE INFLUENCE FACTOR (TIF) ....32-6
32.12 EFFICIENCY ....32-7
32.13 SHORT-CIRCUIT REQUIREMENTS ....32-8
32.14 CONTINUOUS CURRENT UNBALANCE ....32-8
32.15 OPERATION WITH NON-LINEAR OR ASYMMETRIC LOADS ....32-9
32.16 OVERSPEEDS ....32-9
32.17 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE ....32-10
32.17.1 Broad Voltage Range ....32-10
32.17.2 Discrete Voltage ....32-10
32.18 SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR VOLTAGE REGULATION (VOLTAGE DIP) ....32-10
32.18.1 General ....32-10
32.18.2 Definitions ....32-10
32.18.3 Voltage Recorder Performance ....32-12
32.18.4 Examples ....32-12
32.18.5 Motor Starting Loads ....32-12
32.19 PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION FORMS ....32-15
32.19.1 Slip-ring Synchronous Generators ....32-15
32.19.2 Brushless Synchronous Generators ....32-16
32.20 ROUTINE FACTORY TESTS ....32-17
32.20.1 Generators Not Completely Assembled in the Factory ....32-17
32.20.2 Generators Completely Assembled in the Factory ....32-17
32.21 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS ....32-17
32.21.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedures ....32-17
32.21.2 Test Voltage—Armature Windings ....32-17
32.21.3 Test Voltage—Field Windings, Generators with Slip Rings ....32-17
32.21.4 Test Voltage—Assembled Brushless Generator Field Winding and Exciter Armature Winding ....32-17
32.21.5 Test Voltage—Brushless Exciter Field Winding ....32-18
32.22 MACHINE SOUND SYNCHRONOUS (GENERATORS) ....32-18
32.22.1 Sound Quality ....32-18

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

32.22.2 Sound Measurement ....... 32-18
32.23 VIBRATION ....... 32-18
**MANUFACTURING DATA** ....... 32-19
32.24 NAMEPLATE MARKING ....... 32-19
32.25 SHAFT EXTENSION KEY ....... 32-19
32.26 GENERATOR TERMINAL HOUSING ....... 32-19
32.27 EMBEDDED TEMPERATURE DETECTORS ....... 32-20
**APPLICATION DATA** ....... 32-21
32.29 PARALLEL OPERATION ....... 32-21
32.30 CALCULATION OF NATURAL FREQUENCY ....... 32-21
32.31 TORSIONAL VIBRATION ....... 32-21
32.32 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM ....... 32-21
32.33 SERVICE CONDITIONS ....... 32-21
32.33.1 General ....... 32-21
32.33.2 Usual Service Conditions ....... 32-22
32.33.3 Unusual Service Conditions ....... 32-22
32.34 NEUTRAL GROUNDING ....... 32-23
32.35 STAND-BY GENERATOR ....... 32-23
32.36 GROUNDING MEANS FOR FIELD WIRING ....... 32-23

**Section IV PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES**
**Part 33—DEFINITE PURPOSE SYNCHRONOUS GENERATORS FOR GENERATING SET APPLICATIONS**
33.0 SCOPE ....... 33-1
33.1 DEFINITIONS ....... 33-1
33.1.1 Rated Output Power ....... 33-1
33.1.2 Rated Speed of Rotation n ....... 33-2
33.1.3 Voltage Terms ....... 33-2
33.1.4 Performance Classes ....... 33-4
33.2 RATINGS ....... 33-5
33.2.1 Power Factor ....... 33-5
33.2.2 Kilovolt – Ampere (kVA) and Kilowatt (kW) Ratings ....... 33-5
33.2.3 Speed ....... 33-6
33.2.4 Voltage ....... 33-6
33.2.5 Frequencies ....... 33-7
33.3 PERFORMANCE ....... 33-7
33.3.1 Voltage and Frequency Variation ....... 33-7
33.3.2 Limits of Temperature and Temperature Rise ....... 33-8
33.3.3 Special Load Conditions ....... 33-11
33.3.4 Power Quality ....... 33-12
33.3.5 Overspeed ....... 33-18
33.3.6 Machine Sound ....... 33-18
33.3.7 Linear Vibration ....... 33-19
33.3.8 Testing ....... 33-19
33.3.9 Performance Specification Forms ....... 33-22
33.4 APPLICATIONS ....... 33-24
33.4.1 Service Conditions ....... 33-24
33.4.2 Transient Voltage Performance ....... 33-25
33.4.3 Torsional Vibration ....... 33-29
33.4.4 Generator Grounding ....... 33-29
33.4.5 Cyclic Irregularity ....... 33-30
33.4.6 Application Criteria ....... 33-30
33.5 MANUFACTURING ....... 33-32
33.5.1 Nameplate Marking ....... 33-32
33.5.2 Terminal Housings ....... 33-33

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Foreword

The standards appearing in this publication have been developed by the Motor and Generator Section and approved for publication as Standards of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association. They are intended to assist users in the proper selection and application of motors and generators. These standards are revised periodically to provide for changes in user needs, advances in technology, and changing economic trends. All persons having experience in the selection, use, or manufacture of electric motors and generators are encouraged to submit recommendations that will improve the usefulness of these standards. Inquiries, comments, and proposed or recommended revisions should be submitted to the Motor and Generator Section by contacting:

Vice President, Technical Services
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209

The best judgment of the Motor and Generator Section on the performance and construction of motors and generators is represented in these standards. They are based upon sound engineering principles, research, and records of test and field experience. Also involved is an appreciation of the problems of manufacture, installation, and use derived from consultation with and information obtained from manufacturers, users, inspection authorities, and others having specialized experience. For machines intended for general applications, information as to user needs was determined by the individual companies through normal commercial contact with users. For some motors intended for definite applications, the organizations that participated in the development of the standards are listed at the beginning of those definite-purpose motor standards.

Practical information concerning performance, safety, test, construction, and manufacture of alternating-current and direct-current motors and generators within the product scopes defined in the applicable section or sections of this publication is provided in these standards. Although some definite-purpose motors and generators are included, the standards do not apply to machines such as generators and traction motors for railroads, motors for mining locomotives, arc-welding generators, automotive accessory and toy motors and generators, machines mounted on airborne craft, etc.

In the preparation and revision of these standards, consideration has been given to the work of other organizations whose standards are in any way related to motors and generators. Credit is hereby given to all those whose standards may have been helpful in the preparation of this volume.

NEMA Standards Publication No. MG 1-2009 revises and supersedes the NEMA Standards Publication No. MG 1-2006, Revision 1-2007. Prior to publication, the NEMA Standards and Authorized Engineering Information that appear in this publication unchanged since the preceding edition were reaffirmed by the Motor and Generator Section.

The standards or guidelines presented in a NEMA Standards Publication are considered technically sound at the time they are approved for publication. They are not a substitute for a product seller's or user's own judgment with respect to the particular product referenced in the standard or guideline, and NEMA does not undertake to guaranty the performance of any individual manufacturer's products by virtue of this standard or guide. Thus, NEMA expressly disclaims any responsibility for damages arising from the use, application, or reliance by others on the information contained in these standards or guidelines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

This Standards Publication was developed by the Motors and Generator Section. Section approval of the standard does not necessarily imply that all section members voted for its approval or participated in its development. At the time it was approved, the Motors and Generator Section was composed of the following members:

A.O. Smith Electric Products Co.—Tipp City, OH
Baldor Electric Company— Fort Smith, AR
Cummins, Inc.—Minneapolis, MN
Emerson Motor Technologies—St. Louis, MO
GE Consumer and Industrial—Ft. Wayne, IN
Ram Industries—Leesport, PA
Regal-Beloit Corporation—Beloit, WI, composed of:
  Leeson Electric—Grafton, WI
  Lincoln Motors—Cleveland, OH
  Marathon Electric Manufacturing Corporation—Wausau, WI
  Electra-Gear—Union Grove, WI
SEW-Eurodrive, Inc.—Lyman, SC
Siemens Industry, Inc.—Norcross, GA
Sterling Electric, Inc.—Indianapolis, IN
TECO-Westinghouse Motor Co.—Round Rock, TX
Toshiba International Corporation—Houston, TX
WEG Electric Motor Corp.—Duluth, GA

© 2009 Copyright by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 1

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 1
# REFERENCED STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS

## 1.1 REFERENCED STANDARDS

The following publications are adopted, in whole or in part as indicated, by reference in this standards publication. Mailing address of each reference organization is also provided.

**American National Standards Institute (ANSI)**
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036

| | |
|---|---|
| ANSI B92.1-1970 (R1982) | *Involute Splines and Inspection* |
| ANSI C84.1-1995 | *Electric Power Systems and Equipment-Voltage Ratings (60 Hz)* |
| ANSI S12.12-1992 (R1997, R2002) | *Engineering Method for the Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Intensity* |
| ANSI S12.51-2002 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Precision Methods for Reverberation Rooms* |
| ANSI S12.53-1-1999 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources – Engineering Methods for Small, Movable Sources in Reverberant Fields – Part 1: Comparison Method for Hard-Walled Test Rooms* |
| ANSI S12.53-2-1999 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources – Engineering Methods for Small, Movable Sources in Reverberant Fields – Part 2: Methods for Special Reverberation Test Rooms* |
| ANSI S12.54-1999 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Engineering Method in an Essentially Free Field Over a Reflecting Plane* |
| ANSI S12.55-2006 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Precision Methods for Anechoic and Hemi-Anechoic Rooms* |
| ANSI S12.56-1999 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Survey Method Using an Enveloping Measurement Surface Over a Reflecting Plane* |
| ANSI S12.57-2002 | *Standard Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Comparison Method in Situ* |

**American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)**
1916 Race Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103

| | |
|---|---|
| ASTM D149-97a(2004) | *Standard Test Method for Dielectric Breakdown Voltage and Dielectric Strength of Solid Electrical Insulating Materials at Commercial Power Frequencies* |
| ASTM D635-06 | *Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position* |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Canadian Standards Association**
178 Rexdale Boulevard
Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 1R3

| | |
|---|---|
| CSA 390-98 | *Energy Efficiency Test Methods for Three-Phase Induction Motors* |

**Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)**[1]
445 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331

| | |
|---|---|
| ANSI/IEEE Std 1-2000 | *General Principles for Temperature Limits in the Rating of Electric Equipment and for the Evaluation of Electrical Insulation* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 43-2000 | *Recommended Practice for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 100-2000 | *Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronic Terms* |
| IEEE Std 112-2004 | *Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 115-1995 | *Test Procedures for Synchronous Machines* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 117-1974 (R1991, R2000) | *Standard Test Procedure for Evaluation of Systems of Insulating Materials for Random-Wound AC Electric Machinery* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 275-1992 (R1998) | *Recommended Practice for Thermal Evaluation of Insulation Systems for AC Electric Machinery Employing Form-Wound Pre-insulated Stator Coils, Machines Rated 6900V and Below* |
| ANSI/IEEE Std 304-1977 (R1991) | *Test Procedure for Evaluation and Classification of Insulation System for DC* |
| IEEE Std 522-2004 | *IEEE Guide for Testing Turn to Turn Insulation of Form-Wound Stator Coils for Alternating-Current Rotating Electric Machine* |

**Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE)**
3001 West Big Beaver
Troy, MI 48084

| | |
|---|---|
| ANSI/SAE J429-1999 | *Mechanical and Material Requirements for Externally Threaded Fasteners* |

**International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)**[1]
3 Rue de Varembé, CP 131, CH-1211
Geneva 20, Switzerland

| | |
|---|---|
| IEC 60034-1-2004 | *Rotating Electrical Machines – Part One: Rating and Performance* |
| IEC 60034-8-2007 | *Rotating Electrical Machines – Part Eight: Terminal Markings and Direction of Rotation* |
| IEC 60034-14-2003 | *Rotating Electrical Machines – Part 14: Mechanical Vibration of Certain Machines with Shaft Heights 56 mm and Higher—Measurement, Evaluation and Limits of Vibration Severity* |
| IEC 60034-30-2008 | *Efficiency classes of single-speed, three-phase, cage-induction motors (IE-code)* |

[1] Also available from ANSI.
[1] Also available from ANSI.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**International Organization for Standardization (ISO)[1]**
1, rue de Varembe
1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

| | |
|---|---|
| ISO R-1000-1992 | *SI Units and Recommendations for the Use of their Multiples and of Certain Other Units* |
| ISO 3741: 1999 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Precision Methods for Reverberation Rooms* |
| ISO 3743-1: 1994 (R2004) | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources – Engineering Methods for Small, Movable Sources in Reverberant Fields – Part 1: Comparison Method in Hard-Walled Test Rooms* |
| ISO 3743-2: 1994 (R2004) | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources - Engineering Methods for Small, Movable Sources in Reverberant Fields – Part 2: Method for Special Reverberation Test Rooms* |
| ISO 3744: 1994 (R2004) | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Engineering Method Employing an Enveloping Measurement Surface in an Essentially Free Field Over a Reflecting Plane* |
| ISO 3745: 2003 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Precision Methods for Anechoic and Hemi-Anechoic Rooms* |
| ISO 3746: 1995 (R2004) | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Survey Method Using an Enveloping Measurement Surface Over a Reflecting Plane* |
| ISO 3747: 2000 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Pressure – Comparison Method in Situ* |
| ISO 7919-1: 1996 | *Mechanical Vibration of Non-Reciprocating Machines – Measurements on Rotating Shafts and Evaluation Criteria – Part 1: General Guidelines* |
| ISO 8528-3: 2005 | *Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engine-Driven Alternating Current Generating Sets – Part 3: Alternating Current Generators for Generating Sets* |
| ISO 8528-4:2005 | *Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engine-Driven Alternating Current Generating Sets – Part 4: Controlgear and Switchgear* |
| ISO 8821: 2002 | *Mechanical Vibration – Shaft and Fitment Key Convention* |
| ISO 9614-1: 1993 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Intensity – Part 1: Measurement at Discrete Points* |
| ISO 9614-2: 1996 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Intensity – Part 2: Measurement by Scanning* |
| ISO 9614-3: 2002 | *Acoustics – Determination of Sound Power Levels of Noise Sources Using Sound Intensity – Part 3: Precision Method for Measurement by Scanning* |
| ISO 10816-3: 1998 | *Mechanical Vibration – Evaluation of Machine Vibration by Measurements on Non-Rotating Parts – Part 3: Industrial Machines with Nominal Power Above 15 kW and Nominal Speeds Between 120 r/min and 15 000 r/min when measured in situ.* |

**National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)**
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209

| | |
|---|---|
| NEMA MG 2-1994 (R1999, R2007) | *Safety Standard for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Use of Electric Motors and Generators* |
| NEMA MG 3-1974 (R1979, R1984, R2000, R2006) | *Sound Level Prediction for Installed Rotating Electrical Machines* |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)**
Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02269

ANSI/NFPA 70-2005 *National Electrical Code*

**Rubber Manufacturers Association**
1400 K Street NW
Suite 300
Washington, DC 20005

*Engineering Standards–Specifications for Drives Using Classical V-Belts and Sheaves (A, B, C, and D Cross-sections), 1988, 3rd Edition, Pub #IP-20*

*Engineering Standards–Specifications for Drives Using Narrow V-Belts and Sheaves 9N/9NX, 15N/15NX, 25N (metric) and 3V/3VX, 5V/5VX, and 8V (inch-pound) Cross-sections; 1991, 3rd Edition, Pub #IP-22*

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# DEFINITIONS

(For definitions not found in Part 1, refer to IEEE Std 100, Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronic Terms.)

## CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO SIZE

### 1.2 MACHINE

As used in this standard a machine is an electrical apparatus which depends on electromagnetic induction for its operation and which has one or more component members capable of rotary movement. In particular, the types of machines covered are those generally referred to as motors and generators as defined in Part 1.

### 1.3 SMALL (FRACTIONAL) MACHINE

A small machine is either: (1) a machine built in a two digit frame number series in accordance with 4.2.1 (or equivalent for machines without feet); or (2) a machine built in a frame smaller than that frame of a medium machine (see 1.4) which has a continuous rating at 1700-1800 rpm of 1 horsepower for motors or 0.75 kilowatt for generators; or (3) a motor rated less than 1/3 horsepower and less than 800 rpm.

### 1.4 MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINE

#### 1.4.1 Alternating-Current Medium Machine

An alternating-current medium machine is a machine: (1) built in a three- or four-digit frame number series in accordance with 4.2.1 (or equivalent for machines without feet); and (2) having a continuous rating up to and including the information in Table 1-1.

#### 1.4.2 Direct-Current Medium Machine

A direct-current medium machine is a machine: (1) built in a three- or four-digit frame number series in accordance with 4.2.1 (or equivalent for machines without feet); and (2) having a continuous rating up to and including 1.25 horsepower per rpm for motors or 1.0 kilowatt per rpm for generators.

**Table 1-1**
**ALTERNATING CURRENT MEDIUM MACHINE**

| Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Motors Hp | Generators, Kilowatt at 0.8 Power Factor |
|---|---|---|
| 1201-3600 | 500 | 400 |
| 901-1200 | 350 | 300 |
| 721-900 | 250 | 200 |
| 601-720 | 200 | 150 |
| 515-600 | 150 | 125 |
| 451-514 | 125 | 100 |

### 1.5 LARGE MACHINE

#### 1.5.1 Alternating-Current Large Machine

An alternating-current large machine is: (1) a machine having a continuous power rating greater than that given in 1.4.1 for synchronous speed ratings above 450 rpm; or (2) a machine having a continuous power rating greater than that given in 1.3 for synchronous speed ratings equal to or below 450 rpm.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.5.2 Direct-Current Large Machine

A direct-current large machine is a machine having a continuous rating greater than 1.25 horsepower per rpm for motors or 1.0 kilowatt per rpm for generators.

**CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO APPLICATION**
(Some of the definitions in this section apply only to specific types or sizes of machines.)

## 1.6 GENERAL PURPOSE MOTOR

### 1.6.1 General-Purpose Alternating-Current Motor

A general-purpose alternating-current motor is an induction motor, rated 500 horsepower and less, which incorporates all of the following:

a. Open or enclosed construction
b. Rated continuous duty
c. Service factor in accordance with 12.51
d. Class A or higher rated insulation system with a temperature rise not exceeding that specified in 12.42 for Class A insulation for small motors or Class B or higher rated insulation system with a temperature rise not exceeding that specified in 12.43 for Class B insulation for medium motors.

It is designed in standard ratings with standard operating characteristics and mechanical construction for use under usual service conditions without restriction to a particular application or type of application.

### 1.6.2 General-Purpose Direct-Current Small Motor

A general-purpose direct-current small motor is a small motor of mechanical construction suitable for general use under usual service conditions and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to direct-current small motors as given in Parts 4, 10, 12, and 14.

## 1.7 GENERAL-PURPOSE GENERATOR

A general-purpose generator is a synchronous generator of mechanical construction suitable for general use under usual service conditions and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics as given in Part 32.

## 1.8 INDUSTRIAL SMALL MOTOR

An industrial small motor is an alternating-current or direct-current motor built in either NEMA frame 42, 48, or 56 suitable for industrial use.

It is designed in standard ratings with standard operating characteristics for use under usual service conditions without restriction to a particular application or type of application.

## 1.9 INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTOR

An industrial direct-current motor is a medium motor of mechanical construction suitable for industrial use under usual service conditions and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to direct current medium motors as given in Parts 4, 10, 12, and 14.

## 1.10 INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATOR

An industrial direct-current generator is a generator of mechanical construction suitable for industrial use under usual service conditions and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to direct current generators as given in Part 4 and 15.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.11 DEFINITE-PURPOSE MOTOR

A definite-purpose motor is any motor designed in standard ratings with standard operating characteristics or mechanical construction for use under service conditions other than usual or for use on a particular type of application.

## 1.12 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS

A general industrial motor is a large dc motor of mechanical construction suitable for general industrial use (excluding metal rolling mill service), which may include operation at speeds above base speed by field weakening, and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to general industrial motors as given in Part 23.

## 1.13 METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS

A metal rolling mill motor is a large dc motor of mechanical construction suitable for metal rolling mill service (except for reversing hot-mill service) and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to metal rolling mill motors as given in Part 23.

## 1.14 REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS

A reversing hot mill motor is a large dc motor of mechanical construction suitable for reversing hot mill service, such as blooming and slabbing mills, and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to reversing hot mill motors as given in Part 23.

## 1.15 SPECIAL-PURPOSE MOTOR

A special-purpose motor is a motor with special operating characteristics or special mechanical construction, or both, designed for a particular application and not falling within the definition of a general-purpose or definite-purpose motor.

## 1.16

[Section deleted]

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

### 1.17 GENERAL

#### 1.17.1 Electric Motor

An electric motor is a machine that transforms electric power into mechanical power.

#### 1.17.2 Electric Generator

An electric generator is a machine that transforms mechanical power into electric power.

#### 1.17.3 Electric Machines

##### 1.17.3.1 Asynchronous Machine

An asynchronous machine is an alternating-current machine in which the rotor does not turn at a synchronous speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 1.17.3.2 Direct-Current (Commutator) Machine

A direct-current (commutator) machine is a machine incorporating an armature winding connected to a commutator and magnetic poles which are excited from a direct-current source or permanent magnets.

#### 1.17.3.3 Induction Machine

An induction machine is an asynchronous machine that comprises a magnetic circuit interlinked with two electric circuits, or sets of circuits, rotating with respect to each other and in which power is transferred from one circuit to another by electromagnetic induction.

#### 1.17.3.4 Synchronous Machine

A synchronous machine is an alternating-current machine in which the average speed of normal operation is exactly proportional to the frequency of the system to which it is connected.

## 1.18 ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS

Alternating-current motors are of three general types: induction, synchronous, and series-wound and are defined as follows.

### 1.18.1 Induction Motor

An induction motor is an induction machine in which a primary winding on one member (usually the stator) is connected to the power source, and a polyphase secondary winding or a squirrel-cage secondary winding on the other member (usually the rotor) carries induced current.

#### 1.18.1.1 Squirrel-Cage Induction Motor

A squirrel-cage induction motor is an induction motor in which the secondary circuit (squirrel-cage winding) consists of a number of conducting bars having their extremities connected by metal rings or plates at each end.

#### 1.18.1.2 Wound-Rotor Induction Motor

A wound-rotor induction motor is an induction motor in which the secondary circuit consists of a polyphase winding or coils whose terminals are either short-circuited or closed through suitable circuits.

### 1.18.2 Synchronous Motor

A synchronous motor is a synchronous machine for use as a motor.

#### 1.18.2.1 Direct-Current-Excited Synchronous Motor

Unless otherwise stated, it is generally understood that a synchronous motor has field poles excited by direct current.

#### 1.18.2.2 Permanent-Magnet Synchronous Motor

A permanent-magnet synchronous motor is a synchronous motor in which the field excitation is provided by permanent magnets.

#### 1.18.2.3 Reluctance Synchronous Motor

A reluctance synchronous motor is a synchronous motor similar in construction to an induction motor, in which the member carrying the secondary circuit has a cyclic variation of reluctance providing the effect of salient poles, without permanent magnets or direct-current excitation. It starts as an induction motor, is normally provided with a squirrel-cage winding, but operates normally at synchronous speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.18.3 Series-Wound Motor

A series-wound motor is a commutator motor in which the field circuit and armature are connected in series.

## 1.19 POLYPHASE MOTORS

Alternating-current polyphase motors are of the squirrel-cage induction, wound-rotor induction, or synchronous types.

### 1.19.1 Design Letters of Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Medium Motors

Polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors may be one of the following:

#### 1.19.1.1 Design A

A Design A motor is a squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and developing locked-rotor torque as shown in 12.38, pull-up torque as shown in 12.40, breakdown torque as shown in 12.39, with locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and 12.35.2 for 50 hertz and having a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.[1]

#### 1.19.1.2 Design B

A Design B motor is a squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting, developing locked-rotor, breakdown, and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in 12.38, 12.39, and 12.40, drawing locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.35.3 for 60 hertz and 12.35.3 for 50 hertz, and having a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.[1]

#### 1.19.1.3 Design C

A Design C motor is a squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting, developing locked-rotor torque for special high-torque application up to the values shown in 12.38, pull-up torque as shown in 12.40, breakdown torque up to the values shown in 12.39, with locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.34.1 for 60 hertz and 12.35.2 for 50 hertz, and having a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

#### 1.19.1.4 Design D

A Design D motor is a squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting, developing high locked rotor torque as shown in 12.38, with locked rotor current not greater than shown in 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and 12.35.2 for 50 hertz, and having a slip at rated load of 5 percent or more.

## 1.20 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

Alternating-Current single-phase motors are usually induction or series-wound although single-phase synchronous motors are available in the smaller ratings.

### 1.20.1 Design Letters of Single-Phase Small Motors

#### 1.20.1.1 Design N

A Design N motor is a single-phase small motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and with a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.33.

#### 1.20.1.2 Design O

A Design O motor is a single-phase small motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and with a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.33.

---

1 Motors with 10 or more poles shall be permitted to have slip slightly greater than 5 percent.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.20.2 Design Letters of Single-Phase Medium Motors

Single-phase medium motors include the following:

#### 1.20.2.1 Design L

A Design L motor is a single-phase medium motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and to develop a breakdown torque as shown in 10.34 with a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.34.

#### 1.20.2.2 Design M

A Design M motor is a single-phase medium motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and to develop a breakdown torque as shown in 10.34 with a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in 12.33.

### 1.20.3 Single-Phase Squirrel-Cage Motors

Single-phase squirrel-cage induction motors are classified and defined as follows:

#### 1.20.3.1 Split-Phase Motor

A split-phase motor is a single-phase induction motor equipped with an auxiliary winding, displaced in magnetic position from, and connected in parallel with, the main winding.

Unless otherwise specified, the auxiliary circuit is assumed to be opened when the motor has attained a predetermined speed. The term "split-phase motor," used without qualification, describes a motor to be used without impedance other than that offered by the motor windings themselves, other types being separately defined.

#### 1.20.3.2 Resistance-Start Motor

A resistance-start motor is a form of split-phase motor having a resistance connected in series with the auxiliary winding. The auxiliary circuit is opened when the motor has attained a predetermined speed.

#### 1.20.3.3 Capacitor Motor

A capacitor motor is a single-phase induction motor with a main winding arranged for direct connection to a source of power and an auxiliary winding connected in series with a capacitor. There are three types of capacitor motors, as follows.

##### 1.20.3.3.1 Capacitor-Start Motor

A capacitor-start motor is a capacitor motor in which the capacitor phase is in the circuit only during the starting period.

##### 1.20.3.3.2 Permanent-Split Capacitor Motor

A permanent-split capacitor motor is a capacitor motor having the same value of capacitance for both starting and running conditions.

##### 1.20.3.3.3 Two-Value Capacitor Motor

A two-value capacitor motor is a capacitor motor using different values of effective capacitance for the starting and running conditions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 1.20.3.4 Shaded-Pole Motor

A shaded-pole motor is a single-phase induction motor provided with an auxiliary short-circuited winding or windings displaced in magnetic position from the main winding.

### 1.20.4 Single-Phase Wound-Rotor Motors

Single-phase wound-rotor motors are defined and classified as follows:

#### 1.20.4.1 Repulsion Motor

A repulsion motor is a single-phase motor which has a stator winding arranged for connection to a source of power and a rotor winding connected to a commutator. Brushes on the commutator are short-circuited and are so placed that the magnetic axis of the rotor winding is inclined to the magnetic axis of the stator winding. This type of motor has a varying-speed characteristic.

#### 1.20.4.2 Repulsion-Start Induction Motor

A repulsion-start induction motor is a single-phase motor having the same windings as a repulsion motor, but at a predetermined speed the rotor winding is short-circuited or otherwise connected to give the equivalent of a squirrel-cage winding. This type of motor starts as a repulsion motor but operates as an induction motor with constant speed characteristics.

#### 1.20.4.3 Repulsion-Induction Motor

A repulsion-induction motor is a form of repulsion motor which has a squirrel-cage winding in the rotor in addition to the repulsion motor winding. A motor of this type may have either a constant-speed (see 1.30) or varying-speed (see 1.31) characteristic.

## 1.21 UNIVERSAL MOTORS

A universal motor is a series-wound motor designed to operate at approximately the same speed and output on either direct-current or single-phase alternating-current of a frequency not greater than 60 hertz and approximately the same rms voltage.

### 1.21.1 Series-Wound Motor

A series-wound motor is a commutator motor in which the field circuit and armature circuit are connected in series.

### 1.21.2 Compensated Series-Wound Motor

A compensated series-wound motor is a series-wound motor with a compensating field winding. The compensating field winding and the series field winding shall be permitted to be combined into one field winding.

## 1.22 ALTERNATING-CURRENT GENERATORS

Alternating-current generators are of two basic types, induction and synchronous, and are defined as follows:

### 1.22.1 Induction Generator

An induction generator is an induction machine driven above synchronous speed by an external source of mechanical power for use as a generator.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 1.22.2 Synchronous Generator

A synchronous generator is a synchronous machine for use as a generator.

NOTE—Unless otherwise stated it is generally understood that a synchronous generator has field poles excited by direct current.

### 1.23 DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

Direct-current motors are of four general types—shunt-wound, series-wound, compound-wound, and permanent magnet, and are defined as follows.

#### 1.23.1 Shunt-Wound Motor

A shunt-wound motor is either a straight shunt-wound motor or a stabilized shunt-wound motor.

##### 1.23.1.1 Straight Shunt-Wound Motor

A straight shunt-wound motor is a direct-current motor in which the field circuit is connected either in parallel with the armature circuit or to a separate source of excitation voltage. The shunt field is the only winding supplying field excitation.

##### 1.23.1.2 Stabilized Shunt-Wound Motor

A stabilized shunt-wound motor is a direct-current motor in which the shunt field circuit is connected either in parallel with the armature circuit or to a separate source of excitation voltage and which also has a light series winding added to prevent a rise in speed or to obtain a slight reduction in speed with increase in load.

#### 1.23.2 Series-Wound Motor

A series-wound motor is a motor in which the field circuit and armature circuit are connected in series.

#### 1.23.3 Compound-Wound Motor

A compound-wound motor is a direct-current motor which has two separate field windings-one, usually the predominating field, connected as in a straight shunt-wound motor, and the other connected in series with the armature circuit.

#### 1.23.4 Permanent Magnet Motor

A permanent magnet motor is a direct-current motor in which the field excitation is supplied by permanent magnets.

### 1.24 DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

Direct-current generators are of two general types—shunt-wound and compound-wound—and are defined as follows:

#### 1.24.1 Shunt-Wound Generator

A shunt-wound generator is a direct-current generator in which the field circuit is connected either in parallel with the armature circuit or to a separate source of excitation voltage.

#### 1.24.2 Compound-Wound Generator

A compound-wound generator is a direct-current generator which has two separate field windings—one, usually the predominating field, connected as in a shunt-wound generator, and the other connected in series with the armature circuit.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND METHODS OF COOLING

Details of protection (IP) and methods of cooling (IC) are defined in Part 5 and Part 6, respectively. They conform to IEC Standards.

### 1.25 OPEN MACHINE (IP00, IC01)

An open machine is one having ventilating openings which permit passage of external cooling air over and around the windings of the machine. The term "open machine," when applied in large apparatus without qualification, designates a machine having no restriction to ventilation other than that necessitated by mechanical construction.

#### 1.25.1 Dripproof Machine (IP12, IC01)

A dripproof machine is an open machine in which the ventilating openings are so constructed that successful operation is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle from 0 to 15 degrees downward from the vertical.

The machine is protected against solid objects greater than 1.968 inches (50 mm).

#### 1.25.2 Splash-Proof Machine (IP13, IC01)

A splash-proof machine is an open machine in which the ventilating openings are so constructed that successful operation is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle not greater than 60 degrees downward from the vertical.

The machine is protected against solid objects greater than 1.968 inches (50 mm).

#### 1.25.3 Semi-Guarded Machine (IC01)

A semi-guarded machine is an open machine in which part of the ventilating openings in the machine, usually in the top half, are guarded as in the case of a "guarded machine" but the others are left open.

#### 1.25.4 Guarded Machine (IC01)

A guarded machine is an open machine in which all openings giving direct access to live metal or rotating parts (except smooth rotating surfaces) are limited in size by the structural parts or by screens, baffles, grilles, expanded metal, or other means to prevent accidental contact with hazardous parts.

The openings in the machine enclosure shall be such that (1) a probe such as that illustrated in Figure 1-1, when inserted through the openings, will not touch a hazardous rotating part; (2) a probe such as that illustrated in Figure 1-2 when inserted through the openings, will not touch film-coated wire; and (3) an articulated probe such as that illustrated in Figure 1-3, when inserted through the openings, will not touch an uninsulated live metal part.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

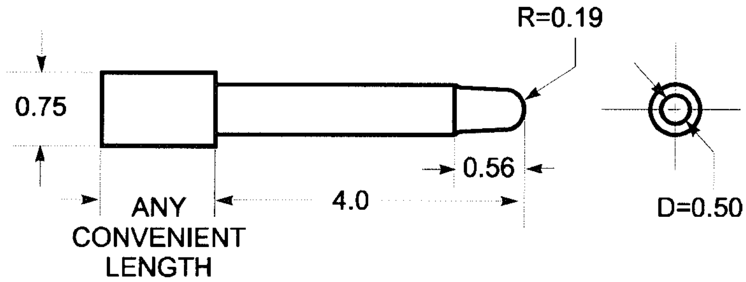



**Figure 1-1***
**PROBE FOR HAZARDOUS ROTATING PARTS**

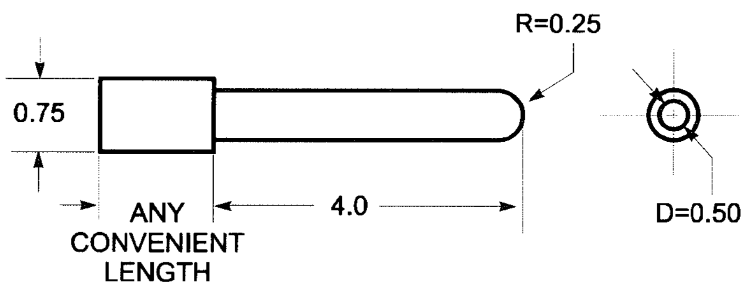



**Figure 1-2***
**PROBE FOR FILM-COATED WIRE**

* All dimensions in inches.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Both joints of this finger may bend through an angle of 90°, but in one and the same direction only.
Dimensions in millimeters.

Tolerances:
On angles: ±5°
On linear dimensions:
Less than 25mm: ±0.05
More than 25 mm: ±0.2

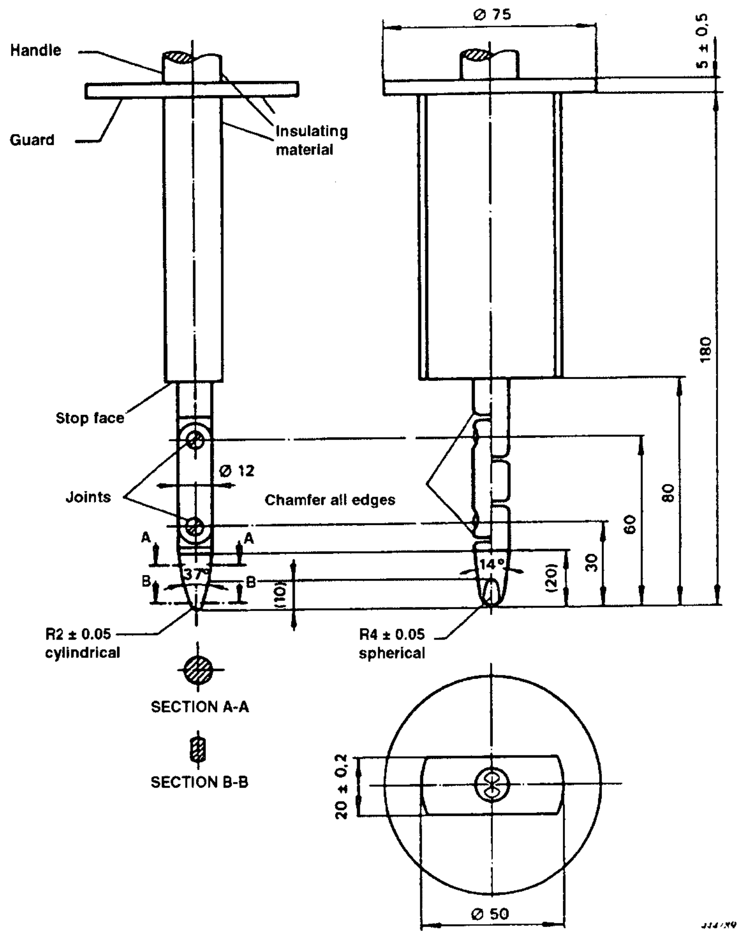



**Figure 1-3**
**ARTICULATED PROBE FOR UNINSULATED LIVE METAL PARTS**
**(Reproduced with permission of IEC, which retains the copyright)**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.25.5 Dripproof Guarded Machine (IC01)

A dripproof guarded machine is a dripproof machine whose ventilating openings are guarded in accordance with 1.25.4.

### 1.25.6 Open Independently Ventilated Machine (IC06)

An open independently ventilated machine is one which is ventilated by means of a separate motor-driven blower mounted on the machine enclosure. Mechanical protection shall be as defined in 1.25.1 to 1.25.5, inclusive. This machine is sometimes known as a blower-ventilated machine.

### 1.25.7 Open Pipe-Ventilated Machine

An open pipe-ventilated machine is an open machine except that openings for the admission of the ventilating air are so arranged that inlet ducts or pipes can be connected to them. Open pipe-ventilated machines shall be self-ventilated (air circulated by means integral with the machine) (IC11) or force-ventilated (air circulated by means external to and not a part of the machine) (IC17). Enclosures shall be as defined in 1.25.1 to 1.25.5, inclusive.

### 1.25.8 Weather-Protected Machine

#### 1.25.8.1 Type I (IC01)

A weather-protected Type I machine is a guarded machine with its ventilating passages so constructed as to minimize the entrance of rain, snow and air-borne particles to the electric parts.

#### 1.25.8.2 Type II (IC01)

A weather-protected Type II machine shall have, in addition to the enclosure defined for a weather-protected Type I machine, its ventilating passages at both intake and discharge so arranged that high-velocity air and air-borne particles blown into the machine by storms or high winds can be discharged without entering the internal ventilating passages leading directly to the electric parts of the machine itself. The normal path of the ventilating air which enters the electric parts of the machine shall be so arranged by baffling or separate housings as to provide at least three abrupt changes in direction, none of which shall be less than 90 degrees. In addition, an area of low velocity not exceeding 600 feet per minute shall be provided in the intake air path to minimize the possibility of moisture or dirt being carried into the electric parts of the machine.

NOTE—Removable or otherwise easy to clean filters may be provided instead of the low velocity chamber.

## 1.26 TOTALLY ENCLOSED MACHINE

A totally enclosed machine is so enclosed as to prevent the free exchange of air between the inside and outside of the case but not sufficiently enclosed to be termed air-tight and dust does not enter in sufficient quantity to interfere with satisfactory operation of the machine.

### 1.26.1 Totally Enclosed Nonventilated Machine (IC410)

A totally enclosed nonventilated machine is a frame-surface cooled totally enclosed machine which is only equipped for cooling by free convection.

### 1.26.2 Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Machine

A totally enclosed fan-cooled machine is a frame-surface cooled totally enclosed machine equipped for self exterior cooling by means of a fan or fans integral with the machine but external to the enclosing parts.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.26.3 Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Guarded Machine (IC411)

A totally-enclosed fan-cooled guarded machine is a totally-enclosed fan-cooled machine in which all openings giving direct access to the fan are limited in size by the design of the structural parts or by screens, grilles, expanded metal, etc., to prevent accidental contact with the fan. Such openings shall not permit the passage of a cylindrical rod 0.75 inch diameter, and a probe such as that shown in Figure 1-1 shall not contact the blades, spokes, or other irregular surfaces of the fan.

### 1.26.4 Totally Enclosed Pipe-Ventilated Machine (IP44)

A totally enclosed pipe-ventilated machine is a machine with openings so arranged that when inlet and outlet ducts or pipes are connected to them there is no free exchange of the internal air and the air outside the case. Totally enclosed pipe-ventilated machines may be self-ventilated (air circulated by means integral with the machine (IC31)) or force-ventilated (air circulated by means external to and not part of the machine (IC37)).

### 1.26.5 Totally Enclosed Water-Cooled Machine (IP54)

A totally enclosed water-cooled machine is a totally enclosed machine which is cooled by circulating water, the water or water conductors coming in direct contact with the machine parts.

### 1.26.6 Water-Proof Machine (IP55)

A water-proof machine is a totally enclosed machine so constructed that it will exclude water applied in the form of a stream of water from a hose, except that leakage may occur around the shaft provided it is prevented from entering the oil reservoir and provision is made for automatically draining the machine. The means for automatic draining may be a check valve or a tapped hole at the lowest part of the frame which will serve for application of a drain pipe.

### 1.26.7 Totally Enclosed Air-to-Water-Cooled Machine (IP54)

A totally enclosed air-to-water-cooled machine is a totally enclosed machine which is cooled by circulating air which, in turn, is cooled by circulating water. It is provided with a water-cooled heat exchanger, integral (IC7_W) or machine mounted (IC8_W), for cooling the internal air and a fan or fans, integral with the rotor shaft (IC_1W) or separate (IC_5W) for circulating the internal air.

### 1.26.8 Totally Enclosed Air-to-Air-Cooled Machine (IP54)

A totally enclosed air-to-air-cooled machine is a totally enclosed machine which is cooled by circulating the internal air through a heat exchanger which, in turn, is cooled by circulating external air. It is provided with an air-to-air heat exchanger, integral (IC5_), or machine mounted (IC6_), for cooling the internal air and a fan or fans, integral with the rotor shaft (IC_1_) or separate (IC_5_) for circulating the internal air and a fan or fans, integral with the rotor shaft (IC_1), or separate, but external to the enclosing part or parts (IC_6), for circulating the external air.

### 1.26.9 Totally Enclosed Air-Over Machine (IP54, IC417)

A totally enclosed air-over machine is a totally enclosed frame-surface cooled machine intended for exterior cooling by a ventilating means external to the machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.26.10 Explosion-Proof Machine[1]

An explosion-proof machine is a totally enclosed machine whose enclosure is designed and constructed to withstand an explosion of a specified gas or vapor which may occur within it and to prevent the ignition of the specified gas or vapor surrounding the machine by sparks, flashes, or explosions of the specified gas or vapor which may occur within the machine casing.

### 1.26.11 Dust-Ignition-Proof Machine[2]

A dust-ignition proof machine is a totally enclosed machine whose enclosure is designed and constructed in a manner which will exclude ignitable amounts of dust or amounts which might affect performance or rating, and which will not permit arcs, sparks, or heat otherwise generated or liberated inside of the enclosure to cause ignition of exterior accumulations or atmospheric suspensions of a specific dust on or in the vicinity of the enclosure.

Successful operation of this type of machine requires avoidance of overheating from such causes as excessive overloads, stalling, or accumulation of excessive quantities of dust on the machine.

## 1.27 MACHINE WITH ENCAPSULATED OR SEALED WINDINGS

### 1.27.1 Machine with Moisture Resistant Windings[3]

A machine with moisture-resistant windings is one in which the windings have been treated such that exposure to a moist atmosphere will not readily cause malfunction. This type of machine is intended for exposure to moisture conditions that are more excessive than the usual insulation system can withstand.

Alternating-current squirrel-cage machines of this type shall be capable of passing the test described in 12.63 as demonstrated on a representative sample or prototype.

### 1.27.2 Machine with Sealed Windings[1]

A machine with sealed windings is one which has an insulation system which, through the use of materials, processes, or a combination of materials and processes, results in windings and connections that are sealed against contaminants. This type of machine is intended for environmental conditions that are more severe than the usual insulation system can withstand.

Alternating-current squirrel-cage machines of this type shall be capable of passing the tests described in 12.62 or 20.18.

## CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO VARIABILITY OF SPEED

## 1.30 CONSTANT-SPEED MOTOR

A constant-speed motor is one in which the speed of normal operation is constant or practically constant; for example, a synchronous motor, an induction motor with small slip, or a DC shunt-wound motor.

## 1.31 VARYING-SPEED MOTOR

A varying-speed motor is one in which the speed varies with the load, ordinarily decreasing when the load increases; such as a series-wound or repulsion motor.

---

1 See ANSI/NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Article 500. For Hazardous Locations, Class I, Groups A, B, C, or D.

2 See ANSI/NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Article 500. For Hazardous Locations, Class II, Groups E, F, or G.

3 This machine shall be permitted to have any one of the enclosures described in 1.25 or 1.26.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.32 ADJUSTABLE-SPEED MOTOR

An adjustable-speed motor is one in which the speed can be controlled over a defined range, but when once adjusted remains practically unaffected by the load.

Examples of adjustable-speed motors are: a direct-current shunt-wound motor with field resistance control designed for a considerable range of speed adjustment; or an alternating-current motor controlled by an adjustable frequency power supply.

## 1.33 BASE SPEED OF AN ADJUSTABLE-SPEED MOTOR

The base speed of an adjustable-speed motor is the lowest rated speed obtained at rated load and rated voltage at the temperature rise specified in the rating.

## 1.34 ADJUSTABLE VARYING-SPEED MOTOR

An adjustable varying-speed motor is one in which the speed can be adjusted gradually, but when once adjusted for a given load will vary in considerable degree with change in load; such as a DC compound-wound motor adjusted by field control or a wound-rotor induction motor with rheostatic speed control.

## 1.35 MULTISPEED MOTOR

A multispeed motor is one which can be operated at any one of two or more definite speeds, each being practically independent of the load; for example, a DC motor with two armature windings or an induction motor with windings capable of various pole groupings. In the case of multispeed permanent-split capacitor and shaded pole motors, the speeds are dependent upon the load.

**RATING, PERFORMANCE, AND TEST**

## 1.40 RATING OF A MACHINE

The rating of a machine shall consist of the output power together with any other characteristics, such as speed, voltage, and current, assigned to it by the manufacturer. For machines which are designed for absorbing power, the rating shall be the input power.

### 1.40.1 Continuous Rating

The continuous rating defines the load which can be carried for an indefinitely long period of time.

### 1.40.2 Short-Time Rating

The short-time rating defines the load which can be carried for a short and definitely specified time, less than that required to reach thermal equilibrium, when the initial temperature of the machine is within 5°C of the ambient temperature. Between periods of operation the machine is de-energized and permitted to remain at rest for sufficient time to re-establish machine temperatures within 5°C of the ambient before being operated again.

## 1.41 EFFICIENCY

### 1.41.1 General

The efficiency of a motor or generator is the ratio of its useful power output to its total power input and is usually expressed in percentage.

### 1.41.2 Energy Efficient Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Induction Motor

An energy efficient polyphase squirrel-cage induction motor is one having an efficiency in accordance with 12.59.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 1.41.3 Premium Efficiency Motor

A premium efficiency motor is one having an efficiency in accordance with 12.60.

## 1.42 SERVICE FACTOR—AC MOTORS

The service factor of an AC motor is a multiplier which, when applied to the rated horsepower, indicates a permissible horsepower loading which may be carried under the conditions specified for the service factor (see 14.37).

## 1.43 SPEED REGULATION OF DC MOTORS

The speed regulation of a DC motor is the difference between the steady no-load speed and the steady rated-load speed, expressed in percent of rated-load speed.

### 1.43.1 Percent Compounding of Direct-Current Machines

The percent of the total field-ampere turns at full load that is contributed by the series field.

NOTES

1—The percent compounding is determined at rated shunt field current.

2—Percent regulation of a compound-wound DC motor or generator is related to but not the same as percent compounding.

## 1.44 VOLTAGE REGULATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

The voltage regulation of a direct-current generator is the final change in voltage with constant field rheostat setting when the specified load is reduced gradually to zero, expressed as a percent of rated-load voltage, the speed being kept constant.

NOTE—In practice, it is often desirable to specify the overall regulation of the generator and its driving machine, thus taking into account the speed regulation of the driving machine.

## 1.45 SECONDARY VOLTAGE OF WOUND-ROTOR MOTORS

The secondary voltage of wound-rotor motors is the open-circuit voltage at standstill, measured across the slip rings, with rated voltage applied on the primary winding.

## 1.46 FULL-LOAD TORQUE

The full-load torque of a motor is the torque necessary to produce its rated horsepower at full-load speed. In pounds at a foot radius, it is equal to the horsepower times 5252 divided by the full-load speed.

## 1.47 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE (STATIC TORQUE)

The locked-rotor torque of a motor is the minimum torque which it will develop at rest for all angular positions of the rotor, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency.

## 1.48 PULL-UP TORQUE

The pull-up torque of an alternating-current motor is the minimum torque developed by the motor during the period of acceleration from rest to the speed at which breakdown torque occurs. For motors which do not have a definite breakdown torque, the pull-up torque is the minimum torque developed up to rated speed.

## 1.49 PUSHOVER TORQUE

The pushover torque of an induction generator is the maximum torque which it will absorb with rated voltage applied at rated frequency, without an abrupt increase in speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.50 BREAKDOWN TORQUE

The breakdown torque of a motor is the maximum torque which it will develop with rated voltage applied at rated frequency, without an abrupt drop in speed.

## 1.51 PULL-OUT TORQUE

The pull-out torque of a synchronous motor is the maximum sustained torque which the motor will develop at synchronous speed with rated voltage applied at rated frequency and with normal excitation.

## 1.52 PULL-IN TORQUE

The pull-in torque of a synchronous motor is the maximum constant torque under which the motor will pull its connected inertia load into synchronism, at rated voltage and frequency, when its field excitation is applied.

The speed to which a motor will bring its load depends on the power required to drive it, and whether the motor can pull the load into step from this speed, depends on the inertia of the revolving parts, so that the pull-in torque cannot be determined without having the $Wk^2$ as well as the torque of the load.

## 1.53 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

The locked-rotor current of a motor is the steady-state current taken from the line, with the rotor locked and with rated voltage (and rated frequency in the case of alternating-current motors) applied to the motor.

## 1.54 NO-LOAD CURRENT

No-load current is the current flowing through a line terminal of a winding.

## 1.55 TEMPERATURE TESTS

Temperature tests are tests taken to determine the temperature rise of certain parts of the machine above the ambient temperature, when running under a specified load.

## 1.56 AMBIENT TEMPERATURE

Ambient temperature is the temperature of the surrounding cooling medium, such as gas or liquid, which comes into contact with the heated parts of the apparatus.

NOTE—Ambient temperature is commonly known as "room temperature" in connection with air-cooled apparatus not provided with artificial ventilation.

## 1.57 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

High-potential tests are tests which consist of the application of a voltage higher than the rated voltage for a specified time for the purpose of determining the adequacy against breakdown of insulating materials and spacings under normal conditions. (See Part 3.)

## 1.58 STARTING CAPACITANCE FOR A CAPACITOR MOTOR

The starting capacitance for a capacitor motor is the total effective capacitance in series with the starting winding under locked-rotor conditions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.59 RADIAL MAGNETIC PULL AND AXIAL CENTERING FORCE

### 1.59.1 Radial Magnetic Pull

The radial magnetic pull of a motor or generator is the magnetic force on the rotor resulting from its radial (air gap) displacement from magnetic center.

### 1.59.2 Axial Centering Force

The axial centering force of a motor or generator is the magnetic force on the rotor resulting from its axial displacement from magnetic center.

Unless other conditions are specified, the value of radial magnetic pull and axial centering force will be for no load, with rated voltage, rated field current, and rated frequency applied, as applicable.

## 1.60 INDUCTION MOTOR TIME CONSTANTS

### 1.60.1 General

When a polyphase induction motor is open-circuited or short-circuited while running at rated speed, the rotor flux-linkages generate a voltage in the stator winding. The decay of the rotor-flux linkages, and the resultant open-circuit terminal voltage or short-circuit current, is determined by the various motor time constants defined by the following equations.

### 1.60.2 Open-Circuit AC Time Constant

$$T''_{do} = \frac{X_M + X_2}{2\pi f r_2} \text{ (seconds)}$$

### 1.60.3 Short-Circuit AC Time Constant

$$T''_d = \frac{X_S}{X_1 + X_M} T''_{do} \text{ (seconds)}$$

### 1.60.4 Short-Circuit DC Time Constant

$$T_a = \frac{X_S}{2\pi f r_1 \left[1 + \frac{LL_S}{kW_1}\right]} \text{ (seconds)}$$

### 1.60.5 X/R Ratio

$$X/R = \frac{X_S}{r_1 \left[1 + \frac{LL_S}{kW_1}\right]} \text{ (radians)}$$

### 1.60.6 Definitions (See Figure 1-4)

$r_1$ = Stator DC resistance per phase corrected to operating temperature
$r_2$ = Rotor resistance per phase at rated speed and operating temperature referred to stator
$X_1$ = Stator leakage reactance per phase at rated current
$X_2$ = Rotor leakage reactance per phase at rated speed and rated current referred to stator
$X_S$ = Total starting reactance (stator and rotor) per phase at zero speed and locked-rotor current
$X_M$ = Magnetizing reactance per phase
$LL_s$ = Fundamental-frequency component of stray-load loss in kW at rated current

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

$kW_1$ = Stator $I^2R$ loss in kW at rated current and operating temperature
f = Rated frequency, hertz
s = Slip in per unit of synchronous speed

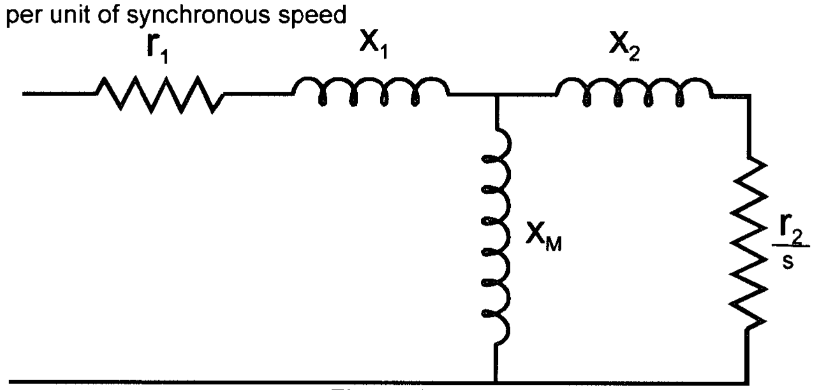



**Figure 1-4**
**EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT**

## COMPLETE MACHINES AND PARTS

### 1.61 SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR—COMPLETE

#### 1.61.1 Belted Type

A belted-type generator consists of a generator with a shaft extension suitable for the driving pulley or sheave, with either two or three bearings as required, and with rails or with a sliding base which has provision for adjusting belt tension.

#### 1.61.2 Engine Type

An engine-type generator consists of a stator, rotor (without shaft), foundation caps or sole plates, and brush rigging support. No base, bearings, shaft, shaft keys, or foundation bolts are included in generators of this type.

#### 1.61.3 Coupled Type

A coupled-type generator consists of a generator with shaft extension for coupling and with one or two bearings.

### 1.62 DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATOR—COMPLETE

#### 1.62.1 Belted Type

A belted-type generator consists of a generator with a shaft extension suitable for the driving pulley or sheave, with either two or three bearings as required, and with rails or with a sliding base which has provision for adjusting belt tension.

#### 1.62.2 Engine Type

An engine-type generator consists of a field frame, armature (without shaft), foundation caps or sole plates (when required), and a brush rigging support. No base, bearings, shaft, shaft keys, or foundation bolts are included in generators of this type.

#### 1.62.3 Coupled Type

A coupled-type generator consists of a generator with a shaft extension suitable for coupling, with either one or two bearings as required.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.63 FACE AND FLANGE MOUNTING

### 1.63.1 Type C Face

A Type C face-mounting machine has a male pilot (rabbet) fit with threaded holes in the mounting surface. The mounting surface shall be either internal or external to the pilot fit. (See Figure 4-3.)

### 1.63.2 Type D Flange

A Type D flange-mounting machine has a male pilot (rabbet) fit with clearance holes in the mounting surface. The mounting surface is external to the pilot fit. (See Figure 4-4.)

### 1.63.3 Type P Flange

A Type P flange-mounting machine has a female pilot (rabbet) fit with clearance holes in the mounting surface. The mounting surface is external to the pilot fit. (See Figure 4-5.)

## CLASSIFICATION OF INSULATION SYSTEMS

## 1.65 INSULATION SYSTEM DEFINED

An insulation system is an assembly of insulating materials in association with the conductors and the supporting structural parts. All of the components described below that are associated with the stationary winding constitute one insulation system and all of the components that are associated with the rotating winding constitute another insulation system.

### 1.65.1 Coil Insulation with its Accessories

The coil insulation comprises all of the insulating materials that envelop and separate the current-carrying conductors and their component turns and strands and form the insulation between them and the machine structure; including wire coatings, varnish, encapsulants, slot insulation, slot fillers, tapes, phase insulation, pole-body insulation, and retaining ring insulation when present.

### 1.65.2 Connection and Winding Support Insulation

The connection and winding support insulation includes all of the insulation materials that envelop the connections, which carry current from coil to coil, and from stationary or rotating coil terminals to the points of external circuit attachment; and the insulation of any metallic supports for the winding.

### 1.65.3 Associated Structural Parts

The associated structural parts of the insulation system include items such as slot wedges, space blocks and ties used to position the coil ends and connections, any non-metallic supports for the winding, and field-coil flanges.

## 1.66 CLASSIFICATION OF INSULATION SYSTEMS

Insulation systems are divided into classes according to the thermal endurance of the system for temperature rating purposes. Four classes of insulation systems are used in motors and generators, namely, Classes A, B, F, and H. These classes have been established in accordance with IEEE Std 1.

Insulation systems shall be classified as follows:

Class A— An insulation system which, by experience or accepted test, can be shown to have suitable thermal endurance when operating at the limiting Class A temperature specified in the temperature rise standard for the machine under consideration.

Class B—An insulation system which, by experience or accepted test, can be shown to have suitable thermal endurance when operating at the limiting Class B temperature specified in the temperature rise standard for the machine under consideration.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Class F—An insulation system which, by experience or accepted test, can be shown to have suitable thermal endurance when operating at the limiting Class F temperature specified in the temperature rise standard for the machine under consideration.

Class H—An insulation system which, by experience or accepted test, can be shown to have suitable thermal endurance when operating at the limiting Class H temperature specified in the temperature rise standard for the machine under consideration.

"Experience," as used in this standard, means successful operation for a long time under actual operating conditions of machines designed with temperature rise at or near the temperature rating limit.

"Accepted test," as used in this standard, means a test on a system or model system which simulates the electrical, thermal, and mechanical stresses occurring in service.

Where appropriate to the construction, tests shall be made in accordance with the following applicable IEEE test procedures:
a. Std 43
b. Std 117
c. Std 275
d. Std 304

For other constructions for which tests have not been standardized, similar procedures shall be permitted to be used if it is shown that they properly discriminate between service-proven systems known to be different.

When evaluated by an accepted test, a new or modified insulation system shall be compared to an insulation system on which there has been substantial service experience. If a comparison is made on a system of the same class, the new system shall have equal or longer thermal endurance under the same test conditions; if the comparison is made with a system of a lower temperature class, it shall have equal or longer thermal endurance at an appropriately higher temperature. When comparing systems of different classes, an appropriate higher temperature shall be considered to be 25 degrees Celsius per class higher than the temperature for the base insulation system class.

**MISCELLANEOUS**

## 1.70 NAMEPLATE MARKING

A permanent marking of nameplate information shall appear on each machine, displayed in a readily visible location on the machine enclosure.

### 1.70.1 Nameplate

A permanent marking of nameplate information shall appear on each machine, displayed in a readily visible location on the machine enclosure. If the electric machine is so enclosed or incorporated in the equipment that its rating plate will not be easily legible, the manufacturer should, on request, supply a second rating plate to be mounted on the equipment.

### 1.70.2 Additional Nameplate Markings

In addition to the specific nameplate markings set forth in the various Parts for each particular size or type of machine, the following are examples of information that may also be included on a nameplate:

a. Manufacturer's name, mark, or logo
b. Manufacturer's plant location
c. Manufacturer's machine code
d. Manufacturer's model number or catalog number

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

e. Serial number or date of manufacture
f. Enclosure or IP code (see Part 5)
g. Method of cooling or IC code (see Part 6)
h. Applicable rating and performance standard(s): e.g., NEMA MG 1 or IEC 60034-1
i. Maximum momentary overspeed
j. For ac machines, the rated power factor
k. Maximum ambient if other than 40°C
l. Minimum ambient temperature
m. Maximum water temperature for water-air-cooled machines if greater than 25°C
n. Altitude if greater than 3300 ft (1000 m)
o. Connection diagram located near or inside the terminal box
p. Approximate weight of the machine, if exceeding 66 lbs (30 kg)
q. Direction of rotation for unidirectional machines, indicated by an arrow

### 1.71 CODE LETTER

A code letter is a letter which appears on the nameplate of an alternating-current motor to show its locked-rotor kVA per horsepower. The letter designations for locked rotor kVA per horsepower are given in 10.37.

### 1.72 THERMAL PROTECTOR

A thermal protector is a protective device for assembly as an integral part of the machine and which, when properly applied, protects the machine against dangerous over-heating due to overload and, in a motor, failure to start.

NOTE—The thermal protector may consist of one or more temperature sensing elements integral with the machine and a control device external to the machine.

### 1.73 THERMALLY PROTECTED

The words "thermally protected" appearing on the nameplate of a motor indicate that the motor is provided with a thermal protector.

### 1.74 OVER TEMPERATURE PROTECTION

For alternating-current medium motors, see 12.56.

For direct-current medium motors, see 12.80.

### 1.75 PART-WINDING START MOTOR

A part-winding start polyphase induction or synchronous motor is one in which certain specially designed circuits of each phase of the primary winding are initially connected to the supply line. The remaining circuit or circuits of each phase are connected to the supply in parallel with initially connected circuits, at a predetermined point in the starting operation. (See 14.38.)

### 1.76 STAR (WYE) START, DELTA RUN MOTOR

A star (wye) start, delta run polyphase induction or synchronous motor is one arranged for starting by connecting to the supply with the primary winding initially connected in star (wye), then reconnected in delta for running operation.

### 1.77 CONSTANT FLUX

Constant flux operation at any point occurs when the value of air gap magnetic flux is equal to the value which would exist at the base rating (i.e. rated voltage, frequency, and load).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 1.78 DEVIATION FACTOR

The deviation factor of a wave is the ratio of the maximum difference between corresponding ordinates of the wave and of the equivalent sine wave to the maximum ordinate of the equivalent sine wave when the waves are superimposed in such a way as to make this maximum difference as small as possible. The equivalent sine wave is defined as having the same frequency and the same rms value as the wave being tested.

## 1.79 MARKING ABBREVIATIONS FOR MACHINES

When abbreviations are used for markings which are attached to the motor or generator (rating plates, connection, etc.), they shall consist of capital letters because the conventional marking machines provide only numbers and capital letters and shall be in accordance with the following:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Abbreviation | Marking Indicated | Abbreviation | Marking Indicated |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | Ampere | MAX | Maximum |
| AC | Alternating-current | MFD | Microfarad |
| AMB | Ambient | MG | Motor-generator |
| AO | Air over | MH | Milihenry |
| ARM | Armature | MHP | Milihorsepower |
| BB | Ball bearing | MIN | Minimum |
| BRG | Bearing | MIN | Minute |
| C | Celsius (Centigrade) degrees | MTR | Motor |
| CAP | Capacitor | NEMA or DES** | NEMA Design Letter |
| CCW | Counterclockwise | NO or # | Number |
| CL | Class or Classification | OZ-FT | Ounce-feet |
| CODE | Code Letter | OZ-IN | Ounce-inch |
| CONN | Connection | PF | Power factor |
| CONT | Continuous | PH | Phase, Phases or Number of Phases |
| CFM | Cubic feet per minute | PM | Permanent magnet |
| COMM | Commutating (interpole) | RB | Roller bearing |
| COMP | Compensating | RECT | Rectifier or rectified |
| CPD | Compound | RES | Resistance |
| C/S | Cycles per second | RHEO | Rheostat |
| CW | Clockwise | RMS | Root mean square |
| DC | Direct-current | ROT | Rotation |
| DIAG | Diagram | RPM | Revolutions per minute |
| EFF | Efficiency | RTD | Resistance temperature detector |
| ENCL | Enclosure | SB | Sleeve bearing |
| EXC | Exciter or Excitation | SEC | Second (time) |
| F | Fahrenheit, degrees | SEC | Secondary |
| FF | Form factor | SER | Serial or Serial number |
| FHP | Fractional horsepower | SF | Service factor |
| FLA | Full load amperes | SFA | Service factor amperes |
| FLD | Field | SH | Shunt |
| FR | Frame | SPL | Special |
| FREQ | Frequency | STAB | Stabilized or stabilizing |
| GEN | Generator | STD | Standard |
| GPM | Gallons per minute | TACH | Tachometer |
| GPS | Gallons per second | TC | Thermocouple |
| H | Henry | TEMP | Temperature |
| HI | High | TEMP RISE | Temperature rise |
| HP | Horsepower | TERM | Terminal |
| HR | Hour | TH | Thermometer |
| HZ | Hertz | TIME | Time rating |
| IND | Inductance or Induction | TORQ | Torque |
| INS | Insulation System Class | TYPE | Type |
| KVA | Kilovolt-ampere | V | Volt(s) or Voltage |
| KVAR | Reactive Kilovolt-ampere | VA | Volt-amperes |
| KW | Kilowatt | VAR | Reactive volt-amperes |
| L* | Line | W | Watt |
| LB-FT | Pound-feet | WDG | Winding |
| LO | Low | WT | Weight |
| LRA | Locked rotor amperes | | |

* Shall be permitted to be used in conjunction with a number **Used in conjunction with a letter.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 2

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 2
# TERMINAL MARKINGS

## GENERAL

### 2.1 LOCATION OF TERMINAL MARKINGS

Terminal markings shall be placed on or directly adjacent to terminals to which connections must be made from outside circuits or from auxiliary devices which must be disconnected for shipment. Wherever specified, color coding shall be permitted to be used instead of the usual letter and numeral marking.

### 2.2 TERMINAL MARKINGS

A combination of capital letters or symbols and an Arabic numeral shall be used to indicate the character or function of the windings which are brought to the terminal.

To prevent confusion with the numerals 1 and 0, the letters "I" and "O" shall not be used.

The following letters and symbols shall be used for motors and generators and their auxiliary devices when they are included within or mounted on the machine:

a. Armature - A1, A2, A3, A4, etc.
b. Alternating-current rotor windings (collector rings) [1] - M1, M2, M3, M4, etc.
c. Control signal lead attached to commutating winding - C
d. Dynamic braking resistor - BR1, BR2, BR3, BR4, etc.
e. Field (series) - S1, S2, S3, S4, etc.
f. Field (shunt) - F1, F2, F3, F4, etc.
g. Line - L1, L2, L3, L4, etc.
h. Magnetizing winding (for initial and maintenance magnetization and demagnetization of permanent magnet fields) - E1, E2, E3, E4, etc.

NOTE—E1, E3, or other odd-numbered terminals should be attached to the positive terminal of the magnetizing power supply for magnetization and to the negative terminal for demagnetization.

k. Resistance (armature and miscellaneous) - R1, R2, R3, R4, etc.
l. Resistance [2] (shunt field adjusting) - V1, V2, V3, V4, etc.
m. Shunt braking resistor - DR1, DR2, DR3, DR4, etc.
n. Stator [1] - T1, T2, T3, T4, etc.; U1, U2, U3, U4, etc.; V1, V2, V3, V4, etc.; W1, W2, W3, W4, etc.
o. Starting switch - K
p. Thermal protector - P1, P2, P3, P4, etc.
q. Equalizing lead - = (equality sign)
r. Neutral connection - Terminal letter with numeral 0
s. AC brakes - BA1, BA2, BA3, BA4, B1, B2, B3, B4, etc.
t. DC brakes - BD1, BD2, BD3, BD4, B1, B2, B3, B4, etc.
u. Brush-wear detector - BW1, BW2, BW3, BW4, etc.
v. Capacitors - CA1, CA2, CA3, CA4, etc.; J1, J2, J3, J4, etc.

---

[1] For alternating-current machines only.

[2] For direct current machines only.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

w. Current transformer - CT1, CT2, CT3, CT4, etc.
x. Space Heaters - HE1, HE2, HE3, HE4, etc.; H1, H2, H3, H4, etc.
y. Lightning arrestor - LA1, LA2, LA3, LA4, etc.
z. Potential transformer - PT1, PT2, PT3, PT4, etc.
aa. Resistance thermometer - RT1, RT2, RT3, RT4, etc.
bb. Surge capacitor - SC1, SC2, SC3, SC4, etc.
cc. Surge protector - SP1, SP2, SP3, SP4, etc.
dd. Switch, including plugging switch - SW1, SW2, SW3, SW4, etc.
ee. Thermostat opening on increase of temperature - TB1, TB2, TB3, TB4, etc.
ff. Thermocouple - TC1, TC2, TC3, TC4, etc.
gg. Thermostat closing on increase of temperature - TM1, TM2, TM3, TM4, etc.
hh. Thermistor with negative temperature coefficient - TN1, TN2, TN3, TN4, etc.
ii. Thermistor with positive temperature coefficient - TP1, TP2, TP3, TP4, etc.

For the significance of the Arabic numeral, see 2.10 for direct-current machines, 2.20 for alternating-current machines, and 2.67 for auxiliary devices.

## 2.3 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

### 2.3.1 Alternating-Current Machines

See 2.24.

### 2.3.2 Direct-Current Machines

See 2.12.

### 2.3.3 Motor-Generator Sets

When one motor and one generator are coupled together at their drive ends, the standard direction of rotation for both machines shall be as given for that type of machine and will apply to the motor generator set without a change in connections.

The correct direction of rotation shall be clearly indicated on a motor-generator set.

When two or more machines are coupled together but not at their drive ends, the standard direction of rotation cannot apply to all machines in the set. Changes in connections will be necessary for those machines operating in the opposite direction of rotation.

# DC MOTORS AND GENERATORS

## 2.10 TERMINAL MARKINGS

### 2.10.1 General

The markings comprising letters and numbers on the terminals of a direct-current machine shall indicate the relation of circuits within the machine.

### 2.10.2 Armature Leads

When an armature lead passes through the commutating or compensating field, or any combination of these fields, before being brought out for connection to the external circuit, the terminal marking of this lead shall be an "A." When an armature lead passes through a series field and all internal connections are permanently made, the lead brought out shall be marked with an appropriate "S" designation. If an equalizer lead for paralleling purposes is brought out, it shall be marked with an = (equality sign).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.10.3 Armature Leads—Direction of Rotation

All numerals shall be determined on the following fundamental basis. the numerals of all the terminals of direct-current machines shall be selected so that when the direction of current in any single excitation winding is from a lower to a higher numeral, the voltage generated (counter electromotive force in a motor) in the armature from this excitation shall, for counterclockwise rotation facing the end opposite the drive, make armature terminal A1 positive and A2 negative. With excitation applied in the same manner, the opposite rotation will result in A2 being positive and A1 negative.

## 2.11 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DUAL VOLTAGE SHUNT FIELDS

When a separately excited shunt field winding is reconnectable series-parallel for dual voltage, the terminal markings shall be as shown in Figure 2-1.

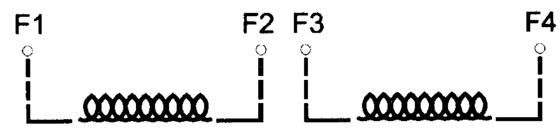



**Figure 2-1**
**SEPARATELY EXCITED SHUNT FIELD WINDING FOR SERIES-PARALLEL DUAL VOLTAGE**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Voltage | Join | Connect to Supply |
|---|---|---|
| Low | -------- | (F1, F3) (F2, F4) |
| High | (F2, F3) | (F1, F4) |

## 2.12 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

### 2.12.1 Direct-Current Motors

The standard direction of shaft rotation for direct-current motors shall be counterclockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

The direction of shaft rotation of direct-current motors depends on the relative polarities of the field and armature and, therefore, if the polarities of both are reversed, the direction of rotation will be unchanged. Since the field excitation of direct-current motors is obtained from an external source, residual magnetism has no practical effect on polarity except for those with permanent magnet excitation. Reversal of the shaft rotation of a direct-current motor is obtained by a transposition of the two armature leads or by a transposition of the field leads. With such reversed shaft rotation (clockwise) and when the polarity of the power supply is such that the direction of the current in the armature is from terminal 2 to terminal 1, the current will be flowing in the field windings from terminal 1 to terminal 2, and vice versa.

### 2.12.2 Direct-Current Generators

The standard direction of shaft rotation for direct-current generators shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

The direction of rotation of a generator mounted as a part of an engine-generator set is usually counterclockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

Self-excited direct-current generators, with connections properly made for standard direction of shaft rotation (clockwise), will not function if driven counterclockwise as any small current delivered by the armature tends to demagnetize the fields and thus prevent the armature from delivering current. If the conditions call for reversed direction of shaft rotation, connections should be made with either the armature leads transposed or the field leads transposed. The polarity of a self-excited direct-current generator, with accompanying direction of current flow in the several windings, is determined by the polarity of the residual magnetism. An accidental or unusual manipulation may reverse this magnetic polarity. Though the generator itself will function as well with either polarity, an unforeseen change may cause disturbance or damage to other generators or devices when the generator is connected to them.

### 2.12.3 Reverse Function

A direct-current machine can be used either as a generator or as a motor if the field design is suitable for such operation. (The manufacturer should be consulted regarding this.) For the desired direction of rotation, connection changes may be necessary. The conventions for current flow in combination with the standardization of opposite directions of rotation for direct current generators and direct-current motors are such that any direct-current machine can be called "generator' or "motor" without a change in terminal markings.

## 2.13 CONNECTION DIAGRAMS WITH TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

The connection diagrams with terminal markings for direct-current motors shall be as shown in Figures 2-2 through 2-9.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

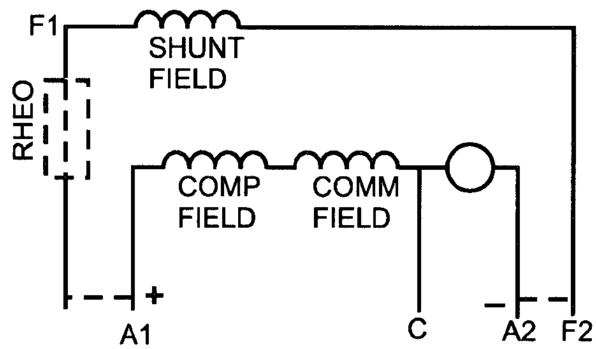



**Figure 2-2**
**SHUNT MOTOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

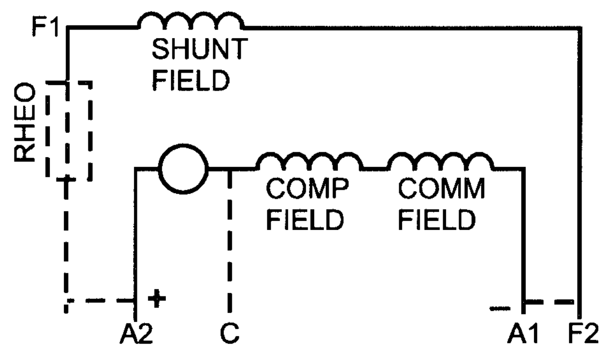



**Figure 2-3**
**SHUNT MOTOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

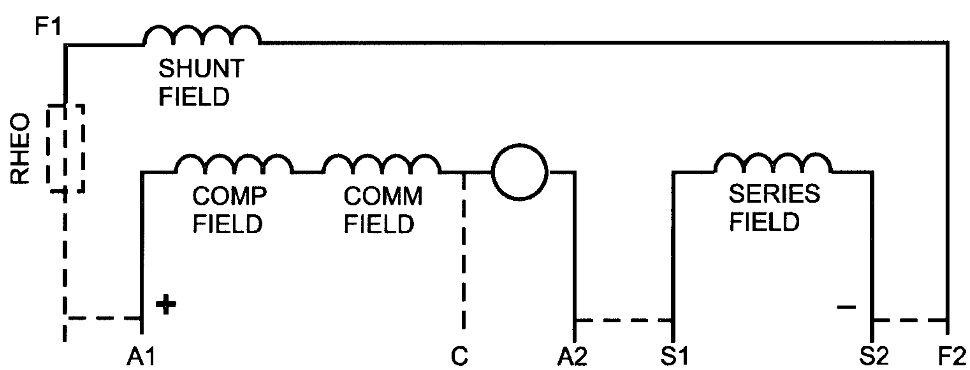



**Figure 2-4**
**COMPOUND OR STABILIZED SHUNT MOTOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

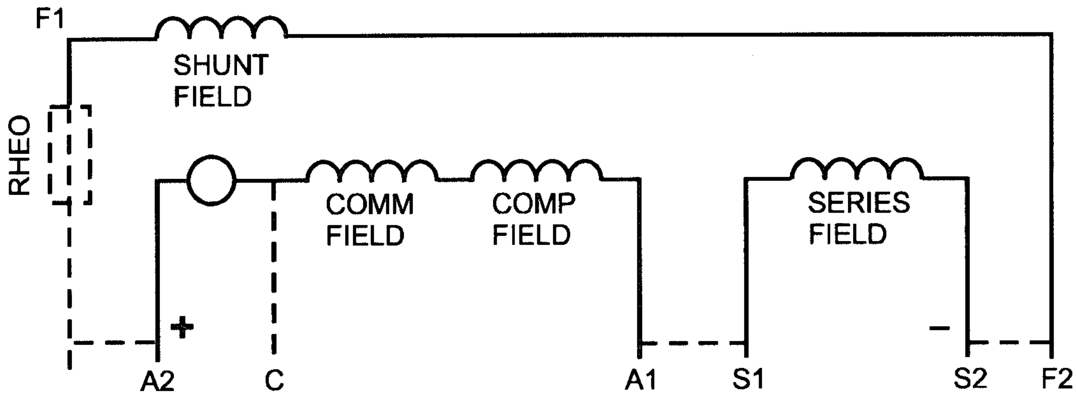



**Figure 2-5**
**COMPOUND OR STABILIZED SHUNT MOTOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

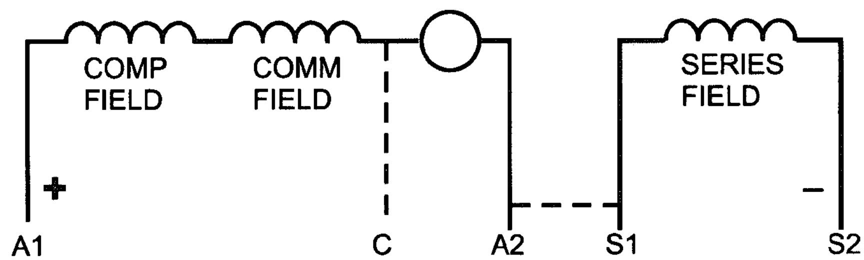



**Figure 2-6**
**SERIES MOTOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

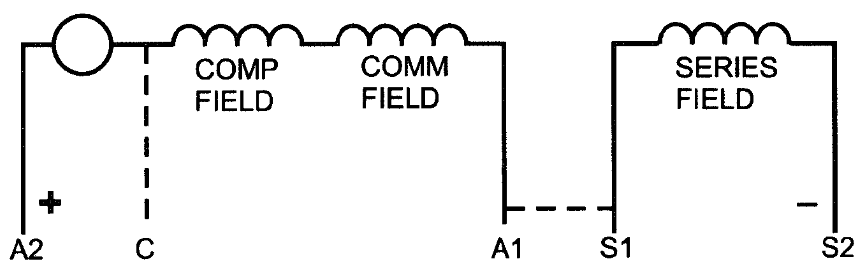



**Figure 2-7**
**SERIES MOTOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTER CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

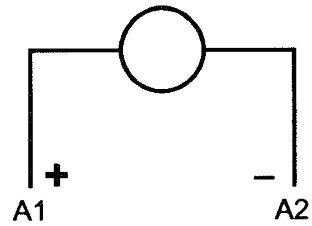



**Figure 2-8***
**PERMANENT MAGNET MOTOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

*When magnetizing windings are provided, see 2.2.

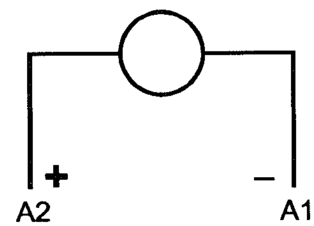



**Figure 2-9***
**PERMANENT MAGNET MOTOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

*When magnetizing windings are provided, see 2.2.

When connections between different windings are made permanently inside the machine, any lead brought out of the machine from the junction (except a control lead) shall bear the terminal markings of all windings to which it is connected except that no markings shall be included for commutating and compensating fields.

These connection diagrams show all leads from the armature, the shunt field, and the series (or stabilizing) field brought out of the machines. The same diagram is, therefore, applicable for reversing the nonreversing motors. The dotted connections may be made inside the machine or outside the machine as conditions require. The relationship between the terminal marking numbers, the relative polarity of the windings, and the direction of rotation is in accordance with 2.12, but the polarities shown in these connection diagrams, while preferred, are not standardized.

NOTES

1—See 2.2 for terminal letters assigned to different types of windings and 2.10.3 for the significance of the numerals.

2—The connections shown are for cumulative series fields. Differential connection of the series field in direct-current motors is very seldom used but when required, no change should be made on the field leads or terminal markings on the machine, but the connection of the series field to the armature should be shown reversed.

3—Commutating, compensating, and series field windings are shown on the A1 side of the armature but this location while preferred, is not standardized. If sound engineering, sound economics, or convenience so dictates, these windings may be connected on either side of the armature or may be divided part on one side and part on the other.

4—For shunt-wound, stabilized-shunt-wound, and compound-wound motors, the shunt field may be either connected in parallel with the armature as shown by the dotted lines or may be separately excited. When separately excited, the shunt field is usually isolated from the other windings of the machine, but the polarity of the voltage applied to the shunt field should be as shown for the particular rotation and armature and series field polarities.

5—When the compensation field or both the commutating and the compensating fields are omitted from any machine, the terminal markings do not change.

6—The lead designated by C, if used, is for control purposes and would not be used in any machine which has neither commutating nor compensating fields. In utilizing this terminal, the location of the commutating or compensating field should be known. See Note 3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

7—The position of the field rheostat shown in these diagrams does not indicate any preference. The field rheostat may be attached to either terminal of the shunt field.

## 2.14 CONNECTION DIAGRAMS WITH TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

The connection diagrams with terminal markings for direct-current generators shall be as shown in Figures 2-10 through 2-13.

When connections between different windings are made permanently inside the machine, any lead brought out of the machine from the junction (except an equalizer or control lead) shall bear the terminal markings of all windings to which it is connected except that no markings shall be included for commutating and compensating fields.

These connection diagrams show all leads from the armature, the shunt field, and the series field brought out of the machines. The dotted connections may be made inside the machine or outside the machine as conditions require. The relationship between the terminal marking numbers, the relative polarity of the windings, and the direction of rotation is in accordance with 2.12, but the polarities shown in these connection diagrams, while preferred, are not standardized.

NOTES

1—See 2.2 for terminal letters assigned to different types of windings and 2.10.3 for the numerals.

2—The connections shown are for cumulative series fields. For differential connection of the series fields, no change should be made on the field leads or terminal markings on the machine, but the connection of the series field to the armature should be shown reversed.

3—Commutating, compensating, and series field windings are shown on the A1 side of the armature, but this location, while preferred, is not standardized. If sound engineering, sound economics, or convenience so dictates, these windings may be connected on either side of the armature or may be divided part on one side and part on the other.

4—Figures 2-12 and 2-13 show the shunt field connected either inside or outside the series field. Either may be used depending upon the desired characteristics.

5—For shunt-wound generators and compound-wound generators, the shunt-field may be either self-excited or separately excited. When self-excited, connections should be made as shown by the dotted lines. When separately excited, the shunt field is usually isolated from the other windings of the machine, but the polarity or the voltage applied to the shunt field should be as shown for the particular rotation and armature polarity.

6—When the compensating field or commutating field, or both, and the compensating fields are omitted from any machine, the terminal markings do not change.

7—The terminal designated by C, if used, is for control purposes and would not be used in any machine which has neither commutating nor compensating fields. In utilizing this terminal, the location of the commutating or compensating field should be known. See Note 3.

8—The position of the field rheostat shown in these diagrams does not indicate any preference. The field rheostat may be attached to either terminal of the shunt field.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

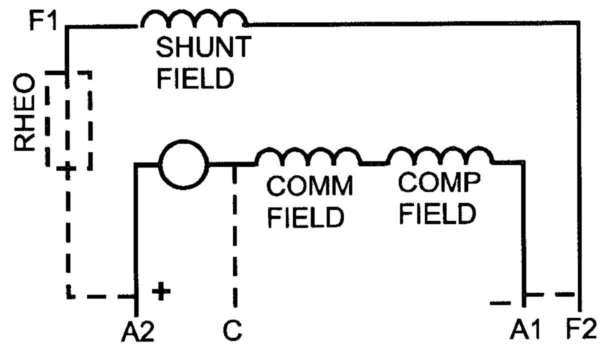



**Figure 2-10**

**SHUNT GENERATOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

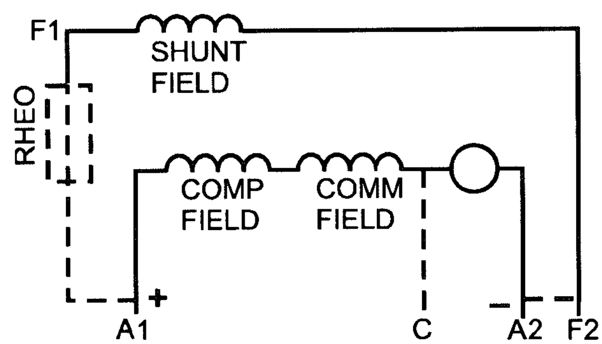



**Figure 2-11**

**SHUNT GENERATOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

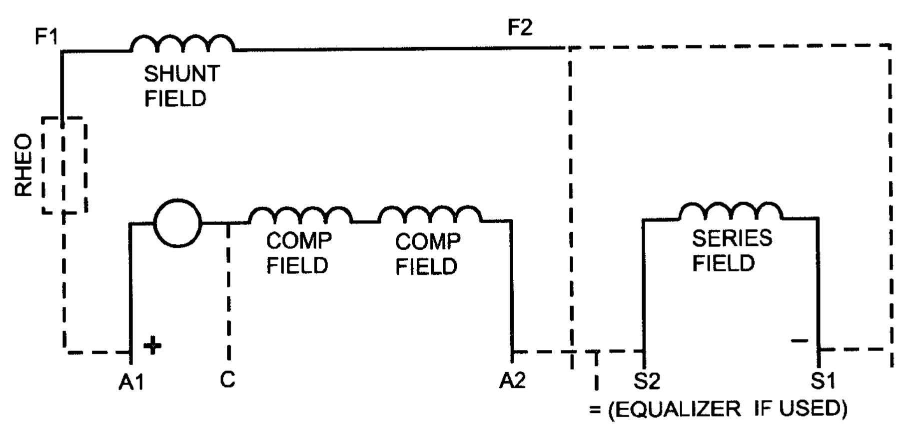



**Figure 2-12**

**COMPOUND GENERATOR—CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

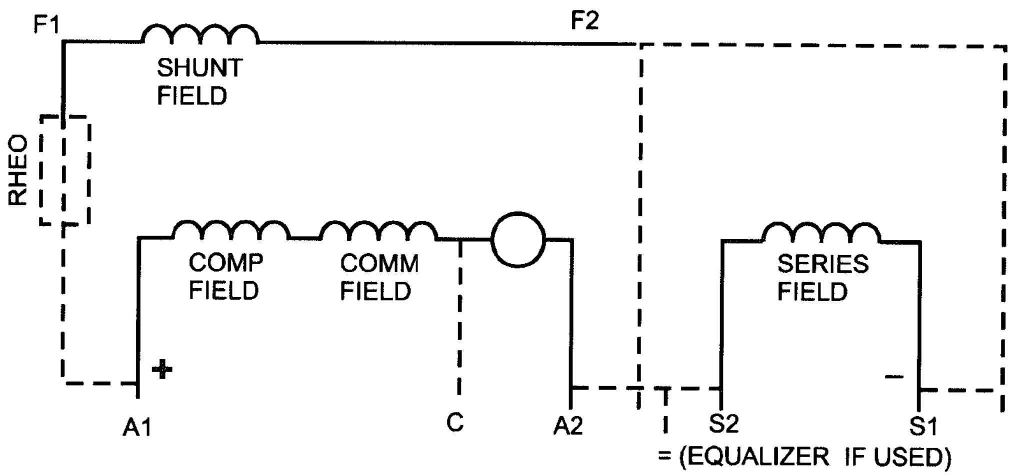



**Figure 2-13**
**COMPOUND GENERATOR—COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING END OPPOSITE DRIVE END, CLOCKWISE ROTATION FACING DRIVE END**

## AC MOTORS AND GENERATORS

### 2.20 NUMERALS ON TERMINALS OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT POLYPHASE MACHINES

#### 2.20.1 Synchronous Machines

The numerals 1, 2, 3, etc., indicate the order in which the voltages at the terminals reach their maximum positive values (phase sequence) with clockwise shaft rotation when facing the connection end of the coil windings; hence, for counterclockwise shaft rotation (not standard) when facing the same end, the phase sequence will be 1, 3, 2.

#### 2.20.2 Induction Machines

The numerals 1, 2, 3, etc. used for terminal markings of polyphase induction machines do not define a relationship between the phase sequence, the connection end of the coil windings, and the direction of shaft rotation.

### 2.21 DEFINITION OF PHASE SEQUENCE

Phase sequence is the order in which the voltages successively reach their maximum positive values between terminals.

### 2.22 PHASE SEQUENCE

The order of numerals on terminal leads does not necessarily indicate the phase sequence, but the phase sequence is determined by the direction of shaft rotation relative to the connection end of the coil winding.

### 2.23 DIRECTION OF ROTATION OF PHASORS

Phasor diagrams shall be shown so that advance in phase of one phasor with respect to another is in the counter-clockwise direction. See Figure 2-14 in which phasor 1 is 120 degrees in advance of phasor 2 and the phase sequence is 1, 2, 3. (See 2.21)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

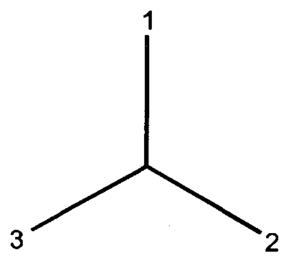



**Figure 2-14**
**ROTATION OF PHASORS**

### 2.24 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The standard direction of rotation for all alternating-current single-phase generators, all synchronous generators, and all universal generators shall be clockwise when facing the end of the machine opposite the drive end.

The direction of rotation of a generator mounted as a part of an engine-generator set is usually counterclockwise when facing the end opposite the drive end.

The standard direction of rotation for all alternating-current single-phase motors, all synchronous motors, and all universal motors shall be counterclockwise when facing the end of the machine opposite the drive end.

The standard direction of rotation for polyphase induction motors and generators, when only the terminal markings U, V, W are used, in accordance with 2.60.1.2 and are connected to L1, L2, and L3 respectively shall be counterclockwise when facing the end opposite the drive end, unless otherwise marked on the machine. No direction of rotation is defined when terminal markings T1, T2, T3 are used, either alone or in addition to the markings U, V, W.

CAUTION - In some cases where field modification of the lead location of polyphase induction machines is required (i.e. from F1 to F2 mounting), it may be necessary to retag the leads with proper terminal markings, replace the leads for proper terminal markings, or otherwise mark the machine with the direction of rotation.

## AC GENERATORS AND SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

### 2.25 REVERSAL OF ROTATION, POLARITY AND PHASE SEQUENCE

Alternating-current generators driven counterclockwise when facing the connection end of the coil windings will generate without change in connections, but the terminal phase sequence will be 1, 3, 2.

Synchronous condensers and synchronous motors may be operated with counterclockwise shaft rotation viewed from the connection end of the coil windings by connecting them to leads in which the phase sequence is 1, 2, 3, in the following manner:

a. Power leads................1, 2, 3
b. Machine terminals.......1, 3, 2

### 2.30 CONNECTIONS AND TERMINAL MARKINGS-ALTERNATING—CURRENT GENERATORS AND SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS—THREE-PHASE AND SINGLE-PHASE

The alternating-current windings of three-phase alternating-current generators and synchronous motors shall have terminal markings as given in 2.61 for three-phase single-speed induction motors.

The alternating-current windings of single-phase alternating-current generators and synchronous motors shall have terminal markings as given in Figure 2-15.

The terminal markings of direct-current field windings shall be F1 and F2.

NOTE—See 2.2 for terminal letters assigned to different types of windings and 2.20 for the significance of the numerals.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

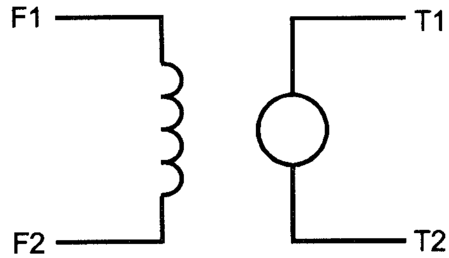



**Figure 2-15**
**SINGLE-PHASE**

## SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

### 2.40 GENERAL

#### 2.40.1 Dual Voltage

Regardless of type, when a single-phase motor is reconnectible series-parallel for dual voltage, the terminal marking shall be determined as follows.

For the purpose of assigning terminal markings, the main winding is assumed to be divided into two halves, and T1 and T2 shall be assigned to one half and T3 and T4 to the other half.

For the purpose of assigning terminal markings, the auxiliary winding (if present) is assumed to be divided into two halves, and T5 and T6 shall be assigned to one half and T7 and T8 to the other half.

Polarities shall be established so that the standard direction of rotation (counterclockwise facing the end opposite the drive end) is obtained when the main winding terminal T4 and the auxiliary winding terminal T5 are joined or when an equivalent circuit connection is made between the main and auxiliary winding.

The terminal marking arrangement is shown diagrammatically in Figure 2-16.

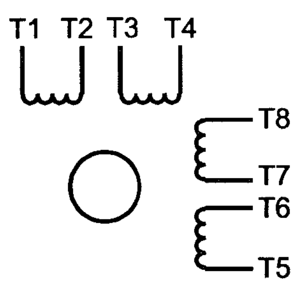



**Figure 2-16**
**DUAL VOLTAGE**

#### 2.40.2 Single Voltage

If a single-phase motor is single voltage or if either winding is intended for only one voltage, the terminal marking shall be determined as follows.

T1 and T4 shall be assigned to the main winding and T5 and T8 to the auxiliary winding (if present) with the polarity arrangement such that the standard direction of rotation is obtained if T4 and T5 are joined to one line and T1 and T8 to the other.

The terminal marking arrangement is shown diagrammatically in Figure 2-17.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

NOTES

1—It has been found to be impracticable to follow this standard for the terminal markings of some definite-purpose motors. See Part 18.

2—No general standards have been developed for terminal markings of multispeed motors because of the great variety of methods employed to obtain multiple speeds.

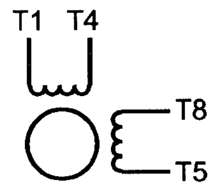



**Figure 2-17**
**SINGLE VOLTAGE**

## 2.41 TERMINAL MARKINGS IDENTIFIED BY COLOR

When single-phase motors use lead colors instead of letter and number markings to identify the leads, the color assignment shall be determined from the following:

a. T1 - Blue
b. T2 - White
c. T3 - Orange
d. T4 - Yellow
e. T5 - Black
f. T8 - Red
g. P1 - No color assigned
h. P2 - Brown

NOTE—It has been found to be impracticable to follow this standard for the lead markings of some definite-purpose motors. See Part 18.

## 2.42 AUXILIARY DEVICES WITHIN MOTOR

The presence of an auxiliary device or devices, such as a capacitor, starting switch, thermal protector, etc., permanently connected in series between the motor terminal and the part of the winding to which it ultimately connects, shall not affect the marking unless a terminal is provided at the junction.

Where a terminal is provided at the junction, the terminal marking of this junction shall be determined by the part of the winding to which it is connected. Any other terminals connected to this auxiliary device shall be identified by a letter indicating the auxiliary device within the motor to which the terminal is connected.

## 2.43 AUXILIARY DEVICES EXTERNAL TO MOTOR

Where the capacitors, resistors, inductors, transformers, or other auxiliary devices are housed separately from the motor, the terminal markings shall be those established for the device.

## 2.44 MARKING OF RIGIDLY MOUNTED TERMINALS

On a terminal board, the identification of rigidly mounted terminals shall be either by marking on the terminal board or by means of a diagram attached to the machine. When all windings are permanently connected to rigidly-mounted terminals, these terminals may be identified in accordance with the terminal markings specified in this publication. When windings are not permanently attached to rigidly mounted terminals on a terminal board, the rigidly mounted terminals shall be identified by numbers only, and the identification need not coincide with that of the terminal leads connected to the rigidly mounted terminals.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.45 INTERNAL AUXILIARY DEVICES PERMANENTLY CONNECTED TO RIGIDLY MOUNTED TERMINALS

If the motor design is such that the starting switch, thermal protector, or other auxiliary device is permanently connected to a rigidly mounted terminal, some variation from the connection arrangements illustrated in 2.47 through 2.53 will be required. However, any variations shall be based on the provisions of 2.46.

## 2.46 GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

The terminal marking and connection procedure given in 2.40 through 2.45 and in the schematic diagrams which follow are based on the following principles.

### 2.46.1 First Principle

The main winding of a single-phase motor is designate by T1, T2, T3, and T4 and the auxiliary winding by T5, T6, T7, and T8 to distinguish it from a quarter-phase motor which uses odd numbers for one phase and even numbers for the other phase.

### 2.46.2 Second Principle

By following the first principle, it follows that odd-to-odd numbered terminals of each winding are joined for lower voltage (parallel) connection and odd-to-even numbered terminals of each winding are joined for higher voltage (series) connection.

### 2.46.3 Third Principle

The rotor of a single-phase motor is represented by a circle, even though there are no external connections to it. It also serves to distinguish the single-phase motor schematic diagram from that of the quarter-phase motor in which the rotor is never represented.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

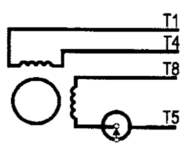
<This page is intentionally left blank.>

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.47 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR SPLIT-PHASE MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE

### 2.47.1 Without Thermal Protector[1]

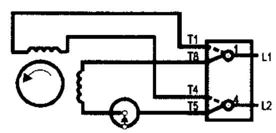
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 |
|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1,T8 | T4,T5 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1,T5 | T4,T8 |

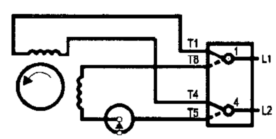
**Figure 2-18**

**Terminal Board[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-19.a**

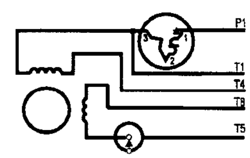



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-19.b**

### 2.47.2 With Thermal Protector[1]

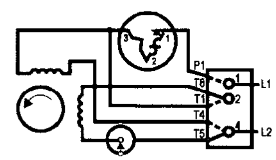
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T5 | T1,T8 |
| Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T8 | T1,T5 |

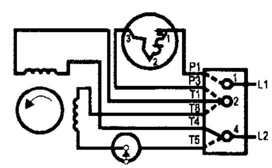
**Figure 2-20**

**Terminal Board[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-21.a**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-21.b**

---

1 Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

2 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

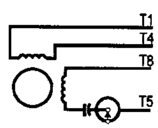
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.48 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR CAPACITOR-START MOTORS—REVERSIBLE

### 2.48.1 Single-Voltage Capacitor-start Motors—Reversible

#### 2.48.1.1 Without Thermal Protector[1]

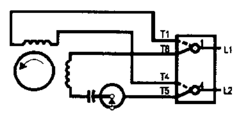
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 |
|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1,T8 | T4,T5 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1,T5 | T4,T8 |

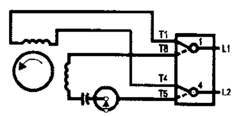
**Figure 2-22**

**Terminal Board[2]**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-23.a**

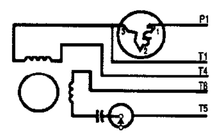


To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-23.b**

#### 2.48.1.2 With thermal Protector[1]

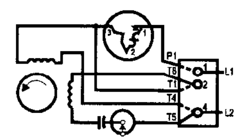
**Line Leads**



| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T5 | T1,T8 |
| Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T8 | T1,T5 |

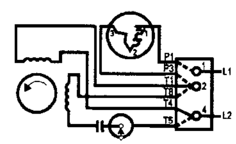
**Figure 2-24**

**Terminal Board[2]**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-25.a**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-25.b**

1 Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

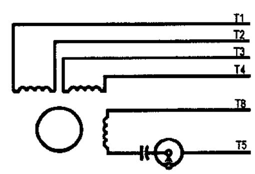
2 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.48.2 Dual-Voltage Capacitor-start Motors —Reversible

### 2.48.2.1 Dual-Voltage—Without Thermal Protection[1]

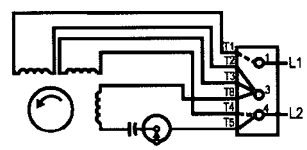
**Line Leads**




| | | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Higher name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | T1 | T4, T5 | T2, T3, and T8 |
| | Clockwise rotation | T1 | T4, T8 | T2, T3, and T5 |
| Lower name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | T1, T3, T8 | T2, T4 T5 | |
| | Clockwise rotation | T1, T3, T5 | T2, T4 T8 | |

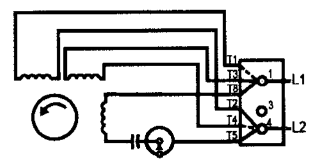
**Figure 2-26**

**Terminal Board[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

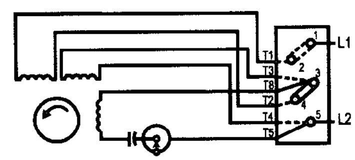
**Figure 2-27.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

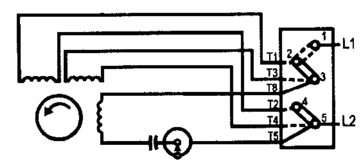
**Figure 2-27.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

**Terminal Board with Links[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-28.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-28.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

1 Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

2 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

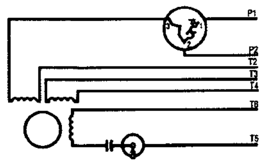
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.48.2.2 Dual-Voltage—With Thermal Protector

The design proportions for dual-voltage reversible capacitor-start motors are such that three different groups of diagrams are necessary to show the means for obtaining adequate protection for these motors. These three groups of diagrams (I, II, and III) insert the thermal protector at different points in the circuit; therefore, different currents are provided to actuate the thermal protector.

#### 2.48.2.2.1 Group I—Dual-Voltage—With Thermal Protector[1]

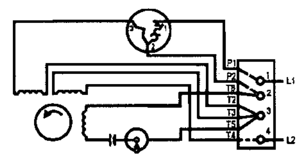
**Line Leads**



| | | L1 | L2 | Join | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Higher name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4 | P2, T8 | T2, T3, and T5 |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4 | P2, T5 | T2, T3, and T8 |
| Lower name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T2, T4 T5 | P2, T3 and T8 | ... |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T2, T4 T8 | P2, T3 and T5 | ... |

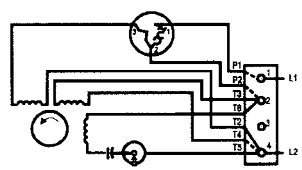
**Figure 2-29**

**Terminal Board[2,3]**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

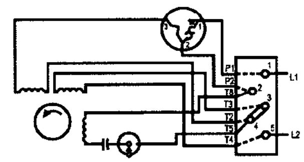
**Figure 2-30.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

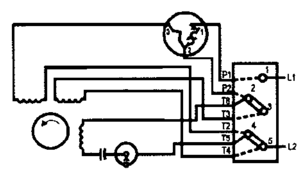
**Figure 2-30.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

**Terminal Board with Links[2]**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-31.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**



To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-31.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

1 Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

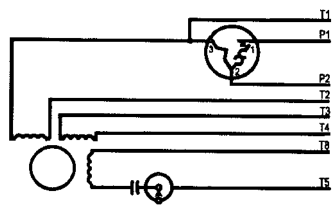
2 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

3 Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.48.2.2.2 Group II—Dual Voltage—With Thermal Protector[1]

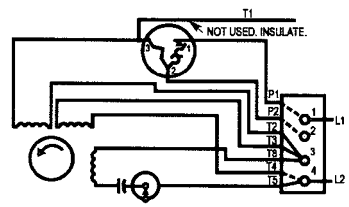
### Line Leads




| | | L1 | L2 | Join | Join | Insulate Separately |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Higher name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T5 | T2, T3 and T8 | ... | P2, T1 |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T8 | T2, T3 and T5 | ... | P2, T1 |
| Lower name-plate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T2,T4 T5 | P2, T3 | T1,T8 | ... |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T2,T4 T8 | P2, T3 | T1,T5, | ... |

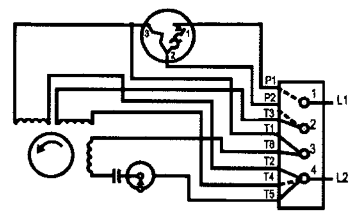
**Figure 2-32**

### Terminal Board [2,3]




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

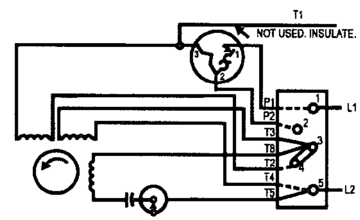
**Figure 2-33.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

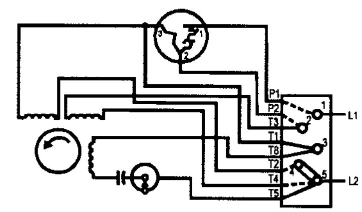
**Figure 2-33.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

### Terminal Board with Links[2]




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-34.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-34.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

[1] Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

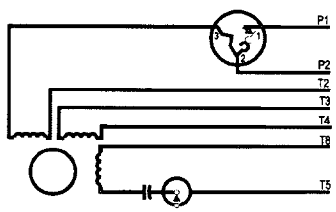
[2] Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

[3] Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.48.2.2.3 Group III—Dual Voltage—With Thermal Protector[1]

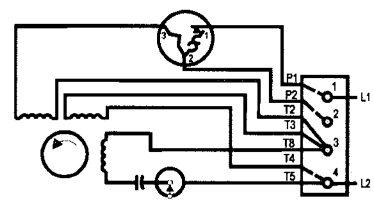
**Line Leads**




| | | L1 | L2 | Join | Insulate Separately |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Higher nameplate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T5 | T2, T3 and T8 | P2 |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4,T8 | T2, T3 and T5 | P2 |
| Lower nameplate voltage | Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T2, T4 T5 | P2, T3 and T8 | ... |
| | Clockwise rotation | P1 | T2, T4 T8 | P2, T3 and T5 | ... |

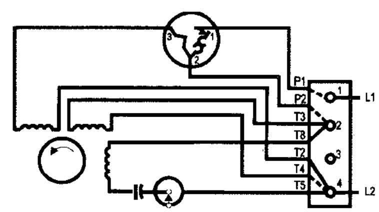
**Figure 2-35**

**Terminal Board[2,3]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

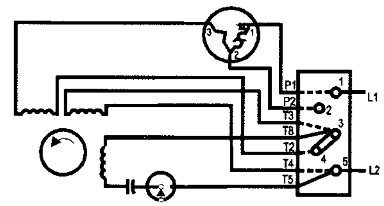
**Figure 2-36.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

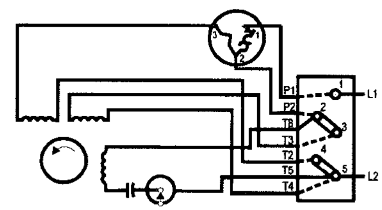
**Figure 2-36.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

**Terminal Board with Links[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-37.a**
**HIGHER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-37.b**
**LOWER NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE**

1 Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

2 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

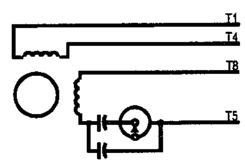
3 Proper connection depends upon design of motor and thermal protector; refer to motor manufacturers' information for proper diagram.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.49 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR TWO-VALUE CAPACITOR MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE

### 2.49.1 Without Thermal Protector[1]

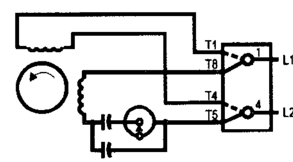
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 |
|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1, T8 | T4, T5 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1, T5 | T4, T8 |

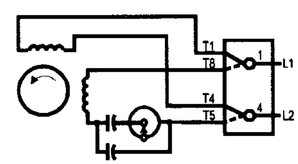
**Figure 2-38**

**Terminal Board[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-39.a**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-39.b**

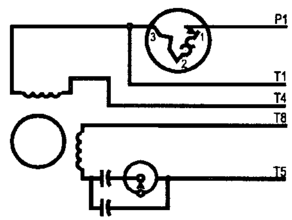
[1] Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

[2] Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.49.2 With Thermal Protector[1]

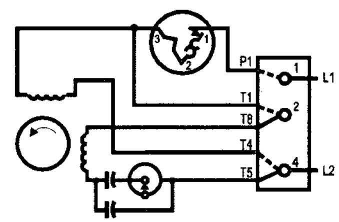
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | P1 | T4, T5 | T1, T8 |
| Clockwise rotation | P1 | T4, T8 | T1, T5 |

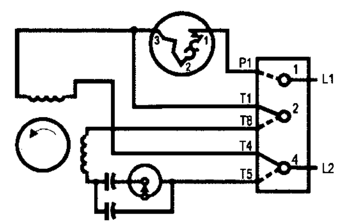
**Figure 2-40**

**Terminal Board[2]**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-41.a**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-41.b**

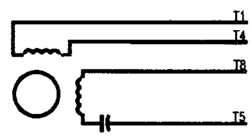
[1] Motor starting switch shown in running position. All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

[2] Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.50 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE—REVERSIBLE[1] [2]

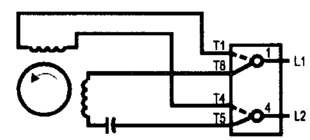
**Line Leads**




| | L1 | L2 |
|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1, T8 | T4, T5 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1, T5 | T4, T8 |

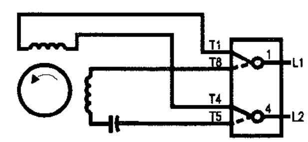
**Figure 2-42**

**Terminal Board**[3]




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T5 and T8.

**Figure 2-43.a**




To obtain clockwise rotation, interchange leads T1 and T4.

**Figure 2-43.b**

---

1 All directions of rotation shown are facing the end opposite the drive end.

2 There are other terminal markings for definite-purpose permanent-split capacitor motors; see Part 18.

3 Terminal boards are shown viewed from the front. Dotted lines indicate permanent connection.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.51 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR UNIVERSAL MOTORS—SINGLE VOLTAGE

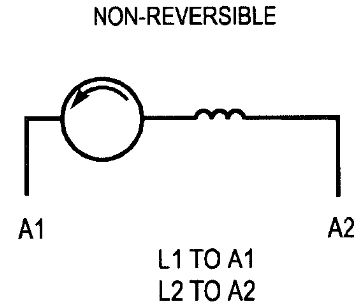
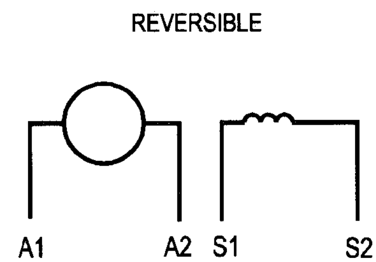



**Figure 2-44.a**




| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | A1 | S2 | A2,S1 |
| Clockwise rotation | A1 | S1 | A2,S2 |

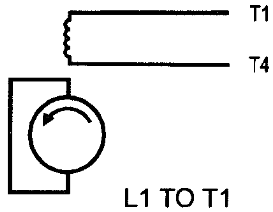
**Figure 2-44.b**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.52 SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS FOR REPULSION, REPULSION-START INDUCTION, AND REPULSION-INDUCTION MOTORS

**Reversible by Shifting Brushes**

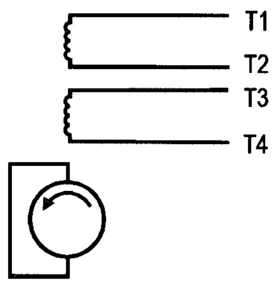
SINGLE VOLTAGE




L1 TO T1
L2 TO T4

**Figure 2-45.a**

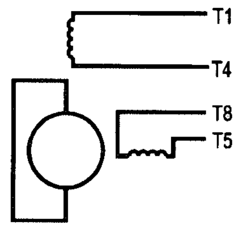
DUAL VOLTAGE




| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Higher nameplate voltage | T1 | T4 | T2,T3 |
| Lower nameplate voltage | T1,T3 | T2,T4 | ... |

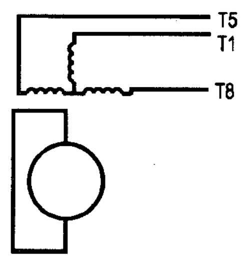
**Figure 2-45.b**

**Single Voltage – Externally Reversible**




| | L1 | L2 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1 | T5 | T4, T8 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1 | T8 | T4, T5 |

**Figure 2-46.a**

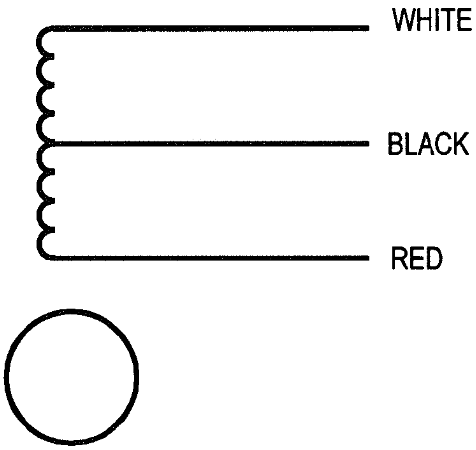



| | L1 | L2 | Insulate |
|---|---|---|---|
| Counter-clockwise rotation | T1 | T5 | T8 |
| Clockwise rotation | T1 | T8 | T5 |

**Figure 2-46.b**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.53 SHADED-POLE MOTORS – TWO SPEED




| | L1 | L2 | Open |
|---|---|---|---|
| High Speed | White | Black | Red |
| Low Speed | White | Red | Black |

**Figure 2-47**

## POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

### 2.60 GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

#### 2.60.1 Method of Marking

#### 2.60.1.1 Terminal Markings Using "T"

The markings of the terminals of a motor serve their purpose best if they indicate the electrical relations between the several circuits within the motor. The windings of a motor are seldom accessible, and the arrangement of the terminal numbers varies with the combinations of connections which are required. However, if a definite system of numbering is used, the marking of the terminals may be made to tell the exact relations of the windings within the motor. As far as practicable, 2.61 is formulated to embody such a system, which system employs as one of its fundamental points a clockwise rotating spiral with T1 at the outer end and finishing with the highest number at its inner end as a means for determining the sequence of the numerals. See Figure 2-48A. Such numbering of the terminals on polyphase induction motors does not imply standardization of the direction of rotation of the motor shaft.

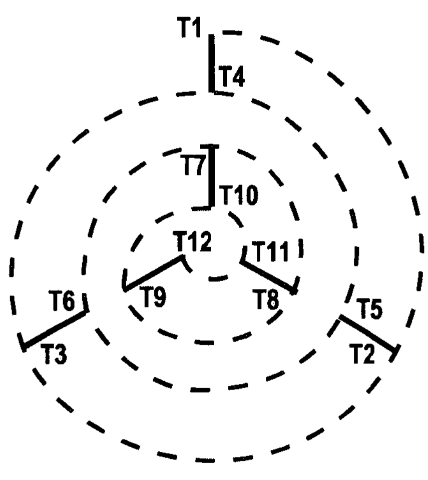



**Figure 2-48A**
**CLOCKWISE ROTATING SPIRAL WITH T1 AT THE OUTER END**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**2.60.1.2 Terminal Markings in Accordance with IEC 60034-8 Using U, V, W**

When terminal markings are required to be in accordance with IEC 60034-8, they can be per 2.60.1.2 instead, (for single speed only), or in addition to those as numbered in 2.60.1.1. The markings of the terminals of a motor serve their purpose best if they indicate the electrical relations between the several circuits within the motor. The windings of a motor are seldom accessible and the arrangement of the terminal numbers varies with the combinations of connections which are required. However, if a definite system of numbering is used the marking of the terminals may be made to tell the exact relations of the windings within the motor. As far as practicable, 2.60 is formulated to embody such a system, which system employs as one of its fundamental points a clockwise rotating spiral with U1 at the outer end followed by V1 and W1 and finishing with the highest number for W at its inner end as a means for determining the sequence of the numerals. See Figure 2-48B in contrast to terminal marking shown in Figure 2-48A. The numbering of the terminals on polyphase induction motors in accordance with IEC 60034-8 does imply standardization of the direction of the rotation of the motor shaft as described in 2.24 The terminal marking in Figure 2-48B can be appropriately substituted for those shown in Figure 2-48A, when used as described in Figures 2-49 through 2-57.

Motors having three leads may be marked U, V, W with the numeral 1 omitted.

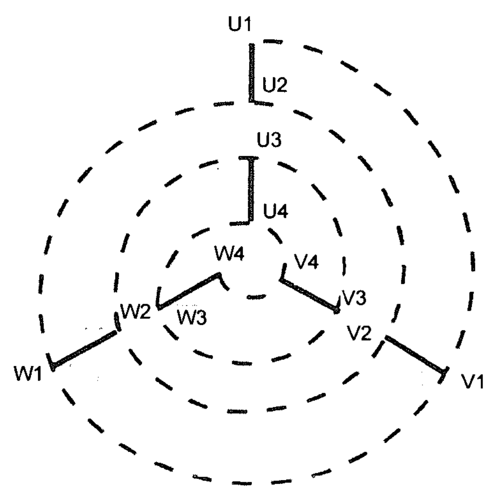



**FIGURE 2-48B**

**CLOCKWISE ROTATING SPIRAL WITH U1 AT THE OUTER END, SAME AS 2-48A EXCEPT USING TERMINAL MARKINGS IN ACCORDANCE WITH IEC 60034-8.**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.60.2 Three-Phase, Two Speed Motors

For three-phase motors having two synchronous speeds obtained from a reconnectible winding it is undesirable to adhere to the clockwise system of numbering for all terminals as this would cause the motor to run with clockwise shaft rotation on one speed and counterclockwise on the other speed if the power lines are connected to each set of terminals in the same sequence. This feature may be considered an advantage as a winding with part of its terminals following a clockwise sequence and part following a counterclockwise sequence can be recognized immediately as a two-speed motor with a reconnectible winding.

### 2.60.3 Two-Phase Motors

For two-phase motors, the terminal markings are such that all odd numbers are in one phase and all even numbers are in the other phase. The markings of all motors except those for two-speed motors using a single reconnectible winding are based, as are three-phase windings, on a clockwise spiral system of rotation in the sequence of terminal numbering.

## 2.61 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE SINGLE-SPEED INDUCTION MOTORS

The terminal markings for three-phase single-speed induction motors shall be as shown in Figures 2-49, 2-50, 2-51, and 2-52. These terminal markings were developed in accordance with the following procedure which shall be used in developing terminal markings for other combinations of motor stator circuits:

### 2.61.1 First

A schematic phasor diagram shall be drawn showing an inverted Y connection with the individual circuits in each phase arranged for series connection with correct polarity relation of circuits. The diagram for two circuits per phase, for example, is as shown in Figure 2-53.

### 2.61.2 Second

Starting with T1 or U1 at the outside and top of the diagram, the ends of the circuit shall be numbered consecutively in a clockwise direction proceeding on a spiral towards the center of the diagram. For two circuits per phase, for example, the terminals are marked as shown in Figure 2-48A or 2-48B.

### 2.61.3 Third

A schematic phasor diagram shall be drawn showing the particular interconnection of circuits for the motor under consideration, and the terminal markings determined in accordance with 2.61.1 and 2.61.2 shall be arranged to give the correct polarity relation of circuits. For example, if the winding shown in Figure 2-48 A or 2-48B is to be connected with two circuits in multiple per phase, the diagram and markings shall be as shown in Figure 2-54.

### 2.61.4 Fourth

The highest numbers shall be dropped and only the lowest number shall be retained where two or more terminals are permanently connected together. For example, if the winding shown in Figure 2-54 is to have two circuits in each phase permanently connected together with three line leads and three neutral leads brought out, the terminal marking shall be as shown in Figure 2-55 or, if the winding shown in Figures 2-48A or 2-48B is to be arranged for either a series or a multiple connection with the neutral point brought out, the vector diagram and terminal markings shall be as shown in Figure 2-56.

### 2.61.5 Fifth

Where the ends of three coils are connected together to form a permanent neutral, the terminal markings of the three leads so connected shall be dropped. If the neutral point is brought out, it shall always be marked TO. See Figure 2-56.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.61.6 Sixth

If a winding is to be delta-connected, the inverted Y diagram (Figure 2-53) shall be rotated 30 degrees counter-clockwise. T1 or U shall be assigned to the outer end of the top leg and the balance of the numbering in accordance with 2.60.1.1 and Figure 2-48A or in accordance with 2.60.1.2 and Figure 2-48B. A schematic delta shall then be constructed in which the T1 or U leg of the rotated Y becomes the right hand side of the delta, the T2 or V leg becomes the bottom (horizontal) side, and the T3 or W leg becomes the left side of the delta. 2.60.1.1 or 2.60.1.2 shall be applied insofar as it applies to a delta connection. See Figure 2-57.

## 2.62 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR Y- AND DELTA-CONNECTED DUAL VOLTAGE MOTORS

Figures 2-49 through 2-52 illustrate the application of 2.61 in determining terminal markings of Y- and delta-connected dual-voltage motors.

## 2.63 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE TWO-SPEED SINGLE-WINDING INDUCTION MOTORS

The general principles for terminal markings for polyphase induction motors given in 2.60.1.1 are not applicable to three-phase two-speed single-winding induction motors because, if followed and the terminals are connected in the same sequence, the direction of rotation at the two speeds will be different.

## 2.64 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR Y- AND DELTA-CONNECTED THREE-PHASE TWO-SPEED SINGLE-WINDING MOTORS

The terminal markings for Y- and delta-connected three-phase two-speed single-winding three-phase induction motors shall be in accordance with Figures 2-58 through 2-62.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

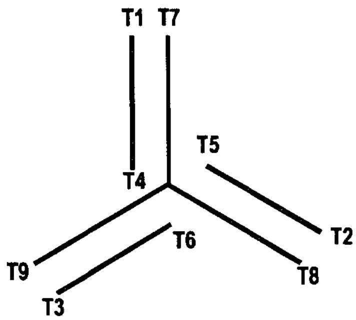



**Figure 2-49**
**Y-CONNECTED, DUAL VOLTAGE**

| Voltage | L1 | L2 | L3 | Join | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | (T1,T7) | (T2,T8) | (T3,T9) | ... | (T4,T5,T6) | ... |
| High | T1 | T2 | T3 | (T4,T7) | (T5,T8) | (T6,T9) |

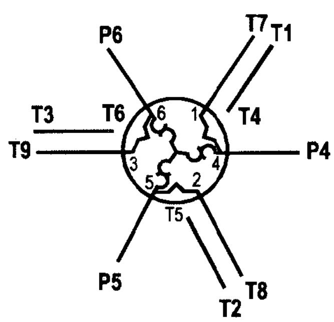



**Figure 2-50**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE DUAL-VOLTAGE SINGLE-SPEED INDUCTION MOTOR WITH PROTECTOR IN NEUTRAL**

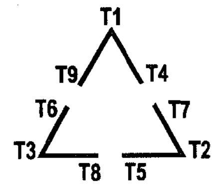



**Figure 2-51**
**DELTA-CONNECTED, DUAL VOLTAGE**

| Voltage | L1 | L2 | L3 | Join | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | (T1,T6,T7) | (T2,T4,T8) | (T3,T5,T9) | ... | ... | ... |
| High | T1 | T2 | T3 | (T4,T7) | (T5,T8) | (T6,T9) |

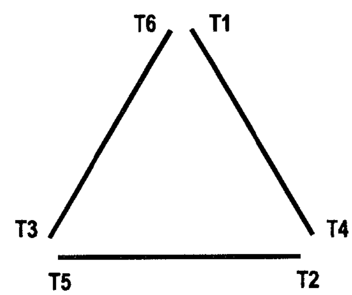



**Figure 2-52**
**Y-CONNECTED START, DELTA-CONNECTED RUN, SINGLE VOLTAGE**

| | L1 | L2 | L3 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Start | T1 | T2 | T3 | (T4,T5,T6) |
| Run | (T1,T6) | (T2,T4) | (T3,T5) | ... |

**Y-DELTA-CONNECTED, DUAL VOLTAGE**
**(VOLTAGE RATIO $\sqrt{3}$ TO 1)**

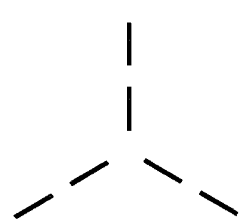


**Figure 2-53**
**DIAGRAM FOR TWO CURCUITS PER PHASE**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

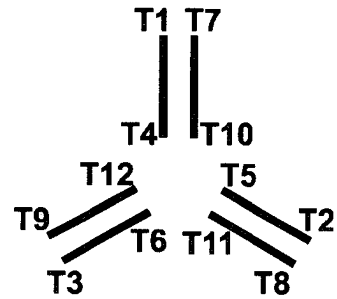



**Figure 2-54**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR TWO CIRCUITS IN MULTIPLE PER PHASE**

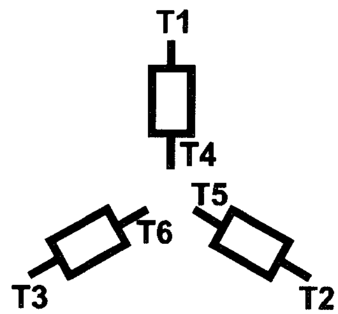



**Figure 2-55**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR TWO CIRCUITS IN MULTIPLE PER PHASE, PERMANENTLY CONNECTED**

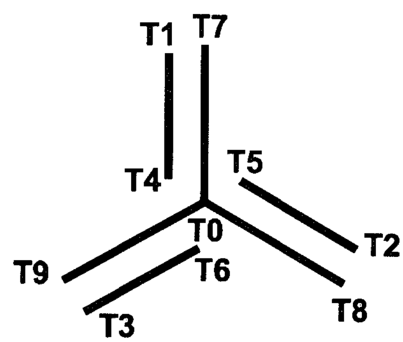



**Figure 2-56**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS WITH NEUTRAL POINT BROUGHT OUT**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

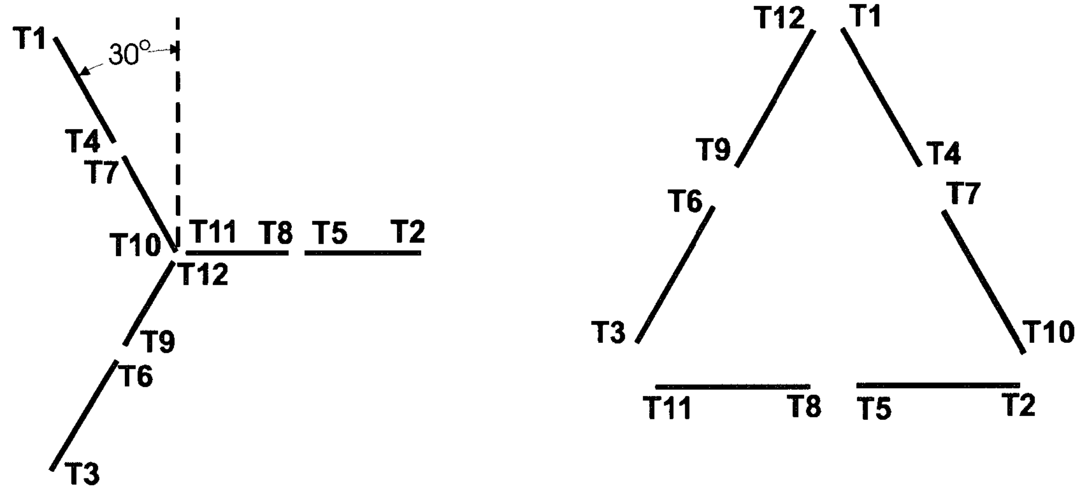



**Figure 2-57**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR TWO CIRCUITS PER PHASE, DELTA CONNECTED**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

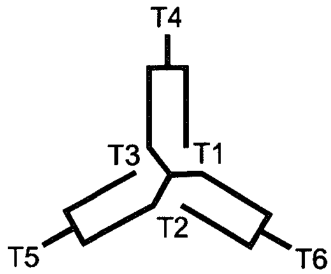



**Figure 2-58**
**VARIABLE TORQUE MOTORS FOR ONE OR MORE WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | T4-T5-T6 | ... |
| High | T6 | T4 | T5 | ... | (T1, T2, T3) |

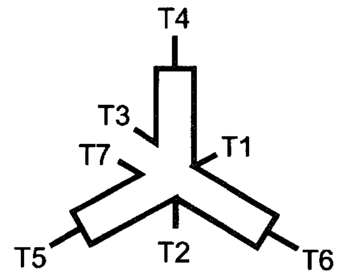



**Figure 2-60**
**CONSTANT TORQUE MOTORS FOR TWO OR MORE INDEPENDENT WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | (T3, T7) | T4-T5-T6 | ... |
| High | T6 | T4 | T5 | ... | (T1, T2, T3, T7) |

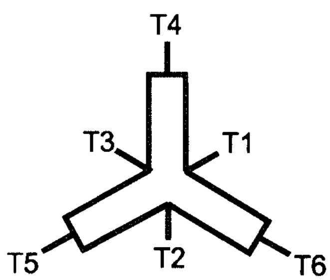



**Figure 2-59**
**CONSTANT TORQUE MOTORS FOR SINGLE WINDING ONLY**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | T4-T5-T6 | ... |
| High | T6 | T4 | T5 | ... | (T1, T2, T3) |

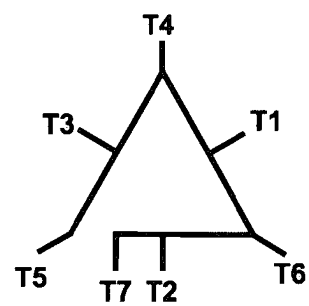



**Figure 2-61**
**CONSTANT HORSEPOWER MOTORS FOR TWO OR MORE INDEPENDENT WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | ... | (T4, T5, T6, T7) |
| High | T6 | T4 | (T5, T7) | T1-T2-T3 | ... |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

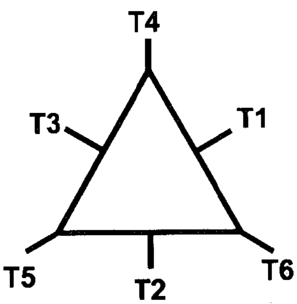



**Figure 2-62**
**CONSTANT HORSEPOWER MOTORS FOR SINGLE WINDING ONLY**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | ... | (T4, T5, T6) |
| High | T6 | T4 | T5 | T1-T2-T3 | ... |

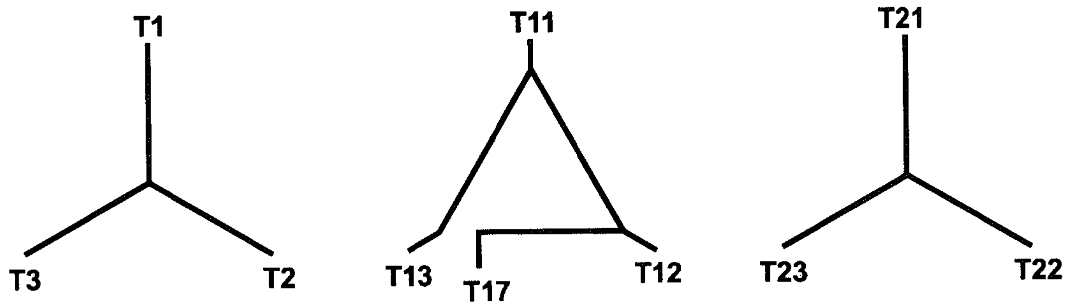



**Figure 2-63**
**THREE-SPEED MOTOR USING THREE WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | T11-T12-T13-T17-T21-T22-T23 | ... |
| Second | T11 | T12 | (T13, T17) | T1-T2-T3-T21-T22-T23 | ... |
| High | T21 | T22 | T23 | T1-T2-T3-T11-T12-T13-T17 | ... |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

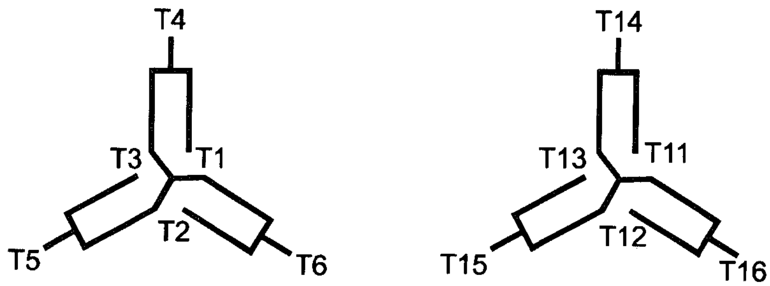



**Figure 2-64**
**FOUR-SPEED MOTOR USING TWO WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | T3 | T4-T5-T6-T11-T12-T13-T14-T15-T16 | ... |
| Second | T11 | T12 | T13 | T1-T2-T3-T4-T5-T6-T14-T15-T16 | ... |
| Third | T6 | T4 | T5 | T11-T12-T13-T14-T15-T16 | (T1, T2, T3) |
| High | T16 | T14 | T15 | T1-T2-T3-T4-T5-T6 | (T11, T12, T13) |

## 2.65 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR THREE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS HAVING TWO OR MORE SYNCHRONOUS SPEEDS OBTAINED FROM TWO OR MORE INDEPENDENT WINDINGS

### 2.65.1 Each Independent Winding Giving One Speed

The winding giving the lowest speed shall take the same terminal markings as determined from 2.61 for the particular winding used. The terminal markings for the higher speed windings shall be obtained by adding 10, 20, or 30, etc., to the terminal markings as determined from 2.61 for the particular winding used, the sequences being determined by progressing each time to the next higher speed. The terminal markings for a three speed motor using three windings are given in Figure 2-63.

### 2.65.2 Each Independent Winding Reconnectible to Give Two Synchronous Speeds

#### 2.65.2.1 First

Phasor diagrams of the windings to be used shall be drawn and each winding given the terminal markings shown in accordance with Figures 2-58 through 2-60. The neutral terminal, if brought out, shall be marked TO.

#### 2.65.2.2 Second

No change shall be made in any of the terminal markings of the winding giving the lowest speed, irrespective of whether the other speed obtained from this winding is an intermediate or the highest speed.

#### 2.65.2.3 Third

Ten shall be added to all terminal markings of the winding giving the next higher speed, and an additional 10 shall be added to all the terminal markings for each consecutively higher speed winding. An example of terminal markings for a four-speed motor using two windings are given in Figure 2-64.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 2.65.3 Two or More Independent Windings at Least One of Which Gives One Synchronous Speed and the Other Winding Gives Two Synchronous Speeds

#### 2.65.3.1 First

Each winding shall be given the markings determined in accordance with 2.65.2.1.

#### 2.65.3.2 Second

No change shall be made in any of the terminal markings of the winding giving the lowest speed.

#### 2.65.3.3 Third

Ten shall be added to all terminal markings of the winding giving the next higher speed, and an additional 10 shall be added to all the terminal markings for each consecutively higher speed winding. A typical marking for a three-speed motor using two windings where one of the windings is used for the high speed only is given in Figure 2-65.

NOTES

1—If, under any of the provisions of this standard, the addition of 10, 20, 30, etc. to the basic terminal markings causes a duplication of markings due to more than nine leads being brought out on any one winding, then 20, 40, 60, etc. should be added instead of 10, 20, 30, etc., to obtain the markings for the higher speeds.

2—The illustrative figures in this standard apply when all leads are brought out on the same end of the motor. When one or more of the windings have some leads brought out on one end of the motor and some on the other end, the rotation of the terminal markings for leads brought out on one end may be shown on the diagram as shown in the illustrative figures, and the terminal markings for those brought out on the opposite end may be shown reversed in rotation. When diagrams use this reversed rotation of markings, an explanatory note should be included for the benefit of the control manufacturer and user to inform them that, when L1, L2, and L3 are connected to any winding with the same sequence of numbers (T1, T2, T3; or T4, T5, T6; or T11, T12, T13, etc.), the shaft rotation will be the same.

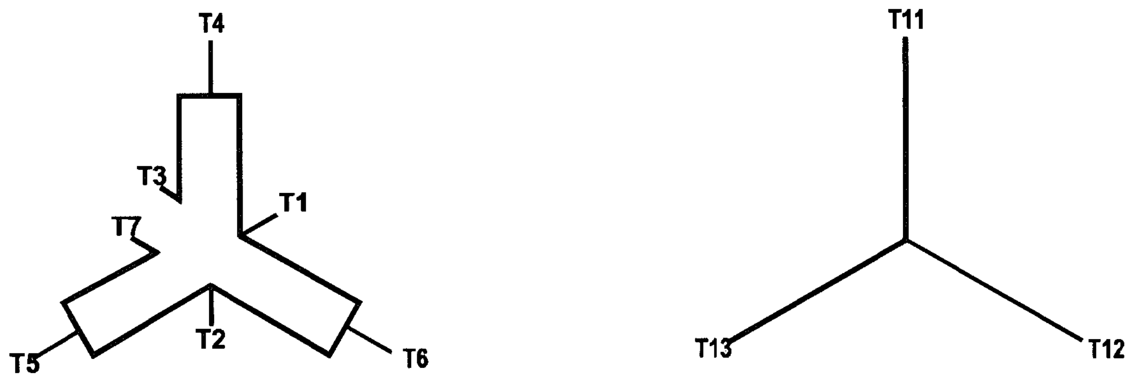



**Figure 2-65**
**THREE-SPEED MOTOR USING TWO WINDINGS**

| Speed | L1 | L2 | L3 | Insulate Separately | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | T1 | T2 | (T3, T7) | T4-T5-T6-T11-T12-T13 | ... |
| Second | T6 | T4 | T5 | T11-T12-T13 | (T1,T2,T3,T7) |
| High | T11 | T12 | T13 | T1-T2-T3-T4-T5-T6-T7 | ... |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 2.66 TERMINAL MARKINGS OF THE ROTORS OF WOUND-ROTOR INDUCTION MOTORS

See Figures 2-66 and 2-67.

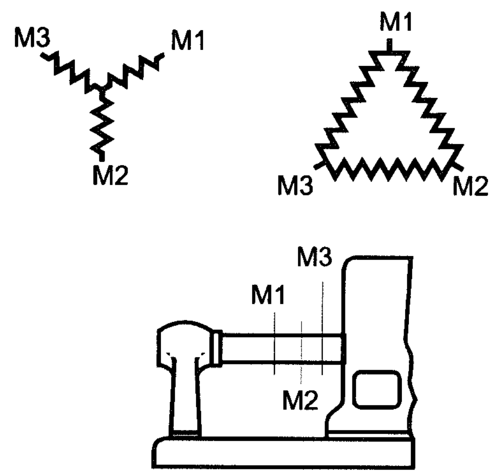



**Figure 2-66**
**THREE-PHASE WOUND ROTOR**

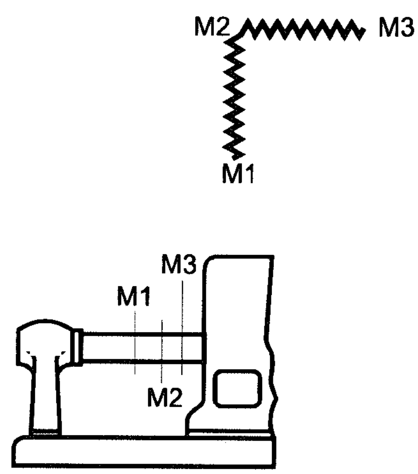



**Figure 2-67**
**TWO-PHASE WOUND ROTOR**

## AUXILIARY DEVICES

### 2.67 TERMINAL MARKINGS

#### 2.67.1 General

All auxiliary devices with more than two terminals shall have connecting instructions.

Each auxiliary circuit shall be assigned a letter symbol(s).

#### 2.67.2 Auxiliary terminal marking rules

The marking of auxiliary terminals shall be according to 2.67.1, with 2.2 identifying the type of auxiliary device, together with

- a numerical prefix identifying the individual circuit or device;
- a numerical suffix identifying the lead function.

The addition of letters and/or numbers to the auxiliary symbol shall wherever possible, be based on the rules given in 2.67.1.

When there is a large number of terminals for a given type of device (e.g., thermocouples), the leads may be grouped by device code and the terminals identified by a prefix (1-99) and followed by a single digit suffix (1-9).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

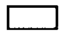
The manufacturer should identify the function of these devices in the written instructions.

When only one device of a certain type exists, the prefix may be omitted.

### 2.67.3 Examples of Marking

#### 2.67.3.1 Power related devices

Devices such as BA, BD, BW, CA, DC, HE, LA, SC and SP shall be marked and connected in accordance with 2.67.3.1.1 to 2.67.3.1.4 where

** indicates the device coding and  represents the device.

##### 2.67.3.1.1 Single-phase, single voltage

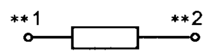



**Figure 2-68 – Single-phase, single voltage**

| L1 | L2 |
|---|---|
| **1 | **2 |

##### 2.67.3.1.2 Single-phase, dual voltage

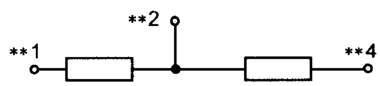



**Figure 2-69 – Single-phase dual voltage**

| Voltage | L1 | L2 | Join | Isolate |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| High | **1 | **4 | - | **2 |
| Low | **1 | **2 | [**1, **4] | - |

##### 2.67.3.1.3 Three-phase, single voltage


**Figure 2-70 – Three-phase, single voltage**

| L1 | L2 | L3 | Connection |
|---|---|---|---|
| **T1 | **T2 | **T3 | Delta |

| L1 | L2 | L3 | Connection |
|---|---|---|---|
| **T1 | **T2 | **T3 | Y |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**2.67.3.1.4 Three-phase, dual voltage**

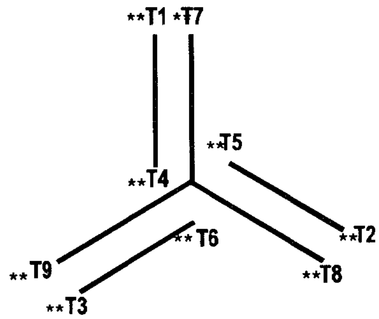



**Figure 2-71**
**Y-CONNECTED, DUAL VOLTAGE**

| Voltage | L1 | L2 | L3 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | (**T1,**T7) | (**T2,**T8) | (**T3,**T9) | ... (**T4,**T5,**T6) ... |
| High | **T1 | **T2 | **T3 | (**T4,**T7) (**T5,**T8) (**T6,**T9) |

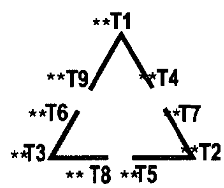



**Figure 2-72**
**DELTA-CONNECTED, DUAL VOLTAGE**

| Voltage | L1 | L2 | L3 | Join |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | (**T1,**T6,**T7) | (**T2,**T4,**T8) | (**T3,**T5,**T9) | ... ... ... |
| High | **T1 | **T2 | **T3 | (**T4,**T7) (**T5,**T8) (**T6,**T9) |

Alternate marking of U, V, W rather than T1, T2, T3, etc. shall be in accordance with 2.60.1.2.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 2.67.3.2 Thermal and measurement devices

Devices CT, PT, RT, TB, TC, TN, TM and TP shall be marked and connected in accordance with 2.67.3.2.1 to 2.67.3.2.3 where

** indicates the device coding and  represents the device.

NOTE: For TC devices, the leads are color coded by the manufacturer to denote polarity.

##### 2.67.3.2.1 Two-lead devices of types RT, TB, TC, TM, TN, and TP


**Figure 2-73 – Two-lead devices**

##### 2.67.3.2.2 Three-lead devices of type RT

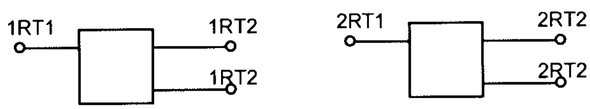



**Figure 2-74 – Three-lead devices of type RT**

Terminal *RT1 is connected to the lead on one side of the measurement bridge. One terminal *RT2 is connected to center lead and the second terminal *RT2 is connected to the opposite side lead of the measurement bridge.

##### 2.67.3.2.3 Four-lead devices of type RT

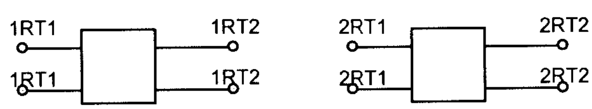



**Figure 2-75 – Four-lead devices of type RT**

The two terminals *RT1 are connected to leads on one side of the measurement bridge and the two terminals *RT2 are connected to leads on the opposite side of the measurement bridge.

#### 2.67.3.3 Switches

Switches shall be marked as shown in Figure 2-76 where * denotes the switch number.

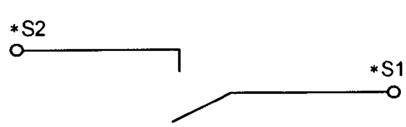



**Figure 2-76 – Switch connections**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 3

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 3
# HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

## 3.1 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

### 3.1.1 Safety

WARNING: Because of the high voltages used, high potential tests should be conducted only by trained personnel, and adequate safety precautions should be taken to avoid injury to personnel and damage to property. Tested windings should be discharged carefully to avoid injury to personnel on contact. See 2.10 in NEMA Publication No. MG 2.

### 3.1.2 Definition

High-potential tests are tests which consist of the application of a voltage higher than the rated voltage for a specified time for the purpose of determining the adequacy against breakdown of insulating materials and spacings under normal conditions.

### 3.1.3 Procedure

High-potential tests shall be made in accordance with the following applicable IEEE Publications:

a. Std 112
b. Std 113
c. Std 114
d. Std 115

### 3.1.4 Test Voltage

The high-potential test shall be made by applying a test voltage having the magnitude specified in the part of this publication that applies to the specific type of machine and rating being tested.

The frequency of the test circuit shall be 50 to 60 hertz,[1] and the effective value of the test voltage shall be the crest value of the specified test voltage divided by the square root of two. The wave shape shall have a deviation factor not exceeding 0.1.

The dielectric test should be made with a dielectric tester which will maintain the specified voltage at the terminals during the test.

### 3.1.5 Condition of Machine to be Tested

The winding being tested shall be completely assembled (see 3.1.10). The test voltage shall be applied when, and only when, the machine is in good condition and the insulation resistance is not impaired due to dirt or moisture. (See IEEE Std 43.)

### 3.1.6 Duration of Application of Test Voltage

The specified high-potential test voltage shall be applied continuously for 1 minute. Machines for which the specified test voltage is 2500 volts or less shall be permitted to be tested for 1 second at a voltage which is 1.2 times the specified 1-minute test voltage as an alternative to the 1-minute test, if desired.

To avoid excessive stressing of the insulation, repeated application of the high-potential test voltage is not recommended.

---

[1] A direct instead of an alternating voltage may be used for high-potential test. In such cases, a test voltage of 1.7 times the specified alternating voltage (effective voltage) as designated in 12.3 is required.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 3.1.7 Points of Application of Test Voltage

The high-potential test voltage shall be successively applied between each electric circuit and the frame or core. All other windings or electric circuits not under test and all external metal parts shall be connected to the frame or core. All leads of each winding, phase, or electric circuit shall be connected together, whether being tested or connected to the frame or core.

An electric circuit consists of all windings and other live parts which are conductively connected to the same power supply or load bus when starting or running. A winding which may be connected to a separate power supply, transformer, or load bus any time during normal operation is considered to be a separate circuit and must be high-potential tested separately. For example, fields of direct-current machines shall be considered to be separate circuits unless they are permanently connected in the machine. Unless otherwise stated, interconnected polyphase windings are considered as one circuit and shall be permitted to be so tested.

### 3.1.8 Accessories and Components

All accessories such as surge capacitors, lightning arresters, current transformers, etc., which have leads connected to the rotating machine terminals shall be disconnected during the test, with the leads connected together and to the frame or core. These accessories shall have been subjected to the high-potential test applicable to the class of apparatus at their point of manufacture. Capacitors of capacitor-type motors must be left connected to the winding in the normal manner for machine operation (running or starting).

a. Component devices and their circuits such as space heaters and temperature sensing devices in contact with the winding (thermostats, thermocouples, thermistors, resistance temperature detectors, etc.), connected other than in the line circuit, shall be connected to the frame or core during machine winding high-potential tests. Each of these component device circuits, with leads connected together, shall then be tested by applying a voltage between the circuit and the frame or core, equal to 1500 volts. During each device circuit test all other machine windings and components shall be connected together and to the frame or core.

When conducting a high-potential test on an assembled brushless exciter and synchronous machine field winding, the brushless circuit components (diodes, thyristors, etc.) shall be short circuited (not grounded) during the test.

### 3.1.9 Evaluation of Dielectric Failure

Insulation breakdown during the application of the high-potential test voltage shall be considered as evidence of dielectric failure, except that in the production testing of small motors dielectric failure shall be indicated by measurement of insulation resistance below a specified value (see 12.4).

### 3.1.10 Initial Test at Destination

When assembly of a winding is completed at the destination, thus precluding the possibility of making final high-potential tests at the factory, it is recommended that high-potential tests be made with the test voltages specified in the applicable section of this publication immediately after the final assembly and before the machine is put into service. The test voltage should be applied when, and only when, the machine is in good condition and the insulation resistance is not impaired due to dirt or moisture. (See IEEE Std 43.)

### 3.1.11 Tests of an Assembled Group of Machines and Apparatus

Repeated application of the foregoing test voltage is not recommended. When a motor is installed in other equipment immediately after manufacture and a high-potential test of the entire assembled motor and equipment is required, the test voltage shall not exceed 80 percent of the original test voltage or, when the motor and equipment are installed in an assembled group, the test voltage shall not exceed 80 percent of the lowest test voltage specified for that group.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 3.1.12 Additional Tests Made After Installation

When a high-potential test is made after installation on a new machine which has previously passed its high-potential test at the factory and whose windings have not since been disturbed, the test voltage shall be 75 percent of the test voltage specified in the part of this publication that applies to the type of machine and rating being tested.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 4

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 4
# DIMENSIONS, TOLERANCES, AND MOUNTING

## 4.1 LETTER SYMBOLS FOR DIMENSION SHEETS

Dimensions shall be lettered in accordance with Table 4-1. See also Figures 4-1 through 4-5.

Any letter dimension normally applying to the drive end of the machine will, when prefixed with the letter F, apply to the end opposite the drive end.

Letter dimensions other than those listed below used by individual manufacturers shall be designated by the prefix letter X followed by A, B, C, D, E, etc.

**Table 4-1**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR DIMENSION SHEETS**

| NEMA Letter | IEC Letter | Dimension Indicated |
|---|---|---|
| A | AB | Overall dimension across feet of horizontal machine (end view) |
| B | BB | Overall dimension across feet of horizontal machine (side view) |
| C | L | Overall length of single shaft extension machine (For overall length of double shaft extension machine, see letter dimension FC.) |
| D | H | Centerline of shaft to bottom of feet |
| E | ... | Centerline of shaft to centerline of mounting holes in feet (end view) |
| 2E | A | Distance between centerlines of mounting holes in feet or base of machine (end view) |
| 2F | B | Distance between centerlines of mounting holes in feet or base of machine (side view) |
| G | HA | Thickness of mounting foot at H hole or slot |
| H | K | Diameter of holes or width of slot in feet of machine |
| J | AA | Width of mounting foot at mounting surface |
| K | BA | Length of mounting foot at mounting surface |
| N | ... | Length of shaft from end of housing to end of shaft, drive end |
| N-W | E | Length of the shaft extension from the shoulder at drive end |
| O | HC | Top of horizontal machine to bottom of feet |
| P | AC | Maximum width of machine (end view) including pole bells, fins, etc., but excluding terminal housing, lifting devices, feet, and outside diameter of face or flange |
| R | G | Bottom of keyseat or flat to bottom side of shaft or bore |
| S | F | Width of keyseat |
| T | HD-HC | Height of lifting eye, terminal box, or other salient part above the surface of the machine. |
| T+O | HD | Distance from the top of the lifting eye, the terminal box or other most salient part mounted on the top of the machine to the bottom of the feet |
| U | D | Diameter of shaft extension. (For tapered shaft, this is diameter at a distance V from the threaded portion of the shaft.) |
| U-R | GE | Depth of the keyway at the crown of the shaft extension at drive end |
| V | ... | Length of shaft available for coupling, pinion, or pulley hub, drive end. (On a straight shaft extension, this is a minimum value.) |
| W | ... | For straight and tapered shaft, end of housing to shoulder. (For shaft extensions without shoulders, it is a clearance to allow for all manufacturing variations in parts and assembly.) |
| X | .. | Length of hub of pinion when using full length of taper, drive end |
| Y | ... | Distance from end of shaft to outer end of taper, drive end |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-1 (*Continued*)**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR DIMENSION SHEETS**

| NEMA Letter | IEC Letter | Dimension Indicated |
|---|---|---|
| Z | ... | Width across corners of nut or diameter of washer, or tapered shaft, drive end |
| AA | ... | Threaded or clearance hole for external conduit entrance (expressed in conduit size) to terminal housing |
| AB | AD | Centerline of shaft to extreme outside part of terminal housing (end view) |
| AC | ... | Centerline of shaft to centerline of hole AA in terminal housing (end view) |
| AD | ... | Centerline of terminal housing mounting to centerline of hole AA (side view) |
| AE | ... | Centerline of terminal housing mounting to bottom of feet (end view) |
| AF | ... | Centerline of terminal housing mounting to hole AA (end view) |
| AG | LB | Mounting surface of face, flange, or base of machine to opposite end of housing (side view) |
| AH | E+R | Mounting surface of face, flange, or base of machine to end of shaft |
| AJ | M | Diameter of mounting bolt circle in face, flange, or base of machine |
| AK | N | Diameter of male or female pilot on face, flange, or base of machine |
| AL | ... | Overall length of sliding base or rail |
| AM | ... | Overall width of sliding base or outside dimensions of rails |
| AN | ... | Distance from centerline of machine to bottom of sliding base or rails |
| AO | ... | Centerline of sliding base or rail to centerline of mounting bolt holes (end view) |
| AP | ... | Centerline of sliding base or rails to centerline of inner mounting bolt holes (motor end view) |
| AR | ... | Distance between centerlines of mounting holes in sliding base or distance between centerlines of rail mounting bolt holes (side view) |
| AT | ... | Thickness of sliding base or rail foot |
| AU | ... | Size of mounting holes in sliding base or rail |
| AV | ... | Bottom of sliding base or rail to top of horizontal machine |
| AW | ... | Centerline of rail or base mounting hole to centerline of adjacent motor mounting bolt |
| AX | ... | Height of sliding base or rail |
| AY | ... | Maximum extension of sliding base (or rail) adjusting screw |
| AZ | ... | Width of slide rail |
| BA | C | Centerline of mounting hole in nearest foot to the shoulder on drive end shaft (For machines without a shaft shoulder, it is the centerline of mounting hole in nearest foot to the housing side of N-W dimension.) |
| BB | T | Depth of male or female pilot of mounting face, flange, or base of machine |
| BC | R | Distance between mounting surface of face, flange, or base of machine to shoulder on shaft. (For machine without a shaft shoulder, it is the distance between the mounting surface of face, flange, or base of machine to housing side of N-W dimension) |
| BD | P | Outside diameter of mounting face, flange or base of machine |
| BE | LA | Thickness of mounting flange or base of machine |
| BF | S | Threaded or clearance hole in mounting face, flange, or base of machine |
| BH | ... | Outside diameter of core or shell (side view) |
| BJ | ... | Overall length of coils (side view). Actual dimensions shall be permitted to be less depending on the number of poles and winding construction |
| BK | ... | Distance from centerline of stator to lead end of coils |
| BL | · | Diameter over coils, both ends (BL = two times maximum radius) |
| BM | ... | Overall length of stator shell |
| BN | ... | Diameter of stator bore |
| BO | ... | Length of rotor at bore |
| BP | ... | Length of rotor over fans |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-1 (*Continued*)**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR DIMENSION SHEETS**

| NEMA Letter | IEC Letter | Dimension Indicated |
|---|---|---|
| BR | ... | Diameter of finished surface or collar at ends of rotor |
| BS | ... | Centerline of foot mounting hole, shaft end, to centerline of terminal housing mounting (side view) |
| BT | ... | Movement of horizontal motor on base or rail |
| BU | ... | Angle between centerline of terminal housing mounting and reference centerline of motor (end view) |
| BV | ... | Centerline of terminal housing mounting to mounting surface of face or flange (side view) |
| BW | ... | Inside diameter of rotor fan or end ring for shell-type and hermetic motors |
| BX | ... | Diameter of bore in top drive coupling for hollow-shaft vertical motor |
| BY | ... | Diameter of mounting holes in top drive coupling for hollow-shaft vertical motor |
| BZ | ... | Diameter of bolt circle for mounting holes in top drive coupling for hollow-shaft vertical motor |
| CA | ... | Rotor bore diameter |
| CB | ... | Rotor counterbore diameter |
| CC | ... | Depth of rotor counterbore |
| CD | ... | Distance from the top coupling to the bottom of the base on Type P vertical motors. |
| CE | ... | Overall diameter of mounting lugs |
| CF | ... | Distance from the end of the stator shell to the end of the motor quill at compressor end. Where either the shell or quill is omitted, the dimension refers to the driven load end of the core. |
| CG | ... | Distance from the end of the stator shell to the end of the stator coil at compressor end. |
| CH | ... | Distance from the end of the stator shell to the end of the stator coil at end opposite the compressor. |
| CL | ... | Distance between clamp-bolt centers for two-hole clamping of universal motor stator cores. |
| CO | ... | Clearance hole for maximum size of clamp bolts for clamping universal motor stator cores. |
| DB | ... | Outside diameter of rotor core. |
| DC | ... | Distance from the end of stator shell (driven load end) to the end of rotor fan or end ring (driven load end). Where the shell is omitted, the dimensions is to the driven load end of the stator core. |
| DD | ... | Distance from the end of stator shell (driven load end) to the end of rotor fan or end ring (driven load end). Where the shell is omitted, the dimension is to the driven load end of the stator core. |
| DE | ... | Diameter inside coils, both ends (DE = 2 times minimum radius). |
| DF | ... | Distance from driven load end of stator core or shell to centerline of mounting hole in lead clip or end of lead if no clip is used. |
| DG | ... | Distance from driven load end of stator core or shell to end of stator coil (opposite driven load end). |
| DH | ... | Centerline of foot mounting hole (shaft end) to centerline of secondary terminal housing mounting (side view). |
| DJ | ... | Centerline of secondary lead terminal housing inlet to bottom of feet (horizontal). |
| DK | ... | Center of machine to centerline of hole "DM" for secondary lead conduit entrance (end view). |
| DL | ... | Centerline of secondary lead terminal housing inlet to entrance for conduit. |
| DM | ... | Diameter of conduit (pipe size) for secondary lead terminal housing. |
| DN | ... | Distance from the end of stator shell to the bottom of rotor counterbore (driven load end). Where the shell is omitted, the dimension is to the driven load end of the stator core. |
| DO | ... | Dimension between centerlines of base mounting grooves for resilient ring mounted motors or, on base drawings, the dimension of the base which fits the groove. |
| DP | ... | Radial distance from center of Type C face at end opposite drive to center of circle defining the available area for disc brake lead opening(s). |
| DQ | ... | Centerline of shaft to extreme outside part of secondary terminal housing (end view). |
| EL | ... | Diameter of shaft after emergence from the mounting surface of face or flange. |
| EM | ... | Diameter of shaft first step after EL. |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-1 *(Continued)***
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR DIMENSIONS**

| NEMA Letter | IEC Letter | Dimension Indicated |
|---|---|---|
| EN | ... | Internal threaded portion of shaft extension. |
| EO | ... | Top of coupling to underside of canopy of vertical hollow-shaft motor. |
| EP | ... | Diameter of shaft at emergence from bearing (face or flange end). |
| EQ | ... | Length of shaft from mounting surface of face or flange to EL-EM interface. |
| ER | ... | Length of shaft from EP-EL interface to end of shaft. |
| ES | ... | Usable length of keyseat. |
| ET | ... | Length of shaft from mounting surface of face or flange to EM-U interface. |
| EU | .. | Diameter of shaft at bottom of ring groove. |
| EV | ... | Distance between centerline of H hole and end of motor foot at shaft end (side view). |
| EW | ... | Width of the ring groove or gib head keyseat. |
| EX | ... | Distance from end of shaft to opposite side of ring groove keyseat. |
| FBA | CA | Distance from the shoulder of the shaft at opposite drive end to the center-line of the mounting holes in the nearest feet. |
| FC | LC | Overall length of double shaft extension machine (For overall length of single shaft extension, see letter dimension C.) |
| FN-FW | EA | Length of the shaft extension from the shoulder at opposite drive end. |
| FR | GB | Distance from the bottom of the keyway to the opposite surface of the shaft extension at opposite drive end. |
| FS | FA | Width of the keyway of the shaft extension at opposite drive end. |
| FU | DA | Diameter of the shaft extension at opposite drive end. |
| FU-FR | GH | Depth of the keyway at the crown of the shaft extension at opposite drive end. |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

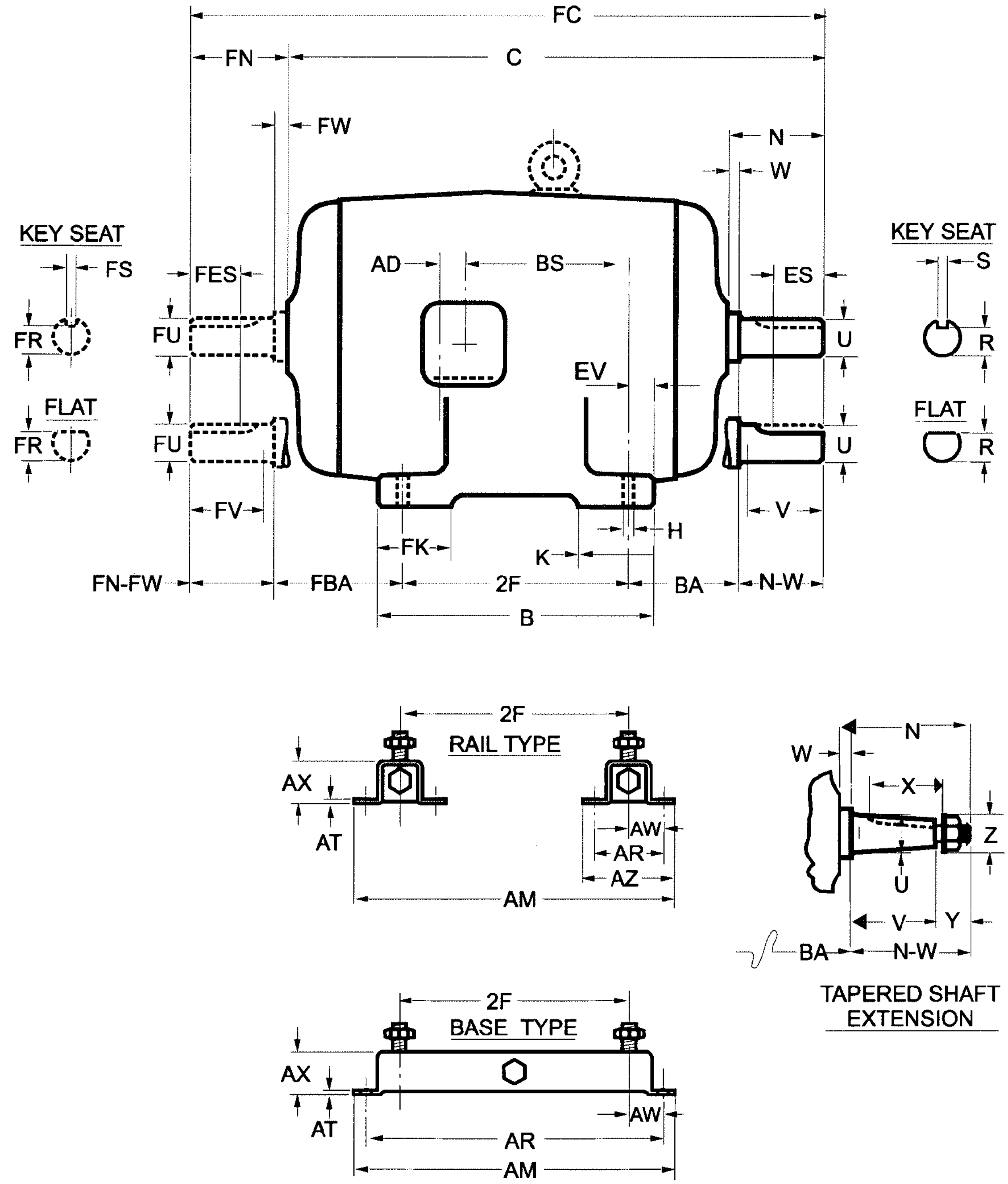



**Figure 4-1**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR FOOT-MOUNTED MACHINES—SIDE VIEW**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

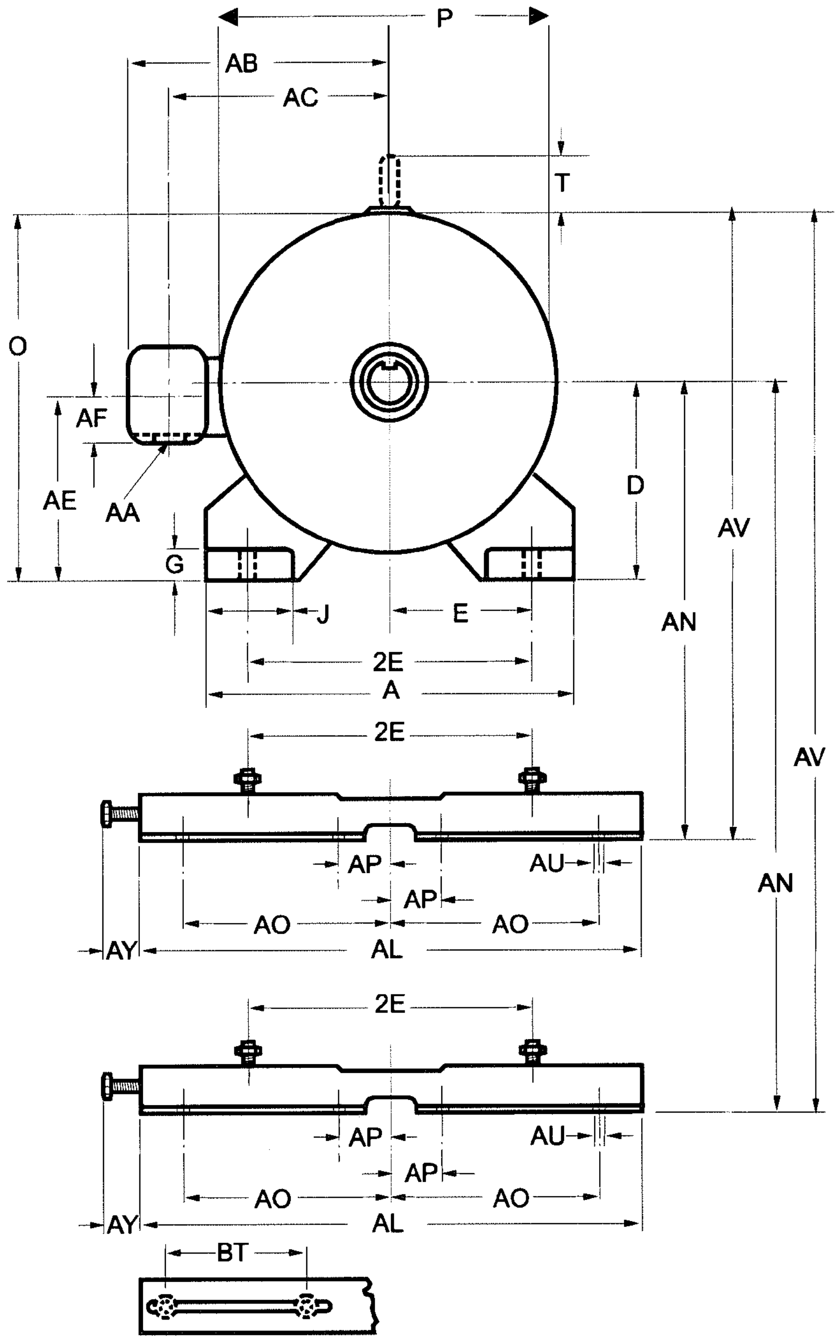



**Figure 4-2**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR FOOT-MOUNTED MACHINES—DRIVE END VIEW**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

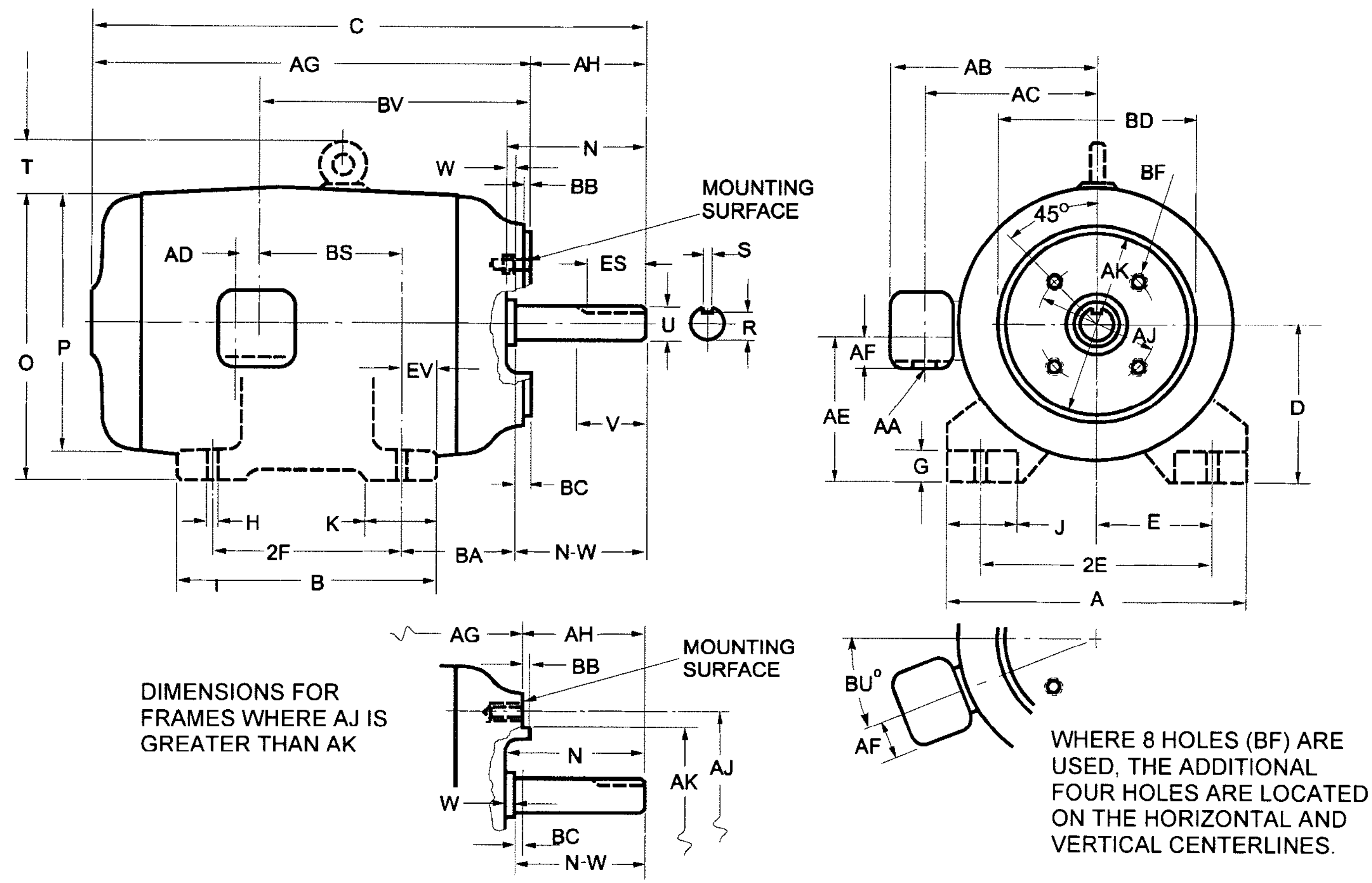



**Figure 4-3**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR TYPE C FACE-MOUNTING FOOT OR FOOTLESS MACHINES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

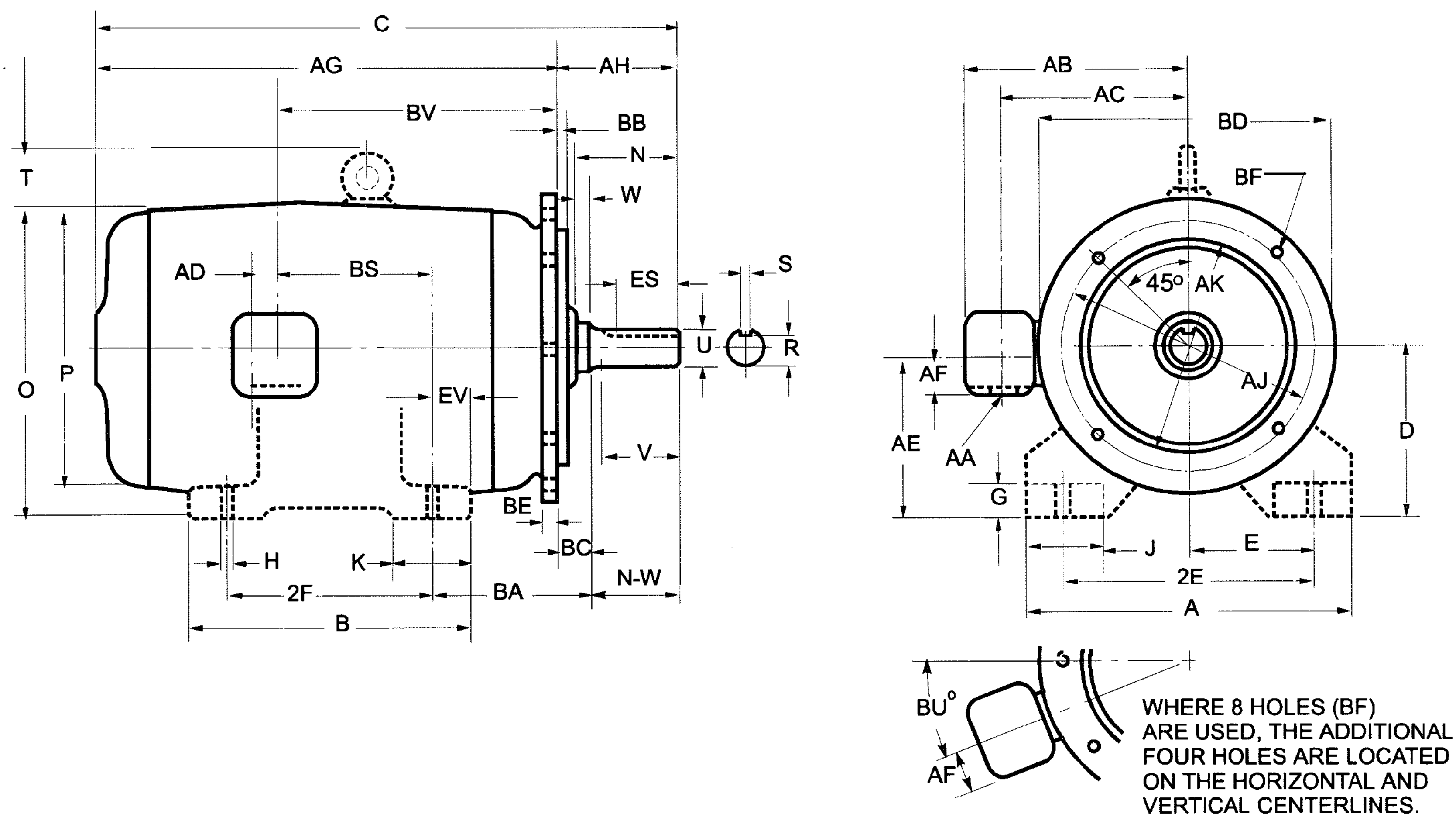



**Figure 4-4**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR TYPE D FLANGE-MOUNTING FOOT OR FOOTLESS MACHINES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

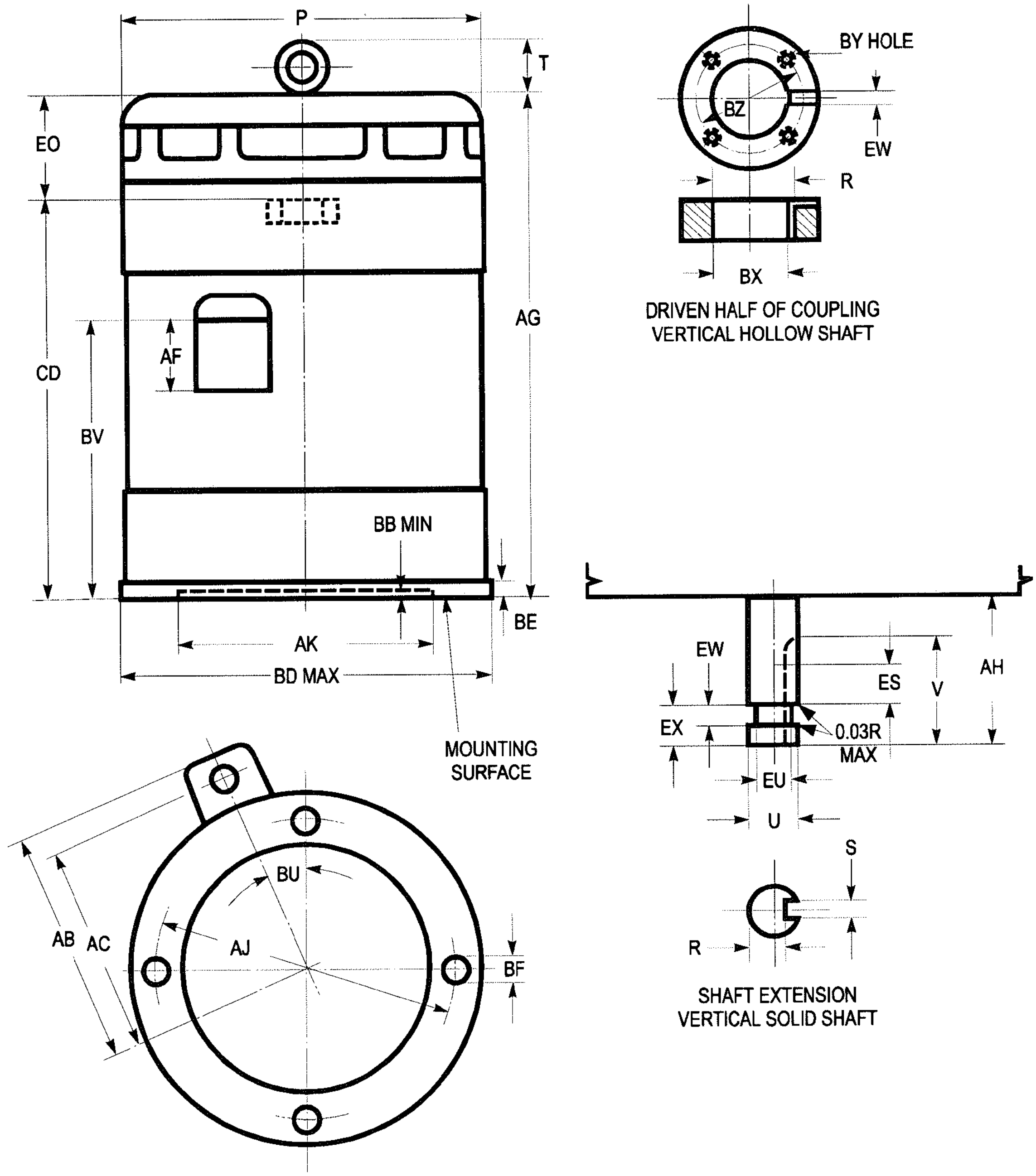



**Figure 4-5**
**LETTER SYMBOLS FOR VERTICAL MACHINES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.2 SYSTEM FOR DESIGNATING FRAMES

The system for designating frames of motors and generators shall consist of a series of numbers in combination with letters, defined as follows:

### 4.2.1 Frame Numbers

The frame number for small machines shall be the D dimension in inches multiplied by 16.

The system for numbering the frames of other machines shall be according to Table 4-2, as follows:

a. The first two digits of the frame number are equal to four times the D dimension in inches. When this product is not a whole number, the first two digits of the frame number shall be the next higher whole number.

b. The third and, when required, the fourth digit of the frame number is obtained from the value of 2F in inches by referring to the columns headed 1 to 15, inclusive.

As an example, a motor with a D dimension of 6.25 inches and 2F of 10 inches would be designated as frame 256.

**Table 4-2**
**MACHINE FRAME NUMBERING**

| Frame Number Series | D | Third/Fourth Digit in Frame Number 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 2 F Dimensions | | | | | | |
| 140 | 3.50 | 3.00 | 3.50 | 4.00 | 4.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.25 |
| 160 | 4.00 | 3.50 | 4.00 | 4.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.25 | 7.00 |
| 180 | 4.50 | 4.00 | 4.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 8.00 |
| 200 | 5.00 | 4.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.50 | 7.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 |
| 210 | 5.25 | 4.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 |
| 220 | 5.50 | 5.00 | 5.50 | 6.25 | 6.75 | 7.50 | 9.00 | 10.00 |
| 250 | 6.25 | 5.50 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 8.25 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 |
| 280 | 7.00 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 8.00 | 9.50 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 |
| 320 | 8.00 | 7.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 | 10.50 | 11.00 | 12.00 | 14.00 |
| 360 | 9.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.25 | 12.25 | 14.00 | 16.00 |
| 400 | 10.00 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.25 | 13.75 | 16.00 | 18.00 |
| 440 | 11.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.50 | 16.50 | 18.00 | 20.00 |
| 500 | 12.50 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 |
| 580 | 14.50 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 |
| 680 | 17.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 |

| Frame Number Series | D | Third/Fourth Digit in Frame Number 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 2F Dimensions | | | | | | | |
| 140 | 3.50 | 7.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 |
| 160 | 4.00 | 8.00 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 |
| 180 | 4.50 | 9.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 |
| 200 | 5.00 | 10.00 | 11.00 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 210 | 5.25 | 10.00 | 11.00 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 |
| 220 | 5.50 | 11.00 | 12.50 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 250 | 6.25 | 12.50 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 |
| 280 | 7.00 | 14.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 |
| 320 | 8.00 | 16.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 |
| 360 | 9.00 | 18.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 |
| 400 | 10.00 | 20.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 | 45.00 |
| 440 | 11.00 | 22.00 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 | 45.00 | 50.00 |
| 500 | 12.50 | 25.00 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 | 45.00 | 50.00 | 56.00 |
| 580 | 14.50 | 28.00 | 32.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 | 45.00 | 50.00 | 56.00 | 63.00 |
| 680 | 17.00 | 36.00 | 40.00 | 45.00 | 50.00 | 56.00 | 63.00 | 71.00 | 80.00 |

All dimensions in inches.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.2.2 Frame Letters

Letters shall immediately follow the frame number to denote variations as follows:

A— Industrial direct-current machine

B— Carbonator pump motors (see 18.270 through 18.281)

C— Type C face-mounting on drive end

When the face mounting is at the end opposite the drive end, the prefix F shall be used, making the suffix letters FC.

CH—Type C face-mounting dimensions are different from those for the frame designation having the suffix letter C (the letters CH are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated)

D— Type D flange-mounting on drive end

When the flange mounting is at the end opposite the drive end, the prefix F shall be used, making the suffix letters FD

E— Shaft extension dimensions for elevator motors in frames larger than the 326T frame

G— Gasoline pump motors (see 18.91)

H— Indicates a small machine having an F dimension larger than that of the same frame without the suffix letter H (see 4.4.1 and 4.5.1)

HP and HPH—Type P flange mounting vertical solid shaft motors having dimensions in accordance with 18.252 (the letters HP and HPH are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated)

J— Jet pump motors (see 18.132)

JM—Type C face-mounting close-coupled pump motor having antifriction bearings and dimensions in accordance with Table 1 of 18.250 (the letters JM are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated)

JP—Type C face-mounting close-coupled pump motor having antifriction bearings and dimensions in accordance with Table 2 of 18.250 (the letters JP are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated)

K— Sump pump motors (see 18.78)

LP and LPH—Type P flange-mounting vertical solid shaft motors having dimensions in accordance with 18.251 (the letters LP and LPH are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated)

M— Oil burner motors (see 18.106)

N— Oil burner motors (see 18.106)

P and PH—Type P flange-mounting vertical hollow shaft motors having dimensions in accordance with 18.238

R— Drive end tapered shaft extension having dimensions in accordance with this part (see 4.4.2)

S— Standard short shaft for direct connection (see dimension tables)

T— Included as part of a frame designation for which standard dimensions have been established (see dimension tables)

U— Previously used as part of a frame designation for which standard dimensions had been established (no longer included in this publication)

V— Vertical mounting only

VP—Type P flange-mounting vertical solid-shaft motors having dimensions in accordance with 18.237 (The letters VP are to be considered as one suffix and shall not be separated.)

X— Wound-rotor crane motors with double shaft extension (see 18.229 and 18.230)

Y— Special mounting dimensions (dimensional diagram must be obtained from the manufacturer)

Z— All mounting dimensions are standard except the shaft extension(s)(also used to designate machine with double shaft extension)

Note—For their own convenience manufacturers may use any letter in the alphabet preceding the frame number, but such a letter will have no reference to standard mounting dimensions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Suffix letters shall be added to the frame number in the following sequence:

| Suffix Letters | Sequence |
|---|---|
| A, H | 1 |
| G, J, M, N, T, U, HP, HPH, JM, JP, LP, LPH and VP | 2 |
| R and S | 3 |
| C, D, P and PH | 4 |
| FC, FD | 5 |
| V | 6 |
| E, X, Y, Z | 7 |

## 4.3 MOTOR MOUNTING AND TERMINAL HOUSING LOCATION

The motor mounting and location of terminal housing shall be as shown in assembly symbol F-1 of Figure 4-6. Where other motor mountings and terminal housing locations are required, they shall be designated in accordance with the symbols shown in Figure 4-6.

Assembly symbols F-1, W-2, W-3, W-6, W-8, and C-2 show the terminal housing in the same relative location with respect to the mounting feet and the shaft extension.

All mountings shown may not be available for all methods of motor construction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

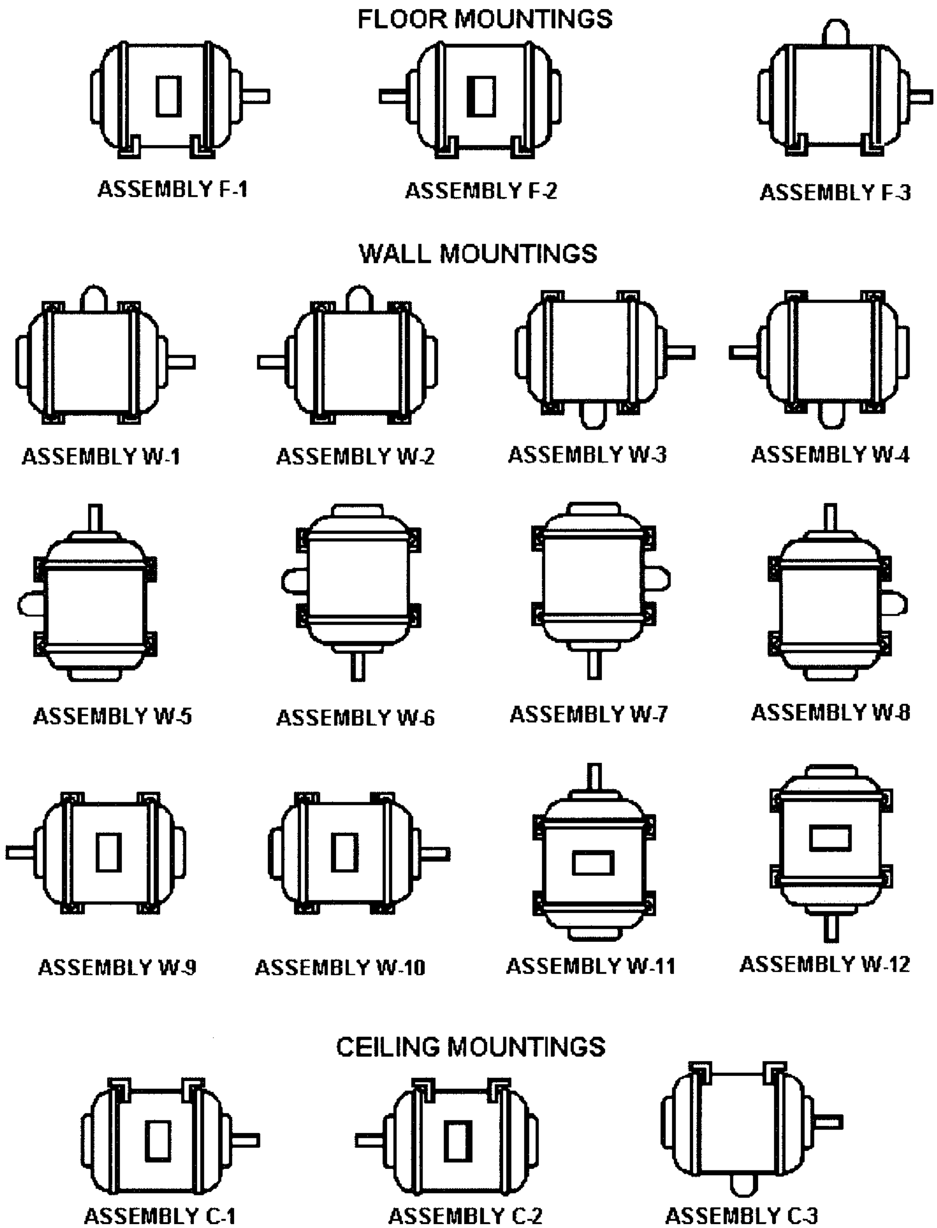



**Figure 4-6**
**MACHINE ASSEMBLY SYMBOLS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.4 DIMENSIONS—AC MACHINES

### 4.4.1 Dimensions for Alternating-Current Foot-Mounted Machines with Single Straight-Shaft Extension

| Frame | | | | | | | | | | Keyseat | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Designation | A Max | D* | E† | 2F† | BA*** | H† | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S | AA Min†† |
| 42 | — | 2.62 | 1.75 | 1.69 | 2.06 | 0.28 slot | 0.3750 | 1.12 | ... | 0.328 | ... | flat | ... |
| 48 | — | 3.00 | 2.12 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 0.34 slot | 0.5000 | 1.50 | ... | 0.453 | ... | flat | ... |
| 48H | — | 3.00 | 2.12 | 4.75 | 2.50 | 0.34 slot | 0.5000 | 1.50 | ... | 0.453 | ... | flat | ... |
| 56 | — | 3.50 | 2.44 | 3.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 slot | 0.6250 | 1.88 | ... | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 | ... |
| 56H | — | 3.50 | 2.44 | 5.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 slot | 0.6250 | 1.88 | ... | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 | ... |
| 143T | 7.0 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 4.00 | 2.25 | 0.34 hole | 0.8750 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 | 3/4 |
| 145T | 7.0 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 5.00 | 2.25 | 0.34 hole | 0.8750 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 | 3/4 |
| 182T | 9.0 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 4.50 | 2.75 | 0.41 hole | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 | 3/4 |
| 184T | 9.0 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 5.50 | 2.75 | 0.41 hole | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 | 3/4 |
| 213T | 10.5 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 5.50 | 3.50 | 0.41 hole | 1.3750 | 3.38 | 3.12 | 1.201 | 2.41 | 0.312 | 1 |
| 215T | 10.5 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 7.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 hole | 1.3750 | 3.38 | 3.12 | 1.201 | 2.41 | 0.312 | 1 |
| 254T | 12.5 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 8.25 | 4.25 | 0.53 hole | 1.625 | 4.00 | 3.75 | 1.416 | 2.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/4 |
| 256T | 12.5 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 10.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 hole | 1.625 | 4.00 | 3.75 | 1.416 | 2.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/4 |
| 284T | 14.0 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 9.50 | 4.75 | 0.53 hole | 1.875 | 4.62 | 4.38 | 1.591 | 3.28 | 0.500 | 1-1/2 |
| 284TS | 14.0 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 9.50 | 4.75 | 0.53 hole | 1.625 | 3.25 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 1.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/2 |
| 286T | 14.0 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 11.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 hole | 1.875 | 4.62 | 4.38 | 1.591 | 3.28 | 0.500 | 1-1/2 |
| 286TS | 14.0 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 11.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 hole | 1.625 | 3.25 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 1.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/2 |
| 324T | 16.0 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 10.50 | 5.25 | 0.66 hole | 2.125 | 5.25 | 5.00 | 1.845 | 3.91 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 324TS | 16.0 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 10,50 | 5.25 | 0.66 hole | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 326T | 16.0 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 12.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 hole | 2.125 | 5.25 | 5.00 | 1.845 | 3.91 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 326TS | 16.0 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 12.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 hole | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 364T | 18.0 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 11.25 | 5.88 | 0.66 hole | 2.375 | 5.88 | 5.62 | 2.021 | 4.28 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 364TS | 18.0 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 11.25 | 5.88 | 0.66 hole | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 365T | 18.0 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 12.25 | 5.88 | 0.66 hole | 2.375 | 5.88 | 5.62 | 2.021 | 4.28 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 365TS | 18.0 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 12.25 | 5.88 | 0.66 hole | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 404T | 20.0 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 12.25 | 6.62 | 0.81 hole | 2.875 | 7.25 | 7.00 | 2.450 | 5.65 | 0.750 | 3 |
| 404TS | 20.0 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 12.25 | 6.62 | 0.81 hole | 2.125 | 4.25 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 2.78 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 405T | 20.0 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 13.75 | 6.62 | 0.81 hole | 2.875 | 7.25 | 7.00 | 2.450 | 5.65 | 0.750 | 3 |
| 405TS | 20.0 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 13.75 | 6.62 | 0.81 hole | 2.125 | 4.25 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 2.78 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 444T | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 14.50 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 3.375 | 8.50 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 444TS | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 14.50 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 445T | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 16.50 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 3.375 | 8.50 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 445TS | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 16.50 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 447T | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 20.00 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 3.375 | 8.50 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 447TS | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 20.00 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 449T | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 25.00 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 3.375 | 8.50 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 449TS | 22.0 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 25.00 | 7.50 | 0.81 hole | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 440 | ... | 11.00 | 9.00 | ** | 7.50 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 500 | ... | 12.50 | 10.00 | ** | 8.50 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | |

All dimensions in inches.

*The tolerances on the D dimension for rigid base motors shall be +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch. No tolerance has been established for the D dimension of resilient mounted motors.

†Frames 42 to 56H, inclusive—The tolerance for the 2F dimension shall be ±0.03 inch and for the H dimension (width of slot) shall be +0.02 inch, -0.00 inch.

Frames 143T to 500, inclusive—The tolerance for the 2E and 2F dimensions shall be ±0.03 inch and for the H dimension shall be +0.05 inch, -0.00 inch.

The values of the H dimension represent standard bolt sizes plus dimensional clearances.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

H dimension:; Frames 143T to 365T inclusive—The clearance of the std. bolt to hole size is 0.03. The tolerance is +0.05, -0.00 inch. Frames 404T to 449T inclusive—The clearance of std. bolt to hole size is 0.06 inch. The tolerance is +0.020 inch, -0.00 inch.

††For dimensions of clearance holes see 4.8.

**For the 2F dimension and corresponding third (and when required the fourth) digit in the frame series, see 4.2.1 and Table 4-2.

***BA tolerance: ±0.09 inch.

---

NOTES:

1 For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figures 4-1 and 4-2.
2 For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
3 Frames 42 to 56H, inclusive—if the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 0.25-inch increments.
4 For cast-iron products, bottom of feet coplanar: 0.015 inch.
5 For cast-iron products, foot top parallel to foot bottom: 1.5 degree.
6 For cast-iron products, shaft parallel to foot plan: 0.015 inch.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.4.2 Shaft Extensions and Key Dimensions For Alternating-Current-Foot-Mounted Machines with Single Tapered or Double Straight/Tapered Shaft Extension

| Frame Designation | Drive End—Tapered Shaft Extension* | | | | | | | | Keyseat | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | BA | U | N-W | V | X | Y | Z Max | Shaft Threads | Width | Depth | Key Length** |
| 143TR and 145TR | 2.25 | 0.8750 | 2.62 | 1.75 | 1.88 | 0.75 | 1.38 | 5/8-18 | 0.188 | 0.094 | 1.50 |
| 182TR and 184TR | 2.75 | 1.1250 | 3.38 | 2.25 | 2.38 | 1.88 | 1.50 | 3/4-16 | 0.250 | 0.125 | 2.00 |
| 213TR and 215TR | 3.50 | 1.3750 | 4.12 | 2.62 | 2.75 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-14 | 0.312 | 0.156 | 2.38 |
| 254TR and 256TR | 4.25 | 1.625 | 4.50 | 2.88 | 3.00 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-14 | 0.375 | 0.188 | 2.62 |
| 284TR and 286TR | 4.75 | 1.875 | 4.75 | 3.12 | 3.25 | 1.25 | 2.38 | 1-1/4-12 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 2.88 |
| 324TR and 326TR | 5.25 | 2.125 | 5.25 | 3.50 | 3.62 | 1.38 | 2.75 | 1-1/2-8 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 3.25 |
| 364TR and 365TR | 5.88 | 2.375 | 5.75 | 3.75 | 3.88 | 1.50 | 3.25 | 1-3/4-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.50 |
| 404TR and 405TR | 6.62 | 2.875 | 6.62 | 4.38 | 4.50 | 1.75 | 3.62 | 2-8 | 0.750 | 0.375 | 4.12 |
| 444TR and 445TR | 7.50 | 3.375 | 7.50 | 5.00 | 5.12 | 2.00 | 4.12 | 2-1/4-8 | 0.875 | 0.438 | 4.75 |

| Frame Number Series | Opposite Drive End—Tapered Shaft Extension*† | | | | | | | Keyseat | | | Opposite Drive End—Straight Shaft Extension† | | | Keyseat | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | FU | FN-FW | FV | FX | FY | FZ Max | Shaft Threads | Width | Depth | Key Length | FU | FN-FW | FV Min | R | ES Min | S |
| 140 | 0.6250 | 2.00 | 1.38 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 1.12 | 3/8-24 | 0.188 | 0.094 | 1.12 | 0.6250 | 1.62 | 1.38 | 0.517 | 0.91 | 0.188 |
| 180 | 0.8750 | 2.62 | 1.75 | 1.88 | 0.75 | 1.38 | 5/8-18 | 0.188 | 0.094 | 1.50 | 0.8750 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 |
| 210 | 1.1250 | 3.38 | 2.25 | 2.38 | 0.88 | 1.50 | 3/4-16 | 0.250 | 0.125 | 2.00 | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 |
| 250 | 1.3750 | 4.12 | 2.62 | 2.75 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-14 | 0.312 | 0.156 | 2.38 | 1.3750 | 3.38 | 3.12 | 1.201 | 2.41 | 0.312 |
| 280 | 1.6250 | 4.50 | 2.88 | 3.00 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-14 | 0.375 | 0.188 | 2.62 | 1.625 | 4.00 | 3.75 | 1.416 | 2.91 | 0.375 |
| 280 Short Shaft | | | | | | | | | | | 1.625 | 3.25 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 1.91 | 0.375 |
| 320 | 1.8750 | 4.75 | 3.12 | 3.25 | 1.25 | 2.38 | 1-1/4-12 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 2.88 | 1.875 | 4.62 | 4.38 | 1.591 | 3.28 | 0.500 |
| 320 Short Shaft | | | | | | | | | | | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 |
| 360 | 1.8750 | 4.75 | 3.12 | 3.25 | 1.25 | 2.38 | 1-1/4-12 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 2.88 | 1.875 | 4.62 | 4.38 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 |
| 360 Short Shaft | | | | | | | | | | | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 |
| 400 | 2.1250 | 5.25 | 3.50 | 3.62 | 1.38 | 2.75 | 1-1/2-8 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 3.25 | 2.125 | 5.25 | 5.00 | 1.845 | 3.91 | 0.500 |
| 400 Short Shaft | | | | | | | | | | | 2.125 | 4.25 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 2.78 | 0.500 |
| 440 | 2.3750 | 5.75 | 3.75 | 3.88 | 1.50 | 3.25 | 1-3/4-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.50 | 2.375 | 5.88 | 5.62 | 2.021 | 4.28 | 0.625 |
| 440 Short Shaft | | | | | | | | | | | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 |

All dimensions in inches.
*The standard taper of shafts shall be at the rate of 1.25 inch in diameter per foot of length. The thread at the end of the taper shaft shall be provided with a nut and a suitable locking device.
**Tolerance on the length of the key is ± 0.03 inch.
† For drive applications other than direct connect, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

NOTES:

1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions see 4.1 and Figures 4-1 and 4-2
2. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.4.3 Shaft Extension Diameters and Key Dimensions for Alternating-Current Motors Built In Frames Larger than the 449T Frames

The shaft extension diameters and key dimensions for alternating-current motors having ratings built in frames larger than the 449T frame up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type rating given in 12.0 shall be as shown in Table 4-3.

### 4.4.4 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Foot or Footless Alternating-Current Motors

| | | | | | | | BF Hole | | | | | Keyseat | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frame Designation* | AJ** | AK | BA | BB Min | BC | BD Max | Number | Tap Size | Bolt Penetration Allowance | U | AH | R | ES Min | S | AA Min††† |
| 42C | 3.750 | 3.000 | 2.062 | 0.16† | -0.19 | 5.00†† | 4 | 1/4-20 | ... | 0.3750 | 1.312 | 0.328 | ... | Flat | ... |
| 48C | 3.750 | 3.000 | 2.50 | 0.16† | -0.19 | 5.625 | 4 | 1/4-20 | ... | 0.500 | 1.69 | 0.453 | ... | flat | ... |
| 56C | 5.875 | 4.500 | 2.75 | 0.16† | -0.19 | 6.50†† | 4 | 3/8-16 | ... | 0.6250 | 2.06 | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 | ... |
| 143TC and 145TC | 5.875 | 4.500 | 2.75 | 0.16† | +0.12 | 6.50†† | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 0.8750 | 2.12 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 | 3/4 |
| 182TC and 184TC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 3.50 | 0.25 | +0.12 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.1250 | 2.62 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 | 3/4 |
| 182TCH and 184TCH | 5.875 | 4.500 | 3.50 | 0.16† | +0.12 | 6.50†† | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 1.1250 | 2.62 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 | 3/4 |
| 213TC and 215TC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 4.25 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.3750 | 3.12 | 1.201 | 2.41 | 0.312 | 1 |
| 254TC and 256TC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 4.75 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 10.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.625 | 3.75 | 1.416 | 2.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/4 |
| 284TC and 286TC | 9.000 | 10.500 | 4.75 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 11.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.875 | 4.38 | 1.591 | 3.28 | 0.500 | 1-1/2 |
| 284TSC and 286TSC | 9.000 | 10.500 | 4.75 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 11.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.625 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 1.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/2 |
| 324TC and 326TC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.25 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.125 | 5.00 | 1.845 | 3.91 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 324TSC and 326TSC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.25 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 1.875 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 364TC and 365TC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.88 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 14.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.375 | 5.62 | 2.021 | 4.28 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 364TSC and 365TSC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.88 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 14.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 1.875 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 404TC and 405TC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 6.62 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 15.50 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.875 | 7.00 | 2.450 | 5.65 | 0.750 | 3 |
| 404TSC and 405TSC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 6.62 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 15.50 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.125 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 2.78 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 444TC and 445TC | 14.000 | 16.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 18.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 3.375 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 444TSC and 445TSC | 14.000 | 16.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 18.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.375 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 447TC and 449TC | 14.000 | 16.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 18.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 3.375 | 8.25 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 447TSC and 449TSC | 14.000 | 16.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | +0.25 | 18.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.375 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 500 frame series | 14.500 | 16.500 | ... | 0.25 | +0.25 | 18.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

All dimensions in inches.

*For frames 42C to 445TSC, see 4.4.1, for dimensions A, D, E, 2F, and H.

**For frames 182TC, 184TC, and 213TC through 500TC, the centerline of the bolt holes shall be within 0.025 inch of true location. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimension.

†The tolerance on this BB dimension shall be +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch.

††These BD dimensions are nominal dimensions.

†††For dimensions of clearance holes see 4.8.

NOTES—

1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions see 4.1 and Figure 4-3.
2. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats see 4.9.
3. For tolerances on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12.
4. If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 0.25-inch increments.

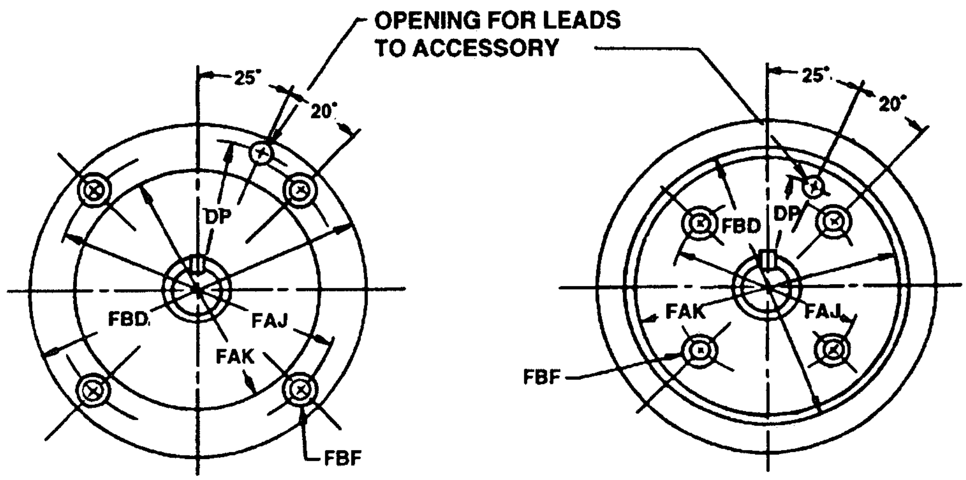
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.4.5 Dimensions for Type FC Face Mounting for Accessories on End Opposite Drive End of Alternating-Current Motors

| | | | | | FBF Hole | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | Bolt Penetration | Hole for Accessory Leads†† | |
| Frame Designations | FAJ | FAK | FBB Min | FBD Min | Number | Tap Size | Allowance | DP | Diameter |
| 143TFC and 145TFC | 5.875 | 4.500 | 0.16* | 6.50† | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 2.81 | 0.41 |
| 182TFC and 184TFC | 5.875 | 4.500 | 0.16* | 6.50† | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 2.81 | 0.41 |
| 213TFC and 215TFC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 0.25 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 3.81 | 0.62 |
| 254TFC and 256TFC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 0.25 | 10.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 3.81 | 0.62 |
| 284TFC and 286TFC | 9.000 | 10.500 | 0.25 | 11.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 4.50 | 0.62 |
| 324TFC and 326TFC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 0.25 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 5.25 | 0.62 |

*The tolerance on this FBB dimension shall be +0.00, -0.06 inch.
†This BD dimension is a nominal dimension.
††When a hole is required in the Type C face for accessory leads, the hole shall be located within the available area defined by a circle located in accordance with the figure and the table.

NOTES—
1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1.
2. For tolerances on FAK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbits, see 4.12. For permissible shaft runout see 4.9.
3. Standards have not been developed for the FU, FAH, FBC, and keys at dimensions.



143TFC to 184TFC frames, incl.

213TFC to 326TFC frames, incl.

All dimensions in inches.

## 4.4.6 Dimensions for Type D Flange-Mounting Foot or Footless Alternating-Current Motors

| Frame Designation | AJ | AK | BA | BB* | BC | BD Max | BE No | Number | Size | Recommended Bolt Length | U | AH | Keyseat R | Keyseat ES Min | Keyseat S | AA Min† |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143TD and 145TD | 10.00 | 9.000 | 2.75 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 11.00 | 0.50 | 4 | 0.53 | 1.25 | 0.8750 | 2.25 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 | 3/4 |
| 182TD and 184TD | 10.00 | 9.000 | 3.50 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 11.00 | 0.50 | 4 | 0.53 | 1.25 | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 0.986 | 1.78 | 0.250 | 3/4 |
| 213TD and 215TD | 10.00 | 9.000 | 4.25 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 11.00 | 0.50 | 4 | 0.53 | 1.25 | 1.3750 | 3.38 | 1.201 | 2.41 | 0.312 | 1 |
| 254TD and 256TD | 12.50 | 11.000 | 4.75 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 14.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 1.625 | 4.00 | 1.416 | 2.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/4 |
| 284TD and 286TD | 12.50 | 11.000 | 4.75 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 14.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 1.875 | 4.62 | 1.591 | 3.28 | 0.500 | 1-1/2 |
| 284TSD and 286TSD | 12.50 | 11.000 | 4.75 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 14.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 1.625 | 3.25 | 1.416 | 1.91 | 0.375 | 1-1/2 |
| 324TD and 326TD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 5.25 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 2.125 | 5.25 | 1.845 | 3.91 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 324TSD and 326TSD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 5.25 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 1.875 | 3.75 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 2 |
| 364TD and 365TD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 5.88 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 2.375 | 5.88 | 2.021 | 4.28 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 364TSD and 365TSD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 5.88 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 4 | 0.81 | 2.00 | 1.875 | 3.75 | 1.591 | 2.03 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 404TD and 405TD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 6.62 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 2.875 | 7.25 | 2.450 | 5.65 | 0.750 | 3 |
| 404TSD and 405TSD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 6.62 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 2.125 | 4.25 | 1.845 | 2.78 | 0.500 | 3 |
| 444TD and 445TD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 3.375 | 8.50 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 444TSD and 445TSD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 2.375 | 4.75 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 447TD and 449TD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 3.375 | 8.50 | 2.880 | 6.91 | 0.875 | 3 |
| 447TSD and 449TSD | 20.000 | 18.000 | 7.50 | 0.25 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | 2.25 | 2.375 | 4.75 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 | 3 |
| 500 frame series | 22.000 | 18.000 | ... | 0.25 | 0.00 | 25.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 0.81 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

All dimensions in inches.
*Tolerance is +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch.
† For dimensions of clearance holes see 4.8.
NOTES—
1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions see 4.1 and Figure 4-4.
2. See 4.4.1 for dimensions A, B, D, E, 2F, and H for frames 143TD-445TSD, and for dimensions D, E, 2F, and BA for the 500 frame series.
3. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
4. For tolerances on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbit, see 4.12.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.5 DIMENSIONS—DC MACHINES

### 4.5.1 Dimensions for Direct-Current Small Motors with Single Straight Shaft Extension

| Frame Designations | A Max | B Max | D* | E | 2F† | BA | H Slot† | U | N-W | Keyseat R | Keyseat ES Min | Keyseat S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 42 | --- | --- | 2.62 | 1.75 | 1.69 | 2.06 | 0.28 | 0.3750 | 1.12 | 0.328 | --- | flat |
| 48 | --- | --- | 3.00 | 2.12 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 0.34 | 0.5000 | 1.50 | 0.453 | --- | flat |
| 56 | --- | --- | 3.50 | 2.44 | 3.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 | 0.6250 | 1.88 | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 |
| 56H | --- | --- | 3.50 | 2.44 | 3.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 | 0.6250 | 1.88 | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 |

All dimensions in inches

*The tolerance on the D dimension for rigid base motors shall be +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch. No tolerance has been established for the D dimension of resilient mounted motors.

†The tolerance of the 2F dimension shall be ±0.03 inch and for the H dimension (width of slot) shall be +0.05 inch, -0.00 inch.

NOTES—

1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions see 4.1 and Figures 4-1 and 4-2.
2. For tolerance on shaft extension diameters and keyseats see 4.9.
3. If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 0.25-inch increments.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.2 Dimensions for Foot-Mounted Industrial Direct-Current Machines

| Frame Designations | A Max | B Max | D* | E | 2F† | BA | H Hole† | AL | AM | AO | AR | AU | AX | AY Max Bases | BT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 182AT | 9.00 | 6.50 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 4.50 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 9.50 | 4.50 | 4.25 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 183AT | 9.00 | 7.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 5.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 10.00 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 184AT | 9.00 | 7.50 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 5.50 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 10.50 | 4.50 | 4.75 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 185AT | 9.00 | 8.25 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 6.25 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 11.25 | 4.50 | 5.12 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 186AT | 9.00 | 9.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 7.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 12.00 | 4.50 | 5.50 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 187AT | 9.00 | 10.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 8.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 13.00 | 4.50 | 6.00 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 188AT | 9.00 | 11.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 9.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 14.00 | 4.50 | 6.50 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 189AT | 9.00 | 12.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 10.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 15.00 | 4.50 | 7.00 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 1810AT | 9.00 | 13.00 | 4.50 | 3.75 | 11.00 | 2.75 | 0.41 | 12.75 | 16.00 | 4.50 | 7.50 | 0.50 | 1.50 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| 213AT | 10.50 | 7.50 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 5.50 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 11.00 | 5.25 | 4.75 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 214AT | 10.50 | 8.25 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 6.25 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 11.75 | 5.25 | 5.12 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 215AT | 10.50 | 9.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 7.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 12.50 | 5.25 | 5.50 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 216AT | 10.50 | 10.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 8.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 13.50 | 5.25 | 6.00 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 217AT | 10.50 | 11.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 9.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 14.50 | 5.25 | 6.50 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 218AT | 10.50 | 12.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 10.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 12.50 | 5.25 | 7.00 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 219AT | 10.50 | 13.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 11.00 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 16.50 | 5.25 | 7.50 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 2110AT | 10.50 | 14.00 | 5.25 | 4.25 | 12.50 | 3.50 | 0.41 | 15.00 | 18.00 | 5.25 | 8.25 | 0.50 | 1.75 | 0.50 | 3.50 |
| 253AT | 12.50 | 9.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 7.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 13.88 | 6.25 | 6.00 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 254AT | 12.50 | 10.75 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 8.25 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 15.12 | 6.25 | 6.62 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 255AT | 12.50 | 11.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 9.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 15.88 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 256AT | 12.50 | 12.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 10.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 16.88 | 6.25 | 7.50 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 257AT | 12.50 | 13.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 11.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 17.88 | 6.25 | 8.00 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 258AT | 12.50 | 15.00 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 12.50 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 19.38 | 6.25 | 8.78 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 259AT | 12.50 | 16.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 14.00 | 4.25 | 0.53 | 17.75 | 20.88 | 6.25 | 9.00 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.00 |
| 283AT | 14.00 | 11.00 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 8.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 15.38 | 7.00 | 6.75 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 284AT | 14.00 | 12.50 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 9.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 16.88 | 7.00 | 7.50 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 285AT | 14.00 | 13.00 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 10.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 17.38 | 7.00 | 7.75 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 286AT | 14.00 | 14.00 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 11.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 18.38 | 7.00 | 8.25 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 287AT | 14.00 | 15.50 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 12.50 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 19.88 | 7.00 | 9.00 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 288AT | 14.00 | 17.00 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 14.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 21.38 | 7.00 | 9.75 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |
| 289AT | 14.00 | 19.00 | 7.00 | 5.50 | 16.00 | 4.75 | 0.53 | 19.75 | 23.38 | 7.00 | 10.75 | 0.62 | 2.00 | 0.62 | 4.50 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.5.2 *(continued)*

| Frame Designations | A Max | B Max | D* | E | 2F† | BA | H Hole† | AL | AM | AO | AR | AU | AX | AY Max Bases | BT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 323AT | 16.00 | 12.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 9.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 17.75 | 8.00 | 7.75 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 324AT | 16.00 | 14.00 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 10.50 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 19.25 | 8.00 | 8.50 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 325AT | 16.00 | 14.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 11.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 19.75 | 8.00 | 8.75 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 326AT | 16.00 | 15.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 12.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 20.75 | 8.00 | 9.25 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 327AT | 16.00 | 17.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 14.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 22.75 | 8.00 | 10.25 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 328AT | 16.00 | 19.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 16.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 24.75 | 8.00 | 11.25 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 329AT | 16.00 | 21.50 | 8.00 | 6.25 | 18.00 | 5.25 | 0.66 | 22.75 | 26.75 | 8.00 | 12.25 | 0.75 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 5.25 |
| 363AT | 18.00 | 14.00 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 10.00 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 19.25 | 9.00 | 8.25 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 364AT | 18.00 | 154.25 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 11.25 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 20.50 | 9.00 | 9.12 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 365AT | 18.00 | 16.25 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 12.25 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 21.50 | 9.00 | 9.62 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 366AT | 18.00 | 181.00 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 14.00 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 23.25 | 9.00 | 10.50 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 367AT | 18.00 | 20.00 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 16.00 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 25.25 | 9.00 | 11.50 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 368AT | 18.00 | 22.00 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 18.00 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 27.25 | 9.00 | 12.50 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 369AT | 18.00 | 14.00 | 9.00 | 7.00 | 20.00 | 5.88 | 0.81 | 25.50 | 29.25 | 9.00 | 13.50 | 0.88 | 2.50 | 0.75 | 6.00 |
| 403AT | 20.00 | 15.00 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 11.00 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 21.12 | 10.00 | 9.25 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 404AT | 20.00 | 16.25 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 12.75 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 22.38 | 10.00 | 9.88 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 405AT | 20.00 | 17.75 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 13.75 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 23.88 | 10.00 | 10.62 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 406AT | 20.00 | 20.00 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 16.00 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 26.12 | 10.00 | 11.75 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 407AT | 20.00 | 22.00 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 18.00 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 28.12 | 10.00 | 12.75 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 408AT | 20.00 | 24.00 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 20.00 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 30.12 | 10.00 | 13.75 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 409AT | 20.00 | 26.00 | 10.00 | 8.00 | 22.00 | 6.62 | 0.94 | 28.75 | 32.12 | 10.00 | 14.75 | 1.00 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.00 |
| 443AT | 22.00 | 16.50 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 12.50 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 22.62 | 11.00 | 10.00 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 444AT | 22.00 | 18.50 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 15.00 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 24.62 | 11.00 | 11.00 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 445AT | 22.00 | 20.50 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 16.50 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 26.62 | 11.00 | 12.00 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 446AT | 22.00 | 22.00 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 18.00 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 28.12 | 11.00 | 12.75 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 447AT | 22.00 | 24.00 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 20.00 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 30.12 | 11.00 | 13.75 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 448AT | 22.00 | 26.00 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 22.00 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 32.12 | 11.00 | 14.75 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |
| 449AT | 22.00 | 29.00 | 11.00 | 9.00 | 25.00 | 7.50 | 1.06 | 31.25 | 35.12 | 11.00 | 16.25 | 1.12 | 3.00 | 0.88 | 7.50 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**4.5.2 *(continued)***

| Frame Designations | A Max | B Max | D* | E | 2F† | BA | H Hole† | AL | AM | AO | AR | AU | AX | AY Max Bases | BT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 502AT | 25.00 | 17.50 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 12.50 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 24.50 | 12.50 | 10.75 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 503AT | 25.00 | 19.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 14.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 26.00 | 12.50 | 11.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 504AT | 25.00 | 21.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 16.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 28.00 | 12.50 | 12.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 505AT | 25.00 | 23.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 18.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 30.00 | 12.50 | 13.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 506AT | 25.00 | 25.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 20.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 32.00 | 12.50 | 14.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 507AT | 25.00 | 27.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 22.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 34.00 | 12.50 | 15.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 508AT | 25.00 | 30.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 25.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 37.00 | 12.50 | 17.00 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 509AT | 25.00 | 33.00 | 12.50 | 10.00 | 28.00 | 8.50 | 1.19 | 35.00 | 40.00 | 12.50 | 18.50 | 1.25 | 3.50 | --- | 8.00 |
| 583 | 29.00 | 21.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 16.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 29.00 | 14.50 | 13.00 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 584 | 29.00 | 23.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 18.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 31.00 | 14.50 | 14.00 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 585 | 29.00 | 25.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 20.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 33.00 | 14.50 | 15.00 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 586 | 29.00 | 27.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 22.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 35.00 | 14.50 | 16.00 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 587 | 29.00 | 30.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 25.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 38.00 | 14.50 | 17.50 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 588 | 29.00 | 33.00 | 14.50 | 11.50 | 28.00 | 10.00 | 1.19 | 38.75 | 41.00 | 14.50 | 19.00 | 1.25 | 4.00 | --- | 8.50 |
| 683 | 34.00 | 25.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 20.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 30.75 | 13.50 | 14.00 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |
| 684 | 34.00 | 27.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 22.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 32.75 | 13.50 | 15.00 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |
| 685 | 34.00 | 30.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 25.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 35.75 | 13.50 | 16.50 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |
| 686 | 34.00 | 33.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 28.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 38.75 | 13.50 | 18.00 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |
| 687 | 34.00 | 37.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 32.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 42.75 | 13.50 | 20.00 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |
| 688 | 34.00 | 41.00 | 17.00 | 13.50 | 36.00 | 11.50 | 1.19 | 42.50 | 46.75 | 13.50 | 22.00 | 1.38 | 4.25 | --- | 9.00 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.2 *(continued)*

| | Drive End—For Belt Drive | | | | | | Drive End—For Direct-connected Drive‡ | | | | | | End opposite Drive—Straight | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Keyseat | | | | | | Keyseat | | | | | | Keyseat | | |
| Frame Designations‡ | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S | FU | FN-FW | FV Min | FR | FES Min | FS |
| 182AT-1810AT | 1.1250 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.986 | 1.41 | 0.250 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 0.8750 | 1.75 | 1.50 | 0.771 | 0.91 | 0.188 |
| 213AT-2110AT | 1.3750 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 1.201 | 1.78 | 0.312 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 1.1250 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.986 | 1.41 | 0.250 |
| 253AT-259AT | 1.625 | 3.25 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 2.28 | 0.375 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 1.3750 | 2.75 | 2.50 | 1.201 | 1.78 | 0.312 |
| 283AT-289AT | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.53 | 0.500 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 1.625 | 3.25 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 2.28 | 0.375 |
| 323AT-329AT | 2.125 | 4.25 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 3.03 | 0.500 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.53 | 0.500 |
| 363AT-369AT | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.53 | 0.625 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 2.125 | 4.25 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 3.03 | 0.500 |
| 403AT-409AT | 2.625 | 5.25 | 5.00 | 2.275 | 4.03 | 0.625 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.53 | 0.625 |
| 443AT-449AT | 2.875 | 5.75 | 5.50 | 2.450 | 4.53 | 0.750 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 2.625 | 5.25 | 5.00 | 2.275 | 4.03 | 0.625 |
| 502AT-509AT | 3.250 | 6.50 | 6.25 | 2.831 | 5.28 | 0.750 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 2.875 | 5.75 | 5.50 | 2.450 | 4.53 | 0.750 |
| 583A-588A | 3.250 | 9.75 | 9.50 | 2.831 | 8.28 | 0.750 | 2.875 | 5.75 | 5.50 | 2.450 | 4.28 | 0.750 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 683A-688A | 3.625 | 10.88 | 10.62 | 3.134 | 9.53 | 0.875 | 3.250 | 6.50 | 6.25 | 2.831 | 5.03 | 0.750 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |

All dimensions in inches
*Frames 182AT to 329AT, inclusive—The tolerance on the D dimension shall be +0.00 inch, -0.03 inch, Frames 363AT to 688AT, inclusive—The tolerance on the D dimension shall be +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch.
†The tolerance for the 2E and 2F dimensions shall be ±0.03 inch and for the H dimension shall be +0.05 inch, -0.00 inch.
‡When frames 583A through 688A have a shaft extension for direct-connected drive, the frame number shall have a suffix letter "S" (that is, 583AS).

NOTE—
For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figures 4-1 and 4-2.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.3 Dimensions For Foot-Mounted Industrial Direct-Current Motors

| Frame Designations | A Max | B Max | D* | E† | 2F† | BA | H Hole† |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 142 AT | 7.00 | 6.75 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 143 AT | 7.00 | 7.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 4.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 144 AT | 7.00 | 7.75 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 4.50 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 145 AT | 7.00 | 8.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 5.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 146 AT | 7.00 | 8.75 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 5.50 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 147 AT | 7.00 | 9.50 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 6.25 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 148 AT | 7.00 | 10.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 7.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 149 AT | 7.00 | 11.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 8.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 1410 AT | 7.00 | 12.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 9.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 1411 AT | 7.00 | 13.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 10.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 1412 AT | 7.00 | 14.25 | 3.50 | 2.75 | 11.00 | 2.75 | 0.34 |
| 162 AT | 8.00 | 6.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 4.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 163 AT | 8.00 | 6.50 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 4.50 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 164 AT | 8.00 | 7.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 5.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 165 AT | 8.00 | 7.50 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 5.50 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 166 AT | 8.00 | 8.20 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 6.25 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 167 AT | 8.00 | 9.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 7.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 168 AT | 8.00 | 10.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 8.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 169 AT | 8.00 | 11.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 9.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |
| 1610 AT | 8.00 | 12.00 | 4.00 | 3.12 | 10.00 | 2.50 | 0.41 |

| | Drive End—For Belt Drive | | | | | | Drive End—For Direct-connected Drive | | | | | | End opposite Drive End—Straight | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Keyseat | | | | | | Keyseat | | | | | | Keyseat | | |
| Frame Designations‡ | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S | FU | FN-FW | FV Min | FR | FES Min | FS |
| 142AT-1412AT | 0.8750 | 2.25 | 2.00 | 0.771 | 0.91 | 0.188 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 0.625 | 1.25 | 1.00 | 0.517 | 0.66 | 0.188 |
| 162AT-1610AT | 0.8750 | 1.75 | 1.50 | 0.771 | 0.91 | 0.188 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 0.625 | 1.25 | 1.00 | 0.517 | 0.66 | 0.188 |

All dimensions in inches
*The tolerance on the D dimension shall be +0.00 inch, -0.03 inch
†The tolerance for the 2E and 2F dimensions shall be ±0.03 inch and for the H dimension shall be +0.05 inch, -0.00 inch.

NOTES—1 For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figures 4-1 and 4-2.
2. For tolerances on shaft diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.4 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Direct-Current Small Motors

| Frame Designations | AJ | AK | BA | BB* | BC | BD Nom | DF Hole Number | DF Hole Tap Size | U | AH† | R | Keyseat ES Min | S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 42C | 3.750 | 3.000 | 2.062 | 0.16 | -0.19 | 5.00 | 4 | 1/4-20 | 0.3750 | 1.312 | 0.328 | --- | flat |
| 48C | 3.750 | 3.000 | 2.5 | 0.16 | -0.19 | 5.625 | 4 | 1/4-20 | 0.500 | 1.69 | 0.453 | --- | flat |
| 56C | 5.875 | 4.500 | 2.75 | 0.16 | -0.19 | 6.5 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.6250 | 2.06 | 0.517 | 1.41 | 0.188 |

All dimensions in inches.
*These BB dimensions have a tolerance of +0.00, -0.06 inch.
†If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from the length be in 0.25 inch increments.

NOTES—
1 For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-3.
2 See 4.5.1 for dimensions D, E, and 2F when the motor is provided with feet.
3 For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
4 For tolerance on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12.

### 4.5.5 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors

| Frame Designations | AJ | AK | BA | BB* | BC | BD Max | BF Hole Number | BF Hole Tap Size | BF Hole Bolt Penetration Allowance | U | AH | R | Keyseat ES Min | S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 182ATC-1810ATC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 2.75 | 0.25 | 0.12 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.1250 | 2.12 | 0.986 | 1.41 | 0.250 |
| 213ATC-2110ATC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 3.50 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.3750 | 2.50 | 1.201 | 1.78 | 0.312 |
| 253ATC-259ATC | 7.250 | 8.500 | 4.25 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 10.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.625 | 3.00 | 1.416 | 2.28 | 0.375 |
| 283ATC=289ATC | 9.000 | 10.500 | 4.75 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 11.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 | 1.875 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.53 | 0.500 |
| 323ATC-329ATC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.25 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.125 | 4.00 | 1.845 | 3.03 | 0.500 |
| 363ATC-369ATC | 11.000 | 12.500 | 5.88 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 14.00 | 8 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 | 2.375 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.53 | 0.625 |

All dimensions in inches.

NOTES—
1. For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-3.
2. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
3. For tolerance on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12.
4. See 4.5.2 for dimensions A, B, D, E, 2F, H, and BA when the motor is provided with feet.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.6 Dimensions for Type C Face-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors

| | | | | | | | BF Hole | | | | | Keyseat | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frame Designations | AJ | AK | BA | BB* | BC | BD Max | Number | Tap Size | Bolt Penetration Allowance | U | AH | R | ES Min | S |
| 142ATC-1412ATC | 5.875 | 4.500 | 2.75 | 0.16 | 0.12 | 6.50 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 0.8750 | 2.12 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 |
| 162ATC-1610ATC | 5.875 | 4.500 | 2.50 | 0.16 | 0.12 | 6.50 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 | 0.8750 | 2.12 | 0.771 | 1.41 | 0.188 |

All dimensions in inches.
*Tolerance = +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch.

NOTES—
1. See 4.5.3 for dimensions A, B, E, 2F, and H when the motor is provided with feet.
2. For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-3.
3. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
4. For tolerance on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12.

### 4.5.7 Dimensions for Type D Flange-Mounting Industrial Direct-Current Motors

| | | | | | | | BF Clearance Hole | | | | | Keyseat | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frame Designations | AJ | AK | BB* | BC | BD Max | BE Nom | Size | Number | Recommended Bolt Length | U | AH | R | S |
| 182ATD-1810ATD | 10.00 | 9.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 11.00 | 0.50 | 0.53 | 4 | 1.25 | 1.125 | 2.25 | 0.986 | 0.250 |
| 213ATD-2110ATD | 12.50 | 11.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 14.00 | 0.75 | 0.75 | 4 | 2.00 | 1.375 | 2.75 | 1.201 | 0.312 |
| 253ATD-259ATD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 0.75 | 4 | 2.00 | 1.625 | 3.25 | 1.416 | 0.375 |
| 283ATD-289ATD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 0.75 | 4 | 2.00 | 1.875 | 3.75 | 1.591 | 0.500 |
| 323ATD-329ATD | 16.00 | 14.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 18.00 | 0.75 | 0.75 | 4 | 2.00 | 2.125 | 4.25 | 1.845 | 0.500 |
| 363ATD-369ATD | 20.00 | 18.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 22.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 2.375 | 4.75 | 2.021 | 0.625 |
| 403ATD-409ATD | 22.00 | 18.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 24.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 2.625 | 5.25 | 2.275 | 0.625 |
| 443ATD-449ATD | 22.00 | 18.000 | 0.25 | 0 | 24.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 2.875 | 5.75 | 2.450 | 0.750 |
| 502ATD-509ATD | 30.00 | 28.000 | 0.25 | 0.38 | 32.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 3.250 | 6.88 | 2.831 | 0.750 |
| 583AD-588AD | 30.00 | 28.000 | 0.25 | 0.38 | 32.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 3.250 | 10.12 | 2.831 | 0.750 |
| 583ASD-588ASD | 30.00 | 28.000 | 0.25 | 0.38 | 32.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 2.875 | 6.12 | 2.845 | 0.750 |
| 683AD-688AD | 35.25 | 33.250 | 0.25 | 0.38 | 37.25 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 3.625 | 11.25 | 3.134 | 0.875 |
| 683ASD-688ASD | 35.25 | 33.250 | 0.25 | 0.38 | 37.25 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 8 | 2.50 | 3.250 | 6.88 | 2.831 | 0.750 |

All dimensions in inches.
*Tolerance = +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch

NOTES—
1. See 4.5.3 for dimensions A, B, E, 2F, and H when the motor is provided with feet.
2. For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-3.
3. For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.
4. For tolerance on AK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12.
5. For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-4.
6. See 4.5.2 for dimensions A, B, D, E, 2F, H and BA.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.5.8 Base Dimensions for Types P and PH Vertical Solid-Shaft Industrial Direct-Current Motors[1]

| | | | | BF Clearance Hole | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| AJ | AK | BB Min | BD Max | Number | Size |
| 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 12 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.5 | 4 | 0.69 |
| 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 20 | 4 | 0.69 |
| 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 24.5 | 4 | 0.69 |

All dimensions in inches.
Tolerances (See 4.13.)
AK Dimension—
For 8.250 inches, +0.003 inch, 0.000 inch.
For 13.500 inches, +0.005 inch, -0.000 inch.
Face runout—
For AJ of 9.125 inches, 0.004-inch indicator reading.
For AJ of 14.750 inches, 0.007-inch indicator reading.
Permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet—
For AK of 8.250 inches, 0.004-inch indicator reading.
For AK of 13.500 inches, 0.007-inch indicator reading.

### 4.5.9 Dimensions for Type FC Face Mounting for Accessories on End Opposite Drive End of Industrial Direct-Current Motors[2,3]

| | | | | FBF Hole | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FAJ | FAK | FBB* | FBC | Number | Tap Size | Bolt Penetration Allowance |
| 5.875 | 4.500 | 0.16 | 0.12 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 |
| 7.250 | 8.500 | 0.31 | 0.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 9.000 | 10.500 | 0.31 | 0.25 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 11.000 | 12.500 | 0.31 | 0.25 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |

All dimensions in inch.
*Tolerances
FBB Dimension—
For 0.16 inch, +0.00 inch, -0.03 inch.
For 0.31 inch, +0.00 inch, -0.06 inch.

## 4.6 SHAFT EXTENSION DIAMETERS FOR UNIVERSAL MOTORS

The shaft extension diameters,[4] in inches shall be:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0.2500 | 0.3750 | 0.6250 |
| 0.3125 | 0.5000 | 0.7500 |

[1] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-5

[2] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-3

[3] For tolerance on FAK dimensions, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.12. For permissible runout, see 4.9.

[4] For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.7 TOLERANCE LIMITS IN DIMENSIONS

The dimensions from the shaft center to the bottom of the feet shall be not greater than the dimensions shown on the manufacturer's dimension sheet. When the machine is coupled or geared to the driven (or driving) machines, shims are usually required to secure accurate alignment.

## 4.8 KNOCKOUT AND CLEARANCE HOLE DIAMETER FOR MACHINE TERMINAL BOXES

The diameter of the knockout, excluding any projection of breakout ears or tabs, and the clearance hole in the terminal box of a machine shall be in accordance with the following:

| Conduit | Knockout or Clearance Hole Diameter, Inches | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Size, Inches | Nominal | Minimum | Maximum |
| 1/2 | 0.875 | 0.859 | 0.906 |
| 3/4 | 1.109 | 1.094 | 1.141 |
| 1 | 1.375 | 1.359 | 1.406 |
| 1-1/4 | 1.734 | 1.719 | 1.766 |
| 1-1/2 | 1.984 | 1.969 | 2.016 |
| 2 | 2.469 | 2.453 | 2.500 |
| 2-1/2 | 2.969 | 2.953 | 3.000 |
| 3 | 3.594 | 3.578 | 3.625 |
| 3-1/2 | 4.125 | 4.094 | 4.156 |
| 4 | 4.641 | 4.609 | 4.672 |
| 5 | 5.719 | 5.688 | 5.750 |
| 6 | 6.813 | 6.781 | 6.844 |

## 4.9 TOLERANCES ON SHAFT EXTENSION DIAMETERS AND KEYSEATS

### 4.9.1 Shaft Extension Diameter

The tolerances on shaft extension diameters shall be:

| | Tolerances, Inches | |
|---|---|---|
| Shaft Diameter, Inches | Plus | Minus |
| 0.1875 to 1.5000, incl. | 0.000 | 0.0005 |
| Over 1.5000 to 6.500, incl. | 0.000 | 0.001 |

### 4.9.2 Keyseat Width

The tolerance on the width of shaft extension keyseats shall be:

| | Tolerances, Inches | |
|---|---|---|
| Width of Keyseat, Inches | Plus | Minus |
| 0.188 to 0.750, incl. | 0.002 | 0.000 |
| Over 0.750 to 1.500, incl. | 0.003 | 0.000 |

### 4.9.3 Bottom of Keyseat to Shaft Surface

The tolerance from the bottom of the keyseat to the opposite side of a cylindrical shaft extension shall be +0.000 inch, -0.015 inch.

The tolerance on the depth of shaft extension keyseats for tapered shafts shall be +0.015 inch, -0.000 inch.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 4.9.4. Parallelism of Keyseats to Shaft Centerline

The tolerance for making keyseats parallel to the centerline of the shaft shall be as follows (also See Figure 4-7):

a. For ES dimensions up to and including 4.00 in. – .002 in.
b. For ES dimensions greater than 4.00 in. up to and including 10.00 in – .0005 in. per in. of ES dimension
c. For ES dimensions exceeding 10.00 in. – .005 in.

### 4.9.5 Lateral Displacement of Keyseats

Keyseat lateral displacement is defined as the greatest distance at any point along the usable length of keyseat from the centerline of the keyseat to the plane through the centerline of the shaft extension perpendicular to the true position of the bottom of the keyseat.

Keyseat lateral displacement shall not exceed ±0.010 in. (0.25mm), or 0.020 in. (0.51mm) total zone. See Figure 4-7.

### 4.9.6 Diameters and Keyseat Dimensions

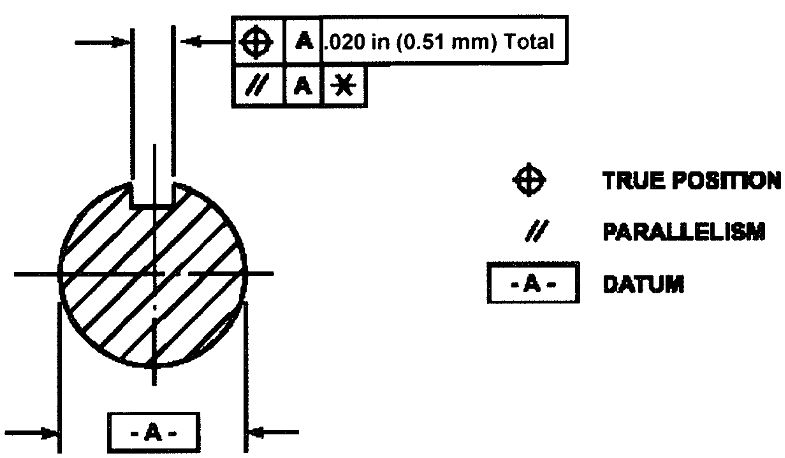
The cylindrical shaft extension diameters and keyseat dimensions for square keys shall be as shown in Table 4-3.

### 4.9.7 Shaft Runout

The tolerance for the permissible shaft runout, when measured at the end of the shaft extension, shall be (see 4.11):

a. For 0.1875- to 1.625-inch diameter shafts, inclusive—0.002-in. indicator reading.
b. For over 1.625- to 6.500-inch diameter shafts, inclusive—0.003-in. indicator reading.

NOTE—Standards have not been established for shaft runouts where the shaft extension length exceeds the standard. However, runouts for shafts longer than standard are usually greater than those indicated above.




| PARALLELISM | LENGTH OF KEYSEAT |
|---|---|
| .002 IN (0.051 mm) | ES ≤ 4 IN (102 mm) |
| .0005 IN (0.013 mm) per inch of ES Dim | 4 IN < ES ≤ 10 IN |
| .005 IN (0.127 mm) | ES > 10 IN (250 mm) |

Figure 4-7
KEYSEAT LATERAL DISPLACEMENT AND PARALLELISM

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-3**
**CYLINDRICAL SHAFT EXTENSION DIAMETERS AND KEYSEAT DIMENSIONS FOR SQUARE KEYS**

| Shaft Diameter, U Inches | Keyseat Width, S Inches | Bottom of Keyseat to Opposite Side of Cylindrical Shaft, R Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 0.1875 | Flat | 0.178 |
| 0.2500 | Flat | 0.235 |
| 0.3125 | Flat | 0.295 |
| 0.3750 | Flat | 0.328 |
| 0.5000 | Flat | 0.453 |
| 0.6250 | 0.188 | 0.517 |
| 0.7500 | 0.188 | 0.644 |
| 0.8750 | 0.188 | 0.771 |
| 1.0000 | 0.250 | 0.859 |
| 1.1250 | 0.250 | 0.986 |
| 1.2500 | 0.250 | 1.112 |
| 1.3750 | 0.312 | 1.201 |
| 1.5000 | 0.375 | 1.289 |
| 1.625 | 0.375 | 1.416 |
| 1.750 | 0.375 | 1.542 |
| 1.875 | 0.500 | 1.591 |
| 2.000 | 0.500 | 1.718 |
| 2.125 | 0.500 | 1.845 |
| 2.250 | 0.500 | 1.972 |
| 2.375 | 0.625 | 2.021 |
| 2.500 | 0.625 | 2.148 |
| 2.625 | 0.625 | 2.275 |
| 2.750 | 0.625 | 2.402 |
| 2.875 | 0.750 | 2.450 |
| 3.000 | 0.750 | 2.577 |
| 3.125 | 0.750 | 2.704 |
| 3.250 | 0.750 | 2.831 |
| 3.375 | 0.875 | 2.880 |
| 3.500 | 0.875 | 3.007 |
| 3.625 | 0.875 | 3.134 |
| 3.750 | 0.875 | 3.261 |
| 3.875 | 1.000 | 3.309 |
| 4.000 | 1.000 | 3.436 |
| 4.250 | 1.000 | 3.690 |
| 4.375 | 1.000 | 3.817 |
| 4.500 | 1.000 | 3.944 |
| Over 4.500 to 5.500 | 1.250 | * |
| Over 5.500 to 6.500 | 1.500 | * |

$$* R = \frac{U - S + \sqrt{U^2 - S^2}}{2}$$

### 4.9.8 Shaft Extension Key(s)

When a machine shaft extension is provided with one or more straight keyseats, each shall be provided with a full key of normal shape and length, unless otherwise specified by the customer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.10 RING GROOVE SHAFT KEYSEATS FOR VERTICAL SHAFT MOTORS

Dimensions and tolerances for ring groove shaft keyseats shall be in accordance with Table 4-4.

**Table 4-4**
**DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES FOR RING GROOVE KEYSEATS**

| U, Inches | EU*, Inches | EW, Inches | EX, Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.8750 through 1.0000 | U-(0.1875) | 0.377<br>0.375 | 0.750<br>0.745 |
| 1.1250 through 1.5000 | U-(0.250) | 0.377<br>0.375 | 0.750<br>0.745 |
| 1.625 through 2.500 | U-(0.375) | 0.377<br>0.375 | 0.750<br>0.745 |
| 2.625 through 4.500 | U-(0.500) | 0.503<br>0.500 | 1.000<br>0.990 |
| 4.625 through 6.000 | U-(0.750) | 0.755<br>0.750 | 1.500<br>1.485 |

*Tolerance on ring keyseat diameter (EU)

| Nominal Shaft Diameter, Inches | Tolerances, Inches |
|---|---|
| 0.875 to 2.500, incl. | +0.000/-0.005 |
| 2.625 to 4.500, incl. | +0.000/-0.010 |
| 4.625 to 6.000, incl. | +0.000/-0.015 |

## 4.11 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT OF SHAFT RUNOUT AND OF ECCENTRICITY AND FACE RUNOUT OF MOUNTING SURFACES

### 4.11.1 Shaft Runout

The shaft runout shall be measured with the indicator stationary with respect to the motor and with its point at the end of the finished surface of the shaft. See Figures 4-8 and 4-9 for typical fixtures.

Read the maximum and minimum values on the indicator as the shaft is rotated slowly through 360 degrees. The difference between the readings shall not exceed the specified value.

### 4.11.2 Eccentricity and Face Runout of Mounting Surfaces

The eccentricity and face runout of the mounting surfaces shall be measured with indicators mounted on the shaft extension. The point of the eccentricity indicator shall be at approximately the middle of the rabbet surface, and the point of the face runout indicator shall be at approximately the outer diameter of the mounting face. See Figure 4-10 for typical fixture.

Read the maximum and minimum values on the indicators as the shaft is rotated slowly through 360 degrees. The difference between the readings shall not exceed the specified value.

NOTE—On ball-bearing motors, it is recommended that the test be made with the shaft vertical to minimize the effect of bearing clearances.

## 4.12 TOLERANCES FOR TYPE C FACE MOUNTING AND TYPE D FLANGE MOUNTING MOTORS

For Type C face-mounting and Type D flange-mounting motors, the tolerance on the mounting rabbet diameter, the maximum face runout, and the maximum eccentricity of the mounting rabbet shall be as in Table 4-5 when measured in accordance with 4.11.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-5**
**MAXIMUM ECCENTRICITY OF MOUNTING RABBET**

| AK Dimension, Inches | Tolerance on AK Dimension, Inches | | Maximum Face Runout, Inches | Maximum Permissible Eccentricity of Mounting Rabbet Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Plus | Minus | | |
| <12 | 0.000 | 0.003 | 0.004 | 0.004 |
| ≥12 to 24 | 0.000 | 0.005 | 0.007 | 0.007 |
| >24 to 40 | 0.000 | 0.007 | 0.009 | 0.009 |

## 4.13 TOLERANCES FOR TYPE P FLANGE-MOUNTING MOTORS

For Type P flange-mounting motors (see Figure 4-5), the tolerance on the mounting rabbet diameter, the maximum face runout, and the maximum eccentricity of the mounting rabbet shall be as in Table 4-6 when measured in accordance with 4.11.

**Table 4-6**
**MAXIMUM ECCENTRICITY OF MOUNTING RABBET**

| AK Dimension, Inches | Tolerance on AK Dimension, Inches | | Maximum Face Runout, Inches | Maximum Permissible Eccentricity of Mounting Rabbet Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Plus | Minus | | |
| <12 | 0.003 | 0.000 | 0.004 | 0.004 |
| ≥12 to 24 | 0.005 | 0.000 | 0.007 | 0.007 |
| >24 to 40 | 0.007 | 0.000 | 0.009 | 0.009 |
| >40 to 60 | 0.010 | 0.000 | 0.012 | 0.012 |

## 4.14 MOUNTING BOLTS OR STUDS

Bolts or studs used for installing foot-mounting machines may be one size smaller than the maximum size permitted by the foot hole diameter if Grade 5 or 8 fasteners and heavy duty washers are used. Doweling after alignment is recommended.

NOTE—For the definition of Grade 5 or 8 fasteners refer to ANSI/SAE Standard J429.

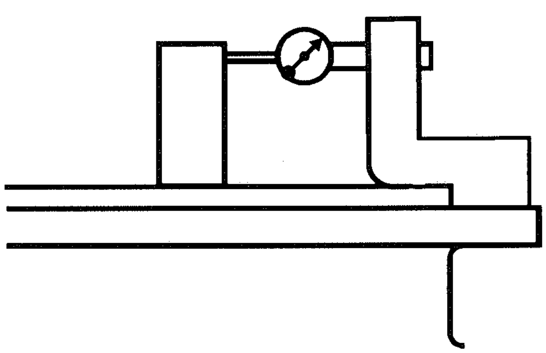


**Figure 4-8**
**SHAFT RUNOUT**

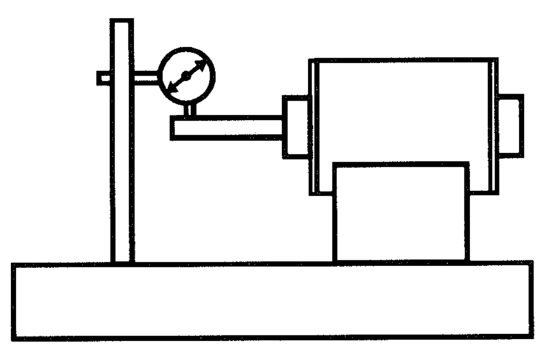


**Figure 4-9**
**SHAFT RUNOUT**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

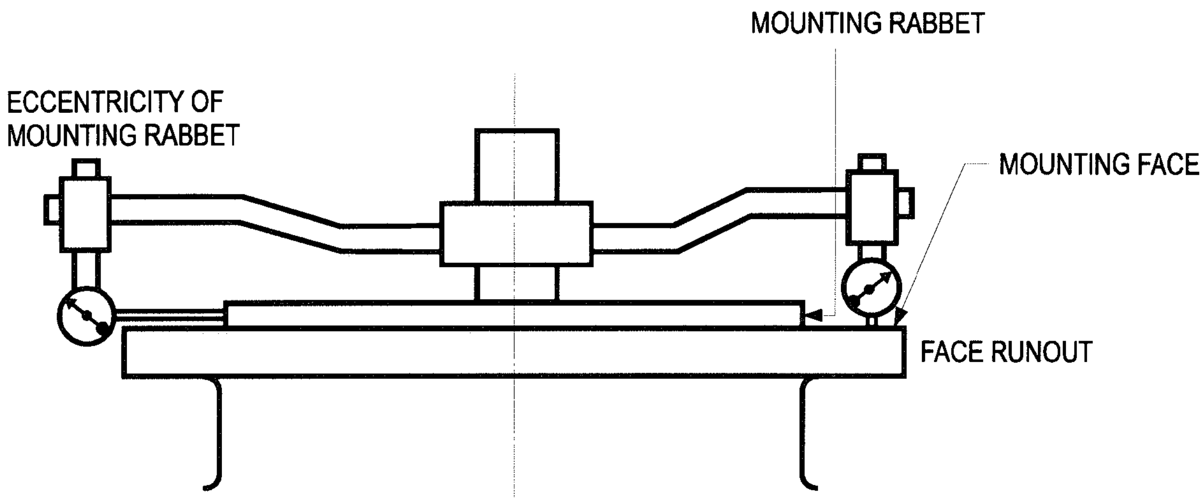



**Figure 4-10**
**ECCENTRICITY AND FACE RUNOUT OF MOUNTING SURFACES**

### 4.15 METHOD TO CHECK COPLANARITY OF FEET OF FULLY ASSEMBLED MOTORS

To check the flatness of the feet of a fully assembled motor, the motor shall be placed on a flat surface plate (tool room grade "B"), and a feeler gauge inserted between the surface plate and the motor feet at each bolt mounting hole. A feeler gauge of the required coplanar tolerance shall not penetrate any gap between the bottom of the feet and the surface plate within a circular area about the centerline of the bolt hole with a diameter equal to 3 times the bolt hole diameter or 1 inch, whichever is greater. The motor must not be allowed to shift or rock, changing points of contact during these measurements. If the room temperature is not controlled the surface plate shall be a granite block. Alternate methods using lasers or co-ordinate measuring machines can be used provided they are shown to provide equivalent results.

### 4.16 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT OF SHAFT EXTENSION PARALLELISM TO FOOT PLANE

When measuring the parallelism of the shaft extension with respect to the foot mounting surface, the motor shall be mounted on a flat surface satisfying the requirements of the coplanar test (see 4.15) and the parallelism measured by determining the difference between the distances from the mounting surface to the top or bottom surface of the shaft, at the end of the shaft, and to the top or bottom surface of the shaft, at the position on the shaft corresponding to the BA dimension. Alternate methods using lasers or co-ordinate measuring machines can be used provided they are shown to provide equivalent results.

### 4.17 MEASUREMENT OF BEARING TEMPERATURE

Either thermometers, thermocouples, resistance temperature devices (RTD), or other temperature detectors may be used. The measuring point shall be located as near as possible to one of the two locations specified in the following table:

| Type of Bearing | | Location Measuring Point |
|---|---|---|
| Ball or roller | Preferred | In the bearing housing at the outer ring of the bearing, or if not practical, not more than 1/2 inch from the outer ring of the bearing. |
| | Alternate | Outer surface of the bearing housing as close as possible to the outer ring of the bearing. |
| Sleeve | Preferred | In the bottom of the bearing shell and not more than 1/2 inch from the oil-film. |
| | Alternate | Elsewhere in the bearing shell. |

Thermal resistance between the temperature detector and the bearing to be measured shall be minimized. For example, any gaps could be packed with a suitable thermal conductive material.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.18 TERMINAL CONNECTIONS FOR SMALL MOTORS

### 4.18.1 Terminal Leads

The terminal leads of small motors shall be brought: (1) out of the end shield at the end opposite the drive end and at the right-hand side when viewing this end; or (2) out of the frame at the right-hand side when viewing the end opposite the drive end and as close to this end as is practicable.

### 4.18.2 Blade Terminals

Except where other dimensions for blade terminals are specified in Part 18, blade terminals when used for external connection of small motors shall have the following dimensions:

| Frame Size | Width, Inches | Thickness, Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 48 and larger | 0.250 | 0.031 |
| Smaller than 48 | 0.187 | 0.020 |

## 4.19 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS

### 4.19.1 Small and Medium Motors

Terminal housings shall be of metal and of substantial construction. For motors over 7 inches in diameter, the terminal housings shall be capable of withstanding without failure a vertical loading on the horizontal surfaces of 20 pounds per square inch of horizontal surface up to a maximum of 240 pounds. This load shall be applied through a 2-inch-diameter flat metal surface. Bending or deforming of the housing shall not be considered a failure unless it results in spacings between the housing and any rigidly mounted live terminals less than those given in 4.19.2.2.

In other than hazardous (classified) locations, substantial, non-metallic, non-burning[1] terminal housings shall be permitted to be used on motors and generators provided internal grounding means between the machine frame and the equipment grounding connection is incorporated into the housing.

### 4.19.2 Dimensions

#### 4.19.2.1 Terminal Housings for Wire-to-Wire Connections—Small and Medium Machines

When these terminal housings enclose wire-to-wire connections, they shall have minimum dimensions and usable volumes in accordance with the following. Auxiliary leads for such items as brakes, thermostats, space heaters, exciting fields, etc., shall be permitted to be disregarded if their current-carrying area does not exceed 25 percent of the current-carrying area of the machine power leads.

**TERMINAL HOUSING—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS AND VOLUMES FOR MOTORS 11 INCHES IN DIAMETER* OR LESS**

| Hp | Cover Opening, Minimum Dimensions, Inches | Useable Volume Minimum, Cubic Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 1 and smaller** | 1.62 | 10.5 |
| 1 1/2, 2, and 3† | 1.75 | 16.8 |
| 5 and 7 1/2 | 2.00 | 22.4 |
| 10 and 15 | 2.50 | 36.4 |

*This is a diameter measured in the plane of lamination of the circle circumscribing the stator frame, excluding lugs, fins, boxes, etc., used solely for motor cooling, mounting, assembly, or connection.

**For motors rated 1 horsepower and smaller and with the terminal housing partially or wholly integral with the frame or end shield, the volume of the terminal housing shall be not less than 1.1 cubic inch per wire-to-wire connection. The minimum cover opening dimension is not specified.

†For motors rated 1-1/2, 2, and 3 horsepower and with the terminal housing partially or wholly integral with the frame or end shield, the volume of the terminal housing shall be not less than 1.4 cubic inch per wire-to-wire connection. The minimum cover opening dimension is not specified.

[1] See American Society for Testing and Materials—Test for Flammability of Self-Supporting Plastics, ASTM D635-81, over 0.050 inch (0.127 cm) in thickness, for the non-burning test.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**TERMINAL HOUSING—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS AND VOLUMES FOR MOTORS OVER 11 INCHES IN DIAMETER***

**Alternating-current Motors**

| Maximum Full-Load Current for Three-Phase Motors with Maximum of Twelve Leads, Amperes | Terminal Box Cover Opening Minimum Dimension, Inches | Usable Volume, Minimum, Cubic Inches | Typical Maximum Three Phase Horsepower | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 230 Volts | 460 Volts |
| 45 | 2.5 | 36.4 | 15 | 30 |
| 70 | 3.3 | 77 | 25 | 50 |
| 110 | 4.0 | 140 | 40 | 75 |
| 160 | 5.0 | 252 | 60 | 125 |
| 250 | 6.0 | 450 | 100 | 200 |
| 400 | 7.0 | 840 | 150 | 300 |
| 600 | 8.0 | 1540 | 250 | 500 |

**Direct Current Motors**

| Maximum Full-Load Current for Motors with Maximum of Six Leads | Terminal Housing Minimum Dimension, Inches | Usable Volume, Minimum, Cubic Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 68 | 2.5 | 26 |
| 105 | 3.3 | 55 |
| 165 | 4.0 | 100 |
| 240 | 5.0 | 180 |
| 375 | 6.0 | 330 |
| 600 | 7.0 | 600 |
| 900 | 8.0 | 1100 |

*This is a diameter measured in the plane of lamination of the circle circumscribing the stator frame, excluding lugs, fins, boxes, etc., used solely for motor cooling, mounting, assembly, or connection.

### 4.19.2.2 Terminal Housings for Rigidly-Mounted Terminals — Medium Machines

When the terminal housings enclose rigidly-mounted motor terminals, the terminal housings shall be of sufficient size to provide minimum terminal spacings and usable volumes in accordance with the following:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**TERMINAL SPACINGS**

| | Minimum Spacing, Inches | |
|---|---|---|
| **Volts** | **Between Line Terminals** | **Between Line Terminals and Other Uninsulated Metal Parts** |
| 250 or less | 0.25 | 0.25 |
| 251—600, incl. | 0.38 | 0.38 |

**USABLE VOLUMES**

| **Power Supply Conductor Size, AWG** | **Minimum Usable Volume per Power Supply Conductor, Cubic Inches** |
|---|---|
| 14 | 1.0 |
| 12 and 10 | 1.25 |
| 8 and 6 | 2.25 |

For larger wire sizes or when motors are installed as a part of factory-wired equipment, without additional connection being required at the motor terminal housing during equipment installation, the terminal housing shall be of ample size to make connections, but the foregoing provisions for the volumes of terminal housings need not apply.

### 4.19.2.3 Terminal Housings for Large AC Motors

When large motors are provided with terminal housings for line cable connections[1], the minimum dimensions and usable volume shall be as indicated in Table 4-6 for Type I terminal housings or Figure 4-11 for Type II terminal housings.

Unless otherwise specified, when induction motors are provided with terminal housings, a Type I terminal housing shall be supplied.

For motors rated 601 volts and higher, accessory leads shall terminate in a terminal box or boxes separate from the machine terminal housing. As an exception, current and potential transformers located in the machine terminal housing shall be permitted to have their secondary connections terminated in the machine terminal housing if separated from the machine leads by a suitable physical barrier.

For motors rated 601 volts and higher, the termination of leads of accessory items normally operating at a voltage of 50 volts (rms) or less shall be separated from leads of higher voltage by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact or shall be terminated in a separate box.

[1] Terminal housings containing stress cones, surge capacitors, surge arresters, current transformers, or potential transformers require individual consideration.

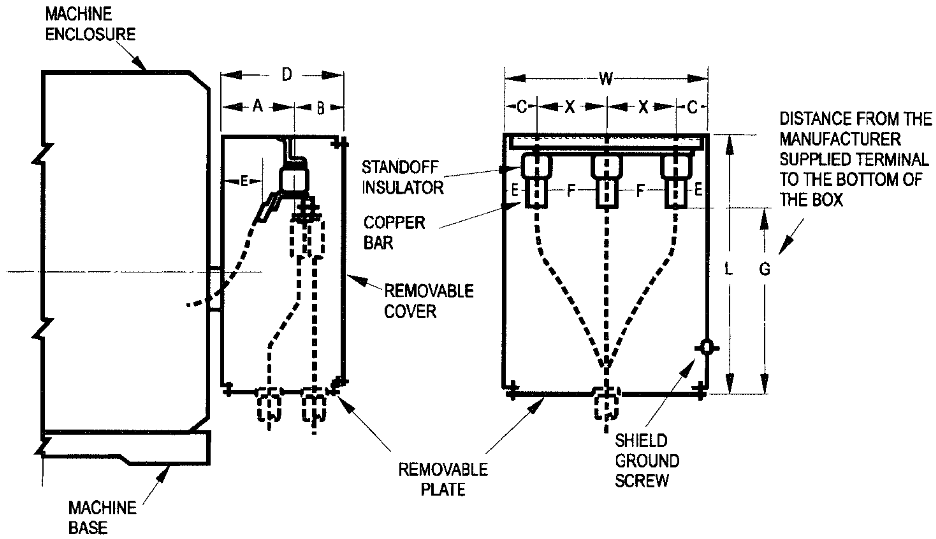
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 4-6**
**TYPE I TERMINAL HOUSING**
**UNSUPPORTED AND INSULATED TERMINATIONS**

| Voltage | Maximum Full-Load Current | Minimum Useable Volumes, Cubic Inches | Minimum Internal Dimensions, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0-600 | 400 | 900 | 8 | --- |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | --- |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | --- |
| | 1200 | 4600 | 14 | --- |
| 601-2400 | 160 | 180 | 5 | --- |
| | 250 | 330 | 6 | --- |
| | 400 | 900 | 8 | --- |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | 12.6 |
| | 1500 | 5600 | 16 | 20.1 |
| 2401-4800 | 160 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 700 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 1000 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1500 | 10740 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 13400 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 4801-6900 | 260 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 680 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1000 | 9400 | 18 | 25 |
| | 1500 | 11600 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 14300 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 6901-13800 | 400 | 44000 | 22 | 28.3 |
| | 900 | 50500 | 25 | 32.3 |
| | 1500 | 56500 | 27.6 | 32.3 |
| | 2000 | 62500 | 30.7 | 32.3 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of machine leads.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




| Machine Voltage | Minimum Dimensions (Inches) L | W | D | A | B | C | X | E | F | G |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 460-600 | 24 | 18 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 4 | 5 | 2-1/2 | 4 | 12 |
| 2300-4800 | 26 | 27 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 5-1/2 | 8 | 3-1/2 | 5 | 14 |
| 6600-6900 | 36 | 30 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 30 |
| 13200-13800 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 13-1/2 | 11-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 13-1/2 | 6-3/4 | 9-1/2 | 36 |

**Figure 4-11**
**TYPE II MACHINE TERMINAL HOUSING STAND-OFF-INSULATOR-SUPPORTED INSULATED OR UNINSULATED TERMINATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 4.19.2.4 Terminal Housings for Large AC Synchronous Generators

When large ac synchronous generators are provided with terminal housings for wire-to-wire connections,[1] the housings shall have the following dimensions and useable volumes:

| Voltage | kVA | Minimum Usable Volume Cu. In. | Minimum Dimension, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0-599 | <20 | 75 | 2.5 | |
| | 21-45 | 250 | 4 | |
| | 46-200 | 500 | 6 | |
| 480 | 201-312, incl. | 600 | 7 | |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | |
| 600 -2399 | 201-312, incl.. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | ... |
| 2400 -4159 | 251-625, incl. | 180 | 5 | ... |
| | 626-1000, incl. | 330 | 6 | ... |
| | 1000-1563, incl. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 1564-2500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 2501-3750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| 4160 -6899 | 351-1250, incl. | 2000 | 8 | 12.5 |
| | 1251-5000, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 5001-7500, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| 6900 -13800 | 876-3125, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 3126-8750, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of generator leads.

[1] Terminal housings containing surge capacitors, surge arresters, current transformers, or potential transformers require individual consideration.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 4.20 GROUNDING MEANS FOR FIELD WIRING

When motors are provided with terminal housings for wire-to-wire connections or fixed terminal connections, a means for attachment of an equipment grounding conductor termination shall be provided inside, or adjacent with accessibility from, the terminal housing. Unless its intended use is obvious, it shall be suitably identified. The termination shall be suitable for the attachment and equivalent fault current ampacity of a copper grounding conductor as shown in Table 4-7. A screw, stud, or bolt intended for the termination of a grounding conductor shall be not smaller than shown in Table 4-7. For motor full-load currents in excess of 30 amperes ac or 45 amperes dc, external tooth lockwashers, serrated screw heads, or the equivalent shall not be furnished for a screw, bolt, or stud intended as a grounding conductor termination.

When a motor is provided with a grounding terminal, this terminal shall be the solderless type and shall be on a part of the machine not normally disassembled during operation or servicing.

When a terminal housing mounting screw, stud, or bolt is used to secure the grounding conductor to the main terminal housing, there shall be at least one other equivalent securing means for attachment of the terminal housing to the machine frame.

**Table 4-7**
**MINIMUM SIZE GROUNDING CONDUCTOR TERMINATION**

| Motor Full Load Current ≤ | | Minimum Size of Grounding Conductor Termination Attachment Means, AWG | Minimum Size of Screw, Stud, or Bolt | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ac | dc | | Steel | Bronze |
| 12 | 12 | 14 | #6 | --- |
| 16 | 16 | 12 | #8 | --- |
| 30 | 40 | 10 | #10 | --- |
| 45 | 68 | 8 | #12 | #10 |
| 70 | 105 | 6 | 5/16" | #12 |
| 110 | 165 | 4 | 5/16" | 5/16" |
| 160 | 240 | 3 | 3/8" | 5/16" |
| 250 | 375 | 1 | 1/2" | 3/8" |
| 400 | 600 | 2/0 | --- | 1/2" |
| 600 | 900 | 3/0 | --- | 1/2" |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 5

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 5
# ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—CLASSIFICATION OF DEGREES OF PROTECTION PROVIDED BY ENCLOSURES FOR ROTATING MACHINES

## 5.1 SCOPE

This Standard applies to the classification of degrees of protection provided by enclosures for rotating electrical machines. It defines the requirements for protective enclosures that are in all other respects suitable for their intended use and which, from the point of view of materials and workmanship, ensure that the properties dealt with in this standard are maintained under normal conditions of use.

This standard does not specify:

- degrees of protection against mechanical damage of the machine, or conditions such as moisture (produced for example by condensation), corrosive vapours, fungus or vermin;
- types of protection of machines for use in an explosive atmosphere;
- the requirements for barriers external to the enclosure which have to be provided solely for the safety of personnel.

In certain applications (such as agricultural or domestic appliances), more extensive precautions against accidental or deliberate contact may be specified.

This standard gives definitions for standard degrees of protection provided by enclosures applicable to rotating electrical machines as regards the:

a) protection of persons against contacts with or approach to live parts and against contact with moving parts (other than smooth rotating shafts and the like) inside the enclosure and protection of the machine against ingress of solid foreign objects;

b) protection of machines against the harmful effects due to ingress of water.

It gives designations for these protective degrees and tests to be performed to check that the machines meet the requirements of this standard.

## 5.2 DESIGNATION

The designation used for the degree of protection consists of the letters IP followed by two characteristic numerals signifying conformity with the conditions indicated in the tables of 5.3 and 5.4 respectively.

### 5.2.1 Single Characteristic Numeral

When it is required to indicate a degree of protection by only one characteristic numeral, the omitted numeral shall be replaced by the letter X, for example IPX5 or IP2X.

### 5.2.2 Supplementary Letters

Additional information may be indicated by a supplementary letter following the second characteristic numeral. If more than one letter is used, the alphabetic sequence shall apply.

#### 5.2.2.1 Letters Following Numerals

In special applications (such as machines with open circuit cooling for ship deck installation with air inlet and outlet openings closed during stand-still) numerals may be followed by a letter indicating whether the protection against harmful effects due to ingress of water was verified or tested for the machine not

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

running (letter S) or the machine running (letter M). In this case the degree of protection in either state of the machine shall be indicated, for example IP55S/IP20M.

The absence of the letters S and M shall imply that the intended degree of protection will be provided under all normal conditions of use.

#### 5.2.2.2 Letters Placed Immediately after the Letters IP

For air-cooled open machines suitable for specific weather conditions and provided with additional protective features or processes (as specified in 5.10), the letter W may be used.

### 5.2.3 Example of Designation

| | IP | 4 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Characteristic letters | IP | | |
| 1st characteristic numeral (see Table 5-1) | | 4 | |
| 2nd characteristic numeral (see Table 5-2) | | | 4 |

### 5.2.4 Most Frequently Used

The most frequently used degrees of protection for electrical machines are given in Appendix A.

## 5.3 DEGREES OF PROTECTION—FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

### 5.3.1 Indication of Degree of Protection

The first characteristic numeral indicates the degree of protection provided by the enclosure with respect to persons and also to the parts of the machine inside the enclosure.

Table 5-1 gives, in column 3, brief details of objects which will be "excluded" from the enclosure for each of the degrees of protection represented by the first characteristic numeral.

The term "excluded" implies that a part of the body, or a tool or a wire held by a person, either will not enter the machine or if it enters, that adequate clearance will be maintained between it and the live parts or dangerous moving parts (smooth rotating shafts and the like are not considered dangerous).

Column 3 of Table 5-1 also indicates the minimum size of solid foreign objects which will be excluded.

### 5.3.2 Compliance to Indicated Degree of Protection

Compliance of an enclosure with an indicated degree of protection implies that the enclosure will also comply with all lower degrees of protection in Table 5-1. In consequence, the tests establishing these lower degrees of protection are not required, except in case of doubt.

### 5.3.3 External Fans

The blades and spokes of fans external to the enclosure shall be protected against contact by means of guards complying with the following requirements:

| Protection of machine | Test of fan |
|---|---|
| IP 1X | 1.968 inch (50 mm) sphere test |
| IP2X to IP6X | Finger test |

For the test, the rotor shall be slowly rotated, for example by hand when possible.

Smooth rotating shafts and similar parts are not considered dangerous.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 5.3.4 Drain Holes

If the machine is provided with drain holes, the following shall apply:

a. Drain holes intended normally to be open on site shall be kept open during testing.
b. Drain holes intended normally to be closed on site shall be kept closed during testing.
c. If machines with protection IP3X or IP4X are intended to be run with open drain holes, the drain holes may comply with protection IP 2X.
d. If machines with protection IP5X are intended to be run with open drain holes, the drain holes shall comply with protection IP4X.

**Table 5-1**
**DEGREES OF PROTECTION INDICATED BY THE FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL**

| First Characteristic Numeral | Degree of Protection | | Test Condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Brief Description (Note 1) | Definition | |
| 0 | Non-protected machine | No special protection | No test |
| 1 (Note 2) | Machine protected against solid objects greater than 1.968 in. (50 mm) | Accidental or inadvertent contact with or approach to live and moving parts inside the enclosure by a large surface of the human body, such as a hand (but no protection against deliberate access).<br><br>Ingress of solid objects exceeding 1.968 in. (50 mm) in diameter | Table 5-3 |
| 2 (Note 2) | Machine protected against solid objects greater than 0.4724 in. (12 mm) | Contact with or approach to live or moving parts inside the enclosure by fingers or similar objects not exceeding 3.15 inch (80 mm) in length.<br><br>Ingress of solid objects exceeding 0.4724 in. (12 mm) in diameter. | Table 5-3 |
| 3 (Note 2) | Machine protected against solid objects greater than 0.0984 in. (2.5 mm) | Contact with or approach to live or moving parts inside the enclosure by tools or wires exceeding 0.0984 inch (2.5 mm) in diameter.<br><br>Ingress of solid objects exceeding 0.0984 in. (2.5 mm) in diameter. | Table 5-3 |
| 4 (Note 2) | Machine protected against solid objects greater than 0.0394 in. (1 mm) | Contact with or approach to live or moving parts inside the enclosure by wires or strips of thickness greater than 0.0394 in. (1 mm).<br><br>Ingress of solid objects exceeding 0.0394 in. (1 mm) in diameter | Table 5-3 |
| 5 (Note 3) | Dust-protected machine | Contact with or approach to live or moving parts inside the enclosure.<br><br>Ingress of dust is not totally prevented but dust does not enter in sufficient quantity to interfere with satisfactory operation of the machine. | Table 5-3 |
| 6 (Note 3) | Dust-tight machine | Contact with or approach to live or moving parts inside the enclosure.<br><br>No ingress of dust | Table 5-3 |

NOTES—

1. The brief description given in column 2 in this table should not be used to specify the type of protection.

2. Machines assigned a first characteristic numeral 1, 2, 3, or 4 will exclude both regularly or irregularly shaped solid objects provided that three normally perpendicular dimensions of the object exceed the appropriate figure in column "Definition."

3. The degree of protection against dust defined by this standard is a general one. When the nature of the dust (dimensions of particles, their nature, for instance fibrous particles) is specified, test conditions should be determined by agreement between manufacturer and user.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 5.4 DEGREES OF PROTECTION—SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

### 5.4.1 Indication of Degree of Protection

The second characteristic numeral indicates the degree of protection provided by the enclosure with respect to harmful effects due to ingress of water.

Table 5-2 gives, in column 3, details of the type of protection provided by the enclosure for each of the degrees of protection represented by the second characteristic numeral.

An air-cooled open machine is weather-protected when its design reduces the ingress of rain, snow, and airborne particles, under specified conditions, to an amount consistent with correct operation. This degree of protection is designated by the letter "W" placed after the two characteristic numerals.

### 5.4.2 Compliance to Indicated Degree of Protection

For second characteristic numerals up to and including 6, compliance of an enclosure with an indicated degree of protection implies that the enclosure will also comply with all lower degrees of protection in Table 5-2.

In consequence, the tests establishing these lower degrees of protection are not required, except in case of doubt.

For IPX7 and IPX8, it shall not be assumed that compliance of the enclosure implies that the enclosure will also comply with all lower degrees of protection in Table 5-2.

**Table 5-2**
**DEGREES OF PROTECTION INDICATED BY THE SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL**

| Second Characteristic Numeral | Degree of Protection | | Test Condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Brief Description (Note 1) | Definition | |
| 0 | Non-protected machine | No special protection | No test |
| 1 | Machine protected against dripping water | Dripping water (vertically falling drops) shall have no harmful effect. | Table 5-4 |
| 2 | Machine protected against dripping water when tilted up to 15 degrees | Vertically dripping water shall have no harmful effect when the machine is tilted at any angle up to 15 degrees from its normal position. | Table 5-4 |
| 3 | Machine protected against spraying water | Water falling as a spray at an angle up to 60 degrees from the vertical shall have no harmful effect. | Table 5-4 |
| 4 | Machine protected against splashing water | Water splashing against the machine from any direction shall have no harmful effect. | Table 5-4 |
| 5 | Machine protected against water jets | Water projected by a nozzle against the machine from any direction shall have no harmful effect. | Table 5-4 |
| 6 | Machine protected against heavy seas | Water from heavy seas or water projected in powerful jets shall not enter the machine in harmful quantities. | Table 5-4 |
| 7 | Machine protected against the effects of immersion | Ingress of water in the machine in a harmful quantity shall not be possible when the machine is immersed in water under stated conditions of pressure and time. | Table 5-4 |
| 8 | Machine protected against continuous submersion (Note 2) | The machine is suitable for continuous submersion in water under conditions which shall be specified by the manufacturer. | Table 5-4 |

NOTES—
1. The brief description given in column 2 in this table should not be used to specify the type of protection.
2. Normally, this means that the machine is hermetically sealed. However, with certain types of machines it can mean that water can enter but only in such a manner that it produces no harmful effect.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 5.5 MARKING

It is recommended that the characteristic letters and numerals be marked on the machine preferably on the rating plate, or, if this is not practicable, on the enclosure.

When all parts of a machine do not have the same degree of protection, at least the designation of the lowest degree shall be shown, followed, if necessary, by the higher designation with clear reference to the part to which it applies.

NOTE—Space limitations on the rating plate usually only allow the lowest IP code to be marked. Parts or components having a higher degree of protection should then be specified in the documentation and/or in the operating instructions.

The lower degree of protection of:

- guards for external fans (as allowed in 5.4.3);
- drain holes (as allowed in 5.4.4);
- need not be specified on the rating plate or in the documentation.

Where the mounting of the machine has an influence on the degree of protection, the intended mounting arrangements shall be indicated by the manufacturer on the rating plate or in the instructions for mounting.

## 5.6 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR TESTS

The tests specified in this standard are type tests. They shall be carried out on standard products or models of them. Where this is not feasible, verification either by an alternative test or by examination of drawings shall be the subject of an agreement between manufacturer and user.

Unless otherwise specified, the machine for each test shall be clean with all the parts in place and mounted in the manner stated by the manufacturer.

In the case of both first and second characteristic numerals 1, 2, 3, and 4, a visual inspection may, in certain obvious cases, show that the intended degree of protection is obtained. In such cases, no test need be made. However, in case of doubt, tests shall be made as prescribed in 5.7 and 5.8.

### 5.6.1 Adequate Clearance

For the purpose of the following test clauses in this standard, the term "adequate clearance" has the following meaning:

#### 5.6.1.1 Low-Voltage Machines (Rated Voltages Not Exceeding 1000 V AC and 1500 V DC)

The test device (sphere, finger, wire, etc.) does not touch the live parts or moving parts other than non-dangerous parts such as smooth rotating shafts.

#### 5.6.1.2 High-Voltage Machines (Rated Voltages Exceeding 1000 V AC and 1500 V DC)

When the test device is placed in the most unfavorable position, the machine shall be capable of withstanding the dielectric test applicable to the machine.

This dielectric test requirement may be replaced by a specified clearance dimension in air which would ensure that this test would be satisfactory under the most unfavorable electrical field configuration.

## 5.7 TESTS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

Test and acceptance conditions for the first characteristic numeral are given in Table 5-3.

The dust test for numerals 5 and 6 shall be performed with the shaft stationary, provided that the difference in pressure between running and stationary (caused by fan effects) is lower than 2 kPa. If the pressure difference is greater than 2 kPa, the internal machine pressure during the dust test shall be depressed accordingly. Alternatively, the machine may be tested with the shaft rotating at rated speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 5-3

## TEST AND ACCEPTANCE CONDITIONS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

| First Characteristic Numeral | Test and Acceptance Conditions |
|---|---|
| 0 | No test is required. |
| 1 | The test is made with a rigid sphere of 1.968 +.002/-0 inches (50 +0.05/-0 mm) diameter applied against the opening(s) in the enclosure with a force of 11.2 lbf (50 N) ±10 percent.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if the sphere does not pass through any opening and adequate clearance is maintained to parts which are normally live in service or moving parts inside the machine. |
| 2 | a. Finger test<br><br>The test is made with a metallic test finger as shown in Figure 1-3 or 5-1. Both joints of this finger may be bent through an angle of 90 degrees with respect to the axis of the finger, but in one and the same direction only. The finger is pushed without undue force (not more than 2.24 lbf (10 N)) against any openings in the enclosure and, if it enters, it is placed in every possible position.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if adequate clearance is maintained between the test finger and live or moving parts inside the enclosure. However, it is permissible to touch smooth rotating shafts and similar non-dangerous parts.<br><br>For this test, the internal moving parts may be operated slowly, where this is possible.<br><br>For tests on low-voltage machines, a low-voltage supply (of not less than 40V) in series with a suitable lamp may be connected between the test finger and the live parts inside the enclosure. Conducting parts covered only with varnish or paint, or protected by oxidation or by a similar process, shall be covered with a metal foil electrically connected to those parts that are normally live in service. The protection is satisfactory if the lamp does not light.<br><br>For high-voltage machines, adequate clearance is verified by a dielectric test, or by a measurement of clearance distance in accordance with the principles of 5.6.1.2.<br><br>b. Sphere test<br><br>The test is made with a rigid sphere of 0.4724 +.002/-0 inch (12.0 +0.05/-0 mm) diameter applied to the openings of the enclosure with a force of 6.74 lbf (30 N) ±10 percent.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if the sphere does not pass through any opening and adequate clearance is maintained to live or moving parts inside the machine. |
| 3 | The test is made with a straight rigid steel wire or rod of .0984 +.002/-0 inch (2.5 +0.05/-0 mm) diameter applied with a force of 0.674 lbf (3 N) ±10 percent. The end of the wire or rod shall be free from burrs and at right angles to its length.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if the wire or rod cannot enter the enclosure. |
| 4 | The test is made with a straight rigid steel wire of 0.0394 +.002/-0 inch (1 +0.05/-0 mm) diameter applied with a force of 0.224 lbf (1 N) ±10 percent. The end of the wire shall be free from burrs and at right angles to its length.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if the wire cannot enter the enclosure. |
| 5 | a. Dust test<br><br>The test is made using equipment incorporating the basic principles shown in Figure 5-2, in which talcum powder is maintained in suspension in a suitable closed test chamber. The talcum powder used shall be able to pass through a square-meshed sieve having a nominal wire diameter of 50μm and a nominal width between wires of 75μm. The amount of talcum powder to be used is 2 kg per cubic meter of the test chamber volume. It shall not have been used for more than 20 tests.<br><br>Electrical machines have an enclosure where the normal operating cycle of the machine causes reductions in the air pressure within the enclosure in relation to the ambient atmospheric pressure. These reductions may be due, for example, to thermal cycling effects (category I). |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 5-3**

**TEST AND ACCEPTANCE CONDITIONS FOR FIRST CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL**

| First Characteristic Numeral | Test and Acceptance Conditions |
|---|---|
| | For this test the machine is supported inside the test chamber and the pressure inside the machine is maintained below atmospheric pressure by a vacuum pump. If the enclosure has a single drain hole, the suction connection shall be made to one hole specially provided for the purpose of the test, except if the drain hole is intended normally to be closed on site (see 5.3.4).<br><br>The object of the test is to draw into the machine, if possible, at least 80 times the volume of air in the enclosure without exceeding an extraction rate of 60 volumes per hour with a suitable depression. In no event shall the depression exceed 20 mbar (2kPa) on the manometer shown in Figure 5-2.<br><br>If an extraction rate of 40 to 60 volumes per hour is obtained, the test is stopped after 2 hours.<br><br>If, with a maximum depression of 20 mbar (2 kPa), the extraction rate is less than 40 volumes per hour, the test is continued until 80 volumes have been drawn through, or a period of 8 hours has elapsed.<br><br>If it is impracticable to test the complete machine in the test chamber, one of the following procedures shall be applied.<br>1. Testing of individually enclosed sections of the machine (terminal boxes, slip-ring housings, etc.)<br>2. Testing of representative parts of the machine, comprising components such as doors, ventilating openings, joints, shaft seals, etc. with the vulnerable parts of the machine, such as terminals, slip-rings, etc., in position at the time of testing.<br>3. Testing of a smaller machine having the same full scale design details.<br>4. Testing under conditions determined by agreement between manufacturer and user.<br><br>In the second and third cases, the volume of air to be drawn through the machine under test is as specified for the whole machine in full scale.<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if, on inspection, talcum powder has not accumulated in a quantity or location such that, as with any kind of ordinary dust (i.e., dust that is not conductive, combustible, explosive or chemically corrosive) it could interfere with the correct operation of the machine.<br><br>b. Wire test<br><br>If the machine is intended to run with open drain holes, these shall be tested in the same manner as the first characteristic numeral 4, i.e., using a 0.0394 inch (1 mm) diameter wire. |
| 6 | Test in accordance with 5 a).<br><br>The protection is satisfactory if, on inspection, there is no ingress of talcum powder. |

## 5.8 TESTS FOR SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

### 5.8.1 Test Conditions

Test conditions for the second characteristic numeral are given in Table 5-4.

The test shall be conducted with fresh water. During the test, the moisture contained inside the enclosure may be partly condensed. The dew which may thus be deposited should not be mistaken for an ingress of water.

For the purpose of the tests, the surface area of the machine shall be calculated with an accuracy of 10 percent.

When possible, the machine shall be run at rated speed. This can be achieved by mechanical means or by energization. If the machine is energized, adequate safety precautions shall be taken.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 5-4

## TEST CONDITIONS FOR SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL

| Second Characteristic Numeral | Test conditions |
|---|---|
| 0 | No test is required. |
| 1 | The test is made by means of an equipment, the principle of which is shown in Figure 5-3. The rate of discharge shall be reasonably uniform over the whole area of the apparatus and shall produce a rainfall of between 3 mm and 5 mm of water per minute (in the case of equipment according to Figure 5-3, this corresponds to a fall in water level of 3 mm to 5 mm per minute).<br><br>The machine under test is placed in its normal operating position under the dripping equipment, the base of which shall be larger than that of the machine. Except for machines designed for wall or ceiling mounting, the support for the enclosure under test should be smaller than the base of the enclosure.<br><br>The machine normally fixed to a wall or ceiling is fixed in its normal position of use to a wooden board having dimensions that are equal to those of that surface of the machine which is in contact with the wall or ceiling when the machine is mounted as in normal use.<br><br>The duration of the test shall be 10 minutes. |
| 2 | The dripping equipment is the same as that specified for the second characteristic numeral 1 and is adjusted to give the same rate of discharge.<br><br>The machine is tested for 2.5 minutes in each of four fixed positions of tilt. These positions are 15 degrees either side of the vertical in two mutually perpendicular planes.<br><br>The total duration of the test shall be 10 minutes. |
| 3 | The test shall be made using equipment such as is shown in Figure 5-4, provided that the dimensions and shape of the machine to be tested are such that the radius of the oscillating tube does not exceed 1 m. Where this condition cannot be fulfilled, a hand-held spray device, as shown in Figure 5-5, shall be used.<br><br>a. Conditions when using test equipment as shown in Figure 5-4.<br><br>The total flow rate shall be adjusted to an average rate of 0.067 to 0.074 liter/min. per hole multiplied by the number of holes. The total flow rate shall be measured with a flowmeter.<br><br>The tube is provided with spray holes over an arc of 60 degrees either side of the center point and shall be fixed in a vertical position. The test machine is mounted on a turntable with a vertical axis and is located at approximately the center point of the semicircle.<br><br>The minimum duration of the test shall be 10 minutes.<br><br>b. Conditions when using test equipment as shown in Figure 5-5.<br><br>The moving shield shall be in place for this test.<br><br>The water pressure is adjusted to give a delivery rate of 10 ± 0.5 liters/min. (pressure approximately 80-100 kPa [0.8-1.0 bar]).<br><br>The test duration shall be 1 minute per $m^2$ of calculated surface area of the machine (excluding any mounting surface and cooling fin) with a minimum duration of 5 minutes. |
| 4 | The conditions for deciding whether the apparatus of Figure 5-4 or that of Figure 5-5 should be used are the same as stated for the second characteristic numeral 3.<br><br>a. Using the equipment of Figure 5-4.<br><br>The oscillating tube has holes drilled over the whole 180 degrees of the semicircle. The test duration and the total water flow rate are the same as for degree 3. |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | |
|---|---|
| | The support for the machine under test shall be perforated so as to avoid acting as a baffle and the enclosure shall be sprayed from every direction by oscillating the tube at a rate of 60 degrees/s to the limit of its travel in each direction.<br><br>b. Using the equipment of Figure 5-5.<br><br>The moving shield is removed from the spray nozzle and the machine is sprayed from all practicable directions.<br><br>The rate of water delivery and the spraying time per unit area are the same as for degree 3. |
| 5 | The test is made by spraying the machine from all practicable directions with a stream of water from a standard test nozzle as shown in Figure 5-6. The conditions to be observed are as follows.<br><br>1. Nozzle internal diameter: 6.3 mm<br>2. Delivery rate: 11.9 – 13.2 liters/min<br>3. Water pressure at the nozzle: approximately 30 kPa (0.3 bar) (see Note 1)<br>4. Test duration per $m^2$ of surface area of machine: 1 minute<br>5. Minimum test duration: 3 minutes<br>6. Distance from nozzle to machine surface: approximately 3 m (see Note 2). (This distance may be reduced if necessary to ensure proper wetting when spraying upwards.) |
| 6 | The test is made by spraying the machine from all practicable directions with a stream of water from a standard test nozzle as shown in Figure 5-6. The conditions to be observed are as follows.<br><br>1. Nozzle internal diameter: 12.5 mm<br>2. Delivery rate: 100 liters/min. ± 5 percent<br>3. Water pressure at the nozzle: approximately 100 kPa (1 bar) (see Note 1)<br>4. Test duration per $m^2$ of surface area of machine: 1 minute<br>5. Minimum test duration: 3 minutes<br>6. Distance from nozzle to machine surface: approximately 3 m (see Note 2) |
| 7 | The test is made by completely immersing the machine in water so that the following conditions are satisfied:<br><br>1. The surface of the water shall be at least 150 mm above the highest point of the machine<br>2. The lowest portion of the machine shall be at least 1 m below the surface of the water<br>3. The duration of the test shall be at least 30 minutes<br>4. The water temperature shall not differ from that of the machine by more than 5°C<br><br>By agreement between manufacturer and user, this test may be replaced by the following procedure:<br><br>The machine should be tested with an inside air pressure of about 10 kPa (0.1 bar). The duration of the test is 1 minute. The test is deemed satisfactory if no air leaks out during the test. Air leakage may be detected either by submersion, the water just covering the machine, or by the application on to it of a solution of soap in water. |
| 8 | The test conditions are subject to agreement between manufacturer and user, but they shall not be less severe than those prescribed for degree 7. |

NOTES—

1. The measurement of the water pressure may be replaced by that of the height to which the spray of the nozzle freely rises:

| Pressure | Height |
|---|---|
| 30 kPa (0.3 bar) | 2.5 m |
| 100 kPa (1 bar) | 8 m |

2. The distance of the nozzle to the machine under test, for degrees 5 and 6, was set at 3 m for practical reasons; it may be reduced in order to test the machine from every direction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 5.8.2 Acceptance Conditions

After the test in accordance with Table 5-4 has been carried out, the machine shall be inspected for ingress of water and subjected to the following verifications and tests.

#### 5.8.2.1 Allowable Water Leakage

The amount of water which has entered the machine shall not be capable of interfering with its satisfactory operation. The windings and live parts not designed to operate when wet shall not be wet and no accumulation of water which could reach them shall occur inside the machine.

It is, however, permissible for the blades of fans inside rotating machines to be wet and leakage along the shaft is allowable if provision is made for drainage of this water.

#### 5.8.2.2 Post Water Electrical Test

a. In the case of a test on a machine not running, the machine shall be operated under no-load conditions at rated voltage for 15 minutes, then submitted to a high-voltage test, the test voltage being 50 percent of the test voltage for a new machine (but not less than 125 percent of the rated voltage).

b. In the case of a test on a running machine, only the high-voltage test is made, in accordance with Item a. above.

The test is deemed satisfactory if these checks show no damage according to Part 3.

## 5.9 REQUIREMENTS AND TESTS FOR OPEN WEATHER-PROTECTED MACHINES

The degree of protection "W" is intended for air-cooled open machines with open circuit cooling, that is, machines with cooling systems designated by IC0X to IC3X according to Part 6.

Weather-protected machines shall be so designed that the ingress of rain, snow, and airborne particles into the electrical parts is reduced.

Other measures providing weather protection (such as encapsulated windings or total enclosure) are not designated by "W".

Machines with degree of protection "W" shall have ventilation passages constructed such that:

a. At both intake and discharge, high-velocity air and airborne particles are prevented from entering the internal passages leading directly to the electrical parts of the machine.

b. The intake air path, by baffling or use of separate housings, provide at least three abrupt changes in direction of the intake air, each of which is at least 90 degrees.

c. The intake air path shall provide an area of average velocity not exceeding 3 m/s enabling any particles to settle. Removable or otherwise easy to clean filters or any other arrangement for the separation of particles may be provided instead of a settling chamber.

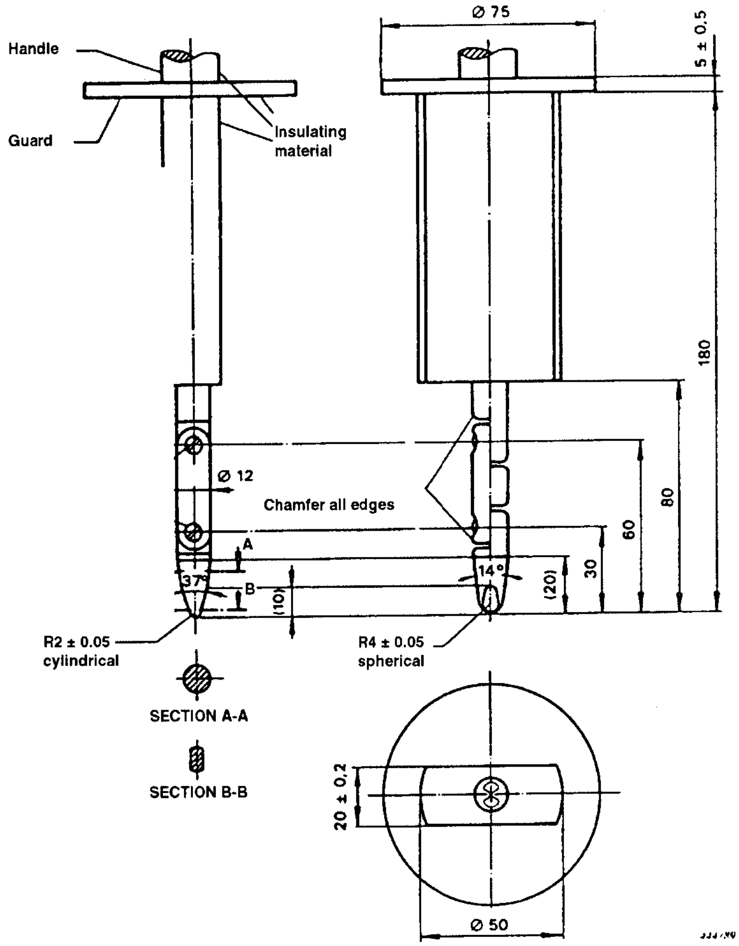
The protection of the machine against contact, foreign objects and water shall comply with the conditions and tests specified for the stated degree of protection.

The design of the terminal box shall ensure a degree of protection of at least IP54.

If necessary, arrangements to provide protection against icing, moisture, corrosion or other abnormal conditions shall be made by agreement (e.g. by using anti-condensation heating).

For verification of weather-protection "W" a study of drawings is generally sufficient.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




NOTES—

Both joints of this finger may be bent through an angle of 90° +10°/-0°, but in one and the same direction only.

Dimensions in millimeters.

Tolerances on dimensions without specific tolerance:
on angles: +0/-10°
on dimensions:
up to 25mm: +0/-0.05 mm
over 25 mm: ±0.2 mm

Material for finger: e.g. heat-treated steel.

Using the pin and groove solution is only one of the possible approaches in order to limit the bending angle to 90°. For this reason, dimensions and tolerances of these details are not given in the drawing. The actual design shall ensure a 90° bending angle with a 0° to +10° tolerance.

**Figure 5-1**
**STANDARD TEST FINGER**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

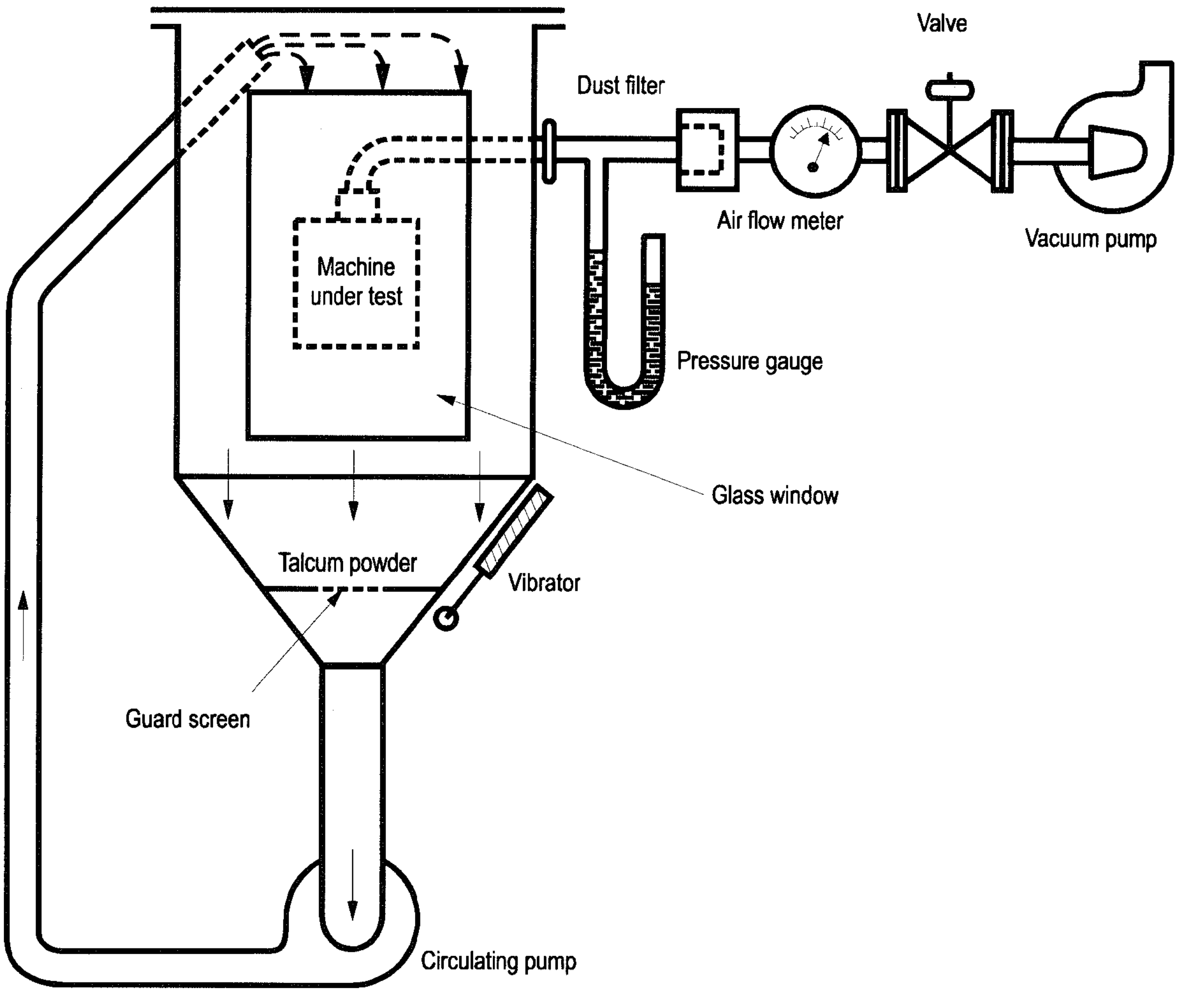
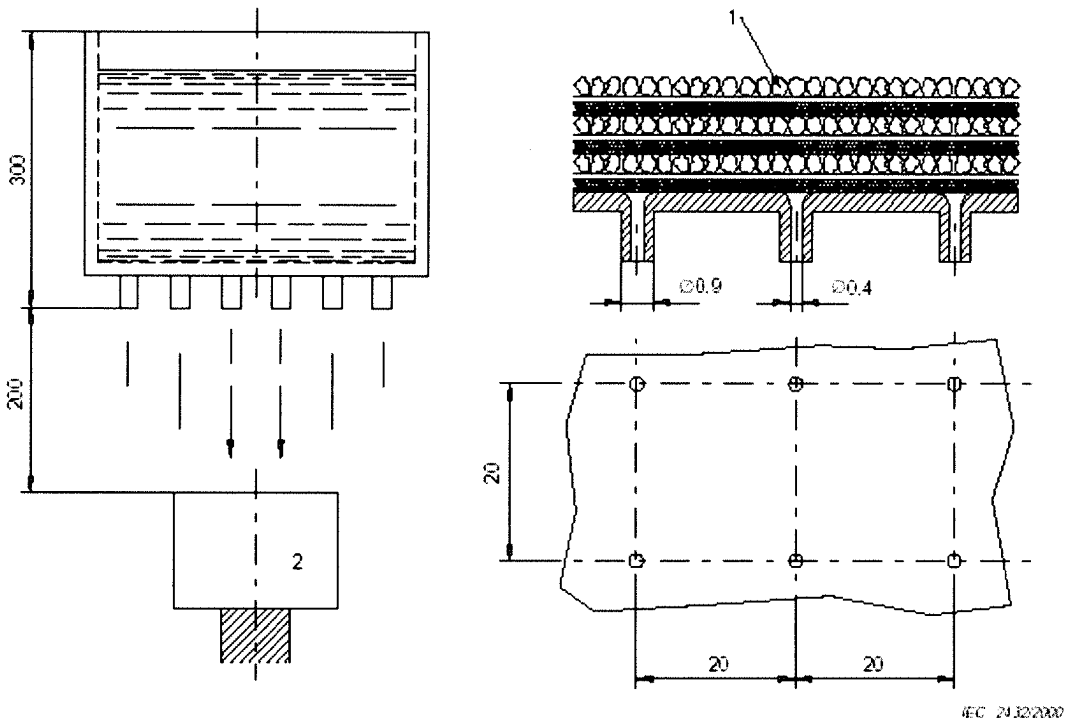



**Figure 5-2**
**EQUIPMENT TO PROVE PROTECTION AGAINST DUST**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




*Dimensions in millimetres*

Key

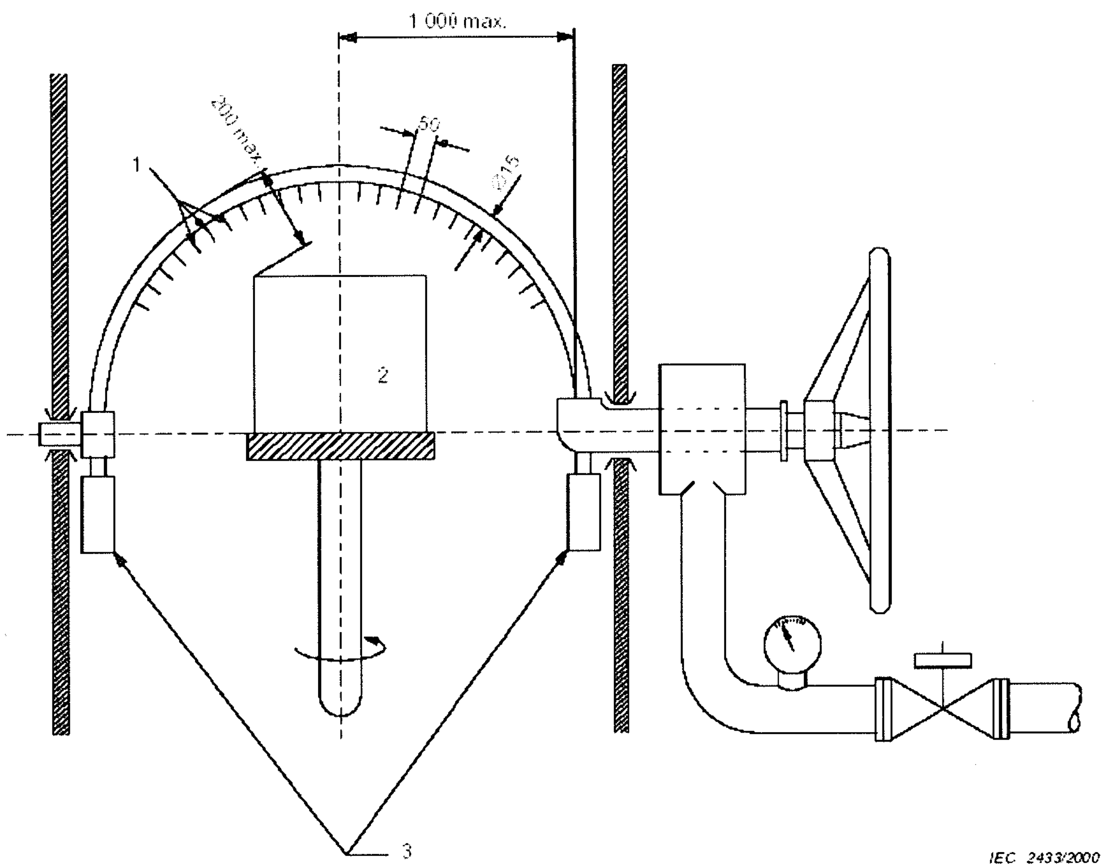
1 Layers of sand and gravel to regulate flow of water, these layers being separated by metallic gauze and blotting paper

2 Machine under test

**Figure 5-3**
**EQUIPMENT TO PROVE PROTECTION AGAINST DRIPPING WATER**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.



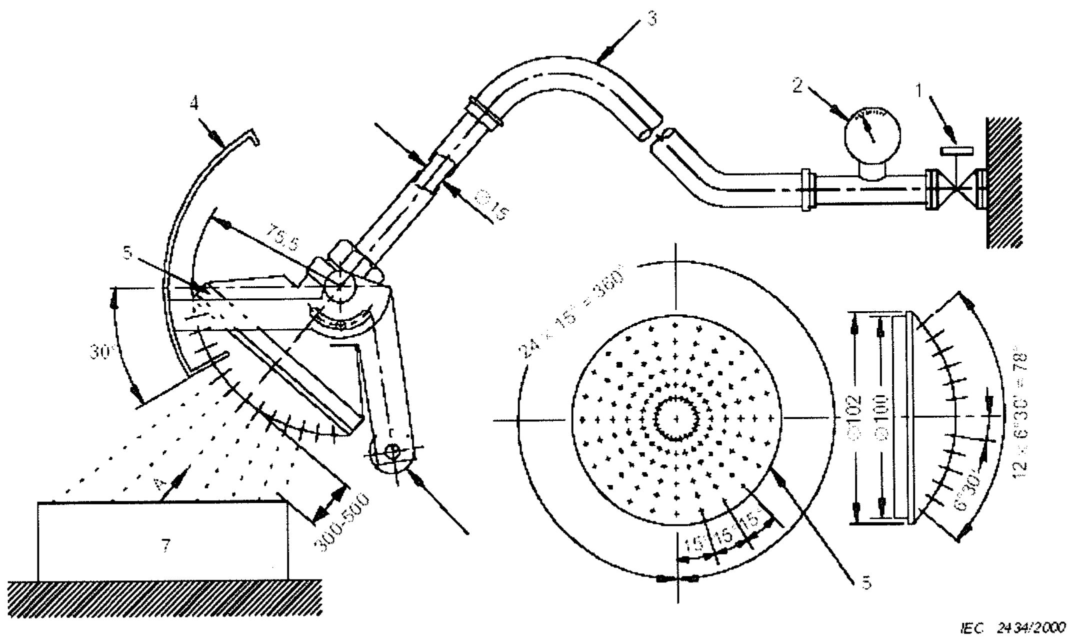

*Dimensions in millimetres*

**Key**

1 Holes ⌀0,4
2 Machine under test
3 Counterweight

**Figure 5-4**
**EQUIPMENT TO PROVE PROTECTION AGAINST SPRAYING AND SPLASHING WATER SHOWN WITH SPRAYING HOLES IN THE CASE OF SECOND CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL 3**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)




*Dimensions in millimetres*

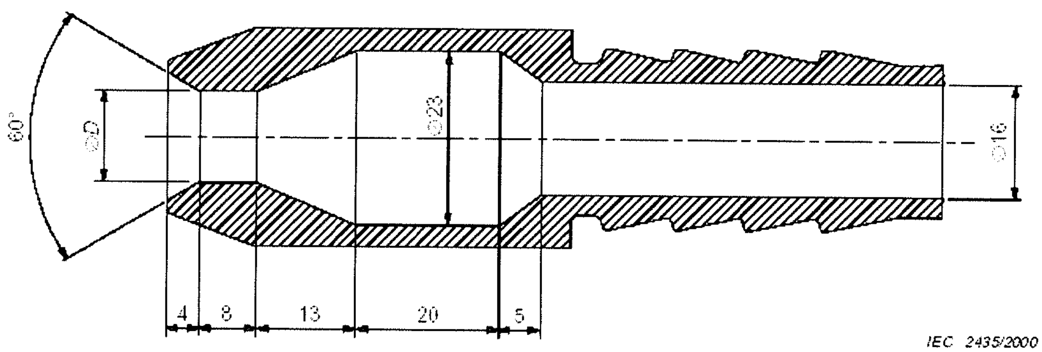
**Key**

1 Cock
2 Pressure gauge
3 Hose
4 Moving shield
5 Spray nozzle
6 Counterweight
7 Machine under test
8 Moving shield – aluminium
Spray nozzle – brass with
121 holes Ø0.5:
1 hole in center
2 inner circles of 12 holes at 30° pitch
4 outer circles of 24 holes at 15° pitch

**Figure 5-5**
**HAND-HELD EQUIPMENT TO PROVE PROTECTION AGAINST SPRAYING AND SPLASHING WATER**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




*Dimensions in millimetres*

*D* is 6.3 mm for the tests of table 5 numeral 5
*D* is 12.5 mm for the tests of table 5 numeral 6

**Figure 5-6**

**STANDARD NOZZLE FOR HOSE TESTS**

(Reproduced with permission of the IEC which retains the copyright.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Appendix A

## MOST FREQUENTLY USED DEGREES OF PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL MACHINES

| | **Second Characteristic Numeral** | **0** | **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | **5** | **6** | **7** | **8** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **First Characteristic Numeral** | | | | | | | | | | |
| **0** | | | | | | | | | | |
| **1** | | | | IP12 | | | | | | |
| **2** | | | IP21 | IP22 | IP23 | | | | | |
| **3** | | | | | | | | | | |
| **4** | | | | | | IP44 | | | | |
| **5** | | | | | | IP54 | IP55 | | | |

NOTE—The above list comprises the most frequently used degrees of protection, on the international level, in accordance with the description given in 5.3 and 5.4. It may be altered or completed for special needs, or according to the necessities of national standards.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 6

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 6
# ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—METHODS OF COOLING (IC CODE)

## 6.1 SCOPE

This Part identifies the circuit arrangements and the methods of movement of the coolant in rotating electrical machines, classifies the methods of cooling and gives a designation system for them.

The designation of the method of cooling consists of the letters "IC," followed by numerals and letters representing the circuit arrangement, the coolant and the method of movement of the coolant.

A complete designation and a simplified designation are defined. The complete designation system is intended for use mainly when the simplified system is not applicable.

The complete designations, as well as the simplified designations, are illustrated in the tables of 6.7 for some of the most frequently used types of rotating machines, together with sketches of particular examples.

## 6.2 DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this part, the following definitions apply.

### 6.2.1 Cooling

A procedure by means of which heat resulting from losses occurring in a machine is given up to a primary coolant which may be continuously replaced or may itself be cooled by a secondary coolant in a heat exchanger.

### 6.2.2 Coolant

A medium, liquid or gas, by means of which heat is transferred.

### 6.2.3 Primary Coolant

A medium, liquid or gas which, being at a lower temperature than a part of a machine and in contact with it, removes heat from that part.

NOTE— A machine may have more than one primary coolant.

### 6.2.4 Secondary Coolant

A medium, liquid or gas which, being at a lower temperature than the primary coolant, removes the heat given up by this primary coolant by means of a heat exchanger or through the external surface of the machine.

NOTE—Each primary coolant in a machine may have its own secondary coolant.

### 6.2.5 Final Coolant

The last coolant to which the heat is transferred.

NOTE—In some machines the final coolant is also the primary coolant.

### 6.2.6 Surrounding Medium

The medium, liquid or gas, in the environment surrounding the machine.

NOTE—The coolant may be drawn from and/or be discharged to this environment.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 6.2.7 Remote Medium

A medium, liquid or gas, in an environment remote from the machine and from which a coolant is drawn and/or to which it is discharged through inlet and/or outlet pipe or duct, or in which a separate heat exchanger may be installed.

### 6.2.8 Direct Cooled Winding (Inner Cooled Winding)

A winding in which the coolant flows through hollow conductors, tubes or channels which form an integral part of the winding inside the main insulation.

### 6.2.9 Indirect Cooled Winding

A winding cooled by any method other than that of 6.2.8.

NOTE—In all cases when "indirect" or "direct" is not stated, an indirect cooled winding is implied.

### 6.2.10 Heat Exchanger

A component intended to transfer heat from one coolant to another while keeping the two coolants separate.

### 6.2.11 Pipe, Duct

A passage provided to guide the coolant.

NOTE—The term duct is generally used when a channel passes directly through the floor on which the machine is mounted. The term pipe is used in all other cases where a coolant is guided outside the machine or heat exchanger.

### 6.2.12 Open Circuit

A circuit in which the final coolant is drawn directly from the surrounding medium or is drawn from a remote medium, passes over or through a heat exchanger, and then returns directly to the surrounding medium or is discharged to a remote medium.

NOTE—The final coolant will always flow in an open circuit (see also 6.2.13).

### 6.2.13 Closed Circuit

A circuit in which a coolant is circulated in a closed loop in or through the machine and possibly through a heat exchanger, while heat is transferred from this coolant to the next coolant through the surface of the machine or in the heat exchanger.

NOTES

1—A general cooling system of a machine may consist of one or more successively acting closed circuits and always a final open circuit. Each of the primary, secondary and/or final coolants may have its own appropriate circuit.

2—The different kinds of circuits are stated in Clause 6.4 and in the tables of 6.7.

### 6.2.14 Piped or Ducted Circuit

A circuit in which the coolant is guided either by inlet or outlet pipe or duct, or by both inlet and outlet pipe or duct, these serving as separators between the coolant and the surrounding medium.

NOTE—The circuit may be an open or a closed circuit (see 6.2.12 and 6.2.13).

### 6.2.15 Stand-by or Emergency Cooling System

A cooling system which is provided in addition to the normal cooling system and which is intended to be used when the normal cooling system is not available.

### 6.2.16 Integral Component

A component in the coolant circuit which is built into the machine and which can only be replaced by partially dismantling the machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 6.2.17 Machine-Mounted Component

A component in the coolant circuit which is mounted on the machine and forms part of it but which can be replaced without disturbing the main machine.

### 6.2.18 Separate Component

A component in the coolant circuit which is associated with a machine but which is not mounted on or integral with the machine.

NOTE—This component may be located in the surrounding or a remote medium.

### 6.2.19 Dependent Circulation Component

A component in the coolant circuit which for its operation is dependent on (linked with) the rotational speed of the rotor of the main machine (e.g. fan or pump on the shaft of the main machine or fan unit or pump unit driven by the main machine).

### 6.2.20 Independent Circulation Component

A component in the coolant circuit which for its operation is independent of (not linked with) the rotational speed of the rotor of the main machine, (e.g. design with its own drive motor).

## 6.3 DESIGNATION SYSTEM

The designation used for the method of cooling of a machine consists of letters and numerals as stated below:

### 6.3.1 Arrangement of the IC Code

The designation system is made up as follows, using the examples IC8A1W7 for complete designation and IC81W for simplified designation.

NOTE—The following rule may be applied to distinguish between complete and simplified designations:

1—Complete designation can be recognized by the presence (after the letters IC) of three or five numerals and letters in the regular sequence - numeral, letter, numeral (letter, numeral).

Examples: IC3A1, IC4A1A1 or IC9A1W7

2—A simplified designation has two or three consecutive numerals, or a letter in the final position.

Examples: IC31, IC411, or IC71W.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Complete designation | IC | 8 | A | 1 | W | 7 |
| Simplified designation | IC | 8 | | 1 | W | |

**6.3.1.1 Code Letters**

(International Cooling)

**6.3.1.2 Circuit Arrangement**

Designated by a characteristic numeral in accordance with 6.4.

**6.3.1.3 Primary Coolant**

Designated by a characteristic letter in accordance with 6.5.

Omitted for simplified designation if it is A for air.

**6.3.1.4 Method of Movement of Primary Coolant**

(higher temperature)

Designated by a characteristic numeral in accordance with 6.6.

**6.3.1.5 Secondary Coolant**

If applicable, designated by a characteristic letter in accordance with 6.5.
Omitted for simplified designation if it is A for air.

**6.3.1.6 Method of Movement of Secondary Coolant**

(lower temperature)

If applicable, designated by a characteristic numeral in accordance with 6.6. Omitted in case of the simplified designation if it is 7 with water (W7) for secondary coolant.

### 6.3.2 Application of Designations

The simplified designation should preferably be used (i.e., the complete designation system is intended for use mainly when the simplified system is not applicable).

### 6.3.3 Designation of Same Circuit Arrangements for Different Parts of a Machine

Different coolants or methods of movement may be used in different parts of a machine. These shall be designated by stating the designations as appropriate after each part of the machine.

An example for different circuits in rotor and stator is as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Rotor IC7H1W | Stator IC7W5W | (simplified) |
| Rotor IC7H1W7 | Stator IC7W5W7 | (complete) |

An example for different circuits in a machine is as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Generator IC7H1W | Exciter IC75W | (simplified) |
| Generator IC7H1W7 | Exciter IC7A5W7 | (complete) |

### 6.3.4 Designation of Different Circuit Arrangements for Different Parts of a Machine

Different circuit arrangements may be used on different parts of a machine. These shall be designated by stating the designations as appropriate after each part of the machine, separated by a stroke (/).

Example:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Generator IC81W | Exciter IC75W | (simplified) |
| Generator IC8A1W7 | Exciter IC7A5W7 | (complete) |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 6.3.5 Designation of Direct Cooled Winding

In the case of machines with direct cooled (inner cooled) windings, the part of the designation related to this circuit shall be put between brackets.

Example:

| | |
|---|---|
| Rotor IC7H1W | Stator IC7(W5)W . . . . . . . . . . . . . . (simplified) |
| Rotor IC7H1W7 | Stator IC7(W5)W7 . . . . . . . . . . . . . (complete) |

### 6.3.6 Designation of Stand-by or Emergency Cooling Conditions

Different circuit arrangements may be used depending on stand-by or emergency cooling conditions. These shall be designated by the designation for the normal method of cooling, followed by the designation of the special cooling system enclosed in brackets, including the words "Emergency" or "Stand-by" and the code letters IC.

Example:

| | |
|---|---|
| IC71W | (Emergency IC01) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . (simplified) |
| IC7A1W7 | (Emergency IC0A1) . . . . . . . . . . . . . (complete) |

### 6.3.7 Combined Designations

When two or more of the conditions of 6.3.3 to 6.3.6, inclusive, are combined, the appropriate designations described above can be applied together.

### 6.3.8 Replacement of Characteristic Numerals

When a characteristic numeral has not yet been determined or is not required to be specified for certain application, the omitted numeral shall be replaced by the letter "X."

Examples: IC3X, IC4XX

### 6.3.9 Examples of Designations and Sketches

In 6.7, the different designations, together with appropriate sketches, are given for some of the most commonly used types of rotating machines.

## 6.4 CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL FOR CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENT

The characteristic numeral following the basic symbol "IC" designates the circuit arrangement (see 6.3.1.2) for circulating the coolant(s) and for removing heat from the machine in accordance with Table 6-1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 6-1**
**CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENT**

| Characteristic Numeral | Brief Description | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 0* | Free circulation | The coolant is freely drawn directly from the surrounding medium, cools the machine, and then freely returns directly to the surrounding medium (open circuit). |
| 1* | Inlet pipe or inlet duct circulated | The coolant is drawn from a medium remote from the machine, is guided to the machine through an inlet pipe or duct, passes through the machine and returns directly to the surrounding medium (open circuit). |
| 2* | Outlet pipe or outlet duct circulated | The coolant is drawn directly from the surrounding medium, passes through the machine and is then discharged from the machine through an outlet pipe or duct to a medium remote from the machine (open circuit). |
| 3* | Inlet and outlet pipe or duct circulated | The coolant is drawn from a medium remote from the machine, is guided to the machine through an inlet pipe or duct, passes through the machine and is then discharged from the machine through an outlet pipe or duct to a medium remote from the machine (open circuit). |
| 4 | Frame surface cooled | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit in the machine and gives its heat through the external surface of the machine (in addition to the heat transfer via the stator core and other heat conducting parts) to the final coolant which is the surrounding medium. The surface may be plain or ribbed, with or without an outer shell to improve the heat transfer. |
| 5** | Integral heat exchanger (using surrounding medium) | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit and gives its heat via a heat exchanger, which is built into and forms an integral part of the machine, to the final coolant which is the surrounding medium. |
| 6** | Machine-mounted heat exchanger (using surrounding medium) | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit and gives its heat via a heat exchanger, which is mounted directly on the machine, to the final coolant which is the surrounding medium. |
| 7** | Integral heat exchanger (using remote medium) | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit and gives its heat via a heat exchanger, which is built into and forms an integral part of the machine, to the secondary coolant which is the remote medium. |
| 8** | Machine-mounted heat exchanger (using remote medium) | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit and gives its heat via a heat exchanger, which is mounted directly on the machine, to the secondary coolant which is the remote medium. |
| 9**,† | Separate heat exchanger (using surrounding or remote medium) | The primary coolant is circulated in a closed circuit and gives its heat via a heat exchanger, which is separate from the machine, to the secondary coolant which is either the surrounding or the remote medium. |

## 6.5 CHARACTERISTIC LETTERS FOR COOLANT

**6.5.1** The coolant (see 6.3.1.3 and 6.3.1.5) is designated by one of the characteristic letters in accordance with Table 6-2.

* Filters or labyrinths for separating dust, suppressing noise, etc., may be mounted in the frame or ducts. Characteristic numerals 0 to 3 also apply to machines where the cooling medium is drawn from the surrounding medium through a heat exchanger in order to provide cooler medium than the surrounding medium, or blown out through a heat exchanger to keep the ambient temperature lower.

** The nature of the heat exchanger is not specified (ribbed or plain tubes, etc.).

† A separate heat exchanger may be installed beside the machine or in a location remote from the machine. A gaseous secondary coolant may be the surrounding medium or a remote medium (see also 6.7, Table 6-6).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 6-2**
**COOLANT**

| Characteristic Letter | Coolant |
|---|---|
| A (see 6.5.2) | Air |
| F | Refrigerant |
| H | Hydrogen |
| N | Nitrogen |
| C | Carbon Dioxide |
| W | Water |
| U | Oil |
| S (See 6.5.3) | Any other coolant |
| Y (See 6.5.4) | Coolant not yet selected |

**6.5.2** When the single coolant is air or when in case of two coolants either one or both are air, the letter(s) "A" stating the coolant is omitted in the simplified designation.

**6.5.3** For the characteristic letter "S," the coolant shall be identified elsewhere.

**6.5.4** When the coolant is finally selected, the temporarily used letter "Y" shall be replaced by the appropriate final characteristic letter.

## 6.6 CHARACTERISTIC NUMERAL FOR METHOD OF MOVEMENT

The characteristic numeral following (in the complete designation) each of the letters stating the coolant designates the method of movement of this appropriate coolant (see 6.3.1.4 and 6.3.1.6) in accordance with Table 6-3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 6-3**
**METHOD OF MOVEMENT**

| Characteristic Numeral | Brief Description | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Free convection | The coolant is moved by temperature differences. The fanning action of the rotor is negligible. |
| 1 | Self-circulation | The coolant is moved dependent on the rotational speed of the main machine, either by the action of the rotor alone or by means of a component designed for this purpose and mounted directly on the rotor of the main machine, or by a fan or pump unit mechanically driven by the rotor or the main machine. |
| 2-4 | | Reserved for future use. |
| 5* | Integral independent component | The coolant is moved by an integral component, the power of which is obtained in such a way that it is independent of the rotational speed of the main machine, e.g. an internal fan or pump unit driven by its own electric motor. |
| 6* | Machine-mounted independent component | The coolant is moved by a component mounted on the machine, the power of which is obtained in such a way that it is independent of the rotational speed of the main machine, e.g. a machine-mounted fan unit or pump unit driven by its own electric motor. |
| 7* | Separate and independent component or coolant system pressure | The coolant is moved by a separate electrical or mechanical component not mounted on the machine and independent of it or is produced by the pressure in the coolant circulating system, e.g. supplied from a water distribution system, or a gas main under pressure. |
| 8* | Relative displacement | The movement of the coolant results from relative movement between the machine and the coolant, either by moving the machine through the coolant or by flow of the surrounding coolant (air or liquid). |
| 9 | All other components | The movement of the coolant is produced by a method other than defined above and shall be fully described. |

## 6.7 COMMONLY USED DESIGNATIONS

Following are simplified and complete designations for some of the most commonly used types of rotating electrical machines:

### 6.7.1 General Information on the Tables

In Tables 6-4, 6-5, and 6-6 the columns show the characteristic numerals for circuit arrangements and the rows show the characteristic numerals for the method of movement of the coolant.

| Circuit Arrangement | Table |
|---|---|
| Characteristic numerals 0, 1, 2, 3 (open circuits using surrounding medium or remote medium) | 6-4 |
| Characteristic numerals 4, 5, 6 (primary circuit closed, secondary circuit open using surrounding medium) | 6-5 |
| Characteristic numerals 7, 8, 9 (primary circuit closed, secondary circuit open and using remote or surrounding medium) | 6-6 |

The sketches show examples with cooling air flowing from non-drive end to drive-end. The air flow may be in the opposite direction, or the air inlet may be at both ends with discharge at the center, depending on the design of the machine, the arrangement and number of fans, fan units, inlet and outlet pipes or ducts.

The top line of each box gives the simplified designation on the left and the complete designation on the right with air and/or water as coolant (see 6.3.2 and 6.5.1).

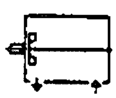
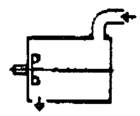
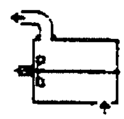
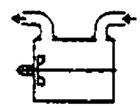
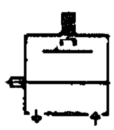
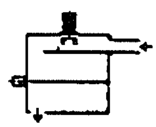
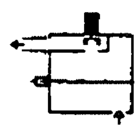
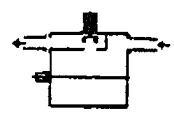
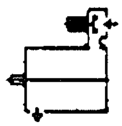
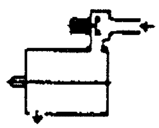
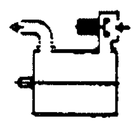
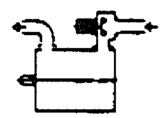
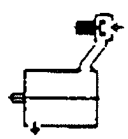
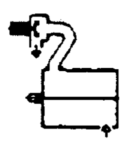
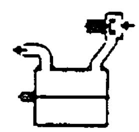
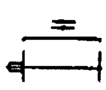
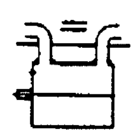
Symbols used in sketches:

a. Integral or machine-mounted dependent fan
b. Independent circulation component
c. Duct or pipe, not part of the machine.

* The use of an independent component as a principal source for movement does not exclude the fanning action of the rotor or the existence of a supplementary fan mounted directly on the rotor of the main machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

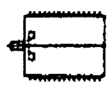
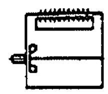
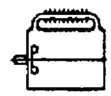
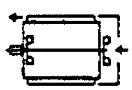
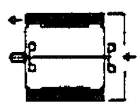
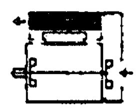
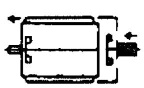
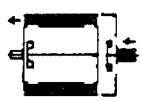
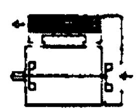
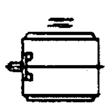
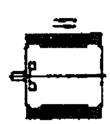
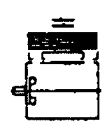
**Table 6-4**
**EXAMPLES OF OPEN CIRCUIT USING SURROUNDING OR REMOTE MEDIUM***

| Characteristic numeral for circuit arrangement (See 6.4) | | | | Characteristic numeral for method of movement of coolant (see 6.6) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0<br>Free circulation (using surrounding medium) | 1<br>Inlet pipe or inlet duct circulated (using remote medium) | 2<br>Outlet pipe or outlet duct circulated (using surrounding medium) | 3<br>Inlet and outlet pipe or duct circulated (using remote medium) | |
| IC00 IC0A0  | | | | 0<br>Free convection |
| IC01 IC0A1  | IC11 IC1A1  | IC21 IC2A1  | IC31 IC3A1  | 1<br>Self-circulation |
| IC05 IC0A5  | IC15 IC1A5  | IC25 IC2A5  | IC35 IC3A5  | 5<br>Circulation by integral independent component |
| IC06 IC0A6  | IC16 IC1A6  | IC26 IC2A6  | IC36 IC3A6  | 6<br>Circulation by machine-mounted independent component |
| | IC17 IC1A7  | IC27 IC2A7  | IC37 IC3A7  | 7<br>Circulation by separate and independent component or by coolant pressure system |
| IC08 IC0A8  | | | IC38 IC3A8  | 8<br>Circulation by relative displacement |

*For arrangement of the IC Codes, see 6.3.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 6-5**
**EXAMPLES OF PRIMARY CIRCUITS CLOSED, SECONDARY CIRCUITS OPEN USING SURROUNDING MEDIUM***

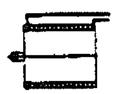
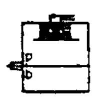
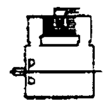
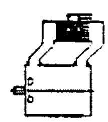
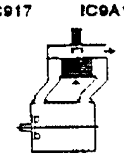
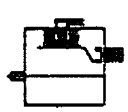
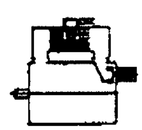
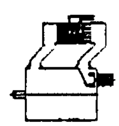
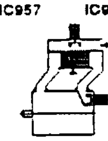
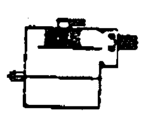
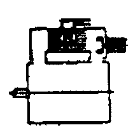
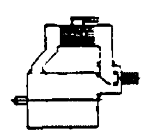
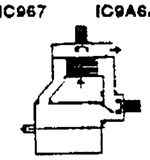
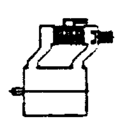
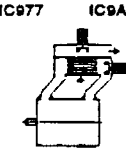
| Characteristic numeral for circuit arrangement (See 6.4) | | | Characteristic numeral for method of movement (See 6.6) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4<br>Free circulation cooled (Using surrounding medium) | 5<br>Integral heat exchanger (Using surrounding medium) | 6<br>Machine-Mounted heat exchanger (Using surrounding medium) | of primary coolant (See note) | of secondary coolant |
| IC410 IC4A1A0<br> | IC510 IC5A1A0<br> | IC610 IC6A1A0<br> | | 0<br>Free convection |
| IC411 IC4A1A1<br> | IC511 IC5A1A1<br> | IC611 IC6A1A1<br> | | 1<br>Self-circulation |
| | | | | 5<br>Circulation by integral independent component |
| IC416 IC4A1A6<br> | IC516 IC5A1A6<br> | IC611 IC6A1A1<br> | | 6<br>Circulation by machine-mounted independent component |
| | | | | 7<br>Circulation by separate and independent component or by coolant pressure system |
| IC418 IC4A1A8<br> | IC518 IC5A1A8<br> | IC618 IC6A1A8<br> | | 8<br>Circulation by relative displacement |

*For arrangement of the IC Codes, see 6.3.1.

NOTE—The shown examples in this table are related to the movement of the secondary coolant. The characteristic numeral for the movement of the primary coolant in this table is assumed to be "1." Obviously, other designs not shown can also be specified by means of the IC Code, e.g., design with machine-mounted independent fan unit for primary coolant: IC666 (IC6A6A6) instead of IC616 (IC6A1A6)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 6-6**
**EXAMPLES OF PRIMARY CIRCUITS CLOSED, SECONDARY CIRCUITS OPEN USING REMOTE OR SURROUNDING MEDIUM***

| Characteristic numeral for circuit arrangement (See 6.4) | | | | Characteristic numeral for method of movement (See 6.6) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7<br>Integral heat exchanger (Using remote medium) | 8<br>Machine-mounted heat exchanger (Using remote medium) | 9 | (Secondary coolant: gas, remote medium or surrounding medium) | of primary coolant | of secondary coolant (See note) |
| IC70W IC7A0W7  | | | | 0<br>Free convection | |
| IC71W IC7A1W7  | IC81W IC8A1W7  | IC91W IC9A1W7  | IC917 IC9A1A7  | 1<br>Self-circulation | |
| IC75W IC7A5W7  | IC85W IC8A5W7  | IC95W IC9A5W7  | IC957 IC9A5A7  | 5<br>Circulation by integral independent component | |
| IC76W IC7A6W7  | IC86W IC8A6W7  | IC96W IC9A6W7  | IC967 IC9A6A7  | 6<br>Circulation by machine-mounted independent component | |
| | | IC97W IC9A7W7  | IC977 IC9A7A7  | 7<br>Circulation by separate and independent component or by coolant pressure system | |
| | | | | 8<br>Circulation by relative displacement | |

*For arrangement of the IC Codes, see 6.3.1.

NOTE—The shown examples in this table are related to the movement of the secondary coolant. The characteristic numeral for the movement of the secondary coolant in this table is assumed to be "7." Obviously, other designs not shown can also be specified by means of the IC Code, e.g., design with machine-mounted independent pump unit for primary coolant: IC71W6 (IC7A1W6) instead of IC71W (IC7A1W7)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 7

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 7
# MECHANICAL VIBRATION-MEASUREMENT, EVALUATION AND LIMITS

## 7.1 SCOPE

This standard is applicable to direct-current machines tested with direct-current power and to polyphase alternating-current machines tested with sinusoidal power, in frame sizes 42 and larger and at rated power up to 100,000 HP or 75 MW, at nominal speeds up to and including 3600 rev/min.

For vertical and flange-mounting machines, this standard is only applicable to those machines that are tested in the intended orientation.

This standard is not applicable to single-bearing machines, machines mounted in situ, single-phase machines, three-phase machines operated on single-phase systems, vertical water power generators, permanent magnet generators or to machines coupled to prime movers or driven loads.

NOTE—For machines measured in situ refer to ISO 10816-3.

## 7.2 OBJECT

This standard establishes the test and measurement conditions of, and fixes the limits for, the level of vibration of an electrical machine, when measurements are made on the machine alone in a test area under properly controlled conditions. Measurement quantities are the vibration levels (velocity, displacement and/or acceleration) at the machine bearing housings and the shaft vibration relative to the bearing housings within or near the machine bearings. Shaft vibration measurements are recommended only for machines with sleeve bearings and speeds equal to or greater than 1000 rev/min and shall be the subject of prior agreement between manufacturer and user with respect to the necessary provisions for the installation of the measurement probes.

## 7.3 REFERENCES

Referenced documents used in this Part are, ISO 8821, ISO 7919-1, ISO 10816-3, and IEC 60034-14.

## 7.4 MEASUREMENT QUANTITY

### 7.4.1 Bearing Housing Vibration

The criterion adopted for bearing housing vibration is the peak value of the unfiltered vibration velocity in inches per second. The greatest value measured at the prescribed measuring points (see 7.7.2) characterizes the vibration of the machine.

### 7.4.2 Relative Shaft Vibration

The criterion adopted for relative shaft vibration (relative to the bearing housing) is the peak-to-peak vibratory displacement ($S_{p\text{-}p}$) in inches in the direction of measurement (see ISO 7919-1).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 7.5 MEASURING EQUIPMENT

Equipment used to measure vibration shall be accurate to within ±10 percent of the allowable limit for the vibration being measured.

## 7.6 MACHINE MOUNTING

### 7.6.1 General

Evaluation of vibration of rotating electrical machines requires measurement of the machines under properly determined test conditions to enable reproducible tests and to provide comparable measurements. The vibration of an electrical machine is closely linked with the mounting of the machine. The choice of the mounting method will be made by the manufacturer. Typically, machines with shaft heights of 11 inches or less use resilient mounting.

NOTE—The shaft height of a machine without feet, or a machine with raised feet, or any vertical machine, is to be taken as the shaft height of a machine in the same basic frame, but of the horizontal shaft foot-mounting type.

### 7.6.2 Resilient Mounting

Resilient mounting is achieved by suspending the machine on a spring or by mounting it on an elastic support (springs, rubber, etc.).

The vertical natural oscillation frequency of the suspension system and machine should be less than 33 percent of the frequency corresponding to the lowest speed of the machine under test, as defined in 7.7.3.3. For an easy determination of the necessary elasticity of the suspension system, see Figure 7-1.

The effective mass of the elastic support shall be no greater than 10 percent of that of the machine, to reduce the influence of the mass and the moments of inertia of these parts on the vibration level.

### 7.6.3 Rigid Mounting

Rigid mounting is achieved by fastening the machine directly to a massive foundation.

A massive foundation is one that has a vibration (in any direction or plane) limited, during testing, to 0.02 in/s peak (0.5 mm/s peak) above any background vibrations. The natural frequencies of the foundation should not coincide within ±10 percent of the rotational frequency of the machine, within ±5 percent of two times rotational frequency, or within ±5 percent of one- and two-times electrical-line frequency.

The vibration velocity of the foundation in the horizontal and vertical directions near the machine feet should not exceed 25 percent of the maximum velocity at the adjacent bearing in either the horizontal or vertical direction at rotational frequency and at twice line frequency (if the latter is being evaluated).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

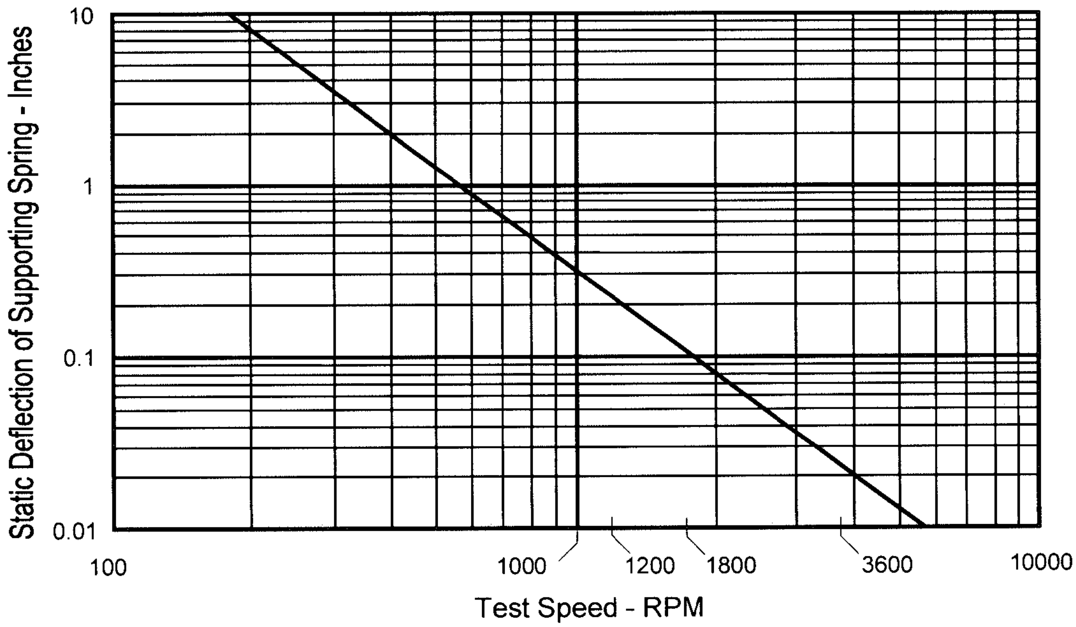



**Figure 7-1**
**MINIMUM ELASTIC DISPLACEMENT AS A FUNCTION OF NOMINAL TEST SPEED**

### 7.6.4 Active Environment Determination

The support systems mentioned in 7.6.2 and 7.6.3 are considered passive, admitting insignificant external disturbances to the machine. If the vibration with the machine stationary exceeds 25 percent of the value when the machine is running, then an active environment is said to exist. Vibration criteria for active support systems are not given in this Part.

## 7.7 CONDITIONS OF MEASUREMENT

### 7.7.1 Shaft Key

For the balancing and measurement of vibration on machines provided with a shaft extension keyway, the keyway shall contain a half key.

A full length rectangular key of half height or a half length key of full height (which should be centered axially in the keyway) is acceptable (reference Clause 3.3 of ISO 8821).

### 7.7.2 Measurement Points for Vibration

#### 7.7.2.1 Bearing Housing

The location of the measurement points and directions to which the levels of vibration severity apply are shown in Figure 7-2 for machines with end-shield bearings and in Figure 7-4 for machines with pedestal bearings. Figure 7-3 applies to those machines where measurement positions according to Figure 7-2 are not possible without disassembly of parts, or where no hub exists.

#### 7.7.2.2 Shaft

Non-contacting transducers, if used, shall be installed inside the bearing, measuring directly the relative shaft journal displacement, or near the bearing shell when mounting inside is not practical. The preferred radial positions are as indicated in Figure 7-5.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 7.7.3 Operating Conditions

#### 7.7.3.1 General

For machines that are bi-directional, the vibration limits apply for both directions of rotation, but need to be measured in only one direction.

Measurement of the vibration shall be made with the machine at no load and uncoupled.

#### 7.7.3.2 Power Supply

Alternating current machines shall be run at rated frequency and rated voltage with a virtually sinusoidal wave form. The power supply shall provide balanced phase voltages closely approaching a sinusoidal waveform. The voltage waveform deviation factor[1] shall not exceed 10 percent. The frequency shall be maintained within ±0.5 percent of the value required for the test being conducted, unless otherwise specified. Tests shall be performed where the voltage unbalance does not exceed 1 percent. The percent voltage unbalance equals 100 times the maximum voltage deviation from the average voltage divided by the average voltage.

Direct current machines shall be supplied with the armature voltage and field current corresponding to the speed at which vibration is being measured. Vibration limits are based upon the use of low ripple power supply A (see 12.66.2.1) type power sources. Other types of power supplies may be used for testing purposes at the discretion of the manufacturer.

#### 7.7.3.3 Operating Speed

Unless otherwise specified for machines having more than one fixed speed the limits of this Part shall not be exceeded at any operational speed. For machines with a range of speeds, tests shall be performed at least at base and top speeds. Series DC motors shall be tested only at rated operating speed. For inverter-fed machines, it shall be acceptable to measure the vibration at only the speed corresponding to a 60 Hz power supply.

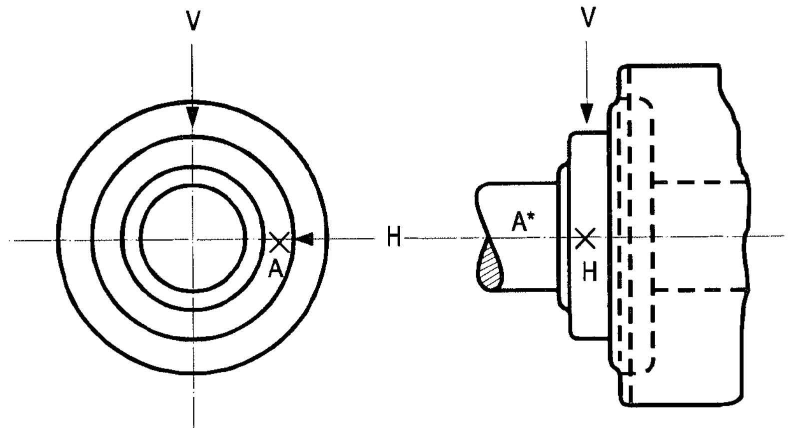
### 7.7.4 Vibration Transducer Mounting

Care should be taken to ensure that a contact between the vibration transducer and the machine surface is as specified by the manufacturer of the transducer and does not disturb the vibratory condition of the machine under test. The total coupled mass of the transducer assembly shall be less than 2 percent of the mass of the machine.

---

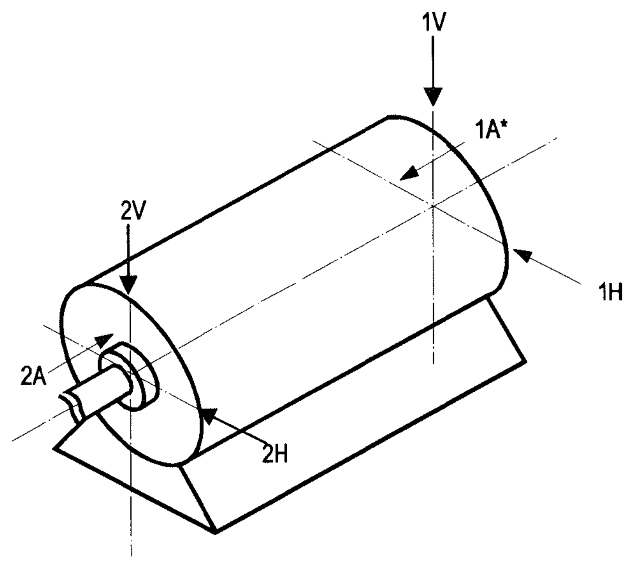
[1] The deviation factor of a wave is the ratio of the maximum difference between corresponding ordinates of the wave and of the equivalent sine wave to the maximum ordinate of the equivalent sine wave when the waves are superposed in such a way as to make this maximum difference as small as possible. The equivalent sine wave is defined as having the same frequency and the same root mean square value as the wave being tested.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




*Delete axial direction if not accessible

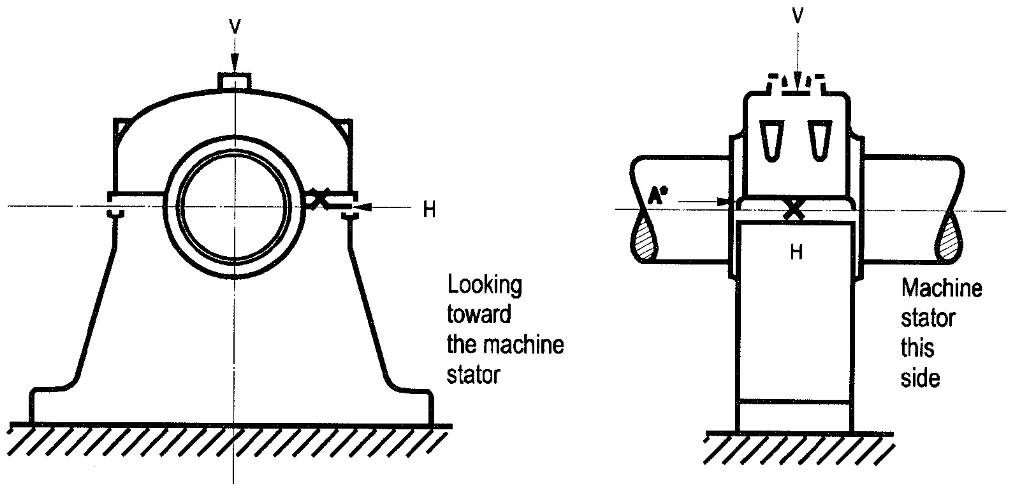
**Figure 7-2**
**PREFERRED POINTS OF MEASUREMENT APPLICABLE TO ONE OR BOTH ENDS OF THE MACHINE**




*Delete axial direction if not accessible

**Figure 7-3**
**MEASUREMENT POINTS FOR THOSE ENDS OF MACHINES WHERE MEASUREMENTS PER FIGURE 7-2 ARE NOT POSSIBLE WITHOUT DISASSEMBLY OF PARTS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




*Delete axial direction if not accessible

**Figure 7-4**
**MEASUREMENT POINTS FOR PEDESTAL BEARINGS**

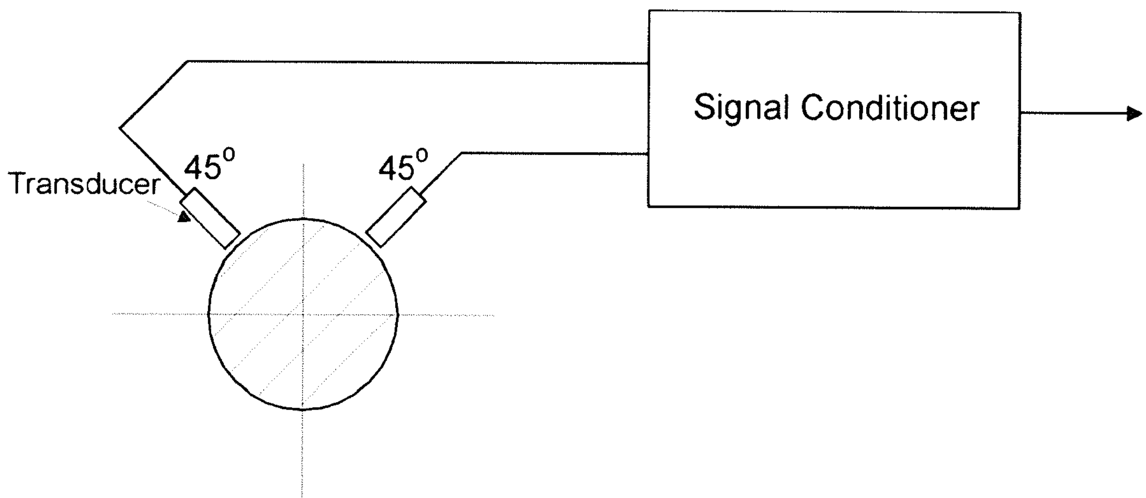



**Figure 7-5**
**PREFERRED CIRCUMFERENTIAL POSITION OF TRANSDUCERS FOR THE MEASUREMENT OF RELATIVE SHAFT DISPLACEMENT**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 7.8 LIMITS OF BEARING HOUSING VIBRATION

### 7.8.1 General

The following limits of vibration are for machines running at no load, uncoupled, and resiliently mounted according to paragraph 7.6.1. For machines tested with rigid mounting, these values shall be reduced by multiplying them by 0.8.

Vibration levels shown in the following paragraphs represent internally excited vibration only. Machines as installed (in situ) may exhibit higher levels. This is generally caused by misalignment or the influence of the driven or driving equipment, including coupling, or a mechanical resonance of the mass of the machine with the resilience of the machine or base on which it is mounted.

Figure 7-6 establishes the limits for bearing housing vibration levels of machines resiliently mounted for both unfiltered and filtered measurements.

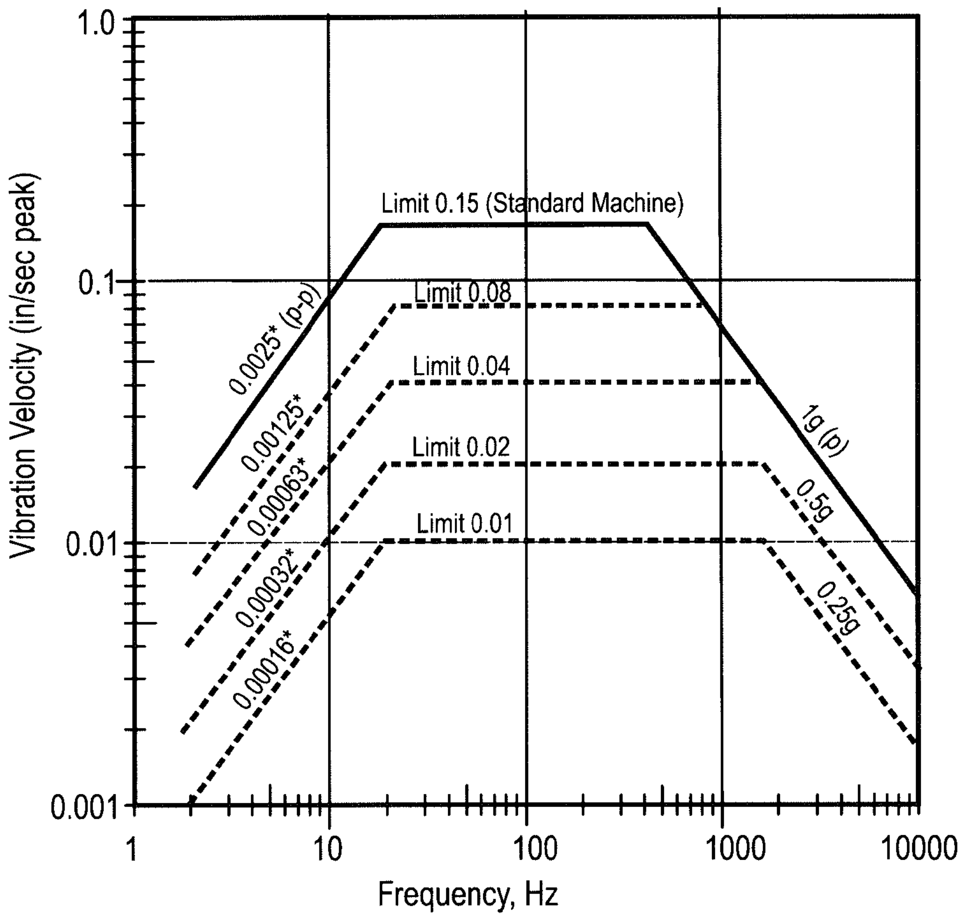
For unfiltered vibration the measured velocity level shall not exceed the limit for the appropriate curve on Figure 7-6 corresponding to the rotational frequency.

For filtered vibration the velocity level at each component frequency of the spectrum analysis shall not exceed the value for the appropriate curve in Figure 7-6 at that frequency.

Unfiltered measurements of velocity, displacement, and acceleration may be used in place of a spectrum analysis to determine that the filtered vibration levels over the frequency range do not exceed the limits of the appropriate curve in Figure 7-6. For example, for the top curve in Figure 7-6 the unfiltered velocity should not exceed 0.15 in/s peak (3.8 mm/s), the displacement should not exceed 0.0025 inch (p-p)-(63.5 microns), and the acceleration should not exceed 1g (peak).

NOTE—International Standards specify vibration velocity as rms in mm/s. To obtain an approximate metric rms equivalent, multiply the peak vibration in in/s by 18.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




NOTE—The intersection of constant displacement lines with constant velocity lines occurs at approximately 20 Hz. The intersection of constant velocity lines with constant acceleration lines occurs at approximately 400, 700, and 1500 Hz for limits 0.15, 0.08, and other, respectively.

| Vibration Limit, in/s peak | Machine Type—General examples |
|---|---|
| 0.15 | Standard industrial motors. |
| | Motors for commercial/residential use |
| 0.08 | Machine tool motors. |
| | Medium /large motors with special requirements |
| 0.04 | Grinding wheel motors. |
| | Small motors with special requirements. |
| 0.02 | Precision spindle and grinder motors. |
| 0.01 | Precision motors with special requirements. |

**Figure 7-6**
**MACHINE VIBRATION LIMITS (RESILIENTLY MOUNTED)**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 7.8.2 Vibration Limits for Standard Machines

Unfiltered vibration shall not exceed the velocity levels as shown in the top curve of Figure 7-6 for standard (no special vibration requirements) machines resiliently mounted.

For example, the limits at rotational frequency are as shown in Table 7-1.

**Table 7-1**
**UNFILTERED VIBRATION LIMITS**

| Speed, rpm | Rotational Frequency, Hz | Velocity, in./s peak (mm/s) |
|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 60 | 0.15 (3.8) |
| 1800 | 30 | 0.15 (3.8) |
| 1200 | 20 | 0.15 (3.8) |
| 900 | 15 | 0.12 (3.0) |
| 720 | 12 | 0.09 (2.3) |
| 600 | 10 | 0.08 (2.0) |

### 7.8.3 Vibration Limits for Special Machines

For machines requiring vibration levels lower than given in 7.8.2 for standard machines, recommended limits are given in Figure 7-6 for the general types indicated. Machines to which these lower limits apply (e.g., 0.08, 0.04, 0.02 or 0.01) shall be by agreement between manufacturer and purchaser.

NOTE—It is not practical to achieve all vibration limits in Figure 7-6 for all machine types in all sizes.

### 7.8.4 Vibration Banding for Special Machines

Banding is a method of dividing the frequency range into frequency bands and applying a vibration limit to each band. Banding recognizes that the vibration level at various frequencies is a function of the source of excitation (bearings, for example) and is grouped (banded) in multiples of rotational frequency.

Figure 7-7 demonstrates three examples of banding. Profile 'A' has a band permitting a higher level at rotational frequency but with all other bands equivalent to Profile 'B' limits. Profiles 'B' and 'C' are examples of banding limits for machines requiring lower vibration levels.

Compliance is based on plots from a spectrum analyzer with a resolution of 400 lines or more and a flat response over the frequency range being tested in which the peak velocities do not exceed the limits specified for the corresponding frequency bands.

This Part does not specify vibration limits and bands for this procedure. These shall be by agreement between the manufacturer and purchaser.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

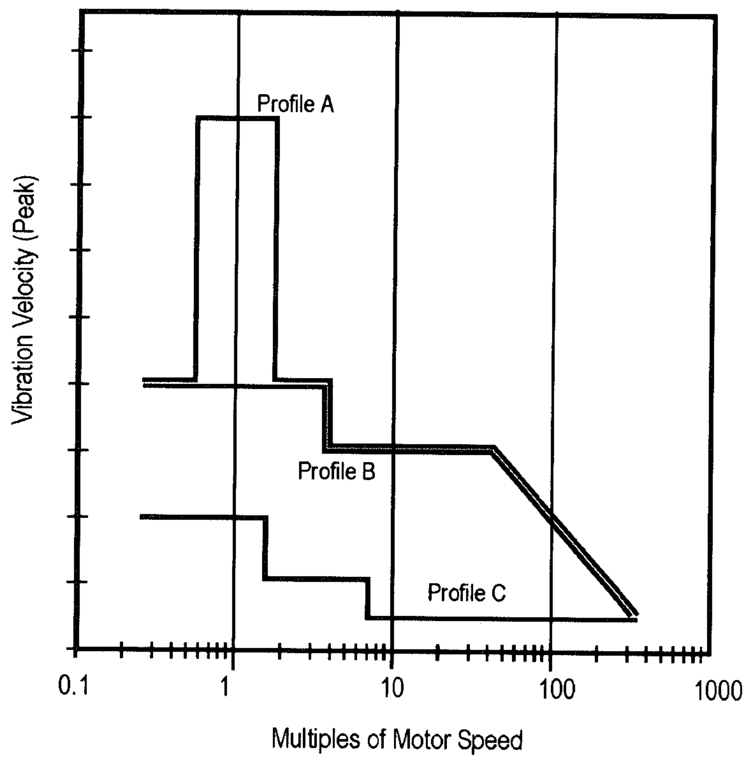



**Figure 7-7**
**EXAMPLES OF SPECIAL MACHINE VIBRATION LIMITS**
**PEAK VELOCITY BANDING PROFILES**

### 7.8.5 Twice Line Frequency Vibration of Two Pole Induction Machines

#### 7.8.5.1 General

If the unfiltered vibration level of the machine exceeds the unfiltered limit in Figure 7-6 the modulation of the unfiltered vibration at twice electrical line frequency can be examined following the procedure in 7.8.5.2 to determine if the machine is acceptable.

Mechanical vibration at a frequency equal to twice the electrical line frequency is produced by the magnetic field within the airgap of two-pole three-phase AC induction machines. The magnitude of this twice electrical line frequency vibration can modulate at a rate equal to the slip frequency of the rotor multiplied by the number of poles. This modulation can have an adverse effect on the proper evaluation of the level of vibration in the machine when unfiltered measurements are taken. To evaluate the effect of this modulation it is generally necessary to monitor the unfiltered vibration of the machine during a complete slip cycle (i.e., the time required for one revolution at the slip frequency). AC induction machines running at a very low slip value at no load may require 10 minutes or longer for such measurements to be completed at each vibration measuring position.

#### 7.8.5.2 Filtered Vibration

A filtered measurement of vibration can be performed on a representative sample of a machine design for the purpose of determining whether or not that design has a significant level of twice electrical line frequency vibration in the machine and to determine if there is any merit to evaluating the magnitude of the modulation of the unfiltered vibration following the procedure in 7.8.5.3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

If the filtered twice electrical line frequency component of the vibration of the machine does not exceed 90 percent of the unfiltered limit in Figure 7-6 then the machine is considered to have failed the vibration test and corrective action is required.

If the filtered twice electrical line frequency component of the vibration of the machine exceeds 90 percent of the unfiltered limit in Figure 7-6 then the procedure in 7.8.5.3 may be used to evaluate the modulation of the vibration and determine if any machine of that design may be acceptable.

### 7.8.5.3 Evaluation of Modulation of Unfiltered Vibration

The machine is to be rigidly mounted and the unfiltered vibration monitored for a complete slip cycle for the purpose of determining the maximum and minimum values of the unfiltered peak vibration over the slip cycle. A value of effective vibration velocity is to be determined using the relationship:

$$V_{eff} = \sqrt{\frac{\left(V_{max}^2 + V_{min}^2\right)}{2}}$$

where

$V_{eff}$ is the effective vibration velocity

$V_{max}$ is the maximum unfiltered vibration velocity

$V_{min}$ is the minimum unfiltered peak vibration velocity

If the level of the effective vibration velocity $V_{eff}$ does not exceed 80 percent of the values in Figure 7-6 then the machine complies with the vibration requirements of this Part 7.

### 7.8.6 Axial Vibration

The level of axial bearing housing or support vibration depends on the bearing installation, bearing function and bearing design, plus uniformity of the rotor and stator cores. Machines designed to carry external thrust may be tested without externally applied thrust. In the case of thrust bearing applications, axial vibrations correlate with thrust loading and axial stiffness. Axial vibration shall be evaluated per 7.7 and the limits of Figure 7-6 apply.

Where bearings have no axial load capability or function, axial vibration of these configurations should be judged in the same manner as vibration levels in 7.8.1 and 7.8.2.

## 7.9 LIMITS OF RELATIVE SHAFT VIBRATION

### 7.9.1 General

Shaft vibration limits are applicable only when probe mounting for non-contacting proximity probes is provided as part of the machine. Proximity probes are sensitive to mechanical and magnetic anomalies of the shaft. This is commonly referred to as "electrical and mechanical probe-track runout." The combined electrical and mechanical runout of the shaft shall not exceed 0.0005 inch peak-to-peak (6.4 μm peak-to-peak) or 25 percent of the vibration displacement limit, whichever is greater. The probe-track runout is measured with the rotor at a slow-roll (100-400 rpm) speed, where the mechanical unbalance forces on the rotor are negligible. It is preferred that the shaft be rotating on the machine bearings, positioned at running axial center (magnetic center), when the runout determinations are made.

NOTES—

1. Special shaft surface preparation (burnishing and degaussing) may be necessary to obtain the required peak-to-peak runout readings.
2. Shop probes may be used for tests when the actual probes are not being supplied with the machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 7.9.2 Standard Machines

When specified, the limits for the relative shaft vibration of standard machines with sleeve bearings, inclusive of electrical and mechanical runout, shall not exceed the limits in Table 7-2.

**Table 7-2**
**LIMITS FOR THE UNFILTERED MAXIMUM RELATIVE SHAFT DISPLACEMENT ($S_{P-P}$) FOR STANDARD MACHINES**

| Synchronous Speed, rpm | Maximum Relative Shaft Displacement (Peak-to-Peak) |
|---|---|
| 1801 – 3600 | 0.0028 in. (70 μm) |
| ≤1800 | 0.0035 in. (90 μm) |

### 7.9.3 Special Machines

When specified, the limits for the relative shaft vibration of rigidly mounted special machines with sleeve bearings requiring lower relative shaft vibration levels than shown in Table 7-2, inclusive of electrical and mechanical runout, shall not exceed the limits in Table 7-3.

**Table 7-3**
**LIMITS FOR THE UNFILTERED MAXIMUM RELATIVE SHAFT DISPLACEMENT ($S_{P-P}$) FOR SPECIAL MACHINES**

| Synchronous Speed, rpm | Maximum Relative Shaft Displacement (Peak-to-Peak) |
|---|---|
| 1801 – 3600 | 0.0020 in. (50 μm) |
| 1201 – 1800 | 0.0028 in. (70 μm) |
| ≤1200 | 0.0030 in. (75 μm) |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 9

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section I
# GENERAL STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 9
# ROTATING ELECTRICAL MACHINES—SOUND POWER LIMITS AND MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES

## 9.1 SCOPE

This Part specifies maximum no-load A-weighted sound power levels for factory acceptance testing of rotating machines in accordance with this Standard and having the following characteristics:

a. motors with rated output from 0.5 HP through 5000 HP;

b. speed not greater than 3600 RPM;

c. 140 frame size and larger;

d. enclosures of the ODP, TEFC, or WPII type.

Sound power levels for motors under load are for guidance only.

This Part also specifies the method of measurement and the test conditions appropriate for the determination of the sound power level of electrical motors.

Excluded are ac motors supplied by inverters (see Part 31), series wound d.c. motors, generators and single-bearing motors.

## 9.2 GENERAL

The limits specified in Tables 9-1 and 9-2 of this Standard are applicable to motors operated at rated voltage without load. Usually, load has some influence on noise, which is recognized in Table 9-3 for single-speed, three-phase ac induction motors.

Acoustic quantities can be expressed in sound pressure terms or sound power terms. The use of a sound power level, which can be specified independently of the measurement surface and environmental conditions, avoids the complications associated with sound pressure levels which require additional data to be specified. Sound power levels provide a measure of radiated energy and have advantages in acoustic analysis and design.

Sound pressure levels at a distance from the motor, rather than sound power levels, may be required in some applications, such as hearing protection programs. However, this Part is only concerned with the physical aspect of noise and expresses limits in terms of sound power level. Guidance is given for calculation of sound pressure levels at a distance, derived from the sound power values (see 9.7). In situ sound pressure calculations require knowledge of motor size, operating conditions, and the environment in which the motor is to be installed. Information for making such calculations taking into account environmental factors can be found, if needed, in classical textbooks on acoustics.

## 9.3 REFERENCES

Reference standards are listed in Part 1 of this Standard.

## 9.4 METHODS OF MEASUREMENT

**9.4.1** Sound level measurements and calculation of sound power level produced by the motor shall be in accordance with either ANSI S12.12, S12.51, S12.53, S12.54, or S12.35, unless one of the methods specified in 9.4.2 is used.

NOTE—An overview of applicable measurement standards is provided in Table 9-4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**9.4.2** The method specified in ANSI S12.56 may be used.

However, to prove compliance with this standard, unless a correction due to inaccuracy of the measurement has already been applied to the values determined by the method in accordance with ANSI S12.56, the levels of Tables 9-1 and 9-2 shall be decreased by 2 dB.

**9.4.3** When testing under load conditions, the methods of ANSI S12.12 are preferred. However, other methods are allowed when the connected motor and auxiliary equipment are acoustically isolated or located outside the test environment.

## 9.5 TEST CONDITIONS

### 9.5.1 Machine Mounting

Care should be taken to minimize the transmission and the radiation of structure-borne noise from all mounting elements, including the foundation. This minimizing may be achieved by the resilient mounting of smaller motors. Larger motors can usually only be tested under rigid mounting conditions. If practicable, when testing, the motor should be as it would be in normal usage.

Motors tested under load conditions shall be rigidly mounted.

#### 9.5.1.1 Resilient mounting

The natural frequency of the support system and the motor under test shall be lower than 33 percent of the frequency corresponding to the lowest rotational speed of the motor.

#### 9.5.1.2 Rigid Mounting

The motor shall be rigidly mounted to a surface with dimensions adequate for the motor type. The motor shall not be subject to additional mounting stresses from incorrect shimming or fasteners.

### 9.5.2 Test Operating Conditions

The following test conditions shall apply:

a. The motor shall be operated at rated voltage(s), rated frequency or rated speed(s), and with appropriate field current(s), where applicable. These shall be measured with instruments of an accuracy of 1.0% or better.
   1. The standard load condition shall be no-load.
   2. When required by agreement, the motor may be operated at a load condition.
b. A motor designed to operate with a vertical axis shall be tested with the axis in a vertical position.
c. For an ac motor, the waveform and the degree of unbalance of the supply system shall comply with the requirements of this Standard.

NOTE—Any increase in voltage (and current) waveform distortion and unbalance will result in an increase in noise and vibration.

d. A synchronous motor shall be run with appropriate excitation to obtain unity power factor;
e. A dc motor suitable for variable speed shall be evaluated at base speed;
f. A motor designed to operate at two or more discrete speeds shall be tested at each speed;
g. A motor intended to be reversible shall be operated in both directions unless no difference in the sound power level is expected. A unidirectional motor shall be tested in its design direction only.
h. A dc motor shall be evaluated when connected to a low-ripple Type A power supply.

## 9.6 SOUND POWER LEVEL

**9.6.1** The maximum sound power levels specified in Tables 9-1 and 9-2, or adjusted by Table 9-3, relate to measurements made in accordance with 9.4.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**9.6.2** When a motor is tested under the conditions specified in 9.5, the sound power level of the motor shall not exceed the relevant value(s) specified as follows:

a. For all TEFC, ODP, and WPII motors, other than those specified in 9.6.2b, operating at no-load, see Table 9-1.

b. For dc motors of ODP construction with outputs from 1 HP through 200 HP, operating at no-load, see Table 9-2.

**9.6.3** When a single-speed, three-phase, squirrel-cage, induction motor of ODP, TEFC or WPII construction, with outputs from 0.5 HP through 500 HP is tested under rated load, the sound power level should not exceed the sum of the values specified in Tables 9-1 and 9-3.

NOTES

1—The limits of Tables 9-1 and 9-2 recognize class 2 accuracy grade levels of measurement uncertainty and production variations. See 9.4.2.

2—Sound power levels under load conditions are normally higher than those at no-load. Generally, if ventilation noise is predominant the change may be small, but if the electromagnetic noise is predominant the change may be significant.

3—For dc motors the limits in Tables 9-1 and 9-2 apply to base speed. For other speeds, or where the relationship between noise level and load is important, limits should be agreed between the manufacturer and the purchaser.

## 9.7 DETERMINATION OF SOUND PRESSURE LEVEL

No additional measurements are necessary for the determination of sound pressure level, $L_p$, in dB, since it can be calculated directly from the sound power level, $L_{WA}$, in dB, according to the following:

$$L_p = L_{WA} - 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{2\pi r_d^2}{S_o}\right)$$

Where:

$L_p$ is the average sound pressure level in a free-field over a reflective plane on a hemispherical surface at 1m distance from the motor

$r_d$ = 1.0m + 0.5 times the maximum linear dimension of the motor in meters

$S_o$ = 1.0m$^2$

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 9-1**
**MAXIMUM A-WEIGHTED SOUND POWER LEVELS, $L_{WA}$ (dB), AT NO-LOAD**

| Rated Power, $P_N$ | Rated Speed | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1801- 3600 RPM | | | 1201- 1800 RPM | | | 901 - 1200 RPM | | | 900 RPM or less | | |
| Motor (ac or dc) HP | ODP | TEFC | WP II | ODP | TEFC | WP II | ODP | TEFC | WP II | ODP | TEFC | WP II |
| .5 | | | | | | | | | | 67 | 67 | |
| .75 | | | | | | | 65 | 64 | | 67 | 67 | |
| 1 | | | | 70 | 70 | | 65 | 64 | | 69 | 69 | |
| 1 | | | | 70 | 70 | | 65 | 64 | | 69 | 69 | |
| 1.5 | 76 | 85 | | 70 | 70 | | 67 | 67 | | 69 | 69 | |
| 2 | 76 | 85 | | 70 | 70 | | 67 | 67 | | 70 | 72 | |
| 3 | 76 | 88 | | 72 | 74 | | 72 | 71 | | 70 | 72 | |
| 5 | 80 | 88 | | 72 | 74 | | 72 | 71 | | 73 | 76 | |
| 7.5 | 80 | 91 | | 76 | 79 | | 76 | 75 | | 73 | 76 | |
| 10 | 82 | 91 | | 76 | 79 | | 76 | 75 | | 76 | 80 | |
| 15 | 82 | 94 | | 80 | 84 | | 81 | 80 | | 76 | 80 | |
| 20 | 84 | 94 | | 80 | 84 | | 81 | 80 | | 79 | 83 | |
| 25 | 84 | 94 | | 80 | 88 | | 83 | 83 | | 79 | 83 | |
| 30 | 86 | 94 | | 80 | 88 | | 83 | 83 | | 81 | 86 | |
| 40 | 86 | 100 | | 84 | 89 | | 86 | 86 | | 81 | 86 | |
| 50 | 89 | 100 | | 84 | 89 | | 86 | 86 | | 84 | 89 | |
| 60 | 89 | 101 | | 86 | 95 | | 88 | 90 | | 84 | 89 | |
| 75 | 94 | 101 | | 86 | 95 | | 88 | 90 | | 87 | 93 | |
| 100 | 94 | 102 | | 89 | 98 | | 91 | 94 | | 87 | 93 | |
| 125 | 98 | 104 | | 89 | 100 | | 91 | 94 | | 93 | 96 | 92 |
| 150 | 98 | 104 | | 93 | 100 | | 96 | 98 | | 95 | 97 | 92 |
| 200 | 101 | 107 | | 93 | 103 | | 99 | 100 | 97 | 95 | 97 | 92 |
| 250 | 101 | 107 | | 103 | 105 | 99 | 99 | 100 | 97 | 95 | 97 | 92 |
| 300 | 107 | 110 | 102 | 103 | 105 | 99 | 99 | 100 | 97 | 98 | 100 | 96 |
| 350 | 107 | 110 | 102 | 103 | 105 | 99 | 99 | 100 | 97 | 98 | 100 | 96 |
| 400 | 107 | 110 | 102 | 103 | 105 | 99 | 102 | 103 | 99 | 98 | 100 | 96 |
| 450 | 107 | 110 | 102 | 106 | 108 | 102 | 102 | 103 | 99 | 99 | 102 | 98 |
| 500 | 110 | 113 | 105 | 106 | 108 | 102 | 102 | 103 | 99 | 99 | 102 | 98 |
| 600 | 110 | 113 | 105 | 106 | 108 | 102 | 102 | 103 | 99 | 99 | 102 | 98 |
| 700 | 110 | 113 | 105 | 106 | 108 | 102 | 102 | 103 | 99 | 99 | 102 | 98 |
| 800 | 110 | 113 | 105 | 108 | 111 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 101 | 101 | 105 | 100 |
| 900 | 111 | 116 | 106 | 108 | 111 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 101 | 101 | 105 | 100 |
| 1000 | 111 | 116 | 106 | 108 | 111 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 101 | 101 | 105 | 100 |
| 1250 | 111 | 116 | 106 | 108 | 111 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 101 | 101 | 105 | 100 |
| 1500 | 111 | 116 | 106 | 109 | 113 | 105 | 107 | 109 | 103 | 103 | 107 | 102 |
| 1750 | 112 | 118 | 107 | 109 | 113 | 105 | 107 | 109 | 103 | 103 | 107 | 102 |
| 2000 | 112 | 118 | 107 | 109 | 113 | 105 | 107 | 109 | 103 | 103 | 107 | 102 |
| 2250 | 112 | 118 | 107 | 109 | 113 | 105 | 107 | 109 | 103 | 103 | 107 | 102 |
| 2500 | 112 | 118 | 107 | 110 | 115 | 106 | 107 | 109 | 103 | | | |
| 3000 | 114 | 120 | 109 | 110 | 115 | 106 | 109 | 111 | 105 | | | |
| 3500 | 114 | 120 | 109 | 110 | 115 | 106 | 109 | 111 | 105 | | | |
| 4000 | 114 | 120 | 109 | 110 | 115 | 106 | | | | | | |
| 4500 | 114 | 120 | 109 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5000 | 114 | 120 | 109 | | | | | | | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 9-2**
**MAXIMUM A-WEIGHTED SOUND POWER LEVELS $L_{WA}$ (dB) OF DRIP-PROOF INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS, AT NO-LOAD**

| Rated Power, $P_N$ | Base Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| HP | 2500 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 |
| 1 | 81 | 72 | 63 | 60 |
| 1.5 | 81 | 72 | 63 | 60 |
| 2 | 81 | 72 | 64 | 61 |
| 3 | 82 | 72 | 66 | 62 |
| 5 | 84 | 75 | 68 | 66 |
| 7.5 | 86 | 77 | 71 | 69 |
| 10 | 88 | 79 | 73 | 71 |
| 15 | 90 | 82 | 77 | 74 |
| 20 | 92 | 84 | 79 | 75 |
| 25 | 94 | 86 | 81 | 77 |
| 30 | 95 | 88 | 82 | 78 |
| 40 | 96 | 90 | 84 | 79 |
| 50 | -- | 91 | 85 | 80 |
| 60 | -- | 92 | 86 | 81 |
| 75 | -- | 93 | 87 | 82 |
| 100 | -- | 94 | 88 | 83 |
| 125 | -- | 95 | 88 | 83 |
| 150 | -- | 95 | 89 | 84 |
| 200 | -- | 96 | 90 | 85 |

**Table 9-3**
**INCREMENTAL EXPECTED INCREASE OVER NO-LOAD CONDITION, IN A-WEIGHTED SOUND POWER LEVELS $\Delta L_{WA}$ (dB), FOR RATED LOAD CONDITION FOR SINGLE-SPEED, THREE-PHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, INDUCTION MOTORS**

| Rated Output, $P_N$ HP | 2 Pole | 4 Pole | 6 Pole | 8 Pole |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $1.0 < P_N \leq 15$ | 2 | 5 | 7 | 8 |
| $15 < P_N \leq 50$ | 2 | 4 | 6 | 7 |
| $50 < P_N \leq 150$ | 2 | 3 | 5 | 6 |
| $150 < P_N \leq 500$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 9-4**
**OVERVIEW OF STANDARDS FOR THE DETERMINATION OF SOUND POWER LEVELS OF MOTORS**

| | Sound Pressure Level | | | | | | | Sound Intensity | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ANSI Standard | S12.51 | S12.53-1 | S12.53-2 | S12.54 | S12.55 | S12.56 | S12.57 | S12.12 | S12.12 | S12.12 |
| ISO Standard | 3741 | 3743-1 | 3743-2 | 3744 | 3745 | 3746 | 3747 | 9614-1 | 9614-2 | 9614-3 |
| Test Environment | Reverberation room | Hard-walled room | Special reverberation room | Free-field over a reflecting plane | Anechoic or hemi-anechoic room | No special test environment | Essentially reverberant field in situ | In situ | In situ | In situ |
| Grade of Accuracy | Precision | Engineering | Engineering | Engineering | Precision | Survey | Engineering | Survey | Engineering | Precision |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 10

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 10
# RATINGS—AC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS

## 10.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 10 of Section II cover alternating-current motors up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below.

| Synchronous Speed | Motors Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor Unity | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor 0.8 |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 350 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 250 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 200 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 150 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 125 | 100 |

## 10.30 VOLTAGES

a. Universal motors—115 and 230 volts
b. Single-phase motors
   1. 60 hertz—115, 200, and 230 volts
   2. 50 hertz—110 and 220 volts
c. Polyphase motors
   1. 60 hertz—115*, 200, 230, 460, 575, 2300, 4000, 4600, and 6600 volts
   2. Three phase, 50 hertz - 220 and 380 volts

NOTE—It is not practical to build motors of all horsepower ratings for all of the standard voltages.

*Applies only to motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller.

## 10.31 FREQUENCIES

### 10.31.1 Alternating-Current Motors

The frequency shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 10.31.2 Universal Motors

The frequency shall be 60 hertz/direct-current.

NOTE—Universal motors will operate successfully on all frequencies below 60 hertz and on direct-current.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-1**
**HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS, SMALL INDUCTION MOTORS**

| | All Motors Except Shaded-Pole and Permanent-Split Capacitor | | Permanent-Split Capacitor Motors | All Motors Except Shaded-Pole and Permanent-Split Capacitor | | Permanent-Split Capacitor |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Hp** | **60-Hertz Synchronous Rpm** | **Approximate Rpm at Rated Load** | | **50-Hertz Synchronous Rpm** | **Approximate Rpm at Rated Load** | |
| 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 25, and 35 millihorsepower | 3600 | 3450 | ... | 3000 | 2850 | ... |
| | 1800 | 1725 | ... | 1500 | 1425 | ... |
| | 1200 | 1140 | ... | 1000 | 950 | ... |
| | 900 | ... | ... | | | |
| 1/20,1/12, and 1/8 horsepower | 3600 | 3450 | ... | 3000 | 2850 | ... |
| | 1800 | 1725 | ... | 1500 | 1425 | ... |
| | 1200 | 1140 | ... | 1000 | 950 | ... |
| | 900 | 850 | ... | | | |
| 1/6, 1/4, and 1/3 horsepower | 3600 | 3450 | ... | 3000 | 2850 | ... |
| | 1800 | 1725 | ... | 1500 | 1425 | ... |
| | 1200 | 1140 | ... | 1000 | 950 | ... |
| | 900 | 850 | ... | | | |
| 1/2 horsepower | 3600 | 3450 | 3250 | 3000 | 2850 | 2700 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1625 | 1500 | 1425 | 1350 |
| | 1200 | 1140 | 1075 | 1000 | 950 | 900 |
| 3/4 horsepower | 3600 | 3450 | 3250 | 3000 | 2850 | 2700 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1625 | 1500 | 1425 | 1350 |
| 1 horsepower | 3600 | 3450 | 3250 | 3000 | 2850 | 2700 |

## 10.32 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

### 10.32.1 Small Induction Motors, Except Permanent-Split Capacitor Motors Rated 1/3 Horsepower and Smaller and Shaded-Pole Motors

Typical horsepower and speed ratings for small induction motors rated 115, 200, and 230 volts single-phase and 115, 200,[1] and 230 volts polyphase are given in Table 10-1.

### 10.32.2 Small Induction Motors, Permanent-Split Capacitor Motors Rated 1/3 Horsepower and Smaller and Shaded-Pole Motors

Typical horsepower and speed ratings for small induction motors rated 115, 200, and 230 volts single-phase are given in Table 10-2.

[1] Applies to 60-Hertz circuits only

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-2**
**HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS, PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR AND SHADED POLE MOTORS**

| Hp | 60-Hertz Synchronous Rpm | Approximate Rpm at Rated Load | 50-Hertz synchronous Rpm | Approximate Rpm at Rated Load |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Permanent-Split Capacitor Motors** | | | | |
| 1, 1.25, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12.5, 16, 20, 25, 30, and 40 millihorsepower | 3600 | 3000 | 3000 | 2500 |
| | 1800 | 1550 | 1500 | 1300 |
| | 1200 | 1050 | 1000 | 875 |
| | 900 | 800 | | |
| 1/20, 1/15, 1/12, 1/10, 1/8, 1/6, 1/5, 1/4, and 1/3 horsepower | 3600 | 3250 | 3000 | 2700 |
| | 1800 | 1625 | 1500 | 1350 |
| | 1200 | 1075 | 1000 | 900 |
| | 900 | 825 | | |
| **Shaded-Pole Motors** | | | | |
| | **60-Hertz Synchronous Rpm** | **Approximate Rpm at Rated Load** | **50-Hertz Synchronous Rpm** | **Approximate Rpm at Rated Load** |
| 1, 1.25, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12.5, 16, 20, 25, 30, and 40 millihorsepower | 1800 | 1550 | 1500 | 1300 |
| | 1200 | 1050 | 1000 | 875 |
| | 900 | 800 | | |
| 1/20, 1/15, 1/12, 1/10, 1/8, 1/6, 1/5, and 1/4 horsepower | 1800 | 1550 | 1500 | 1300 |
| | 1200 | 1050 | 1000 | 875 |
| | 900 | 800 | | |

## 10.32.3 Single-Phase Medium Motors

The horsepower and synchronous speed ratings of single-phase medium motors rated 115, 200, and 230 volts shall be as shown in Table 10-3.

**Table 10-3**
**HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS, MEDIUM MOTORS**

| | 60-Hertz | | | | 50-Hertz | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | Synchronous Rpm | | | | Synchronous Rpm | | | |
| 1/2 | ... | ... | ... | 900 | ... | ... | 1000 | 750 |
| 3/4 | ... | ... | 1200 | 900 | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 1 | ... | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 1-1/2 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 2 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 3 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 5 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 7-1/2 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 10 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |

## 10.32.4 Polyphase Medium Induction Motors

The horsepower and synchronous speed ratings of polyphase medium induction motors shall be as shown in Table 10-4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-4***
**HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS, POLYPHASE MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS**

| Hp | 60-Hertz Synchronous Rpm | | | | | | | 50-Hertz Synchronous Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/2 | ... | ... | ... | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | ... | ... | ... | 750 |
| 3/4 | ... | ... | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | ... | ... | 1000 | 750 |
| 1 | ... | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 1-1/2 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 2 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 3 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 5 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 7-1/2 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 10 | 3600* | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 15 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 20 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 25 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 30 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 40 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 50 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 60 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 75 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 100 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 125 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 150 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | ... | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 200 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | .. | ... | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 250 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | .. | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 300 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | ... |
| 350 | 3600** | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | ... |
| 400 | 3600** | 1800 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3000 | 1500 | ... | ... |
| 450 | 3600** | 1800 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3000 | 1500 | ... | ... |
| 500 | 3600** | 1800 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 3000 | 1500 | ... | ... |

*For frame assignments, see Part 13.
**Applies to squirrel-cage motors only.

### 10.32.5 Universal Motors

Horsepower ratings shall be 10, 15, 25, and 35 millihorsepower and 1/20, 1/12, 1/8, 1/6, 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, and 1 horsepower at a rated speed of 5000 rpm or above.

NOTE—At speeds less than 5000 rpm, there will be a marked difference in performance characteristics between operation on alternating-current and operation on direct-current.

## 10.33 HORSEPOWER RATINGS OF MULTISPEED MOTORS

The horsepower rating of multispeed motors shall be selected as follows:

### 10.33.1 Constant Horsepower

The horsepower rating for each rated speed shall be selected from 10.32.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 10.33.2 Constant Torque

The horsepower rating for the highest rated speed shall be selected from 10.32. The horsepower rating for each lower speed shall be determined by multiplying the horsepower rating at the highest speed by the ratio of the lower synchronous speed to the highest synchronous speed.

### 10.33.3 Variable Torque

The horsepower rating for the highest rated speed shall be selected from 10.32. The horsepower rating for each lower speed shall be determined by multiplying the horsepower rating at the highest speed by the square of the ratio of the synchronous speed to the highest synchronous speed.

## 10.34 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

### 10.34.1 Basis of Rating

The horsepower rating of a small or medium single-phase induction motor is based upon breakdown torque (see 1.51). The value of breakdown torque to be expected by the user for any horsepower and speed shall fall within the range given in Tables 10-5 and 10-6.

### 10.34.2 Temperature

The breakdown torque which determines the horsepower rating is that obtained in a test when the temperature of the winding and other parts of the machine are at approximately 25°C at the start of the test.

### 10.34.3 Minimum Breakdown Torque

The minimum value of breakdown torque obtained in the manufacture of any design will determine the rating of that design. Tolerances in manufacturing will result in individual motors having breakdown torque from 100 percent to approximately 115 percent (125 percent for motors rated millihorsepower and for all shaded-pole motors) of the value on which the rating is based, but this excess torque shall not be relied upon by the user in applying the motor to its load.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-5*†**
**BREAKDOWN TORQUE FOR INDUCTION MOTORS, EXCEPT SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS**

| 60 | 50 | 60 | 50 | 60 | 50 | 60 | 50 | | Frequencies, Hertz |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 3000 | 1800 | 1500 | 1200 | 1000 | 900 | 750 | | Synchronous Speeds, Rpm |
| 3450** | 2850** | 1725** | 1425** | 1140** | 950** | 850** | ... | Hp | Small Motors, Nominal Speeds, Rpm |
| | | | | | | | | Millihp | The figures at the left are for motors rated less than 1/20 horsepower. Breakdown torques in oz-in. |
| 0.35-0.55 | 0.42-0.66 | 0.7-1.1 | 0.85-1.3 | 1.1-1.65 | ... | ... | ... | 1 | |
| 0.55-0.7 | 0.66-0.85 | 1.1-1.45 | 1.3-1.75 | 1.65-2.2 | ... | ... | ... | 1.5 | |
| 0.7-1.1 | 0.85-1.3 | 1.45-2.2 | 1.75-2.6 | 2.2-3.3 | ... | ... | ... | 2 | |
| 1.1-1.8 | 1.3-2.2 | 2.2-3.6 | 2.6-4.3 | 3.3-5.4 | ... | ... | ... | 3 | |
| 1.8-2.7 | 2.2-3.2 | 3.6-5.4 | 4.3-6.6 | 5.4-8.1 | ... | ... | ... | 5 | |
| 2.7-3.6 | 3.2-4.3 | 5.4-7.2 | 6.6-8.6 | 8.1-11 | ... | ... | ... | 7.5 | |
| 3.6-5.5 | 4.3-6.6 | 7.2-11 | 8.6-13 | 11-17 | ... | ... | ... | 10 | |
| 5.5-9.5 | 6.6-11.4 | 11-19 | 13-23 | 17-29 | ... | ... | ... | 15 | |
| 9.5-15 | 11.4-18 | 19-30 | 23-36 | 29-46 | ... | ... | ... | 25 | |
| 15-24 | 18-28.8 | 30-48 | 36-57.6 | 46-72 | ... | ... | ... | 35 | |
| | | | | | | | | Hp | The figures at left are for small motors. Breakdown torques in oz-ft. |
| 2.0-3.7 | 2.4-4.4 | 4.0-7.1 | 4.8-8.5 | 6.0-10.4 | 7.2-12.4 | 8.0-13.5 | ... | 1/20 | |
| 3.7-6.0 | 4.4-7.2 | 7.1-11.5 | 8.5-13.8 | 10.4-16.5 | 12.4-19.8 | 13.5-21.5 | ... | 1/12 | |
| 6.0-8.7 | 7.2-10.5 | 11.5-16.5 | 13.8-19.8 | 16.5-24.1 | 19.8-28.9 | 21.5-31.5 | ... | 1/8 | |
| 8.7-11.5 | 10.5-13.8 | 16.5-21.5 | 19.8-25.8 | 24.1-31.5 | 28.9-37.8 | 31.5-40.5 | ... | 1/6 | |
| 11.5-16.5 | 13.8-19.8 | 21.5-31.5 | 25.8-37.8 | 31.5-44.0 | 37.8-53.0 | 40.5-58.0 | ... | 1/4 | |
| 16.5-21.5 | 19.8-25.8 | 31.5-40.5 | 37.8-48.5 | 44.0-58.0 | 53.0-69.5 | 58.0-77.0 | ... | 1/3 | |
| 21.5-31.5 | 25.8-37.8 | 40.5-58.0 | 48.5-69.5 | 58.0-82.5 | 69.5-99.0 | †† | †† | 1/2 | The figures at left are for medium motors. Breakdown torques in lb-ft. |
| 31.5-44.0 | 37.8-53.0 | 58.0-82.5 | 69.5-99.0 | 5.16-6.9 | †† | †† | †† | 3/4 | |
| 44.0-58.0 | 53.0-69.5 | 5.16-6.8 | 6.19-8.2 | 6.9-9.2 | †† | †† | †† | 1 | |
| 3.6-4.6 | 4.3-5.5 | 6.8-10.1 | 8.2-12.1 | 9.2-13.8 | †† | †† | †† | 1-1/2 | |
| 4.6-6.0 | 5.5-7.2 | 10.1-13.0 | 12.1-15.6 | 13.8-18.0 | †† | †† | †† | 2 | |
| 6.0-8.6 | 7.2-10.2 | 13.0-19.0 | 15.6-22.8 | 18.0-25.8 | †† | †† | †† | 3 | |
| 8.6-13.5 | 10.2-16.2 | 19.0-30.0 | 22.8-36.0 | 25.8-40.5 | †† | †† | †† | 5 | |
| 13.5-20.0 | 16.2-24.0 | 30.0-45.0 | 36.0-54.0 | 40.5-60.0 | †† | †† | †† | 7-1/2 | |
| 20.0-27.0 | 24.0--32.4 | 45.0-60.0 | 54.0-72.0 | †† | †† | †† | †† | 10 | |

*The breakdown torque range includes the higher figure down to, but not including, the lower figure.

**These approximate full-load speeds apply only for small motor ratings.

†The horsepower ratings of motors designed to operate on two or more frequencies shall be determined by the torque at the highest rated frequency.

††These are ratings for which no torque values have been established.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-6*†**

**BREAKDOWN TORQUE FOR SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS FOR FAN AND PUMP APPLICATIONS**

**(For permanent-split capacitor hermetic motors, see 18.7)**

| 60 | 50 | 60 | 50 | 60 | | Frequencies, Hertz |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1800 | 1500 | 1200 | 1000 | 900 | | Synchronous Speeds, Rpm |
| * See 10.32.1 and 10.32.2. | | | | | Hp | Small Motors, Approximate Full-Load Speeds, Rpm |
| | | | | | Millihp | |
| 0.89-1.1 | 1.1-1.3 | 1.3-1.6 | 1.6-1.9 | 1.7-2.1 | 1 | |
| 1.1-1.4 | 1.3-1.7 | 1.6-2.1 | 1.9-2.5 | 2.1-2.7 | 1.25 | |
| 1.4-1.7 | 1.7-2.0 | 2.1-2.5 | 2.5-3.0 | 2.7-3.3 | 1.5 | |
| 1.7-2.1 | 2.0-2.5 | 2.5-3.1 | 3.0-3.7 | 3.3-4.1 | 2 | |
| 2.1-2.6 | 2.5-3.1 | 3.1-3.8 | 3.7-4.6 | 4.1-5.0 | 2.5 | |
| 2.6-3.2 | 3.1-3.8 | 3.8-4.7 | 4.6-5.7 | 5.0-6.2 | 3 | |
| 3.2-4.0 | 3.8-4.8 | 4.7-5.9 | 5.7-7.1 | 6.2-7.8 | 4 | |
| 4.0-4.9 | 4.8-5.8 | 5.9-7.2 | 7.1-8.7 | 7.8-9.5 | 5 | |
| 4.9-6.2 | 5.8-7.4 | 7.2-9.2 | 8.7-11.0 | 9.5-12.0 | 6 | The figures at left are breakdown torques in oz-in. |
| 6.2-7.7 | 7.4-9.2 | 9.2-11.4 | 11.0-13.6 | 12.0-14.9 | 8 | |
| 7.7-9.6 | 9.2-11.4 | 11.4-14.2 | 13.6-17.0 | 14.9-18.6 | 10 | |
| 9.6-12.3 | 11.4-14.7 | 14.2-18.2 | 17.0-21.8 | 18.6-23.8 | 12.5 | |
| 12.3-15.3 | 14.7-18.2 | 18.2-22.6 | 21.8-27.1 | 23.8-29.6 | 16 | |
| 15.3-19.1 | 18.2-22.8 | 22.6-28.2 | 27.1-33.8 | 29.6-37.0 | 20 | |
| 19.1-23.9 | 22.8-28.5 | 28.2-35.3 | 33.8-42.3 | 37.0-46.3 | 25 | |
| 23.9-30.4 | 28.5-36.3 | 35.3-44.9 | 42.3-53.9 | 46.3-58.9 | 30 | |
| 30.4-38.2 | 36.3-45.6 | 44.9-56.4 | 53.9-68.4 | 58.9-74.4 | 40 | |
| | | | | | Hp | |
| 3.20-4.13 | 3.8-4.92 | 4.70-6.09 | 5.70-7.31 | 6.20-8.00 | 1/20 | |
| 4.13-5.23 | 4.92-6.23 | 6.09-7.72 | 7.31-9.26 | 8.00-10.1 | 1/15 | |
| 5.23-6.39 | 6.23-7.61 | 7.72-9.42 | 9.26-11.3 | 10.1-12.4 | 1/12 | |
| 6.39-8.00 | 7.61-9.54 | 9.42-11.8 | 11.3-14.2 | 12.4-15.5 | 1/10 | |
| 8.00-10.4 | 9.54-12.4 | 11.8-15.3 | 14.2-18.4 | 15.5-20.1 | 1/8 | The figures at left are breakdown torques in oz-ft. |
| 10.4-12.7 | 12.4-15.1 | 15.3-18.8 | 18.4-22.5 | 20.1-24.6 | 1/6 | |
| 12.7-16.0 | 15.1-19.1 | 18.8-23.6 | 22.5-28.3 | 24.6-31.0 | 1/5 | |
| 16.0-21.0 | 19.1-25.4 | 23.6-31.5 | 28.3-37.6 | 31.0-41.0 | 1/4 | |
| 21.0-31.5 | 25.4-37.7 | 31.5-47.0 | 37.6-56.5 | 41.0-61.0 | 1/3 | |
| 31.5-47.5 | 37.7-57.3 | 47.0-70.8 | 56.5-84.8 | 3.81-5.81 | 1/2 | The figures at left are breakdown torques in lb-ft. |
| 47.5-63.5 | 57.3-76.5 | 4.42-5.88 | 5.30-7.06 | 5.81-7.62 | 3/4 | |
| 3.97-5.94 | 4.78-7.06 | 5.88-8.88 | 7.06-10.6 | 7.62-11.6 | 1 | |
| 5.94-7.88 | 7.06-9.56 | 8.88-11.8 | 10.6-14.1 | 11.6-15.2 | 1-1/2 | |

*The breakdown torque range includes the higher figure down to, but not including, the lower figure.

†The horsepower rating of motors designed to operate on two or more frequencies shall be determined by the torque at the highest rated frequency.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 10.35 SECONDARY DATA FOR WOUND-ROTOR MOTORS

| Hp | Secondary Volts* | Maximum Secondary Amperes | Hp | Secondary Volts* | Maximum Secondary Amperes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 90 | 6 | 25 | 220 | 60 |
| 1½ | 110 | 7.3 | 30 | 240 | 65 |
| 2 | 120 | 8.4 | 40 | 315 | 60 |
| 3 | 145 | 10 | 50 | 350 | 67 |
| 5 | 140 | 19 | 60 | 375 | 74 |
| 7½ | 165 | 23 | 75 | 385 | 90 |
| 10 | 195 | 26.5 | 100 | 360 | 130 |
| 15 | 240 | 32.5 | 125 | 385 | 150 |
| 20 | 265 | 38 | 150 | 380 | 185 |

*Tolerance - plus or minus 10 percent.

## 10.36 TIME RATINGS FOR SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

The time ratings for single-phase and polyphase induction motors shall be 5, 15, 30 and 60 minutes and continuous.

All short-time ratings are based upon a corresponding short-time load test which shall commence only when the winding and other parts of the machine are within 5°C of the ambient temperature at the time of the starting of the test.

## 10.37 CODE LETTERS (FOR LOCKED-ROTOR KVA)

### 10.37.1 Nameplate Marking

When the nameplate of an alternating-current motor is marked to show the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower, it shall be marked with the caption "Code" followed by a letter selected from the table in 10.37.2.

### 10.37.2 Letter Designation

The letter designations for locked-rotor kVA per horsepower as measured at full voltage and rated frequency are as follows:

| Letter Designation | kVA per Horsepower* | Letter Designation | kVA per Horsepower* |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | 0.00-3.15 | K | 8.0-9.0 |
| B | 3.15-3.55 | L | 9.0-10.0 |
| C | 3.55-4.0 | M | 10.0-11.2 |
| D | 4.0-4.5 | N | 11.2-12.5 |
| E | 4.5-5.0 | P | 12.5-14.0 |
| F | 5.0-5.6 | R | 14.0-16.0 |
| G | 5.6-6.3 | S | 16.0-18.0 |
| H | 6.3-7.1 | T | 18.0-20.0 |
| J | 7.1-8.0 | U | 20.0-22.4 |
| | | V | 22.4-and up |

*Locked kVA per horsepower range includes the lower figure up to, but not including, the higher figure. For example, 3.14 is designated by letter A and 3.15 by letter B.

### 10.37.3 Multispeed Motors

Multispeed motors shall be marked with the code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for the highest speed at which the motor can be started, except constant-horsepower motors which shall be marked with the code letter for the speed giving the highest locked-rotor kVA per horsepower.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 10.37.4 Single-Speed Motors

Single-speed motors starting on Y connection and running on delta connection shall be marked with a code letter corresponding to the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for the Y connection.

### 10.37.5 Broad- or Dual-Voltage Motors

Broad- or dual-voltage motors which have a different locked-rotor kVA per horsepower on the different voltages shall be marked with the code letter for the voltage giving the highest locked-rotor kVA per horsepower.

### 10.37.6 Dual-Frequency Motors

Motors with 60- and 50-hertz ratings shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower on 60-hertz.

### 10.37.7 Part-Winding-Start Motors

Part-winding-start motors shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower that is based upon the locked-rotor current for the full winding of the motor.

## 10.38 NAMEPLATE TEMPERATURE RATINGS FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS

Alternating-current motors shall be rated on the basis of a maximum ambient temperature and the insulation system class.

The rated value of the maximum ambient temperature shall be 40°C unless otherwise specified, and the insulation system shall be Class A, B, F, or H. All such ratings are based upon a rated load test with temperature rise values (measured by either method when two methods are listed) not exceeding those shown for the designated class of insulation system in the appropriate temperature rise table in 12.43. Ratings of alternating-current motors for any other value of maximum ambient temperature shall be based on temperature rise values as calculated in accordance with 12.42.3.

## 10.39 NAMEPLATE MARKING FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS[1]

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For motors with dual ratings, see 10.39.5. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

### 10.39.1 Alternating-Current Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors, Except Those Included in 10.39.2, 10.39.3, and 10.39.4

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed (see Note 1 of 12.43.1)
e. Insulation system designation. (If stator and rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation system designations shall be given on the nameplate, that for stator being given first.)
f. Rpm at full load[2]
g. Frequency
h. Number of phases
i. Voltage
j. Full-load amperes

---

[1] When air flow is required over the motor from the driven equipment in order to have the motor conform to temperature rise standards, "air over" shall appear on the nameplate. When the heat dissipating characteristics of the driven equipment, other than air flow, are required in order to have the motor conform to temperature rise standards, "auxiliary cooling" shall appear on the nameplate.

[2] This speed is the approximate rpm at rated load (see 10.32.1 and 10.32.2).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

k. Locked-rotor amperes or code letter for locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for motors 1/2 horsepower or larger (see 10.37)
l. For motors equipped with thermal protection, the words 'thermally protected" and, for motors rated more than 1 horsepower, a type number (see 12.58) (For their own convenience, motor manufacturers shall be permitted to use letters, but not numbers, preceding or following the words "thermally protected" for other identification purposes.)

### 10.39.2 Motors Rated Less Than 1/20 Horsepower

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Power output
c. Full-load speed[1]
d. Voltage rating
e. Frequency
f. Number of phases-polyphase only (this shall be permitted to be designated by a number showing the number of phases following the frequency).
g. The words "thermally protected" for motors equipped with a thermal protector[2] (see 1.72 and 1.73) (For their own convenience, motor manufacturers shall be permitted to use letters, but not numbers, preceding or following the words "thermally protected" for other identification purposes.) Thermally-protected motors rated 100 watts or less and complying with 430-32(c)(2) of the National Electrical Code, shall be permitted to use the abbreviated making, "T.P."
h. The words "impedance protected" for motors with sufficient impedance within the motors so that they are protected from the dangerous overheating due to overload or failure to start. Impedance-protected motors rated 100 watts or less and complying with 430-32(c)(4) of the National Electrical Code, shall be permitted to use the abbreviated marking, "Z.P."

### 10.39.3 Universal Motors

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Rpm at full load
e. Voltage
f. Full-load amperes (on 60-hertz)
g. Frequency (60/dc is recommended form)

### 10.39.4 Motors Intended for Assembly in a Device Having its Own Markings

a. Voltage rating
b. Frequency
c. Number of phases-polyphase only (this shall be permitted to be designated by a number showing the number of phases following the frequency)

### 10.39.5 Motors for Dual Voltage

a. Broad Voltage (no reconnection of motor leads)
    1. Use dash between voltages (i.e., 200-300)
b. Dual Voltage (reconnection of motor leads)
    1. Use slash between voltages (i.e., 230/460)
    2. Use slash between amperes (i.e., 4.6/2.3)
c. Dual Frequency and Single voltage
    1. Use ampersand (&) between values for each frequency
    a) Hz (i.e., 60&50)
    b) Volt (i.e., 115&110)
    c) Rpm (i.e., 1725&1450)
    d) Amp (i.e., 5.0&6.0)

---
[1] This speed is the approximate rpm at rated load (see 10.32.1 and 10.32.2).
[2] This shall be permitted to be shown on a separate plate or decalcomania.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

NOTE—If spacing in standard location on nameplate is not adequate, the values of alternative frequency and associated volts, rpm and amps shall be permitted to be specified at a different location on the nameplate.

d. Dual Frequency and Dual Voltage
   1. Use slash between voltages for one frequency and ampersand (&) between values for each frequency.
      a) Hz (i.e., 60&50)
      b) Volt (i.e., 115/230&110/220)
      c) Rpm (i.e., 1725&1450)
      d) Amp (i.e., 5.0/2.5&6.0/3.0)

NOTE—If spacing in standard location on nameplate is not adequate, the values of alternative frequency and associated volts, rpm, and amps shall be permitted to be specified at a different location on the nameplate.

e. Dual Pole-Changing, Single Frequency and Single Voltage
   1. Use slash between values of hp, rpm, and amps
      a) Hp (i.e., 1/4/1/12)
      b) Rpm (i.e., 1725/1140)
      c) Amp (i.e., 4.2/2.6)

NOTE—Horsepowers shall be permitted to be designated in decimals rather than fractions for clarity.

f. Single-Phase-Tapped Winding
   Use marking for high speed connection only with designation for number of speeds following high speed rpm value and separated by a slash.
   Rpm (i.e., 1725/5SPD)

## 10.40 NAMEPLATE MARKING FOR MEDIUM SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

The following information shall be given on all nameplates of single-phase and polyphase induction motors. For motors with broad range or dual voltage, see 10.39.5. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate, see 1.70.2.

### 10.40.1 Medium Single-Phase and Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors[1]

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating (see 10.36)
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed (see Note 1 of 12.43)[2]
e. Insulation system designation. (If stator or rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation system designations shall be given on the nameplate, that for the stator being given first.)[2]
f. Rpm at rated load
g. Frequency[3]
h. Number of phases
I. Rated-load amperes
j. Voltage
k. Locked-rotor amperes or code letter for locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for motors 1/2 horsepower or greater (see 10.37)
l. Design letter for medium motors (see 1.19 and 1.20)

[1] When air flow is required over the motor from the driven equipment in order to have the motor conform to temperature rise standards, "air over" shall appear on the nameplate. When the heat dissipating characteristics of the driven equipment, other than air flow, are required in order to have the motor conform to temperature rise standards, "auxiliary cooling" shall appear on the nameplate.
[2] As an alternative to items d and e, the temperature rise by resistance as shown in 12.43 shall be permitted to be given.
[3] If two frequencies are stamped on the nameplate, the data covered by items b, c, d, f, i, j, and m, if different, shall be given for both frequencies.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

m. NEMA nominal efficiency when required by 12.58
n. Service factor
o. Service factor amperes when service factor exceeds 1.15
p. For motors equipped with thermal protectors, the words "thermally protected" if the motor provides all the protection described in 12.57 (see 1.72 and 1.73)[1]
q. For motors rated above 1 horsepower equipped with over-temperature devices or systems, the words "OVER TEMP PROT-" followed by a type number as described in 12.57

### 10.40.2 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating (see 10.36)
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed (see Note 1 of 12.43)[2]
e. Insulation system designation. (If stator or rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation system designations shall be given on the nameplate, that for the stator being given first.)[2]
f. Rpm at rated load
g. Frequency[2]
h. Number of phases
I. Rated-load amperes
j. Voltage
k. Secondary amperes at full load
l. Secondary voltage

[1] This shall be permitted to be shown on a separate plate or decalcomania.
[2] If two frequencies are stamped on the nameplate, the data covered by items b, c, d, f, i, and j, if different, shall be given for both frequencies.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 10
# RATINGS—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MACHINES

## 10.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 10 of Section II cover direct-current motors built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type.

## 10.60 BASIS OF RATING

### 10.60.1 Small Motors

The basis of rating for a direct-current small motor shall be a rated form factor.

If the direct-current is low ripple, the form factor is 1.0. As the ripple increases, the form factor increases. A small motor is not intended to be used on a power supply that produces a form factor at the rated load in conjunction with the motor greater than the rated form factor of the motor.

### 10.60.2 Medium Motors

While direct-current medium motors may be used on various types of power supplies, the basis for demonstrating conformance of the motor with these standards shall be a test using a power supply described in 12.66.2. The power supply identification shall be indicated on the nameplate as an essential part of the motor rating in accordance with 10.66.

It may not be practical to conduct tests on motors intended for use on power supplies other than those specified in 12.66.2. In such cases, the performance characteristics of a motor may be demonstrated by a test using the particular power supply or by a combination of tests on an available power supply and the calculation of the predicted performance of the motor from the test data.

## 10.61 POWER SUPPLY IDENTIFICATION FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS

### 10.61.1 Supplies Designated by a Single Letter

When the test power supply used as the basis of rating for a direct-current medium motor is one of those described in 12.66.2, a single letter shall be used to identify the test power supply.

### 10.61.2 Other Supply Types

When a direct-current medium motor is intended to be used on a power supply other than those described in 12.66.2, it shall be identified as follows:

M/N F-V-H-L

Where:

M = a digit indicating total pulses per cycle

N = a digit indicating controlled pulses per cycle

F = free wheeling (this letter appears only if free wheeling is used)

V = three digits indicating nominal line-to-line alternating-current voltage to the rectifier

H = two digits indicating input frequency in hertz

L = one, two, or three digits indicating the series inductance in millihenries (may be zero) to be added externally to the motor armature circuit

If the input frequency is 60 hertz and no series inductance is added externally to the motor armature circuit, these quantities need not be indicated and shall be permitted to be omitted from the identification

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

of the power supply. However, if one of these quantities is indicated, then both of them shall appear to avoid confusion.

EXAMPLE: "6/3 F-380-50-12" defines a power supply having six total pulses per cycle, three controlled pulses per cycle, with free wheeling, with 380 volts alternating-current input at 50 hertz input, and 12 millihenries of externally added series inductance to the motor armature circuit inductance.

## 10.62 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 10.62.1 Direct-Current Small Motors

#### 10.62.1.1 Operational From Low Ripple (1.0 Form Factor) Power Supplies

The horsepower and speed ratings for direct-current small constant speed motors rated 115 and 230 volts shall be:

| Hp | Approximate Full Load, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/20 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/12 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/8 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/6 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/3 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 1/2 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 |
| 3/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | ... |
| 1 | 3450 | 2500 | ... | ... |

#### 10.62.1.2 Operation From Rectifier Power Supplies

The horsepower, speed, voltage, and form factor ratings of direct-current small motors intended for use on adjustable-voltage rectifier power supplies shall be as shown in Table 10-7.

**Table 10-7**
**MOTOR RATINGS FOR OPERATION FROM RECTIFIED POWER SUPPLIES**

| | | | | | Rated Voltages, Average Direct-Current Values | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | Approximate Rated-Load Speed, Rpm* | | | | Armature Voltages | Field Voltages | Rated Form Factor |
| **Single-Phase Primary Power Source** | | | | | | | |
| 1/20 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/15 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/12 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/8 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | 75 volts | 50 or 100 volts | |
| 1/6 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | 90 volts | 50 or 100 volts | See Notes 1 and 2 |
| 1/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | 150 volts | 100 volts | |
| 1/3 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/2 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 3/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | ... | 90 volts | 50 or 100 volts | |
| 1 | 3450 | 2500 | ... | ... | 180 volts | 100 or 200 volts | |
| **Three-Phase Primary Power Source** | | | | | | | |
| 1/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/3 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | | | |
| 1/2 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | 1140 | 240 volts | 100, 150, 240 volts | See Notes 1 and 2 |
| 3/4 | 3450 | 2500 | 1725 | ... | | | |
| 1 | 3450 | 2500 | ... | ... | | | |

NOTES
1—The rated form factor of a direct-current motor is the armature current form factor at rated load and rated speed and is an essential part of the motor rating.
2—The rated form factor of a direct-current motor is determined by the motor manufacturer; see 14.60. Recommended rated form factors are given in Table 14-2 of 14.60.
*Motors rated 1/20 to 1 horsepower, inclusive, are not suitable for speed control by field weakening.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 10.62.2 Industrial Direct-Current Motors

The horsepower, voltage, and base speeds for industrial direct-current motors shall be in accordance with Tables 10-8, 10-9 and 10-10. The speed obtained by field control of straight shunt-wound or stabilized shunt-wound industrial direct-current motors shall be as shown in the tables.

**Table 10-8**
**HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS FOR INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS—180 VOLTS ARMATURE VOLTAGE RATING*, POWER SUPPLY K**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 3500 | 2500 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm | | | | | Field Voltage, Volts |
| 1/2* | ... | ... | ... | ... | 940 | |
| 3/4* | ... | ... | ... | 1380 | 940 | 50, 100, or 200 |
| 1* | ... | ... | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | |
| 1½ | 3850 | 2750 | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | |
| 2 | 3850 | 2750 | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | |
| 3 | 3850 | 2750 | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | 100 or 200 |
| 5 | 3850 | 2750 | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | |
| 7½ | 3850 | 2750 | 2050 | 1380 | 940 | |

*For these ratings, the armature voltage rating shall be 90 or 180 volts.

## 10.63 NAMEPLATE TIME RATING

Direct-current motors shall have a continuous rating unless otherwise specified. When a short-time rating is used, it shall be for 5, 15, 30, or 60 minutes. All short-time ratings are based upon a corresponding short-time load test which shall commence only when the windings and other parts of the machine are within 5°C of the ambient temperature at the time of starting the test.

## 10.64 TIME RATING FOR INTERMITTENT, PERIODIC, AND VARYING DUTY

For application on intermittent, periodic, or varying duty, the time rating shall be continuous or short- time, based on the thermal effects being as close as possible to those which will be encountered in actual service.

## 10.65 NAMEPLATE MAXIMUM AMBIENT TEMPERATURE AND INSULATION SYSTEM CLASS

Direct-current motors shall be rated on the basis of a maximum ambient temperature and the insulation system class.

The rated value of the maximum ambient temperature shall be 40°C unless otherwise specified, and the insulation system shall be Class A, B, F, or H. All such ratings are based upon a load test with temperature rise values (measured by either method when two methods are listed) not exceeding those shown for the designated class of insulation system in the appropriate temperature rise table in 12.67. Ratings of direct-current motors for any other value of maximum ambient temperature shall be based on temperature rise values as calculated in accordance with 12.67.4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-9**
**HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS FOR INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS—240 VOLTS ARMATURE VOLTAGE RATING, POWER SUPPLY A, C, D, OR E**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 3500 | 2500 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 | 500 | 400 | 300 | |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm | | | | | | | | | Field Voltage Volts |
| 1/2 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 100, 150, or 240 |
| 3/4 | ... | ... | ... | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1 | ... | ... | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1-1/2 | 3850 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 2 | 3850 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 3 | 3850 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 5 | 3850 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 7-1/2 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | 150 or 240 |
| 10 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 15 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 20 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 25 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 30 | ... | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 40 | ... | 3000 | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 50 | ... | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 60 | ... | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 75 | ... | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 100 | ... | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 125 | ... | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 150 | ... | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1100 | |
| 200 | ... | ... | 1900 | 1800 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1100 | |
| 250 | ... | ... | 1900 | 1700 | 1600 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 10-10**
**HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS FOR INDUSTRIAL DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS - 500 OR 550* VOLTS ARMATURE VOLTAGE RATING, POWER SUPPLY A, C, OR D**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2500 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 | 500 | 400 | 300 | Field Voltage Volts |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm | | | | | | | | |
| 7-1/2 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 10 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 15 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 20 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 25 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 30 | 3000 | 2300 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 40 | 3000 | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 50 | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 60 | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 75 | ... | 2100 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 100 | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | 240 or 300 |
| 125 | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1200 | |
| 150 | ... | 2000 | 2000 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1100 | |
| 200 | ... | 1900 | 1800 | 1700 | 1600 | 1500 | 1200 | 1100 | |
| 250 | ... | 1900 | 1700 | 1600 | 1600 | 1400 | 1200 | 1100 | |
| 300 | ... | 1900 | 1600 | 1500 | 1500 | 1300 | 1200 | 1000 | |
| 400 | ... | 1900 | 1500 | 1500 | 1400 | 1300 | 1200 | ... | |
| 500 | ... | 1900 | 1500 | 1400 | 1400 | 1250 | 1100 | ... | |
| 600 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1300 | 1300 | 1200 | ... | ... | |
| 700 | ... | ... | 1300 | 1300 | 1250 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 800 | ... | ... | 1250 | 1250 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 900 | ... | ... | 1250 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1000 | ... | ... | 1250 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | |

*550 Volts is an alternate voltage rating.

## 10.66 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following minimum amount of information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

### 10.66.1 Small Motors Rated 1/20 Horsepower and Less

a. Manufacturer's type designation
b. Power output (millihorsepower - mhp)
c. Full-load speed (see 10.62.1)
d. Voltage rating
e. The words "thermally protected"[1] for motors equipped with a thermal protector. (See 1.72 and 1.73.)
(For their own convenience, motor manufacturers shall be permitted to use letters, but not numbers, preceding or following the words "thermally protected" for other identification purposes.)

[1] These words shall be permitted to be shown on a separate plate or decalcomania.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

f. The words "impedance protected" for motors with sufficient impedance within the motors so that they are protected from dangerous overheating due to overload or failure to start.[1]

### 10.66.2 Small Motors Except Those Rated 1/20 Horsepower and Less

a. Manufacturer's type designation
b. Horsepower output at rated speed
c. Time rating at rated speed
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed[2]
e. Insulation system designation (if field and armature use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation system designations shall be given on the nameplate, that for the field being given first.)
f. Speed in rpm
g. Rated armature voltage[3]
h. Rated field voltage (PM for permanent magnet motors)[4, 5]
I. Armature rated-load amperes at rated speed[4]
j. Rated form factor when operated from rectifier power supply (see Table 10-7, Notes 1 and 2)
k. The words "thermally protected" for motors equipped with a thermal protector (see 1.72 and 1.73)

### 10.66.3 Medium Motors

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower or kW output at base speed
c. Time rating at rated speed
d. Maximum safe rpm for all series-wound motors and for those compound-wound motors whose variation in speed from rated load to no-load exceeds 35 percent with the windings at the constant temperature attained when operating at its rating
e. Maximum ambient temperature for which the motor is designed[2]
f. Insulation system designation (If field and armature use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the field being given first.)[2]
g. Base speed at rated load
h. Rated armature voltage[3]

---

[1] These words shall be permitted to be shown in a separate plate or decalcomania.
[2] As an alternative, these items shall be permitted to be replaced by a single item reading "Rated temperature rise."
[3] These are average direct-current quantities.
[4] As an alternative, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:
a. Field resistance in ohms at 25°C
b. Rated field current in amperes
[5] For separately excited, series-parallel, dual voltage windings, the two values of rated voltage shall both be shown. If a single value of current and resistance is shown, the data applies to the high voltage connection. If values of current and resistance for each voltage is shown, the voltage connection for which this data applies shall be indicated as well. A slash is permitted to indicate dual voltage and currents and they may be respectively high volt/low volt, high current/low current.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

i. Rated field voltage (not applicable for permanent magnet motors[1, 2, 3]
j. Armature rated-load current in amperes at base speed[1]
k. Power supply identification in accordance with 10.61
l. Winding - straight shunt, stabilized shunt, compound, series, or permanent magnet
m. Direct-current or dc
n. (Optional) Enclosure or IP code (see Part 5)
o. (Optional) Manufacturer's name, mark, or logo
p. (Optional) Manufacturer's plant location
q. (Optional) Serial number or date of manufacture
r. (Optional) Model number or catalog number

[1] These are average direct-current quantities
[2] As an alternative, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:
a. Field resistance in ohms at 25°C
b. Rated field current in amperes. A single value of field current corresponds to the base speed. Two values correspond to the base speed and the highest speed obtained by field control.
[3] For separately excited, series-parallel, dual voltage windings, the two values of rated voltage shall both be shown. If a single value of current and resistance is shown, the data applies to the high voltage connection. If values of current and resistance for each voltage is shown, the voltage connection for which this data applies shall be indicated as well. A slash is permitted to indicate dual voltage and currents and they may be respectively high volt/low volt, high current/low current.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 12

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 12
# TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—AC AND DC MOTORS

## 12.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 12 of Section II cover the following machines:

a. Alternating-Current Motors: Alternating-current motors up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below.

| | | Motors, Synchronous, Hp | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Power Factor | |
| Synchronous Speed | Motors Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Unity | 0.8 |
| 3600 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 350 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 250 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 200 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 150 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 125 | 100 |

b. Direct-Current Motors: Direct-current motors built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type.

## 12.2 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST—SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND TEST PROCEDURE

See 3.1.

## 12.3 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST VOLTAGES FOR UNIVERSAL, INDUCTION, AND DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

The high-potential test voltage specified in the following table shall be applied to the windings of each new machine in accordance with the test procedures specified in 3.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Category | Effective Test Voltage |
|---|---|
| a. Universal Motors (rated for operation on circuits not exceeding 250 volts) | |
| 1. Motors rated greater than 1/2 horsepower and all motors for portable tools | 1000 volts + 2 times the rated voltage of the motor, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| 2. All other motors* | 1500 volts |
| b. Induction and Nonexcited Synchronous Motors | |
| 1. Motors rated greater than 1/2 horsepower | |
| a) Stator windings | 1000 volts + 2 times the rated voltage of the motor, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| b) For secondary windings of wound rotors of induction motors | 1000 volts + 2 times the maximum voltage induced between collector rings on open circuit at standstill (or running if under this condition the voltage is greater) with rated primary voltage applied to the stator terminals, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| c. For secondary windings of wound rotors of reversing motors | 1000 volts + 4 times the maximum voltage induced between collector rings on open circuit at standstill with rated primary voltage applied to the stator terminals, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| 2. Motors rated 1/2 horsepower and less | |
| a. Rated 250 volts or less | 1500 volts |
| b. Rated above 250 volts | 1000 volts + 2 times the rated voltage of the motor, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| c. Direct-Current Motors | |
| 1. Motors rated greater than 1/2 horsepower | |
| a) Armature or field windings for use on adjustable-voltage electronic power supply | 1000 volts + 2 times the ac line-to-line voltage of the power supply selected for the basis of rating, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| b) All other armature or field windings | 1000 volts + 2 times the rated voltage** of the motor, but in no case less than 1500 volts |
| 2. Motors rated 1/2 horsepower and less | |
| a) 240 volts or less | 1500 volts |
| b) Rated above 240 volts | See C.1.a and C.1.b above (Direct-Current Motors) |

*Complete motors 1/2 horsepower and less shall be in the "all other" category unless marked to indicate that they are motors for portable tools.

**Where the voltage rating of a separately excited field of a direct-current motor or generator is not stated, it shall be assumed to be 1.5 times the field resistance in ohms at 25°C times the rated field current.

NOTES—

1—Certain applications may require a high-potential test voltage higher than those specified.

2—The normal production high-potential test voltage may be 1.2 times the specified 1-minute high-potential test-voltage, applied for 1 second. (See 3.1.6.)

3—To avoid excessive stressing of the insulation, repeated application of the high-potential test-voltage is not recommended. Immediately after manufacture, when equipment is installed or assembled with other apparatus and a high-potential test of the entire assembly is required, it is recommended that the test voltage not exceed 80 percent of the original test voltage or, when in an assembled group, not exceed 80 percent of the lowest test voltage of that group. (See 3.1.11.)

## 12.4 PRODUCTION HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTING OF SMALL MOTORS

Dielectric failure in high-potential production testing of small motors shall be indicated by a measurement of insulation resistance less than 1 megohm when tested in accordance with 12.2 and 12.3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.4.1 Dielectric Test Equipment

The dielectric test equipment should indicate a failure by visual or audible means, or both. The test equipment should preferably be designed to limit the level of applied current to a nondestructive value at the high-potential voltage.

### 12.4.2 Evaluation of Insulation Systems by a Dielectric Test

The definition of dielectric failure per ASTM D149 is based upon observation of actual rupture of insulation as positive evidence of voltage breakdown. In small motors, a suitable evaluation of insulation quality in production testing may be made without complete rupture of the insulation to ground. As a quality control procedure during manufacture, measurement of the insulation resistance may be taken as a true evaluation of the effectiveness of the insulation system.

## 12.5 REPETITIVE SURGE TEST FOR SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS

Many manufacturers use a repetitive test as a quality control test for the components of motors; for example, stators and rotors. When a large number of motors of a single design are to be tested, a repetitive surge test is a quick and economical test to make to detect the following faults:

a. Grounded windings
b. Short circuits between turns
c. Short circuits between windings
d. Incorrect connections
e. Incorrect number of turns
f. Misplaced conductors or insulation

The repetitive surge test compares an unknown winding with a known winding or a winding assumed to be satisfactory. This is accomplished by superimposing on an oscilloscope the traces of the surge voltage at the terminals of the windings. Major faults are easily detected but a skilled operator is required to distinguish between minor faults; for example, a slipped slot cell and the harmless deviations in the traces which occur when windings are produced by two or more operators who place the coils or form the end turns in slightly different ways.

Unfortunately, the repetitive surge test has disadvantages which limit its general usage, such as the necessity for elaborate preliminary tests before a surge test can be made on production units. For example, voltage distribution through the winding should be investigated because resonant conditions may exist which would cause abnormally high or low stresses at some point in the insulation system of the motor component. Elaborate preliminary tests can seldom be justified when a small number of components is involved because comparatively small changes in design may require additional preliminary tests. When a repetitive surge test is made, the surge voltage level and other test conditions should be based upon data obtained from laboratory tests made on the particular design (or designs) of the motors involved.

When a rotor or stator has two or more identical windings, for example, a polyphase stator, each winding may be tested against the other because it is unlikely that any two of the windings will have identical faults. To make it practicable to surge test rotors or stators of similar motor designs one at a time, it is essential that sufficient data be accumulated by the preliminary tests on several individual designs. When a rotor or stator does not have two identical windings, for example, single-phase stators and direct-current armatures, a minimum of two of the same component is required for the repetitive surge test. In the event that a fault is disclosed by the test, a minimum of three units is required to determine which one had the fault.

It should be noted that, except by undertaking extensive comparative breakdown tests, there is at present no satisfactory way of determining the surge test voltage equivalent to a 60-hertz high-potential test.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.6 MECHANICAL VIBRATION

See Part 7.

## 12.7 BEARING LOSSES—VERTICAL PUMP MOTORS

The added losses in horsepower in angular contact bearings used on vertical pump motors, due to added load over that incurred by the motor rotor, should be calculated by the following formula:

Added losses in horsepower = $2.4 \times 10^{-8}$ x added load in lbs. x revolutions per minute x pitch diameter in inches of the balls in the ball bearing.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# PART 12
# TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—AC MOTORS

## 12.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 12 of Section II cover alternating-current motors up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below.

| Synchronous Speed | Motors Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor Unity | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor 0.8 | Generators, Synchronous Revolving Field Type, kW at 0.8 Power Factor |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 500 | 500 | 400 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 500 | 400 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 350 | 300 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 250 | 200 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 200 | 150 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 150 | 125 | 125 |
| 514 | 120 | 125 | 100 | 100 |

## 12.30 TEST METHODS

Tests to determine performance characteristics shall be made in accordance with the following:

a. For single-phase motors-IEEE Std 114
b. For polyphase induction motors - IEEE Std 112

## 12.31 PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

When performance characteristics are provided, they should be expressed as follows:

a. Current in amperes or percent of rated current
b. Torque in pound-feet, pound-inches, ounce-feet, ounce-inches, or percent of full-load torque
d. Output in horsepower or percent of synchronous speed
e. Efficiency in percent
f. Power factor in percent
g. Voltage in volts or percent of rated voltage
h. Input power in watts or kilowatts

NOTE—If SI units are used, they should be in accordance with ISO Publication No. R-1000.

## 12.32 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS OF SINGLE-PHASE GENERAL-PURPOSE INDUCTION MOTORS

### 12.32.1 Breakdown Torque

The breakdown torque of single-phase general-purpose small and medium induction motors shall be within the torque range as given in Table 10-5, subject to tolerances in manufacturing and all other conditions given in 10.34.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.32.2 Locked-Rotor Torque of Small Motors

The locked-rotor torque of single-phase general-purpose small motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following:

| | Minimum Locked-Rotor Torque, ounce-feet* | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60-Hertz Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | 50-Hertz Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | |
| Hp | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 |
| 1/8 | ... | 24 | 32 | ... | 29 | 39 |
| 1/6 | 15 | 33 | 43 | 18 | 39 | 51 |
| 1/4 | 21 | 46 | 59 | 25 | 55 | 70 |
| 1/3 | 26 | 57 | 73 | 31 | 69 | 88 |
| 1/2 | 37 | 85 | 100 | 44 | 102 | 120 |
| 3/4 | 50 | 119 | ... | 60 | 143 | ... |
| 1 | 61 | ... | ... | 73 | ... | ... |

*On the high voltage connection of dual voltage motors, minimum locked-rotor torques up to 10% less than these values may be expected.

### 12.32.3 Locked-Rotor Torque of Medium Motors

The locked-rotor torque of single-phase general-purpose medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following:

| | Minimum Locked-Rotor Torque, pound-feet | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | |
| Hp | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| 3/4 | ... | ... | 8.0 |
| 1 | ... | 9.0 | 9.5 |
| 1½ | 4.5 | 12.5 | 13.0 |
| 2 | 5.5 | 16.0 | 16.0 |
| 3 | 7.5 | 22.0 | 23.0 |
| 5 | 11.0 | 33.0 | ... |
| 7½ | 16.0 | 45.0 | ... |
| 10 | 21.0 | 52.0 | ... |

### 12.32.4 Pull-Up Torque of Medium Motors

The pull-up torque of single-phase general-purpose alternating-current medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the rated load torque.

## 12.33 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF SINGLE-PHASE SMALL MOTORS

### 12.33.1 Design O and Design N Motors

The locked-rotor current of 60-hertz, single-phase motors shall not exceed the values given in the following table:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| 2-, 4-, 6-, and 8-Pole, 60-Hertz Motors, Single Phase | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes | | | |
| | 115 Volts | | 230 Volts | |
| Hp | Design O | Design N | Design O | Design N |
| 1/6 and smaller | 50 | 20 | 25 | 12 |
| 1/4 | 50 | 26 | 25 | 15 |
| 1/3 | 50 | 31 | 25 | 18 |
| 1/2 | 50 | 45 | 25 | 25 |
| 3/4 | ... | 61 | ... | 35 |
| 1 | ... | 80 | ... | 45 |

### 12.33.2 General-Purpose Motors

The locked-rotor currents of single-phase general-purpose motors shall not exceed the values for Design N motors.

## 12.34 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF SINGLE-PHASE MEDIUM MOTORS, DESIGNS L AND M

The locked-rotor current of single-phase, 60-hertz, Design L and M motors of all types, when measured with rated voltage and frequency impressed and with the rotor locked, shall not exceed the following values:

| | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Design L Motors | | Design M Motors |
| Hp | 115 Volts | 230 Volts | 230 Volts |
| 1/2 | 45 | 25 | ... |
| 3/4 | 61 | 35 | ... |
| 1 | 80 | 45 | ... |
| 1½ | ... | 50 | 40 |
| 2 | ... | 65 | 50 |
| 3 | ... | 90 | 70 |
| 5 | ... | 135 | 100 |
| 7½ | ... | 200 | 150 |
| 10 | ... | 260 | 200 |

## 12.35 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF 3-PHASE SMALL AND MEDIUM SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS

### 12.35.1 60-Hertz Design B, C, and D Motors at 230 Volts

The locked-rotor current of single-speed, 3-phase, constant-speed induction motors rated at 230 volts, when measured with rated voltage and frequency impressed and with rotor locked, shall not exceed the values listed on the next page.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT FOR 60-Hz DESIGN B, C, AND D MOTORS AT 230 VOLTS**

| Hp | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes* | Design Letters |
|---|---|---|
| 1/2 | 20 | B, D |
| 3/4 | 25 | B, D |
| 1 | 30 | B, C, D |
| 1-1/2 | 40 | B, C, D |
| 2 | 50 | B, C, D |
| 3 | 64 | B, C, D |
| 5 | 92 | B, C, D |
| 7-1/2 | 127 | B, C, D |
| 10 | 162 | B, C, D |
| 15 | 232 | B, C, D |
| 20 | 290 | B, C, D |
| 25 | 365 | B, C, D |
| 30 | 435 | B, C, D |
| 40 | 580 | B, C, D |
| 50 | 725 | B, C, D |
| 60 | 870 | B, C, D |
| 75 | 1085 | B, C, D |
| 100 | 1450 | B, C, D |
| 125 | 1815 | B, C, D |
| 150 | 2170 | B, C, D |
| 200 | 2900 | B, C |
| 250 | 3650 | B |
| 300 | 4400 | B |
| 350 | 5100 | B |
| 400 | 5800 | B |
| 450 | 6500 | B |
| 500 | 7250 | B |

*The locked-rotor current of motors designed for voltages other than 230 volts shall be inversely proportional to the voltages.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.35.2 50-Hertz Design B, C, and D Motors at 380 Volts

The locked-rotor current of single-speed, 3-phase, constant-speed induction motors rated at 380 volts, when measured with rated voltage and frequency impressed and with rotor locked, shall not exceed the values shown in Table 12-1.

**Table 12-1**
**MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT FOR 50-Hz DESIGN B, C, AND D MOTORS AT 380 VOLTS**

| Hp | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes* | Design Letters |
|---|---|---|
| 3/4 or less | 20 | B, D |
| 1 | 20 | B, C, D |
| 1-1/2 | 27 | B, C, D |
| 2 | 34 | B, C, D |
| 3 | 43 | B, C, D |
| 5 | 61 | B, C, D |
| 7-1/2 | 84 | B, C, D |
| 10 | 107 | B, C, D |
| 15 | 154 | B, C, D |
| 20 | 194 | B, C, D |
| 25 | 243 | B, C, D |
| 30 | 289 | B, C, D |
| 40 | 387 | B, C, D |
| 50 | 482 | B, C, D |
| 60 | 578 | B, C, D |
| 75 | 722 | B, C, D |
| 100 | 965 | B, C, D |
| 125 | 1207 | B, C, D |
| 150 | 1441 | B, C, D |
| 200 | 1927 | B, C |
| 250 | 2534 | B |
| 300 | 3026 | B |
| 350 | 3542 | B |
| 400 | 4046 | B |
| 450 | 4539 | B |
| 500 | 5069 | B |

*The locked-rotor current of motors designed for voltages other than 380 volts shall be inversely proportional to the voltages.

## 12.36 INSTANTANEOUS PEAK VALUE OF INRUSH CURRENT

The values in the previous tables are rms symmetrical values, i.e. average of the three phases. There will be a one-half cycle instantaneous peak value which may range from 1.8 to 2.8 times the above values as a function of the motor design and switching angle. This is based upon an ambient temperature of 25°C.

## 12.37 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS OF POLYPHASE SMALL MOTORS

The breakdown torque of a general-purpose polyphase squirrel-cage small motor, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than 140 percent of the breakdown torque of a single-phase general-purpose small motor of the same horsepower and speed rating given in 12.32.

NOTE—The speed at breakdown torque is ordinarily much lower in small polyphase motors than in small single-phase motors. Higher breakdown torques are required for polyphase motors so that polyphase and single-phase motors will have interchangeable running characteristics, rating for rating, when applied to normal single-phase motor loads.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.38 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS

### 12.38.1 Design A and B Motors

The locked-rotor torque of Design A and B, 60- and 50-hertz, single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the values shown in Table 12-2 which are expressed in percent of full-load torque. For applications involving higher torque requirements, see 12.38.2 and 12.38.3 for locked-rotor torque values for Design C and D motors.

**Table 12-2**
**LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE OF DESIGN A AND B, 60- AND 50-HERTZ SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS**

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60 Hertz | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 |
| Hp | 50 Hertz | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... | ... |
| 1/2 | | ... | ... | ... | 140 | 140 | 115 | 110 |
| 3/4 | | ... | ... | 175 | 135 | 135 | 115 | 110 |
| 1 | | ... | 275 | 170 | 135 | 135 | 115 | 110 |
| 1-1/2 | | 175 | 250 | 165 | 130 | 130 | 115 | 110 |
| 2 | | 170 | 235 | 160 | 130 | 125 | 115 | 110 |
| 3 | | 160 | 215 | 155 | 130 | 125 | 115 | 110 |
| 5 | | 150 | 185 | 150 | 130 | 125 | 115 | 110 |
| 7-1/2 | | 140 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 10 | | 135 | 165 | 150 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 15 | | 130 | 160 | 140 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 20 | | 130 | 150 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 25 | | 130 | 150 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 30 | | 130 | 150 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 40 | | 125 | 140 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 50 | | 120 | 140 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 60 | | 120 | 140 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 75 | | 105 | 140 | 135 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 100 | | 105 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 110 |
| 125 | | 100 | 110 | 125 | 120 | 115 | 115 | 110 |
| 150 | | 100 | 110 | 120 | 120 | 115 | 115 | ... |
| 200 | | 100 | 100 | 120 | 120 | 115 | ... | ... |
| 250 | | 70 | 80 | 100 | 100 | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | | 70 | 80 | 100 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 350 | | 70 | 80 | 100 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | | 70 | 80 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 450 | | 70 | 80 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | | 70 | 80 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

### 12.38.2 Design C Motors

The locked-rotor torque of Design C, 60- and 50-hertz, single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the values shown in Table 12-3 which are expressed in percent of full-load torque.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-3**
**LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE OF DESIGN C MOTORS**

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60 Hz | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
| Hp | 50 Hz | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 1 | | 285 | 255 | 225 |
| 1.5 | | 285 | 250 | 225 |
| 2 | | 285 | 250 | 225 |
| 3 | | 270 | 250 | 225 |
| 5 | | 255 | 250 | 225 |
| 7.5 | | 250 | 225 | 200 |
| 10 | | 250 | 225 | 200 |
| 15 | | 225 | 210 | 200 |
| 20-200 Inclusive | | 200 | 200 | 200 |

### 12.38.3 Design D Motors

The locked-rotor torque of Design D, 60- and 50-hertz, 4-, 6-, and 8-pole, single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors rated 150 horsepower and smaller, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than 275 percent, expressed in percent of full-load torque.

## 12.39 BREAKDOWN TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS

### 12.39.1 Design A and B Motors

The breakdown torque of Design A and B, 60- and 50-hertz, single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following values which are expressed in percent of full-load torque:

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60 Hertz | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 |
| Hp | 50 Hertz | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... | ... |
| 1/2 | | ... | ... | ... | 225 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 3/4 | | ... | ... | 275 | 220 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 1 | | ... | 300 | 265 | 215 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 1-1/2 | | 250 | 280 | 250 | 210 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 2 | | 240 | 270 | 240 | 210 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 3 | | 230 | 250 | 230 | 205 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 5 | | 215 | 225 | 215 | 205 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 7-1/2 | | 200 | 215 | 205 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 10-125, inclusive | | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 150 | | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | ... |
| 200 | | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | ... | ... |
| 250 | | 175 | 175 | 175 | 175 | ... | ... | ... |
| 300-350 | | 175 | 175 | 175 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400-500, inclusive | | 175 | 175 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

### 12.39.2 Design C Motors

The breakdown torque of Design C, 60- and 50-hertz, single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following values which are expressed in percent of full-load torque:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60 Hz | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
| Hp | 50 Hz | 1500 | 1000 | 750 |
| 1 | | 200 | 225 | 200 |
| 1-1/2 | | 200 | 225 | 200 |
| 2 | | 200 | 225 | 200 |
| 3 | | 200 | 225 | 200 |
| 5 | | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| 7-1/2-20 | | 200 | 190 | 190 |
| 25-200 Inclusive | | 190 | 190 | 190 |

## 12.40 PULL-UP TORQUE OF SINGLE-SPEED POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS

### 12.40.1 Design A and B Motors

The pull-up torque of Design A and B, 60- and 50-hertz single-speed, polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following values which are expressed in percent of full-load torque:

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60 Hertz | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 |
| Hp | 50 Hertz | 3000 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... | ... |
| 1/2 | | ... | ... | ... | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 3/4 | | ... | ... | 120 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 1 | | ... | 190 | 120 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 1-1/2 | | 120 | 175 | 115 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 2 | | 120 | 165 | 110 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 3 | | 110 | 150 | 110 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 5 | | 105 | 130 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 7-1/2 | | 100 | 120 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 10 | | 100 | 115 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 15 | | 100 | 110 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 20 | | 100 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 25 | | 100 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 30 | | 100 | 105 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 40 | | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 50 | | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 60 | | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 75 | | 95 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 100 | | 95 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 125 | | 90 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 150 | | 90 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | ... |
| 200 | | 90 | 90 | 100 | 100 | 100 | ... | ... |
| 250 | | 65 | 75 | 90 | 90 | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | | 65 | 75 | 90 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 350 | | 65 | 75 | 90 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | | 65 | 75 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 450 | | 65 | 75 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | | 65 | 75 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.40.2 Design C Motors

The pull-up torque of Design C 60- and 50-hertz, single speed, polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following values which are expressed in percent of full-load torque:

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | 60 Hz<br>50 Hz | 1800<br>1500 | 1200<br>1000 | 900<br>750 |
| 1 | | 195 | 180 | 165 |
| 1-1/2 | | 195 | 175 | 160 |
| 2 | | 195 | 175 | 160 |
| 3 | | 180 | 175 | 160 |
| 5 | | 180 | 175 | 160 |
| 7-1/2 | | 175 | 165 | 150 |
| 10 | | 175 | 165 | 150 |
| 15 | | 165 | 150 | 140 |
| 20 | | 165 | 150 | 140 |
| 25 | | 150 | 150 | 140 |
| 30 | | 150 | 150 | 140 |
| 40 | | 150 | 150 | 140 |
| 50 | | 150 | 150 | 140 |
| 60 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |
| 75 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |
| 100 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |
| 125 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |
| 150 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |
| 200 | | 140 | 140 | 140 |

## 12.41 BREAKDOWN TORQUE OF POLYPHASE WOUND-ROTOR MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS

The breakdown torques of 60- and 50-hertz, polyphase wound-rotor medium motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following values which are expressed in percent of full-load torque:

| | Breakdown Torque, Percent of Full-Load Torque | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | |
| Hp | 60 Hz<br>50 Hz | 1800<br>1500 | 1200<br>1000 | 900<br>750 |
| 1 | | ... | ... | 250 |
| 1-1/2 | | ... | ... | 250 |
| 2 | | 275 | 275 | 250 |
| 3 | | 275 | 275 | 250 |
| 5 | | 275 | 275 | 250 |
| 7-1/2 | | 275 | 275 | 225 |
| 10 | | 275 | 250 | 225 |
| 15 | | 250 | 225 | 225 |
| 20-200 Inclusive | | 225 | 225 | 225 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.42 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR SMALL AND UNIVERSAL MOTORS

Temperatures for 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 shall be determined in accordance with the following:

a. For single-phase motors - IEEE Std 114
b. For polyphase induction motors - IEEE Std 112

### 12.42.1 Alternating-Current Small Motors—Motor Nameplates Marked with Insulation System Designation and Ambient Temperature

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the motor shall not exceed the values given in the following table when tested in accordance with the rating, except that for motors having a service factor greater than 1.0, the temperature rise shall not exceed the values given in the following table when tested at the service factor load:

| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F* | H* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Time Rating (see 10.36) | | | | |
| Temperature Rise (based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C), Degrees C | | | | |
| a. Windings | | | | |
| 1. Open motors other than those given in items a.2 and a.5-resistance or thermocouple | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| 2. Open motors with 1.15 or higher service factor - resistance or thermocouple | 70 | 90 | 115 | ... |
| 3. Totally enclosed nonventilated motors, including variations thereof - resistance or thermocouple | 65 | 85 | 110 | 130 |
| 4. Totally enclosed fan-cooled motors, including variations thereof - resistance or thermocouple | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |
| 5. Any motor in a frame smaller than the 42 frame – resistance or thermocouple | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |

*Where a Class F or H insulation system is used, special consideration should be given to bearing temperatures, lubrication, etc.

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.42.3.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.42.2 Universal Motors

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the values given in the following table:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) ........ | A | B | F* | H* |
| Time Rating (see 10.36) | | | | |
| Temperature Rise (based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C) Degrees C | | | | |
| a. Windings | | | | |
| 1. Open motors - thermocouple or resistance ........ | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| 2. Totally enclosed nonventilated motors, including variations thereof - thermocouple or resistance ........ | 65 | 85 | 110 | 130 |
| 3. Totally enclosed fan-cooled motors, including variations thereof - resistance or thermocouple ........ | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |

*Where a Class F or H insulation system is used, special consideration should be given to bearing temperatures, lubrication, etc.

NOTES—

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.42.3.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

### 12.42.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that induction machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of induction machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. When a higher ambient temperature than 40°C is required, preferred values of ambient temperatures are 50°C, 65°C, 90°C, and 115°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.42.4 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled induction machines may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled induction machine is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.42.1 and 12.42.2 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature for SF less than 1.15, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |
| Reference Temperature for 1.15 SF or higher, Degrees C | 115 | 140 | 165 | 190 |

*Note—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 12.42.1 and 12.42.2

For example: A 1.0 service factor rated open motor with a Class F insulation system is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from 12.42.1 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\circ}\text{C} + 105^{\circ}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\circ}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\circ}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 12.42.1 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.43 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR MEDIUM SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the motor shall not exceed the values given in the following table when tested in accordance with the rating, except that for motors having a service factor 1.15 or higher, the temperature rise shall not exceed the values given in the following table when tested at the service factor load. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with the following:

a. For single-phase motors - IEEE Std 114
b. For polyphase induction motors - IEEE Std 112

| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F* | H*† |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Time Rating (shall be continuous or any short-time rating given in 10.36) | | | | |
| Temperature Rise (based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C), Degrees C | | | | |
| a. Windings, by resistance method | | | | |
| 1. Motors with 1.0 service factor other than those given in items a.3 and a.4 | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| 2. All motors with 1.15 or higher service factor | 70 | 90 | 115 | ... |
| 3. Totally-enclosed nonventilated motors with 1.0 service factor | 65 | 85 | 110 | 130 |
| 4. Motors with encapsulated windings and with 1.0 service factor, all enclosures | 65 | 85 | 110 | ... |
| b. The temperatures attained by cores, squirrel-cage windings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips , etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect | | | | |

*Where a Class F or H insulation system is used, special consideration should be given to bearing temperatures, lubrication, etc.

†This column applies to polyphase motors only.

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.43.1.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

### 12.43.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 12.43 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that induction machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of induction machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in 12.43 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. When a higher ambient temperature than 40°C is required, preferred values of ambient temperatures are 50°C, 65°C, 90°C, and 115°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.43.2 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 12.43 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled induction machines may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled induction machine is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 12.43 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.43 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.43 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.43 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.43 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature for SF less than 1.15, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |
| Reference Temperature for 1.15 SF or higher, Degrees C | 115 | 140 | 165 | 190 |

*NOTE—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 12.43

For example: A 1.0 service factor rated open motor with a Class F insulation system is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from 12.43 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\circ}\text{C} + 105^{\circ}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\circ}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\circ}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 12.43 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.44 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

### 12.44.1 Running

Alternating-current motors shall operate successfully under running conditions at rated load with a variation in the voltage or the frequency up to the following:

a. Plus or minus 10 percent of rated voltage, with rated frequency for induction motors.
b. Plus or minus 6 percent of rated voltage, with rated frequency for universal motors.
c. Plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency, with rated voltage.
d. A combined variation in voltage and frequency of 10 percent (sum of absolute values) of the rated values, provided the frequency variation does not exceed plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency, and the voltage variation of universal motors (except fan motors) does not exceed plus or minus 6 percent of rated voltage.

Performance within these voltage and frequency variations will not necessarily be in accordance with the standards established for operation at rated voltage and frequency.

### 12.44.2 Starting

Medium motors shall start and accelerate to running speed a load which has a torque characteristic and an inertia value not exceeding that listed in 12.54 with the voltage and frequency variations specified in 12.44.1.

The limiting values of voltage and frequency under which a motor will successfully start and accelerate to running speed depend on the margin between the speed-torque curve of the motor at rated voltage and frequency and the speed-torque curve of the load under starting conditions. Since the torque developed by the motor at any speed is approximately proportional to the square of the voltage and inversely proportional to the square of the frequency, it is generally desirable to determine what voltage and frequency variations will actually occur at each installation, taking into account any voltage drop resulting from the starting current drawn by the motor. This information and the torque requirements of the driven machine define the motor-speed-torque curve, at rated voltage and frequency, which is adequate for the application.

## 12.45 VOLTAGE UNBALANCE

Alternating-current polyphase motors shall operate successfully under running conditions at rated load when the voltage unbalance at the motor terminals does not exceed 1 percent. Performance will not necessarily be the same as when the motor is operating with a balanced voltage at the motor terminals (see 14.36).

## 12.46 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED

The variation from the nameplate or published data speed of alternating-current, single-phase and polyphase, medium motors shall not exceed 20 percent of the difference between synchronous speed and rated speed when measured at rated voltage, frequency, and load and with an ambient temperature of 25°C.

## 12.47 NAMEPLATE AMPERES—ALTERNATING-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS

When operated at rated voltage, rated frequency, and rated horsepower output, the input in amperes shall not vary from the nameplate value by more than 10 percent.

## 12.48 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT

Polyphase motors having outputs not exceeding 500 horsepower (according to this part) and rated voltages not exceeding 1kV shall be capable of withstanding a current equal to 1.5 times the full load rated current for not less than two minutes when the motor is initially at normal operating temperature.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Repeated overloads resulting in prolonged operation at winding temperatures above the maximum values given by 12.43 will result in reduced insulation life.

## 12.49 STALL TIME

Polyphase motors having outputs not exceeding 500 horsepower and rated voltage not exceeding 1kV shall be capable of withstanding locked-rotor current for not less than 12 seconds when the motor is initially at normal operating temperatures.

Motors specially designed for inertia loads greater than those in Table 12-7 shall be marked on the nameplate with the permissible stall time in seconds.

## 12.50 PERFORMANCE OF MEDIUM MOTORS WITH DUAL VOLTAGE RATING

When a medium motor is marked with a broad range or dual voltage the motor shall meet all performance requirements of MG 1 over the marked voltage range.

## 12.51 SERVICE FACTOR OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS

### 12.51.1 General-Purpose Alternating-Current Motors of the Open Type

When operated at rated voltage and frequency, general-purpose alternating-current motors of the open type shall have a service factor in accordance with Table 12-4 (see 14.37).

**Table 12-4**
**SERVICE FACTORS**

| | Service Factor | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | |
| Hp | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | |
| 1/20 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1/12 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1/8 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | ... | ... | ... | Small |
| 1/6 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | ... | ... | ... | Motors |
| 1/4 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1/3 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.35 | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1/2 | 1.25 | 1.25 | 1.25 | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | Medium |
| 3/4 | 1.25 | 1.25 | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | Motors |
| 1 | 1.25 | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | |
| 1-1/2-125 | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | |
| 150 | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | |
| 200 | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | |
| 250 | 1.0 | 1.15* | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | |
| 300 | 1.0 | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 350 | 1.0 | 1.15* | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 400 | 1.0 | 1.15* | ... | ... | .. | ... | ... | |
| 450 | 1.0 | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | |
| 500 | 1.0 | 1.15* | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | |

*In the case of polyphase squirrel-cage motors, these service factors apply only to Design A, B, and C motors.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.51.2 Other Motors

When operated at rated voltage and frequency, other open-type and all totally enclosed alternating-current motors shall have a service factor of 1.0.

In those applications requiring an overload capacity, the use of a higher horsepower rating, as given in 10.32.4, is recommended to avoid exceeding the temperature rises for the class of insulation system used and to provide adequate torque capacity.

## 12.52 OVERSPEEDS FOR MOTORS

### 12.52.1 Squirrel-Cage and Wound-Rotor Motors

Squirrel-cage and wound-rotor induction motors, except crane motors, shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury overspeeds above synchronous speed in accordance with the following. During this overspeed condition the machine is not electrically connected to the supply.

| Hp | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Overspeed, Percent of Synchronous Speed |
|---|---|---|
| 200 and smaller | 1801 and over | 25 |
| | 1201 to 1800 | 25 |
| | 1200 and below | 50 |
| 250-500, incl. | 1801 and over | 20 |
| | 1800 and below | 25 |

### 12.52.2 General-Purpose Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors

General-purpose squirrel-cage induction motors for the ratings specified in Table 12-5 and horsepower per frame assignments per Part 13 shall be mechanically constructed so as to be capable of operating continuously at the rated load at speeds not less than the speed indicated in Table 12-5 when directly coupled. Those motors for which this speed is greater than synchronous speed at 60 Hz shall be capable of withstanding overspeed, not to exceed 2 minutes, of 10 percent above the speed indicated in Table 12-5 without mechanical damage. For motors where the speed in Table 12-5 is equal to synchronous speed at 60 Hz, the overspeed limits in 12.52.1 shall apply, assuming the motor is not energized when the overspeed occurs.

Table 12-5 does not apply to motors used in belted applications. For belted applications, consult the motor manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-5**
**CONTINUOUS SPEED CAPABILITY FOR GENERAL-PURPOSE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS IN DIRECT COUPLED APPLICATIONS, EXCEPT THOSE MOTORS IN TABLE 12-6**

| | Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled | | | Open Dripproof | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed at 60 Hz | | | | | |
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| Horsepower | Minimum Design Speed | | | | | |
| 1/4 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/3 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/2 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3/4 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1.5 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 2 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 5 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 | 5200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 7.5 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 5200 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 10 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 15 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 20 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 25 | 4500 | 2700 | 1800 | 4500 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 30 | 4500 | 2700 | 1800 | 4500 | 2700 | 1800 |

*(Table continued on following page.)*

**Table 12-5 *(Continued)***
**CONTINUOUS SPEED CAPABILITY FOR GENERAL-PURPOSE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS IN DIRECT COUPLED APPLICATIONS, EXCEPT THOSE MOTORS IN TABLE 12-6**

| | Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled | | | Open Dripproof | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed at 60 Hz | | | | | |
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| Horsepower | Minimum Design Speed | | | | | |
| 40 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 4500 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 50 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 60 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 75 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 100 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 125 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 150 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 200 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 250 | 3600 | 2300 | 1200 | 3600 | 2300 | 1200 |
| 300 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 2300 | 1200 |
| 350 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| 400 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |
| 450 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |
| 500 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.52.3 General-Purpose Design A and B Direct-Coupled Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors

General-purpose Design A and B (TS shaft for motors above the 250 frame size) squirrel-cage induction motors for the ratings specified in Table 12-6 and horsepower per frame assignments per Part 13 shall be capable of operating mechanically constructed so as to be capable of operating continuously at the rated load at speeds not less than the speed indicated in Table 12-6 when directly coupled. Those motors for which this speed is greater than the synchronous speed at 60 Hz shall be capable of withstanding overspeeds, not to exceed 2 minutes, of 10 percent above the speed indicated in Table 12-6without mechanical damage. For motors where the speed in Table 12-6 is equal to synchronous speed at 60 Hz, the overspeed limits in 12.52.1 shall apply, assuming the motor is not energized when the overspeed occurs.

Table 12-6 does not apply to motors used in belted applications. For belted applications consult the motor manufacturer.

### 12.52.4 Alternating-Current Series and Universal Motors

Alternating-current series and universal motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury an overspeed of 10 percent above the no-load speed[1] at rated voltages.

[1] For motors which are integrally attached to loads that cannot become accidentally disconnected, the words "no-load speed" shall be interpreted to mean the lightest load condition possible with the load.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-6**
**CONTINUOUS SPEED CAPABILITY FOR GENERAL-PURPOSE DESIGN A AND B DIRECT COUPLED (TS SHAFT FOR MOTORS ABOVE THE 250 FRAME SIZE) SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS**

| | Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled | | | Open Dripproof | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed at 60 Hz | | | | | |
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| Horsepower | Minimum Design Speed | | | | | |
| 1/4 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/3 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/2 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3/4 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1.5 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 2 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 5 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 7.5 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 10 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 15 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 20 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 25 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 30 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 40 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 50 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 60 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 75 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 100 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 125 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 150 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 200 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 250 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 300 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 350 | 3600 | 1800 | 1800 | 3600 | 1800 | 1800 |
| 400 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |
| 450 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |
| 500 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 1800 | - |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.53 MACHINE SOUND (MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS)

See Part 9 for Sound Power Limits and Measurement Procedures.

## 12.54 NUMBER OF STARTS

### 12.54.1 Normal Starting Conditions

Design A and B squirrel-cage induction motors having horsepower ratings given in 10.32.4 and performance characteristics in accordance with this Part 12 shall be capable of accelerating without injurious heating load $Wk^2$ referred to the motor shaft equal to or less than the values listed in Table 12-7 under the following conditions:

a. Applied voltage and frequency in accordance with 12.44.
b. During the accelerating period, the connected load torque is equal to or less than a torque which varies as the square of the speed and is equal to 100 percent of rated-load torque at rated speed.
c. Two starts in succession (coasting to rest between starts) with the motor initially at the ambient temperature or one start with the motor initially at a temperature not exceeding its rated load operating temperature.

The values of $Wk^2$ of connected load given in Table 12-7 were calculated from the following formula and larger values rounded to three significant figures:

$$\text{Load } Wk^2 = A\left[\frac{Hp^{0.95}}{\left(\frac{RPM}{1000}\right)^{2.4}}\right] - 0.0685\left[\frac{Hp^{1.5}}{\left(\frac{RPM}{1000}\right)^{1.8}}\right]$$

Where:
A = 24 for 300 to 1800 rpm, inclusive, motors
A = 27 for 3600 rpm motors

### 12.54.2 Other than Normal Starting Conditions

If the starting conditions are other than those stated in 12.54.1, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

### 12.54.3 Considerations for Additional Starts

When additional starts are required, it is recommended that none be made until all conditions affecting operation have been thoroughly investigated and the apparatus examined for evidence of excessive heating. It should be recognized that the number of starts should be kept to a minimum since the life of the motor is affected by the number of starts.

## 12.55 ROUTINE TESTS FOR POLYPHASE MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS

### 12.55.1 Method of Testing

The method of testing polyphase induction motors shall be in accordance with IEEE Std 112.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.55.2 Typical Tests on Completely Assembled Motors

Typical tests which may be made on motors completely assembled in the factory and furnished with shaft and complete set of bearings are as follows:

a. Measurement of winding resistance.
b. No-load readings of current and speed at normal voltage and frequency. On 50 hertz motors, these readings may be taken at 60 hertz.
c. Current input at rated frequency with rotor at standstill for squirrel-cage motors. This may be taken single-phase or polyphase at rated or reduced voltage. (When this test is made single-phase, the polyphase values of a duplicate machine should be given in any report.) On 50 hertz motors, these readings may be taken at 60 hertz.
d. Measurement of open-circuit voltage ratio on wound-rotor motors.
e. High-potential test in accordance with 3.1 and 12.3.

### 12.55.3 Typical of Tests on Motors Not Completely Assembled

Typical tests which may be made on all motors not completely assembled in the factory are as follows.

a. Measurement of winding resistance.
b. High-potential test in accordance with 3.1 and 12.3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-7**
**SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS**

| | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 |
| Hp | Load $Wk^2$ (Exclusive of Motor $Wk^2$), $Lb\text{-}Ft^2$ | | | | | | |
| 1 | ... | 5.8 | 15 | 31 | 53 | 82 | 118 |
| 1½ | 1.8 | 8.6 | 23 | 45 | 77 | 120 | 174 |
| 2 | 2.4 | 11 | 30 | 60 | 102 | 158 | 228 |
| 3 | 3.5 | 17 | 44 | 87 | 149 | 231 | 335 |
| 5 | 5.7 | 27 | 71 | 142 | 242 | 375 | 544 |
| 7½ | 8.3 | 39 | 104 | 208 | 355 | 551 | 799 |
| 10 | 11 | 51 | 137 | 273 | 467 | 723 | 1050 |
| 15 | 16 | 75 | 200 | 400 | 684 | 1060 | 1540 |
| 20 | 21 | 99 | 262 | 525 | 898 | 1390 | 2020 |
| 25 | 26 | 122 | 324 | 647 | 1110 | 1720 | 2490 |
| 30 | 30 | 144 | 384 | 769 | 1320 | 2040 | 2960 |
| 40 | 40 | 189 | 503 | 1010 | 1720 | 2680 | 3890 |
| 50 | 49 | 232 | 620 | 1240 | 2130 | 3300 | 4790 |
| 60 | 58 | 275 | 735 | 1470 | 2520 | 3920 | 5690 |
| 75 | 71 | 338 | 904 | 1810 | 3110 | 4830 | 7020 |
| 100 | 92 | 441 | 1180 | 2370 | 4070 | 6320 | 9190 |
| 125 | 113 | 542 | 1450 | 2920 | 5010 | 7790 | 11300 |
| 150 | 133 | 640 | 1720 | 3460 | 5940 | 9230 | ... |
| 200 | 172 | 831 | 2240 | 4510 | 7750 | ... | ... |
| 250 | 210 | 1020 | 2740 | 5540 | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | 246 | 1200 | 3240 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 350 | 281 | 1370 | 3720 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | 315 | 1550 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 450 | 349 | 1710 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | 381 | 1880 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

## 12.56 THERMAL PROTECTION OF MEDIUM MOTORS

The protector in a thermally protected motor shall limit the winding temperature and the ultimate trip current as follows:

### 12.56.1 Winding Temperature

#### 12.56.1.1 Running Load

When a motor marked "Thermally Protected" is running at the maximum continuous load which it can carry without causing the protector to open the circuit, the temperature of the windings shall not exceed the temperature shown in Table 12-8.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-8**
**WINDING TEMPERATURES**

| Insulation System Class | Maximum Winding Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 140 |
| B | 165 |
| F | 190 |
| H | 215 |

Tests shall be conducted at any ambient temperature within the range of 10°C to 40°C.

The temperature of the windings shall be measured by the resistance method except that, for motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller, the temperature shall alternatively per permitted to be measured by the thermocouple method.

Short-time rated motors and motors for intermittent duty shall be permitted to be run at no-load and reduced voltage, if necessary, for a continuous running test to verify that the protector limits the temperatures to those given in the foregoing table.

### 12.56.1.2 Locked Rotor

When a motor marked "Thermally Protected" is under locked-rotor conditions, the thermal protector shall cycle to limit the winding temperature to the values given in Table 12-9.

The test for motors with automatic-reset thermal protectors shall be run until temperature peaks are constant or for 72 hours, whichever is shorter.

The test for motors with manual-reset thermal protectors shall be 10 cycles, the protector being reclosed as quickly as possible after it opens. If ten cycles are completed in less than 1 hour, only the "during first hour" limits given in Table 12-9 apply.

**Table 12-9**
**WINDING TEMPERATURE UNDER LOCKED-ROTOR CONDITIONS, DEGREES C**

| | Maximum Temperature, Degrees C* Insulation System Class | | | | Average Temperature, **Degrees C* Insulation System Class | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Type of Protector | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H |
| Automatic reset | | | | | | | | |
| During first hour | 200 | 225 | 250 | 275 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| After first hour | 175 | 200 | 225 | 250 | 150 | 175 | 200 | 225 |
| Manual reset | | | | | | | | |
| During first hour | 200 | 225 | 250 | 275 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| After first hour | 175 | 200 | 225 | 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

* Test shall be permitted to be conducted at any ambient temperature within the range of 10°C to 40°C.

**The average temperature is the average of the average peak and average reset winding temperatures. The average temperature shall be within limits during both the second and last hours of the test.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.56.2 Trip Current

A motor rated more than 1 horsepower and marked "Thermally Protected" shall have an ultimate trip current, based on a 40°C ambient temperature, not in excess of the following percentages of motor full-load currents:

| Motor Full-Load Amperes | Trip Current as a Percent of Motor Full-Load Current |
|---|---|
| 9.0 and less | 170 |
| Over 9.0 but not over 20.0 | 156 |
| Over 20.0 | 140 |

Dual-voltage motors shall comply with the ultimate trip current requirements for both voltages.

## 12.57 OVERTEMPERATURE PROTECTION OF MEDIUM MOTORS NOT MEETING THE DEFINITION OF "THERMALLY PROTECTED"

Motors rated above 1 horsepower and marked "OVER TEMP PROT-" are provided with winding overtemperature protection devices or systems which do not meet the definition of "Thermally Protected."

The motors marked "OVER TEMP PROT-" shall be followed by the numeral 1, 2, or 3 stamped in the blank space to indicate the type of winding overtemperature protection provided. For each type, the winding overtemperature protector shall limit the temperature of the winding as follows.

### 12.57.1 Type 1—Winding Running and Locked Rotor Overtemperature Protection

#### 12.57.1.1 Winding Running Temperature

When the motor is marked "OVER TEMP PROT-1" and is running at the maximum continuous load which it can carry without causing the winding overtemperature protector to operate, the temperature of the windings shall not exceed the temperature shown in Table 12-8.

The temperature of the windings shall be measured by the resistance method except that, for motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller, the temperature shall be permitted to be measured by the thermocouple method.

#### 12.57.1.2 Winding Locked-Rotor Temperature

In addition, when the motor is marked "OVER TEMP PROT-1" and is under locked-rotor conditions, the winding overtemperature protector shall limit the temperature of the windings to the values shown in Table 12-8.

### 12.57.2 Type 2—Winding Running Overtemperature Protection

When the motor is marked "OVER TEMP PROT-2" and is running at the maximum continuous load which it can carry without causing the winding overtemperature protector to operate, the temperature of the windings shall not exceed the temperature shown in Table 12-8.

When the motor is so marked, locked-rotor protection is not provided by the winding overtemperature protector.

### 12.57.3 Type 3—Winding Overtemperature Protection, Nonspecific Type

When the motor is marked "OVER TEMP PROT-3," the motor manufacturer shall be consulted for details of protected conditions or winding temperatures, or both.

## 12.58 EFFICIENCY

### 12.58.1 Determination of Motor Efficiency and Losses

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 112 or Canadian Standards Association Standard C390. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, and frequency.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Unless otherwise specified, horizontal polyphase, squirrel-cage medium motors rated 1 to 500 horsepower shall be tested by dynamometer (Method B)[1] as described in Section 6.4 of IEEE Std 112. Motor efficiency shall be calculated using form B of IEEE Std 112 or the equivalent C390 calculation procedure. Vertical motors of this horsepower range shall also be tested by Method B if bearing construction permits; otherwise they shall be tested by segregated losses (Method E)[2] as described in Section 6.6 of IEEE Std 112, including direct measurement of stray-loss load.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. Stator $I^2R$
b. Rotor $I^2R$
c. Core loss
d. Stray load loss
e. Friction and windage loss[3]
f. Brush contact loss of wound-rotor machines

Power required for auxiliary items, such as external pumps or fans, that are necessary for the operation of the motor shall be stated separately.

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 75 |
| B | 95 |
| F | 115 |
| H | 130 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

### 12.58.2 Efficiency of Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Medium Motors with Continuous Ratings

The full-load efficiency of Design A and B single-speed polyphase squirrel-cage medium motors in the range of 1 through 400 horsepower for frames assigned in accordance with Part 13, above 400 horsepower up to and including 500 horsepower, and equivalent Design C ratings shall be identified on the nameplate by a nominal efficiency selected from the Nominal Efficiency column in Table 12-10 which shall be not greater than the average efficiency of a large population of motors of the same design.

The efficiency shall be identified on the nameplate by the caption "NEMA Nominal Efficiency" or "NEMA Nom. Eff."

The full-load efficiency, when operating at rated voltage and frequency, shall be not less than the minimum value associated with the nominal value in Table 12-10.

---

[1] CSA Std C390 Method 1.
[2] CSA Std C390 Method 2.
[3] In the case of motors which are furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.
In the case of motors which are furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses, which are representative of the actual installation, shall be determined by calculation or experience with shop test bearings, and shall be included in the efficiency calculation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-10**
**EFFICIENCY LEVELS**

| Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency Based on 20% Loss Difference | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency Based on 20% Loss Difference |
|---|---|---|---|
| 99.0 | 98.8 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 98.9 | 98.7 | 90.2 | 88.5 |
| 98.8 | 98.6 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 98.7 | 98.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 98.6 | 98.4 | 87.5 | 85.5 |
| 98.5 | 98.2 | 86.5 | 84.0 |
| 98.4 | 98.0 | 85.5 | 82.5 |
| 98.2 | 97.8 | 84.0 | 81.5 |
| 98.0 | 97.6 | 82.5 | 80.0 |
| 97.8 | 97.4 | 81.5 | 78.5 |
| 97.6 | 97.1 | 80.0 | 77.0 |
| 97.4 | 96.8 | 78.5 | 75.5 |
| 97.1 | 96.5 | 77.0 | 74.0 |
| 96.8 | 96.2 | 75.5 | 72.0 |
| 96.5 | 95.8 | 74.0 | 70.0 |
| 96.2 | 95.4 | 72.0 | 68.0 |
| 95.8 | 95.0 | 70.0 | 66.0 |
| 95.4 | 94.5 | 68.0 | 64.0 |
| 95.0 | 94.1 | 66.0 | 62.0 |
| 94.5 | 93.6 | 64.0 | 59.5 |
| 94.1 | 93.0 | 62.0 | 57.5 |
| 93.6 | 92.4 | 59.5 | 55.0 |
| 93.0 | 91.7 | 57.5 | 52.5 |
| 92.4 | 91.0 | 55.0 | 50.5 |
| 91.7 | 90.2 | 52.5 | 48.0 |
| | | 50.5 | 46.0 |

Variations in materials, manufacturing processes, and tests result in motor-to-motor efficiency variations for a given motor design; the full-load efficiency for a large population of motors of a single design is not a unique efficiency but rather a band of efficiency. Therefore, Table 12-10 has been established to indicate a logical series of nominal motor efficiencies and the minimum associated with each nominal. The nominal efficiency represents a value which should be used to compute the energy consumption of a motor or group of motors.

## 12.59 EFFICIENCY LEVELS OF ENERGY EFFICIENT POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS

The nominal full-load efficiency of polyphase squirrel-cage induction motors rated 600 volts or less determined in accordance with 12.58.1, identified on the nameplate in accordance with 12.58.2, and having a corresponding minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 12-10 shall equal or exceed the values listed in Table 12-11 for the motor to be classified as “energy efficient.”

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.60 EFFICIENCY LEVEL OF PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS

### 12.60.1 60 Hz MOTORS RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (RANDOM WOUND)

The nominal full-load efficiency of random wound premium efficiency electric motors rated 600 volts or less determined in accordance with 12.58.1, identified on the nameplate in accordance with 12.58.2, and having a minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 12-10 shall equal or exceed the values listed in Table 12-12.

### 12.60.2 60 Hz MOTORS RATED MEDIUM VOLTAGE, 5000 VOLTS OR LESS (FORM WOUND)

The nominal full-load efficiency of form wound premium efficiency electric motors rated at a medium voltage of 5000 volts or less determined in accordance with 12.58.1, identified on the nameplate in accordance with 12.58.2, and having a minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 12-10 shall equal or exceed the values listed in Table 12-13.

### 12.60.3 50 Hz MOTORS RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (RANDOM WOUND)

The nominal full-load efficiency of random wound 50 Hz premium efficiency electric motors rated 600 volts or less determined in accordance with 12.58.1, identified on the nameplate in accordance with 12.58.2, and having a minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 12-10 shall equal or exceed the values listed in Table 12-14.

The values of efficiency in Table 12-14 for (0.7457•Hp) < 200 kW were derived based on the following equation[1]:

$$\%\text{Efficiency} = A \bullet [\log_{10}(0.7457 \bullet \text{Hp})]^3 + B \bullet [\log_{10}(0.7457 \bullet \text{Hp})]^2 + C \bullet \log_{10}(0.7457 \bullet \text{Hp}) + D$$

where the values of A, B, C, and D are as given in the following table:

| | 2 Pole | 4 Pole | 6 Pole |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | 0.3569 | 0.0773 | 0.1252 |
| B | -3.3076 | -1.8951 | -2.613 |
| C | 11.6108 | 9.2984 | 11.9963 |
| D | 82.2503 | 83.7025 | 80.4769 |

The above relationship can be used to calculate the efficiency in percent for Hp levels which are not given specifically in Table 12-14.

## 12.61 REPORT OF TEST FOR TESTS ON INDUCTION MOTORS

For reporting routine tests on induction motors, see IEEE Standard 112, Appendix A.

[1] Based on efficiency level IE3 in IEC 60034-30

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-11**
**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES OF ENERGY EFFICIENT MOTORS**

| | OPEN MOTORS | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | | 8 POLE | |
| Hp | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 1 | ... | ... | 82.5 | 80.0 | 80.0 | 77.0 | 74.0 | 70.0 |
| 1.5 | 82.5 | 80.0 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 75.5 | 72.0 |
| 2 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 85.5 | 82.5 |
| 3 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 86.5 | 84.0 |
| 5 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 |
| 7.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 10 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 15 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 20 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 |
| 25 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 90.2 | 88.5 |
| 30 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 40 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 50 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 60 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 92.4 | 91.0 |
| 75 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 100 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 125 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 150 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 200 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 250 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 300 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | ... | ... |
| 350 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | ... | ... |
| 400 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 450 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Table 12-11 continued next page

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-11 *(Continued)***
**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES OF ENERGY EFFICIENT MOTORS**

| | ENCLOSED MOTORS | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | | 8 POLE | |
| Hp | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 1.0 | 75.5 | 72.0 | 82.5 | 80.0 | 80.0 | 77.0 | 74.0 | 70.0 |
| 1.5 | 82.5 | 80.0 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 77.0 | 74.0 |
| 2.0 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 82.5 | 80.0 |
| 3.0 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 |
| 5.0 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 85.5 | 82.5 |
| 7.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 85.5 | 82.5 |
| 10.0 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 15.0 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 20.0 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 25.0 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 30.0 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 40.0 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 50.0 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 60.0 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 75.0 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.0 | 91.7 |
| 100.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.0 | 91.7 |
| 125.0 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 150.0 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 200.0 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.1 | 93.0 |
| 250.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 300.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 | ... | ... |
| 350.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 | ... | ... |
| 400.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 450.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.4 | 94.5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.8 | 95.0 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-12**
**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES FOR 60 HZ PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (RANDOM WOUND)**

| | OPEN MOTORS | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | |
| HP | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 1 | 77.0 | 74.0 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 82.5 | 80.0 |
| 1.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 86.5 | 84.0 |
| 2 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 87.5 | 85.5 |
| 3 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 7.5 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 90.2 | 88.5 |
| 10 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 15 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 20 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 92.4 | 91.0 |
| 25 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.0 | 91.7 |
| 30 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 93.6 | 92.4 |
| 40 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 94.1 | 93.0 |
| 50 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.1 | 93.0 |
| 60 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 75 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 100 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 125 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 150 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 |
| 200 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 |
| 250 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 |
| 300 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 |
| 350 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 |
| 400 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 450 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 96.2 | 95.4 |
| 500 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 96.2 | 95.4 |

Table 12-12 continued next page

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-12 *(Continued)***
**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES FOR 60 HZ PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (RANDOM WOUND)**

**ENCLOSED MOTORS**

| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| HP | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 1 | 77.0 | 74.0 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 82.5 | 80.0 |
| 1.5 | 84.0 | 81.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 87.5 | 85.5 |
| 2 | 85.5 | 82.5 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 88.5 | 86.5 |
| 3 | 86.5 | 84.0 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 5 | 88.5 | 86.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 |
| 7.5 | 89.5 | 87.5 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 10 | 90.2 | 88.5 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 91.0 | 89.5 |
| 15 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 20 | 91.0 | 89.5 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 91.7 | 90.2 |
| 25 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.0 | 91.7 |
| 30 | 91.7 | 90.2 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 93.0 | 91.7 |
| 40 | 92.4 | 91.0 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 94.1 | 93.0 |
| 50 | 93.0 | 91.7 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 94.1 | 93.0 |
| 60 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 75 | 93.6 | 92.4 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 94.5 | 93.6 |
| 100 | 94.1 | 93.0 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 125 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 150 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 200 | 95.4 | 94.5 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 250 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 300 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 350 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 400 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 450 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |
| 500 | 95.8 | 95.0 | 96.2 | 95.4 | 95.8 | 95.0 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-13**

**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES FOR 60 HZ PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS RATED 5000 VOLTS OR LESS (FORM WOUND)**

**OPEN MOTORS**

| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| HP | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 250 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 300 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 350 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 400 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 450 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 500 | 94.5 | 93.6 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |

**ENCLOSED MOTORS**

| | 2 POLE | | 4 POLE | | 6 POLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| HP | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency | Nominal Efficiency | Minimum Efficiency |
| 250 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 300 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 350 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 400 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 450 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |
| 500 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 | 95.0 | 94.1 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 12-14**
**FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCIES FOR 50 HZ PREMIUM EFFICIENCY ELECTRIC MOTORS RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (RANDOM WOUND)**

| | 2 POLE | 4 POLE | 6 POLE |
|---|---|---|---|
| HP | Efficiency | Efficiency | Efficiency |
| 1 | 80.7 | 82.5 | 78.9 |
| 1.5 | 82.8 | 84.2 | 81.1 |
| 2 | 84.2 | 85.3 | 82.5 |
| 3 | 85.9 | 86.7 | 84.4 |
| 5 | 87.9 | 88.4 | 86.5 |
| 7.5 | 89.2 | 89.6 | 88.0 |
| 10 | 90.1 | 90.4 | 89.0 |
| 15 | 91.2 | 91.5 | 90.3 |
| 20 | 91.9 | 92.1 | 91.2 |
| 25 | 92.4 | 92.6 | 91.8 |
| 30 | 92.8 | 93.0 | 92.2 |
| 40 | 93.3 | 93.5 | 92.9 |
| 50 | 93.7 | 93.9 | 93.4 |
| 60 | 94.0 | 94.2 | 93.7 |
| 75 | 94.3 | 94.6 | 94.1 |
| 100 | 94.7 | 95.0 | 94.6 |
| 125 | 95.0 | 95.3 | 94.9 |
| 150 | 95.2 | 95.5 | 95.2 |
| 200 | 95.5 | 95.8 | 95.5 |
| 250 | 95.7 | 95.9 | 95.7 |
| 300 | 95.8 | 96.0 | 95.8 |
| 350 | 95.8 | 96.0 | 95.8 |
| 400 | 95.8 | 96.0 | 95.8 |
| 450 | 95.8 | 96.0 | 95.8 |
| 500 | 95.8 | 96.0 | 95.8 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.62 MACHINE WITH ENCAPSULATED OR SEALED WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TESTS

An alternating-current squirrel-cage machine with encapsulated or sealed windings shall be capable of passing the tests listed below.

After the stator winding is completed, join all leads together leaving enough length to avoid creepage to terminals and perform the following tests in the sequence indicated:

a. The encapsulated or sealed stator shall be tested while all insulated parts are submerged in a tank of water containing a wetting agent. The wetting agent shall be non-ionic and shall be added in a proportion sufficient to reduce the surface tension of water to a value of 31 dyn/cm ($31 \times 10^3$ μN/m) or less at 25°C.

b. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 10 minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE Std 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

c. Subject the winding to a 60-hertz high potential test of 1.15 times the rated line-to-line rms voltage for 1 minute. Water must be at ground potential during this test.

d. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 1 minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE Std 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

e. Remove winding from water, rinse if necessary, dry, and apply other tests as may be required.

NOTE—The above test is recommended as a test on a representative sample or prototype and should not be construed as a production test.

## 12.63 MACHINE WITH MOISTURE RESISTANT WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TEST

An alternating-current squirrel-cage machine with moisture resistant windings shall be capable of passing the following test:

a. After the stator is completed, join all leads together and place it in a chamber with 100 percent relative humidity and 40°C temperature for 168 hours, during which time visible condensation shall be standing on the winding.

b. After 168 hours remove the stator winding from the chamber and within 5 minutes using 500 volt direct-current take a 1 minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE Std 43. The insulation resistance value shall be not less than 1.5 megohms.

NOTES

1—The above test is recommended as a test on a representative sample or prototype and should not be construed as a production test.

2—The sealed winding conformance test in 20.18 shall be permitted to be used in place of this test procedure to demonstrate moisture resistance of a prototype.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# PART 12
# TESTS AND PERFORMANCE—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS

## 12.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 12 of Section II cover direct-current motors built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type.

## 12.65 TEST METHODS

Tests to determine performance characteristics shall be made in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

## 12.66 TEST POWER SUPPLY

### 12.66.1 Small Motors

Performance tests on direct-current small motors intended for use on adjustable-voltage rectifier power supplies shall be made with an adjustable power supply, derived from a 60-hertz source, that will provide rated voltage and rated form factor at rated load.

### 12.66.2 Medium Motors

See Figure 12-1.

#### 12.66.2.1 Low-Ripple Power Supplies—Power Supply A

The rating of direct-current motors intended for use on low-ripple power supplies shall be based on the use of one of the following test power supplies:

a. Direct-current generator
b. Battery
c. A polyphase rectifier power supply having more than six pulses per cycle and 15 percent or less phase control
d. Any of the power supplies listed in 12.66.2.2 provided sufficient series inductance is used to obtain 6 percent, or less, peak-to-peak armature current ripple.

#### 12.66.2.2 Other Rectifier Power Supplies

The rating of direct-current motors intended for use on rectifier power supplies other than those described in 12.66.2.1 shall be based on the use of a test power supply having the characteristics given in 12.66.2.3 and defined in 12.66.2.4.

#### 12.66.2.3 Power Supply Characteristics

##### 12.66.2.3.1 Input

a. Single phase or three phase, as specified
b. Specified frequency. Unless otherwise specified, the frequency shall be 60 hertz
c. Specified alternating-current voltage, plus 2 percent, minus 0 percent
d. Power source shall not introduce significant series impedance

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

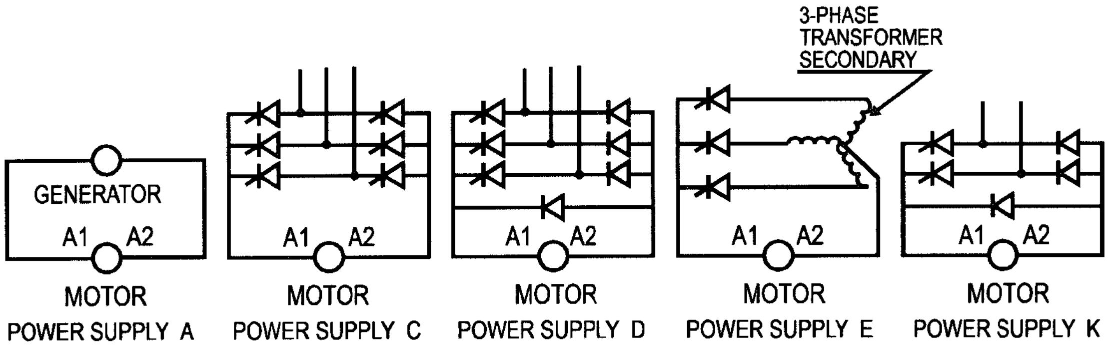



**Figure 12-1**
**TEST POWER SUPPLIES**

#### 12.66.2.3.2 Output

a. Rated direct-current motor voltages
b. Adequate direct current for all required tests
c. The difference between the highest and lowest peak amplitudes of the current pulses over one cycle shall not exceed 2 percent of the highest pulse amplitude

### 12.66.2.4 Supplies Designated by a Single Letter

A test power supply designated by a single letter shall have all of the characteristics listed in 12.66.2.3 and, in addition, the following.

#### 12.66.2.4.1 Power Supply C

Power supply identification letter "C" designates a three-phase full-wave power supply having six total pulses per cycle and six controlled pulses per cycle, without free wheeling, with 60-hertz input, with no series inductance being added externally to the motor armature circuit inductance. The input line-to-line alternating-current voltage to the rectifier shall be 230 volts for motor ratings given in Table 10-9 of 10.62 and 460 volts for motor ratings given in Table 10-10 of 10.62.

#### 12.66.2.4.2 Power Supply D

Power supply identification letter "D" designates a three-phase semibridge having three controlled pulses per cycle, with free wheeling, with 60-hertz input, with no series inductance being added externally to the motor armature circuit inductance. The input line-to-line alternating-current voltage to the rectifier shall be 230 volts for motor ratings given in Table 10-9 of 10.62 and 460 volts for motor ratings given in Table 10-10 of 10.62.

#### 12.66.2.4.3 Power Supply E

Power supply identification letter "E" designates a three-phase single-way power supply having three total pulses per cycle and three controlled pulses per cycles, without free wheeling, with 60-hertz input, and with no series inductance being added externally to the motor armature circuit inductance. The input line-to-line alternating-current voltage to the rectifier shall be 460 volts for motor ratings given in Table 10-10 of 10.62.

#### 12.66.2.4.4 Power Supply K

Power supply identification letter "K" designates a single-phase full-wave power supply having two total pulses per cycle and two controlled pulses per cycle, with free wheeling, with 60-hertz input, with no series inductance being added externally to the motor armature circuit inductance. The input alternating-current voltage to the rectifier shall be 230 volts for motors with armature voltage ratings of 180 volts in Table 10-8 and 115 volts for motors with armature voltage ratings of 90 volts.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.67 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating at base speed, shall not exceed the values given in the following tables.

### 12.67.1 Direct-Current Small Motors

All temperature rises in the following table are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures measured by either the thermometer or resistance method shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std. 113.

| | All Enclosures | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation System (See 1.65) | A | B | F |
| Time Rating (See 10.63) | | | |
| Temperature Rise, Degrees C | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all windings other than those given in item b - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| b. Shunt field windings - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| c. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | |

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.67.4.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

### 12.67.2 Continuous-Time-Rated Direct-Current Medium Motors

All temperature rises in the following table are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std. 113.

| | Totally Enclosed Nonventilated and Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Motors, Including Variations Thereof | | | | Motors with all Other Enclosures | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H |
| Time Rating | Continuous | | | | Continuous | | | |
| Temperature Rise, Degrees C | | | | | | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all windings other than those given in items b and c - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | |

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.67.4.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.67.3 Short-Time-Rated Direct-Current Medium Motors

All temperature rises in the following tables are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std. 113.

| | Motors Rated 5 and 15 minutes* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Totally Enclosed Nonventilated and Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Motors, Including Variations Thereof | | | | Dripproof, Forced-Ventilated,** and Other Enclosures | | | |
| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H |
| Temperature Rise, Degrees C* | | | | | | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all windings other than those given in items b and c – resistance | 90 | 125 | 155 | 185 | 80 | 115 | 145 | 175 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings – resistance | 90 | 125 | 155 | 155 | 80 | 115 | 145 | 175 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings – resistance | 90 | 125 | 155 | 185 | 80 | 115 | 145 | 175 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | |

| | Motors Rated 30 and 60 Minutes* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Totally Enclosed Nonventilated and Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Motors, Including Variations Thereof | | | | Dripproof, Forced-Ventilated,** and Other Enclosures | | | |
| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H |
| Temperature Rise, Degrees C* | | | | | | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all windings other than those given in items b and c – resistance | 80 | 110 | 140 | 165 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings – resistance | 80 | 110 | 140 | 165 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings – resistance | 80 | 110 | 140 | 165 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | |

*See 10.63.

**Forced-ventilated motors are defined in 1.25.6, 1.25.7, and 1.26.4.

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation. See 12.67.4.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for motors intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

### 12.67.4 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

Temperature rises given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that dc machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of dc machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. When a higher ambient temperature than 40°C is required, preferred values of ambient temperatures are 50°C, and 65°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 12.67.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled dc machines may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled dc machine is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 120 | 150 | 180 | 205 |

*NOTE—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 12.67.1, 12.67.2, and 12.67.3

For example: An open medium dc motor with a Class F insulation system is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 180°C and from 12.67.2 the Temperature Rise Limit is 130°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{o}\text{C} - 25^{o}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{180^{o}\text{C} - \left(40^{O}\text{C} + 130^{O}\text{C}\right)}{80^{O}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{O}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 12.67.2 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 130°C + 13°C = 143°C.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.68 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE

Motors shall operate successfully, using the power supply selected for the basis of rating, up to and including 110 percent of rated direct-current armature and field voltages and, in the case of motors operating from a rectifier power supply, with a variation of plus or minus 10 percent of rated alternating-current line voltage.

Performance within this voltage variation will not necessarily be in accordance with the standards established for operation at rated voltage. For operation below base speed, see 14.63.

## 12.69 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO LOAD

### 12.69.1 Straight-Shunt-Wound, Stabilized-Shunt-Wound, and Permanent-Magnet Direct-Current Motors

The variation in speed from rated load to no load of a straight-shunt-wound, stabilized-shunt-wound, or permanent-magnet direct-current motor having a rating listed in 10.62 shall not exceed the following when the motor is operated at rated armature voltage, with the winding at the constant temperature attained when operating at base speed rating, and the ambient temperature is within the usual service range given in 14.2.1, item a.

| Hp | Speed Regulation, Percent (at Base Speed) |
|---|---|
| Less than 3 | 25 |
| 3-50 | 20 |
| 51-100 | 15 |
| 101 and larger | 10 |

Variation in speed due to loads when operating at speeds higher than base speeds may be greater than the values in the above table.

### 12.69.2 Compound-Wound Direct-Current Motors

The variation in speed from rated load to no load of a compound-wound direct-current motor having a rating listed in 10.62 shall not exceed the values given in the following table for small motors and shall be approximately 30 percent of the rated load speed for medium motors when the motor is operated at rated voltage, with the windings at the constant temperature attained when operating at its rating, and the ambient temperature is within the usual service range given in 14.2.1, item a.

| Hp | Speed, Rpm | Speed Regulation, Percent |
|---|---|---|
| 1/20 to 1/8 incl. | 1725 | 30 |
| 1/20 to 1/8, incl. | 1140 | 35 |
| 1/6 to 1/3, incl. | 1725 | 25 |
| 1/6 to 1/3, incl. | 1140 | 30 |
| 1/2 to 3/4, incl. | 1725 | 22 |
| 1/2 | 1140 | 25 |

## 12.70 VARIATION IN BASE SPEED DUE TO HEATING

### 12.70.1 Speed Variation with Temperature

The variation in base speed of straight-shunt-wound, stabilized-shunt-wound, and permanent magnet direct-current motors from that at rated load at ambient temperature to that at rated load at the temperature attained at rated load armature and field voltage following a run of the specified duration shall not exceed the following percentage of the rated base speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | Percentage Variation of Rated Load Base Speed | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Insulation System Class | | | |
| Enclosure Type | A | B | F | H |
| Open | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 |
| Totally Enclosed | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 |

### 12.70.2 Resistance Variation with Temperature

When the temperature of the motor winding changes from ambient temperature to that attained when the motor is operating at its rating, the resistance of the motor windings will increase approximately 30 percent for motors having Class A insulation systems, 40 percent for motors having Class B insulation systems, and 50 percent for motors having Class F insulation systems. With a constant voltage power supply, this will result in a speed change as large as that given in 12.70.1. Considering all factors, the speed of direct-current motors may either decrease or increase as the motor winding temperature increases. For small motors, the armature current form factor will also increase slightly with increasing motor winding temperature, but only with a single-phase rectifier is this likely to be significant.

## 12.71 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED

The variation above or below the rated full-field speed of a direct-current motor shall not exceed 7-1/2 percent when operated at rated load and voltage and at full field with the windings at the constant temperature attained when operating at its ratings.

## 12.72 MOMENTARY OVERLOAD CAPACITY

Direct-current motors shall be capable of carrying successfully for 1 minute an armature current at least 50 percent greater than the rated armature current at rated voltage. For adjustable-speed motors, this capability shall apply for all speeds within the rated speed range when operated from the intended power supply.

## 12.73 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION

Successful commutation is attained if neither the brushes nor the commutator are burned or injured in the conformance test or in normal service to the extent that abnormal maintenance is required. The presence of some visible sparking is not necessarily evidence of unsuccessful commutation.

## 12.74 OVERSPEEDS FOR MOTORS

### 12.74.1 Shunt-Wound Motors

Direct-current shunt-wound motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury an overspeed of 25 percent above the highest rated speed or 15 percent above the corresponding no-load speed, whichever is greater.

### 12.74.2 Compound-Wound Motors Having Speed Regulation of 35 Percent or Less

Compound-wound motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury an overspeed of 25 percent above the highest rated speed or 15 percent above the corresponding no-load speed, whichever is greater, but not exceeding 50 percent above the highest rated speed.

### 12.74.3 Series-Wound Motors and Compound-Wound Motors Having Speed Regulation Greater Than 35 Percent

Since these motors require special consideration depending upon the application for which they are intended, the manufacturer shall assign a maximum safe operating speed which shall be stamped on the nameplate. These motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury an overspeed which is 10 percent above the maximum safe

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

operating speed. The safe operating speed marking is not required on the nameplates of small motors which are capable of withstanding a speed which is 10 percent above the no-load speed.

### 12.75 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

See 12.81.

### 12.76 ROUTINE TESTS ON MEDIUM DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

Typical tests which may be made on medium direct-current motors are listed below. All tests should be made in accordance with IEEE Std. 113.

a. No-load readings[1] at rated voltage on all shunt-, stabilized-shunt, compound-wound, and permanent magnet motors; quarter-load readings[1] on all series-wound motors.
b. Full-load readings[1] at base and highest rated speed on all motors having a continuous torque rating greater than that of a 15-horsepower 1750-rpm motor. Commutation should be observed when full-load readings[1] are taken.
c. High-potential test in accordance with 3.1 and 12.3.

### 12.77 REPORT OF TEST FORM FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MACHINES

For typical test forms, see IEEE Std. 113.

### 12.78 EFFICIENCY

#### 12.78.1 Type A Power Supplies

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std. 113 using the direct measurement method or the segregated losses method. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, and speed. In the case of adjustable-speed motors, the base speed shall be used unless otherwise specified.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of series windings (including commutating, compounding, and compensating fields, where applicable)
c. $I^2R$ loss of shunt field[2]
d. Core loss
e. Stray load loss
f. Brush contact loss
g. Brush friction loss
h. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from the shaft of the machine
i. Ventilating losses
j. Friction and windage loss[3]

---

[1] The word "readings" includes the following:
a. Speed in revolutions per minute
b. Voltage at motor terminals
c. Amperes in armature
d. Amperes in shunt field

[2] For separately excited motors, the shunt field $I^2R$ loss shall be permitted to be omitted from the efficiency calculation if so stated.

[3] In the case of motors furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself shall be included in the efficiency calculations. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

In determining $I^2R$ losses, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 85 |
| B | 110 |
| F | 135 |
| H | 155 |

If the temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

### 12.78.2 Other Power Supplies

It is not possible to make a simulated test which will determine motor efficiency in a particular rectifier system. Only by directly measuring input watts (not the product of average volts and average amperes) using the power supply to be used in an application can the motor efficiency in that system be accurately determined. The extra losses due to the ripple in the current, and especially those due to magnetic pulsations, are a function not only of the magnitude of the armature current ripple but, also, of the actual wave shape.

## 12.79 STABILITY

When motors are operated in feedback control systems, due attention should be paid to stability problems. Any such problems would necessarily have to be solved by the joint efforts of the system designer, the motor manufacturer, and the manufacturer of the power supply.

## 12.80 OVER TEMPERATURE PROTECTION OF MEDIUM DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

Over-temperature protection of the various windings in a direct-current motor, especially the armature winding which rotates, is considerably more complex than the protection of the stator winding of an alternating-current motor. The wide range of load and speed (ventilation) in the typical direct-current motor application adds to the difficulty. Current-sensing devices located remotely from the motor (frequently in control panels) cannot match the thermal characteristics of direct-current motors over a wide speed range because of these variable motor cooling conditions.

In order to improve the degree of over-temperature protection, a temperature sensing protector may be installed in a direct-current motor. However, the precision of protection in over-temperature protected direct-current motors is less than that possible in alternating-current motors. In over temperature-protected direct-current motors, the protector is usually mounted on or near the commutating coil. Since this winding carries armature load current, its temperature tends to rise and fall with changes in load in a manner similar to the temperature of the armature winding.

The motor manufacturer should choose the protector and its mounting arrangement to prevent excessive temperatures of either the commutating field or the armature winding under most conditions of operation. However, under unusual loading conditions, the over-temperature protector may not be able to prevent

---

In the case of motors furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

the armature winding from reaching excessive temperatures for short periods. Maximum winding temperatures at operation of the over-temperature protector may exceed the rated temperature rise. Repeated operation of the over-temperature protector indicates a system installation which should be investigated.

If a direct-current motor is specified to be over-temperature protected, the user should inform the motor manufacturer whether a normally open or a normally closed contact device is required and the voltage, current, and frequency rating of the circuit which this device is intended to open or close.

## 12.81 DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

The following may be used in supplying data for direct-current motors:

a. Manufacturer's type ........ ____________
   and frame designation ........ ____________
b. Requisition or order number ........ ____________
c. Rated horsepower ........ ____________
d. Time rating ........ ____________
e. Enclosure type ........ ____________
f. Insulation system ........
g. Maximum ambient temperature ........
h. Intended for use on power supply ........
i. (Check one) Straight-shunt wound ( ), stabilized-shunt wound ( ), compound wound ( ), series wound ( ), or permanent magnet ( )
j. Rated voltage
   1. Armature ........ ________volts, average
   2. Shunt field ........ ________volts, average
k. Rated armature current ........ ________amperes, average
l. Rated form factor________or rms current________amperes
m. Resistance of windings at 25°
   1. Armature ........ ________ohms
   2. Commutating (and compensating, if used) ........ ________ohms
   3. Series ........ ________ohms
   4. Shunt ........ ________ohms
n. Field amperes to obtain the following speeds at rated load amperes:
   1. Base speed ........ _____rpm _____amperes
   2. 150 percent of base speed, if applicable ........ _____rpm _____amperes
   3. Highest rated speed........ _____rpm _____amperes
o. Saturated inductances
   1. Total armature circuit ........ ____________millihenries
   2. Highest rated speed ........ ____________millihenries
p. Armature inertia ($Wk^2$) ........ ________$lb\text{-}ft^2$
q. If separately ventilated, minimum cubic feet per minute and static pressure ........ ___cfm _____inches of water
r. Maximum safe operating speed (for all series-wound and compound-wound motors having speed regulation greater than 35 percent) ........ ________rpm
s. Temperature protection data

NOTE—For permanent-magnet motors and other motor designs, some of the above listed items may not be applicable. Other data may be given.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 12.82 MACHINE SOUND OF DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS

See Part 9 for Sound Power Limits and Measurement Procedures.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 13

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 13
# FRAME ASSIGNMENTS FOR ALTERNATING CURRENT INTEGRAL HORSEPOWER INDUCTION MOTORS

## 13.0 SCOPE

This standard covers frame assignments for the following classifications of alternating current integral-horsepower induction motors:

Single-phase, Design L, horizontal and vertical motors, open type

Polyphase, squirrel-cage, Designs A, B, and C, horizontal and vertical motors, open type and totally enclosed fan-cooled type.

## 13.1 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR SINGLE-PHASE DESIGN L, HORIZONTAL, AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 230 VOLTS AND LESS

| | Speed, Rpm | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Hp** | **3600** | **1800** | **1200** |
| 3/4 | . . . | . . . | 145T |
| 1 | . . . | 143T | 182T |
| 1-1/2 | 143T | 145T | 184T |
| 2 | 145T | 182T | . . . |
| 3 | 182T | 184T | . . . |
| 5 | 184T | 213T | . . . |
| 7-1/2 | 213T | 215T | . . . |

NOTE—See 4.4.1 for the dimensions of the frame designations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 13.2 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGNS A AND B, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS*

| | Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **HP** | **3600** | **1800** | **1200** | **900** |
| 1/2 | . . . | . . . | . . . | 143T |
| 3/4 | . . . | . . . | 143T | 145T |
| 1 | . . . | 143T | 145T | 182T |
| 1-1/2 | 143T | 145T | 182T | 184T |
| 2 | 145T | 145T | 184T | 213T |
| 3 | 145T | 182T | 213T | 215T |
| 5 | 182T | 184T | 215T | 254T |
| 7-12 | 184T | 213T | 254T | 256T |
| 10 | 213T | 215T | 256T | 284T |
| 15 | 215T | 254T | 284T | 286T |
| 20 | 254T | 256T | 286T | 324T |
| 25 | 256T | 284T | 324T | 326T |
| 30 | 284TS | 286T | 326T | 364T |
| 40 | 286TS | 324T | 364T | 365T |
| 50 | 324TS | 326T | 365T | 404T |
| 60 | 326TS | 364TS** | 404T | 405T |
| 75 | 364TS | 365TS** | 405T | 444T |
| 100 | 365TS | 404TS** | 444T | 445T |
| 125 | 404TS | 405TS** | 445T | 447T |
| 150 | 405TS | 444TS** | 447T | 449T |
| 200 | 444TS | 445TS** | 449T | . . . |
| 250† | 445TS | 447TS** | . . . | . . . |
| 300† | 447TS | 449TS** | . . . | . . . |
| 350† | 449TS | . . . | . . . | . . . |

* The voltage rating of 115 Volts applies only to motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller.
** When motors are to be used with V-belt or chain drives, the correct frame size is the frame size shown but with the suffix letter S omitted. For the corresponding shaft extension dimensions, see 4.4.1.
† The 250, 300, and 350 horsepower ratings at the 3600 rpm speed have a 1.0 service factor.
NOTE—See 4.4.1 for the dimensions of the frame designations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 13.3 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGNS A AND B, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED TYPE, 1.0 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS*

| | Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| HP | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
| 1/2 | . . . | . . . | . . . | 143T |
| 3/4 | . . . | . . . | 143T | 145T |
| 1 | . . . | 143T | 145T | 182T |
| 1-1/2 | 143T | 145T | 182T | 184T |
| 2 | 145T | 145T | 184T | 213T |
| 3 | 182T | 182T | 213T | 215T |
| 5 | 184T | 184T | 215T | 254T |
| 7-12 | 213T | 213T | 254T | 256T |
| 10 | 215T | 215T | 256T | 284T |
| 15 | 254T | 254T | 284T | 286T |
| 20 | 256T | 256T | 286T | 324T |
| 25 | 284TS | 284T | 324T | 326T |
| 30 | 286TS | 286T | 326T | 364T |
| 40 | 324TS | 324T | 364T | 365T |
| 50 | 326TS | 326T | 365T | 404T |
| 60 | 364TS | 364TS** | 404T | 405T |
| 75 | 365TS | 365TS** | 405T | 444T |
| 100 | 405TS | 405TS** | 444T | 445T |
| 125 | 444TS | 444TS** | 445T | 447T |
| 150 | 445TS | 445TS** | 447T | 449T |
| 200 | 447TS | 447TS** | 449T | . . . |
| 250 | 449TS | 449TS | . . . | . . . |

* The voltage rating of 115 Volts applies only to motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller.
**When motors are to be used with V-belt or chain drives, the correct frame size is the frame size shown but with the suffix letter S omitted. For the corresponding shaft extension dimensions, see 4.4.1.

NOTE—See 4.4.1 for the dimensions of the frame designations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 13.4 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGN C, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, OPEN TYPE, 1.15 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS*

| | Speed, Rpm | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| HP | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
| 1 | 143T | 145T | 182T |
| 1.5 | 145T | 182T | 184T |
| 2 | 145T | 184T | 213T |
| 3 | 182T | 213T | 215T |
| 5 | 184T | 215T | 254T |
| 7.5 | 213T | 254T | 256T |
| 10 | 215T | 256T | 284T |
| 15 | 254T | 284T | 286T |
| 20 | 256T | 286T | 324T |
| 25 | 284T | 324T | 326T |
| 30 | 286T | 326T | 364T |
| 40 | 324T | 364T | 365T |
| 50 | 326T | 365T | 404T |
| 60 | 364TS** | 404T | 405T |
| 75 | 365TS** | 405T | 444T |
| 100 | 404TS** | 444T | 445T |
| 125 | 405TS** | 445T | 447T |
| 150 | 444TS** | 447T | 449T |
| 200 | 445TS** | 449T | . . . |

* The voltage rating of 115 Volts applies only to motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller.

**When motors are to be used with V-belt or chain drives, the correct frame size is the frame size shown but with the suffix letter S omitted. For the corresponding shaft extension dimensions, see 4.4.1.

NOTE—See 4.4.1 for the dimensions of the frame designations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 13.5 FRAME DESIGNATIONS FOR POLYPHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, DESIGN C, HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL MOTORS, 60 HERTZ, CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEM, TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED TYPE, 1.0 SERVICE FACTOR, 575 VOLTS AND LESS*

| | Speed, Rpm | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **HP** | **1800** | **1200** | **900** |
| 1 | 143T | 145T | 182T |
| 1.5 | 145T | 182T | 184T |
| 2 | 145T | 184T | 213T |
| 3 | 182T | 213T | 215T |
| 5 | 184T | 215T | 254T |
| 7.5 | 213T | 254T | 256T |
| 10 | 215T | 256T | 284T |
| 15 | 254T | 284T | 286T |
| 20 | 256T | 286T | 324T |
| 25 | 284T | 324T | 326T |
| 30 | 286T | 326T | 364T |
| 40 | 324T | 364T | 365T |
| 50 | 326T | 365T | 404T |
| 60 | 364TS** | 404T | 405T |
| 75 | 365TS** | 405T | 444T |
| 100 | 405TS** | 444T | 445T |
| 125 | 444TS** | 445T | 447T |
| 150 | 445TS** | 447T | 449T |
| 200 | 447TS** | 449T | . . . |

* The voltage rating of 115 Volts applies only to motors rated 15 horsepower and smaller.
**When motors are to be used with V-belt or chain drives, the correct frame size is the frame size shown but with the suffix letter S omitted. For the corresponding shaft extension dimensions, see 4.4.1.

NOTE—See 4.4.1 for the dimensions of the frame designations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 14

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 14
# APPLICATION DATA—AC AND DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MACHINES

## 14.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 14 of Section II cover the following machines:

a. Alternating-Current Machines—Alternating-current machines up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below.

| Synchronous Speed | Motors, Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor | | Generators, Synchronous, Revolving Field Type kW at 0.8 Power Factor |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Unity | 0.8 | |
| 3600 | 500 | 500 | 400 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 500 | 400 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 350 | 300 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 250 | 200 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 200 | 150 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 150 | 125 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 125 | 100 | 100 |

b. Direct-Current Machines—Direct-current machines built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including:
   1. motors—1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type
   2. generators—1.0 kilowatt per rpm, open type

## 14.1 PROPER SELECTION OF APPARATUS

Machines should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to Parts 10 through 15 of this publication are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driven or driving equipment or the manufacturer of the machine, or both, should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.2 USUAL SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 14.2.1 Environmental Conditions

Machines shall be designed for the following operating site conditions, unless other conditions are specified by the purchaser:

a. Exposure to an ambient temperature in the range of -15°C to 40°C or, when water cooling is used, an ambient temperature range of 5°C (to prevent freezing of water) to 40°C, except for machines rated less than 3/4 hp and all machines other than water cooled having commutator or sleeve bearings for which the minimum ambient temperature is 0°C
b. Exposure to an altitude which does not exceed 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. Installation on a rigid mounting surface
d. Installation in areas or supplementary enclosures which do not seriously interfere with the ventilation of the machine

### 14.2.2 Operating Conditions

a. V-belt drive in accordance with 14.42 for alternating-current motors and with 14.67 for industrial direct-current motors
b. Flat-belt, chain, and gear drives in accordance with 14.7

## 14.3 UNUSUAL SERVICE CONDITIONS

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the motor. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
   1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
   2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt may interfere with normal ventilation
   3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
   4. Nuclear radiation
   5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
   6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
   7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
   8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the motor shaft
b. Operation where:
   1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage or frequency, or both (see 12.44 for alternating current motors and 12.68 for direct-current motors)
   2. The deviation factor of the alternating-current supply voltage exceeds 10 percent
   3. The alternating-current supply voltage is unbalanced by more than 1 percent (see 12.45 and 14.36)
   4. The rectifier output supplying a direct-current motor is unbalanced so that the difference between the highest and lowest peak amplitudes of the current pulses over one cycle exceed 10 percent of the highest pulse amplitude at rated armature current
   5. Low noise levels are required
   6. The power system is not grounded (see 14.31)
c. Operation at speeds above the highest rated speed
d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position
e. Operation where subjected to:
   1. Torsional impact loads
   2. Repetitive abnormal overloads

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

3. Reversing or electric braking
4. Frequent starting (see 12.55)
5. Out-of-phase bus transfer (see 14.45)
6. Frequent short circuits

f. Operation of machine at standstill with any winding continuously energized or of short-time-rated machine with any winding continuously energized

g. Operation of direct-current machine where the average armature current is less than 50 percent of the rated full-load amperes over a 24-hour period, or continuous operation at armature current less than 50 percent of rated current for more than 4 hours

## 14.4 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rises given for machines in 12.43, 12.44, 12.67, and 15.41 are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less and a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. It is also recognized as good practice to use machines at altitudes greater than 3300 feet (1000 meters) as indicated in the following paragraphs.

### 14.4.1 Ambient Temperature at Altitudes for Rated Temperature Rise

Machines having temperature rises in accordance with 12.43, 12.44, 12.67, and 15.41 will operate satisfactorily at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters) in those locations where the decrease in ambient temperature compensates for the increase in temperature rise, as follows:

| Maximum Altitude, Feet (Meters) | Ambient Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| 3300 (1000) | 40 |
| 6600 (2000) | 30 |
| 9900 (3000) | 20 |

### 14.4.2 Motors with Service Factor

Motors having a service factor of 1.15 or higher will operate satisfactorily at unity service factor at an ambient temperature of 40°C at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters) up to 9000 feet (2740 meters).

### 14.4.3 Temperature Rise at Sea Level

Machines which are intended for use at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters) at an ambient temperature of 40°C should have temperature rises at sea level not exceeding the values calculated from the following formula:

When altitude in feet:

$$T_{RSL} = T_{RA}\left[1 - \frac{(Alt - 3300)}{33000}\right]$$

When altitude in meters:

$$T_{RSL} = T_{RA}\left[1 - \frac{(Alt - 1000)}{10000}\right]$$

Where:

$T_{RSL}$ = test temperature rise in degrees C at sea level
$T_{RA}$ = temperature rise in degrees C from the appropriate table in 12.43,12.44, 12.67, 15.41
Alt = altitude above sea level in feet (meters) at which machine is to be operated

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 14.4.4 Preferred Values of Altitude for Rating Motors

Preferred values of altitude are 3300 feet (1000 meters), 6600 feet (2000 meters), 9900 feet (3000 meters), 13200 feet (4000 meters), and 16500 feet (5000 meters).

## 14.5 SHORT-TIME RATED ELECTRICAL MACHINES

Short-time rated electrical machines (see 10.36 and 10.63) should be applied so as to ensure performance without damage. They should be operated at rated load for the specified time rating only when the motor is at ambient temperature prior to the start of operation. They should not be used (except on the recommendation of the manufacturer) on any application where the driven machine may be left running continuously.

## 14.6 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

Facing the end of the machine opposite the drive end, the standard direction of rotation for all nonreversing direct-current motors, all alternating-current single-phase motors, all synchronous motors, and all universal motors shall be counterclockwise. For alternating- and direct-current generators, the rotation shall be clockwise.

This does not apply to polyphase induction motors as most applications on which they are used are of such a nature that either or both directions of rotation may be required, and the phase sequence of the power lines is rarely known.

Where two or more machines are mechanically coupled together, the foregoing standard may not apply to all units.

## 14.7 APPLICATION OF PULLEYS, SHEAVES, SPROCKETS, AND GEARS ON MOTOR SHAFTS

### 14.7.1 Mounting

In general, the closer pulleys, sheaves, sprockets, or gears are mounted to the bearing on the motor shaft, the less will be the load on the bearing. This will give greater assurance of trouble-free service.

The center point of the belt, or system of V-belts, should not be beyond the end of the motor shaft.

The inner edge of the sheave or pulley rim should not be closer to the bearing than the shoulder on the shaft but should be as close to this point as possible.

The outer edge of a chain sprocket or gear should not extend beyond the end of the motor shaft.

### 14.7.2 Minimum Pitch Diameter for Drives Other Than V-Belt

To obtain the minimum pitch diameters for flat-belt, timing-belt, chain, and gear drives, the multiplier given in the following table should be applied to the narrow V-belt sheave pitch diameters in 14.41 for alternating-current general-purpose motors or to the V-belt sheave pitch diameters as determined from 14.67 for industrial direct-current motors:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Drive | Multiplier |
|---|---|
| Flat belt* | 1.33 |
| Timing belt** | 0.9 |
| Chain sprocket | 0.7 |
| Spur gear | 0.75 |
| Helical gear | 0.85 |

*The above multiplier is intended for use with conventional single-ply flat belts. When other than single-ply flat belts are used, the use of a larger multiplier is recommended.

**It is often necessary to install timing belts with a snug fit. However, tension should be no more than that necessary to avoid belt slap or tooth jumping.

### 14.7.3 Maximum Speed of Drive Components

The maximum speed of drive components should not exceed the values recommended by the component manufacturer or the values specified in the industry standards to which the component manufacturer indicates conformance. Speeds above the maximum recommended speed may result in damage to the equipment or injury to personnel.

## 14.8 THROUGH-BOLT MOUNTING

Some motor users have found it to their advantage to case the motor drive end shield as an integral part of the driven machine and, consequently, they purchase the motors without the drive-end shield. In view of the considerable range and variety of stator rabbet diameters, clamp bolt diameters, circle diameters, and clamp bolt sizes among motors of differing manufacture, this type of driven machine construction may seriously limit users' choice of motors suppliers unless adequate machining flexibility has been provided in the design of this end shield.

In order to assist the machine designer in providing such flexibility, the following data have been compiled to give some indication of the range of motor rabbet and clamp bolt circle diameters which may be involved. The following table is based on information supplied by member companies of the NEMA Motor and Generator Section that build motors in these frame sizes:

| | 48 Frame, Inches | 56 Frame, Inches |
|---|---|---|
| Motor Rabbet Diameter: | | |
| Smallest diameter reported ................. | 5.25 | 5.875 |
| Largest diameter reported ................... | 5.625 | 6.5 |
| Over 75 percent of respondents reported diameters within range of ...... | 5.34-5.54 | 6.03-6.34 |
| Motor Clamp Bolt Circle Diameter: | | |
| Smallest diameter reported ................. | 4.875 | 5.5 |
| Largest diameter reported ................... | 5.250 | 6.25 |
| Over 75 percent of respondents reported diameters within range of ....... | 5.00-5.25 | 5.65-5.94 |
| Motor Clamp Bolt Size: | | |
| Smallest diameter reported ................. | #8 | #10 |
| Largest diameter reported ................... | #10 | #10 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.9 RODENT PROTECTION

It is often desirable to provide rodent protection in an open machine in order to retard the entrance of small rodents into the machine. Protection may be provided by limiting the size of the openings giving direct access to the internal parts of the machine by means of screens, baffles, grills, expanded metal, structural parts of the machine, or by other means. The means employed may vary with the size of the machine. In such cases, care should be taken to assure adequate ventilation since restricting the air flow could cause the machine to exceed its temperature rating. Before applying screens, baffles, expanded metal, etc., to a machine for rodent protection, the motor or generator manufacturer should be consulted.

A common construction restricts the openings giving direct access to the interior of the machine so that a 0.312-in. diameter rod cannot enter the opening.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 14
# APPLICATION DATA—AC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS

## 14.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 14 of Section II cover alternating-current motors up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below:

| Synchronous Speed | Motors, Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Motors, Synchronous, Hp Power Factor | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Unity | 0.8 |
| 3600 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 500 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 350 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 250 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 200 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 150 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 125 | 100 |

## 14.30 EFFECTS OF VARIATION OF VOLTAGE AND FREQUENCY UPON THE PERFORMANCE OF INDUCTION MOTORS

### 14.30.1 General

Induction motors are at times operated on circuits of voltage or frequency other than those for which the motors are rated. Under such conditions, the performance of the motor will vary from the rating. The following are some of the operating results caused by small variations of voltage and frequency and are indicative of the general character of changes produced by such variation in operating conditions.

### 14.30.2 Effects of Variation in Voltage on Temperature

With a 10 percent increase or decrease in voltage from that given on the nameplate, the heating at rated horsepower load may increase. Such operation for extended periods of time may accelerate the deterioration of the insulation system.

### 14.30.3 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Power Factor

In a motor of normal characteristics at full rated horsepower load, a 10 percent increase of voltage above that given on the nameplate would usually result in a decided lowering in power factor. A 10 percent decrease of voltage below that given on the nameplate would usually give an increase in power factor.

### 14.30.4 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Starting Torques

The locked-rotor and breakdown torque will be proportional to the square of the voltage applied.

### 14.30.5 Effect of Variation in Voltage on Slip

An increase of 10 percent in voltage will result in a decrease of slip of about 17 percent, while a reduction of 10 percent will result in an increase of slip of about 21 percent. Thus, if the slip at rated voltage were 5 percent, it would be increased to 6.05 percent if the voltage were reduced 10 percent.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 14.30.6 Effects of Variation in Frequency

A frequency higher than the rated frequency usually improves the power factor but decreases locked rotor torque and increases the speed and friction and windage loss. At a frequency lower than the rated frequency, the speed is decreased, locked-rotor torque is increased, and power factor is decreased. For certain kinds of motor load, such as in textile mills, close frequency regulation is essential.

### 14.30.7 Effect of Variations in Both Voltage and Frequency

If variations in both voltage and frequency occur simultaneously, the effect will be superimposed. Thus, if the voltage is high and the frequency low, the locked-rotor torque will be very greatly increased, but the power factor will be decreased and the temperature rise increased with normal load.

### 14.30.8 Effect on Special-Purpose or Small Motors

The foregoing facts apply particularly to general-purpose motors. They may not always be true in connection with special-purpose motors, built for a particular purpose, or for very small motors.

## 14.31 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM

Alternating-current machines are intended for continuous operation with the neutral at or near ground potential. Operation on ungrounded systems with one line at ground potential should be done only for infrequent periods of short duration, for example as required for normal fault clearance. If it is intended to operate the machine continuously or for prolonged periods in such conditions, a special machine with a level of insulation suitable for such operation is required. The motor manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a motor for such an application.

Grounding of the interconnection of the machine neutral points should not be undertaken without consulting the System Designer because of the danger of zero-sequence components of currents of all frequencies under some operating conditions and the possible mechanical damage to the winding under line-to-neutral fault conditions.

Other auxiliary equipment connected to the motor such as, but not limited to, surge capacitors, power factor correction capacitors, or lightning arresters, may not be suitable for use on an ungrounded system and should be evaluated independently.

## 14.32 OPERATION OF ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY OR VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLIES, OR BOTH

### 14.32.1 Performance

Alternating-current motors to be operated from solid state or other types of variable-frequency or variable-voltage power supplies, or both, for adjustable-speed-drive applications may require individual consideration to provide satisfactory performance. Especially for operation below rated speed, it may be necessary to reduce the motor torque load below the rated full-load torque to avoid overheating the motors. The motor manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a motor for such applications (see Parts 30 and 31).

WARNING: Motors operated from variable frequency or variable voltage power supplies, or both, should not be used in any Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations unless:

a. The motor is identified on the nameplate as acceptable for variable speed operation when used in Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations.
b. The actual operating speed range is not outside of the permissible operating speed range marked on the motor nameplate.
c. The actual power supply is consistent with the type of power supply identified in information which is supplied by the motor manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

For motors to be used in any Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

High frequency harmonics of inverters can cause an increase in the level of leakage current in the motor. Therefore, users are cautioned to follow established grounding practices for the motor frame.

Failure to comply with this warning could result in an unsafe installation that could cause damage to property, serious injury or death to personnel, or both.

### 14.32.2 Shaft Voltages

Additional shaft voltages may occur from voltage and current peaks which are superimposed on the symmetrical phase quantities during inverter operation. Experience shows that while this is generally not a problem on this class of machines, shaft voltages higher than 500 millivolts (peak), when tested per IEEE Std 112, may necessitate grounding the shaft and/or insulating a bearing.

## 14.33 EFFECTS OF VOLTAGES OVER 600 VOLTS ON THE PERFORMANCE OF LOW-VOLTAGE MOTORS

Polyphase motors are regularly built for voltage ratings of 575 volts or less (see 10.30) and are expected to operate satisfactorily with a voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent. This means that motors of this insulation level may be successfully applied up to an operating voltage of 635 volts.

Based on motor manufacturers' high-potential tests and performance in the field, it has been found that where utilization voltage exceed 635 volts, the safety factor of the insulation has been reduced to a level inconsistent with good engineering procedure.

In view of the foregoing, motors of this insulation level should not be applied to power systems either with or without grounded neutral where the utilization voltage exceeds 635 volts, regardless of the motor connection employed.

However, there are some definite-purpose motors that are intended for operation on a grounded 830-volt system. Such motors are suitable for 460-volt operation when delta connected and for 796-volt operation when wye connected when the neutral of the system is solidly grounded.

## 14.34 OPERATION OF GENERAL-PURPOSE ALTERNATING-CURRENT POLYPHASE, 2-, 4-, 6-, AND 8-POLE, 60-HERTZ MEDIUM INDUCTION MOTORS OPERATED ON 50 HERTZ

While general-purpose alternating-current polyphase, 2-, 4-, 6-, and 8-pole, 60-hertz medium induction motors are not designed to operate at their 60-hertz ratings on 50-hertz circuits, they are capable of being operated satisfactorily on 50-hertz circuits if their voltage and horsepower ratings are appropriately reduced. When such 60-hertz motors are operated on 50-hertz circuits, the applied voltage at 50 hertz should be reduced to 5/6 of the 60-hertz voltage rating of the motor, and the horsepower load at 50 hertz should be reduced to 5/6 of the 60-hertz horsepower rating of the motor.

When a 60-hertz motor is operated on 50 hertz at 5/6 of the 60-hertz voltage and horsepower ratings, the other performance characteristics for 50-hertz operation are as follows:

### 14.34.1 Speed

The synchronous speed will be 5/6 of the 60-hertz synchronous speed, and the slip will be 5/6 of the 60-hertz slip.

### 14.34.2 Torques

The rated load torque in pound-feet will be approximately the same as the 60-hertz rated load torque in pound-feet. The locked-rotor and breakdown torques in pound-feet of 50-hertz motors will be approximately the same as the 60-hertz locked-rotor and breakdown torques in pound-feet.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 14.34.3 Locked-Rotor Current

The locked-rotor current (amperes) will be approximately 5 percent less than the 60-hertz locked-rotor current (amperes). The code letter appearing on the motor nameplate to indicate locked-rotor kVA per horsepower applies only to the 60-hertz rating of the motor.

### 14.34.4 Service Factor

The service factor will be 1.0.

### 14.34.5 Temperature Rise

The temperature rise will not exceed 90°C (see 14.30).

## 14.35 OPERATION OF 230-VOLT INDUCTION MOTORS ON 208-VOLT SYSTEMS

### 14.35.1 General

Induction motors intended for operation on 208-volt systems should be rated for 200 volts.

Operation of a motor rated 230 volts on a 208-volt system is not recommended (except as described in 14.35.2) because utilization voltages are commonly encountered below the –10 percent tolerance on the voltage rating for which the motor is designed. Such operation will generally result in overheating and serious reduction in torques.

### 14.35.2 Nameplate Marking of Useable @ 200 V

Motors rated 230 volts, but capable of operating satisfactorily on 208 volt systems shall be permitted to be labeled "Usable at 200 Volts." Motors so marked shall be suitable for operation at rated (1.0 service factor) horsepower at a utilization voltage of 200 volts at rated frequency, with a temperature rise not exceeding the values given in 12.44, item a.2., for the class of insulation system furnished. The service factor, horsepower, and corresponding value of current shall be marked on the nameplate; i.e. "Usable @ 200 V. ________ hp, ________ amps, 1.0 S.F."

### 14.35.3 Effects on Performance of Motor

When operated on a 208 volt system the motor slip will increase approximately 30% and the motor locked-rotor, pull-up and breakdown torque values will be reduced by approximately 20-30%. Therefore, it should be determined that the motor will start and accelerate the connected load without injurious heating, and that the breakdown torque is adequate for the application.

NOTE—Utilization voltage tolerance is 200 minus 5% (190 volts) - Ref. ANSI C84.1. "Voltage Range A." Performance within this voltage tolerance will not necessarily be in accordance with that stated in 14.35.2.

## 14.36 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

When the line voltages applied to a polyphase induction motor are not equal, unbalanced currents in the stator windings will result. A small percentage voltage unbalance will result in a much larger percentage current unbalance. Consequently, the temperature rise of the motor operating at a particular load and percentage voltage unbalance will be greater than for the motor operating under the same conditions with balanced voltages.

Voltages preferably should be evenly balanced as closely as can be read on a voltmeter. Should voltages be unbalanced, the rated horsepower of the motor should be multiplied by the factor shown in Figure 14 to reduce the possibility of damage to the motor. Operation of the motor above a 5-percent voltage unbalance condition is not recommended.

When the derating curve of Figure 14-1 is applied for operation on unbalanced voltages, the selection and setting of the overload device should take into account the combination of the derating factor applied to the motor and increase in current resulting from the unbalanced voltages. This is a complex problem involving the variation in motor current as a function of load and voltage unbalance in addition to the

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

characteristics of the overload devices relative to $I_{maximum}$ or $I_{average}$. In the absence of specific information, it is recommended that overload devices be selected or adjusted, or both, at the minimum value that does not result in tripping for the derating factor and voltage unbalance that applies. When unbalanced voltages are anticipated, it is recommended that the overload devices be selected so as to be responsive to $I_{maximum}$ in preference to overload devices responsive to $I_{average}$.

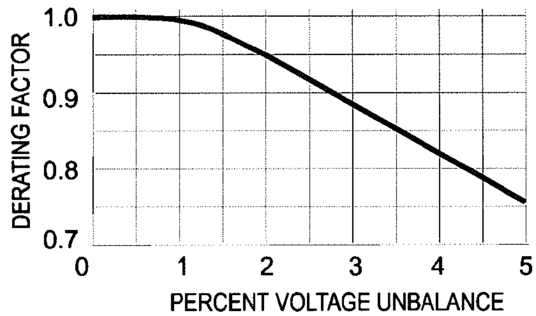



**Figure 14-1**
**MEDIUM MOTOR DERATING FACTOR DUE TO UNBALANCED VOLTAGE**

### 14.36.1 Effect on Performance—General

The effect of unbalanced voltages on polyphase induction motors is equivalent to the introduction of a "negative sequence voltage" having a rotation opposite to that occurring with balanced voltages. This negative sequence voltage produces in the air gap a flux rotating against the rotation of the rotor, tending to produce high currents. A small negative-sequence voltage may produce in the windings currents considerably in excess of those present under balanced voltage conditions.

### 14.36.2 Unbalance Defined

The voltage unbalance in percent may be defined as follows:

$$\text{percent voltage unbalance} = 100 \text{ x } \frac{\text{maximum voltage deviation from average voltage}}{\text{average voltage}}$$

EXAMPLE: With voltages of 460, 467, and 450, the average is 459, the maximum deviation from average is 9, and the percent unbalance = $100 \text{ x } \frac{9}{459} = 1.96$ percent.

### 14.36.3 Torques

The locked-rotor torque and breakdown torque are decreased when the voltage is unbalanced. If the voltage unbalance should be extremely severe, the torques might not be adequate for the application.

### 14.36.4 Full-Load Speed

The full-load speed is reduced slightly when the motor operates with unbalanced voltages.

### 14.36.5 Currents

The locked-rotor current will be unbalanced to the same degree that the voltages are unbalanced, but the locked-rotor kVA will increase only slightly.

The currents at normal operating speed with unbalanced voltages will be greatly unbalanced in the order of approximately 6 to 10 times the voltage unbalance.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.37 APPLICATION OF ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS WITH SERVICE FACTORS

### 14.37.1 General

A general-purpose alternating-current motor or any alternating-current motor having a service factor in accordance with 12.52 is suitable for continuous operation at rated load under the usual service conditions given in 14.2. When the voltage and frequency are maintained at the value specified on the nameplate, the motor may be overloaded up to the horsepower obtained by multiplying the rated horsepower by the service factor shown on the nameplate.

When the motor is operated at any service factor greater than 1, it may have efficiency, power factor, and speed different from those at rated load, but the locked-rotor torque and current and breakdown torque will remain unchanged.

A motor operating continuously at any service factor greater than 1 will have a reduced life expectancy compared to operating at its rated nameplate horsepower. Insulation life and bearing life are reduced by the service factor load.

### 14.37.2 Temperature Rise—Medium Alternating-Current Motors

When operated at the service-factor load, the motor will have a temperature rise as specified in 12.44, item a.2.

### 14.37.3 Temperature Rise—Small Alternating-Current Motors

When operated at the service-factor load, the motor will have a temperature rise as specified in 12.43.1.

## 14.38 CHARACTERISTICS OF PART-WINDING-START POLYPHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

The result of energizing a portion of the primary windings of a polyphase induction motor will depend upon how this portion is distributed in the motor and, in some cases, may do nothing more than overload the portion of the winding so energized (i.e., result in no noticeable reduction of current or torque). For this reason, a standard 230/460 volt dual voltage motor may or may not be satisfactory for part-winding starting on a 240-volt circuit.

When the winding is distributed so as to be satisfactory for part-winding starting, a commonly used connection results in slightly less than 50 percent of normal locked-rotor torque and approximately 60 percent of normal locked-rotor current. It is evident that the torque may be insufficient to start the motor if it has much friction load. This is not important in applications where it is permissible to draw the full-winding starting current from the system in two increments. (If actual values of torque and current are important, they should be obtained from the motor manufacturer.)

When the partial winding is energized, the motor may not accelerate to full speed. On part winding, it can at best develop less than half the torque it is capable of on full winding and usually the speed-torque characteristic is adversely affected by harmonics resulting from the unbalanced magnetic circuit. Further, the permissible accelerating time on part winding may be less than on full winding because of the higher current in the portion of the winding energized. However, in the usual application, the remainder of the winding is energized a few seconds after the first portion, and the motor then accelerates and runs smoothly. During the portion of the accelerating period that the motor is on part winding, it may be expected to be noisier than when on full winding.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.39 COUPLING END-PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR HORIZONTAL ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTORS

### 14.39.1 Preferred Ratings for Motors with Ball Bearings

It is recommended that motors be provided with ball bearings wherever applicable, particularly for the ratings indicated in the following table.

| Motor Hp | Synchronous Speed of Motors, Rpm |
|---|---|
| 500 and below | 3600, 3000, 1800, and 1500 |
| 350 and below | 1200 and 1000 |
| 250 and below | 900 and 750 |
| 200 and below | 720 and below |

### 14.39.2 Limits for Motors with Sleeve Bearing

Where motors are provided with sleeve bearings, the motor bearings and limited-end float coupling should be applied as indicated in the following table:

| Motor Hp | Synchronous Speed of Motors, Rpm | Min. Motor Rotor End Float, Inch | Max. Coupling End Float, Inch |
|---|---|---|---|
| 125 to 250, incl. | 3600 and 3000 | 0.25 | 0.09 |
| 300 to 500, incl. | 3600 and 3000 | 0.50 | 0.19 |
| 125 to 500, incl. | 1800 and below | 0.25 | 0.09 |

### 14.39.3 Drawing and Shaft Markings

To facilitate the assembly of driven equipment sleeve bearing motors on frames 440 and larger, the motor manufacturer should:

a. Indicate on the motor outline drawing the minimum motor rotor end-play in inches
b. Mark rotor end-play limits on motor shaft

NOTE—The motor and the driven equipment should be assembled and adjusted at the installation site so that there will be some endwise clearance in the motor bearing under all operating conditions. The difference between the rotor end-play and the end-float in the coupling allows for expansion and contraction in the driven equipment, for clearance in the driven equipment thrust bearing, for endwise movement in the coupling, and for assembly.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.40 OUTPUT SPEEDS FOR MEDIUM GEAR MOTORS OF PARALLEL CONSTRUCTION

**Output Speeds**
**(Based on Assumed Operating Speed of 1750 rpm)**

| Nominal Gear Ratios | Output Speeds | Nominal Gear Ratios | Output Speeds |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.225 | 1430 | 25.628 | 68 |
| 1.500 | 1170 | 31.388 | 56 |
| 1.837 | 950 | 38.442 | 45 |
| 2.250 | 780 | 47.082 | 37 |
| 2.756 | 640 | 57.633 | 30 |
| 3.375 | 520 | 70.623 | 25 |
| 4.134 | 420 | 86.495 | 20 |
| 5.062 | 350 | 105.934 | 16.5 |
| 6.200 | 280 | 129.742 | 13.5 |
| 7.594 | 230 | 158.900 | 11.0 |
| 9.300 | 190 | 194.612 | 9.0 |
| 11.390 | 155 | 238.350 | 7.5 |
| 13.950 | 125 | 291.917 | 6.0 |
| 17.086 | 100 | 357.525 | 5.0 |
| 20.926 | 84 | 437.875 | 4.0 |

These output speeds are based on an assumed operating speed of 1750 rpm and certain nominal gear ratios and will be modified:

a. By the variation in individual motor speeds from the basic operating speed of 1750 rpm
(The same list of output speeds may be applied to 50-hertz gear motors when employing motors of 1500 rpm synchronous speed if an assumed motor operating speed of 1430 rpm is used.)
(This list of output speeds may be applied to 60-hertz gear motors when employing motors of 1200 rpm synchronous speed if an assumed motor operating speed of 1165 rpm is used.)
b. By a variation in the exact gear ratio from the nominal, which variation will not change the output speed by more than plus or minus 3 percent

## 14.41 APPLICATION OF MEDIUM ALTERNATING-CURRENT SQUIRREL-CAGE MACHINES WITH SEALED WINDINGS

### 14.41.1 Usual Service Conditions

Medium alternating-current squirrel-cage machines with sealed windings are generally suitable for exposure to the following environmental conditions:

a. High humidity
b. Water spray and condensation
c. Detergents and mildly corrosive chemicals
d. Mildly abrasive nonmagnetic air-borne dust in quantities insufficient to impede proper ventilation or mechanical operation

### 14.41.2 Unusual Service Conditions

For environmental conditions other than those listed in 14.41.1, the machine manufacturer should be consulted. Such conditions may include the following:

a. Salt spray
b. Oils, greases, fats, and solvents
c. Severely abrasive nonmagnetic dusts

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

d. Vibration
e. Occasional submergence in water with the motor not running

### 14.41.3 Hazardous Locations

The use of machines with sealed windings in hazardous areas does not obviate the need for other constructional features dictated by requirements for the areas involved.

NOTE—See 12.44, item a.4, for temperature rating.

## 14.42 APPLICATION OF V-BELT SHEAVES TO ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS

### 14.42.1 Dimensions

#### 14.42.1.1 Selected Motor Ratings

Alternating-current motors having antifriction bearings and a continuous time rating with the frame sizes, horsepower, and speed ratings listed in Table 14-1 are designed to operate with V-belt sheaves within the limited dimensions listed. Selection of V-belt sheave dimensions is made by the V-belt drive vendor and the motor purchaser but, to ensure satisfactory motor operation, the selected diameter shall be not smaller than, nor shall the selected width be greater than, the dimensions listed in Table 14-1.

#### 14.42.1.2 Other Motor Ratings

For motors having speeds and ratings other than those given in Table 14-1, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

### 14.42.2 Radial Overhung Load Limitations

The maximum allowable radial overhung load for horizontal motors with antifriction ball bearings are given in Table 14-1A. These limits should not be exceeded. Bearing and shaft failure constitute a safety hazard and safeguards suitable to each application should be taken.

Table 14-1A shows limits for loads applied at the center of the N-W dimension and a reduction factor for loads applied at the end of the shaft. See 14.7 for further information on the mounting of sheaves.

Applications which result in a thrust or axial load component including vertical motors, are not covered by Table 14-1A. The motor manufacturer should be consulted concerning these applications, as well as applications which exceed the specified radial overhung load limit or for which a B-10 life other than 26,280 hours is required.

## 14.43 ASEISMATIC CAPABILITY

See 20.31.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 14-1**
**MEDIUM MOTORS—POLYPHASE INDUCTION*†**

| | Horsepower at Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | V-belt Sheave** Conventional A, B, C, and D †† | | V-belt Sheave** Narrow 3V, 5V, and 8V*** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frame Number | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | Minimum Pitch Diameter, Inches | Maximum Width Inches♦ | Minimum Outside Diameter, Inches | Maximum Width, Inches# |
| 143T | 1-1/2 | 1 | 3/4 | 1/2 | 2.2 | | 2.2 | |
| 145T | 2-3 | 1-1/2-2 | 1 | 3/4 | 2.4 | | 2.4 | |
| 182T | 3 | 3 | 1-1/2 | 1 | 2.4 | | 2.4 | |
| 182T | 5 | ... | ... | ... | 2.6 | | 2.4 | |
| 184T | ... | ... | 2 | 1-1/2 | 2.4 | | 2.4 | |
| 184T | 5 | ... | ... | ... | 2.6 | | 2.4 | |
| 184T | 7-1/2 | 5 | ... | ... | 3.0 | | 3.0 | |
| 213T | 7-1/2-10 | 7-1/2 | 3 | 2 | 3.0 | | 3.0 | |
| 215T | 10 | ... | 5 | 3 | 3.0 | | 3.0 | |
| 215T | 15 | 10 | ... | ... | 3.8 | | 3.8 | |
| 254T | 15 | ... | 7-1/2 | 5 | 3.8 | | 3.8 | |
| 254T | 20 | 15 | ... | ... | 4.4 | | 4.4 | |
| 256T | 20-25 | ... | 10 | 7-1/2 | 4.4 | | 4.4 | |
| 256T | ... | 20 | ... | ... | 4.6 | | 4.4 | |
| 284T | ... | ... | 15 | 10 | 4.6 | | 4.4 | |
| 284T | ... | 25 | ... | ... | 5.0 | | 4.4 | |
| 286T | ... | 30 | 20 | 15 | 5.4 | | 5.2 | |
| 324T | ... | 40 | 25 | 20 | 6.0 | | 6.0 | |
| 326T | ... | 50 | 30 | 25 | 6.8 | | 6.8 | |
| 364T | ... | ... | 40 | 30 | 6.8 | | 6.8 | |
| 364T | ... | 60 | ... | ... | 7.4 | | 7.4 | |
| 365T | ... | ... | 50 | 40 | 8.2 | | 8.2 | |
| 365T | ... | 75 | ... | ... | 9.0 | | 8.6 | |
| 404T | ... | ... | 60 | ... | 9.0 | | 8.0 | |
| 404T | ... | ... | ... | 50 | 9.0 | | 8.4 | |
| 404T | ... | 100 | ... | ... | 10.0 | | 8.6 | |
| 405T | ... | ... | 75 | 60 | 10.0 | | 10.0 | |
| 405T | ... | 100 | ... | ... | 10.0 | | 8.6 | |
| 405T | ... | 125 | ... | ... | 11.5 | | 10.5 | |
| 444T | ... | ... | 100 | ... | 11.0 | | 10.0 | |
| 444T | ... | ... | ... | 75 | 10.5 | | 9.5 | |
| 444T | ... | 125 | ... | ... | 11.0 | | 9.5 | |
| 444T | ... | 150 | ... | ... | ... | | 10.5 | |
| 445T | ... | ... | 125 | ... | 12.5 | | 12.0 | |
| 445T | ... | ... | ... | 100 | 12.5 | | 12.0 | |
| 445T | ... | 150 | ... | ... | ... | | 10.5 | |
| 445T | ... | 200 | ... | ... | ... | | 13.2 | |

*For the maximum speed of the drive components, see 14.7.3.
†For the assignment of horsepower and speed ratings to frames, see Part 13.
**Sheave dimensions are based on the following:
a. Motor nameplate horsepower and speed
b. Belt service factor of 1.6 with belts tightened to belt manufacturers' recommendations
c. Speed reduction of 5:1
d. Mounting of sheave on motor shaft in accordance with 14.7
e. Center-to-center distance between sheaves approximately equal to the diameter of the larger sheave
f. Calculations based upon standards covered by the †† and *** footnotes, as applicable
♦ The width of the sheave shall be not greater than that required to transmit the indicated horsepower but in no case shall it be wider than 2(N-W) - 0.25.
*** As covered by Standard Specifications for Drives Using Narrow V-Belts (3V, 5V, and 8V)[1].
#The width of the sheave shall be not greater than that required to transmit the indicated horsepower but in no case shall it be wider than (N-W).
††As covered by Engineering Standards Specifications for Drives Using Multiple V-Belts (A, B, C, and D Cross Sections)[1]
[1]See 1.1, The Rubber Manufacturers Association.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 14-1A**
**SHAFT LOADING FOR AC INDUCTION HORIZONTAL MOTORS WITH BALL BEARINGS - MAXIMUM RADIAL OVERHUNG LOAD, IN POUNDS, AT CENTER OF N-W DIMENSION**

| Frame Number | Synchronous Speed 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143T | 106 | 154 | 179 | 192 |
| 145T | 109 | 154 | 176 | 196 |
| 182T | 180 | 227 | 260 | 287 |
| 184T | 180 | 227 | 260 | 289 |
| 213T | 230 | 300 | 350 | 380 |
| 215T | 230 | 300 | 350 | 380 |
| 254T | 470 | 593 | 703 | 774 |
| 256T | 470 | 589 | 705 | 776 |
| 284T | 570 | 735 | 838 | 929 |
| 286T | 570 | 735 | 838 | 929 |
| 324T | 660 | 860 | 990 | 1100 |
| 326T | 660 | 850 | 980 | 1090 |
| 364T | 820 | 1080 | 1240 | 1390 |
| 365T | 820 | 1080 | 1240 | 1370 |
| 404T | | 1270 | 1450 | 1600 |
| 405T | | 1290 | 1480 | 1630 |
| 444T | | 1560 | 1760 | 1970 |
| 445T | | 1520 | 1760 | 1970 |
| 447T | | 1450 | 1660 | 1880 |
| 449T | | 1490 | 1660 | 1880 |

NOTES—
1. All belt loads are considered to act in vertically downward direction.
2. Overhung loads include belt tension and weight of sheave.
3. For load at end of the shaft subtract 15%.
4. Radial overhung load limits based on bearing L-10 life of 26,280 hours.
5. Overhung load limits do not include any effect of unbalanced magnetic pull.
6. See 14.42 for additional application information

## 14.44 POWER FACTOR OF THREE-PHASE, SQUIRREL-CAGE, MEDIUM MOTORS WITH CONTINUOUS RATINGS

### 14.44.1 Determination of Power Factor from Nameplate Data

The approximately full-load power factor can be calculated from published or nameplate data as follows:

$$PF = \frac{431 \text{ x hp}}{\text{E x I x Eff}}$$

Where:
PF = Per unit power factor at full load

$$\left(\text{per unit PF} = \frac{\text{Percent PF}}{100}\right)$$

hp = Rated horsepower

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

E = Rated voltage
I = Rated current
Eff = Per unit nominal full-load efficiency from published data or as marked on the motor nameplate

$$\left(\text{per unit Eff} = \frac{\text{Percent Eff}}{100}\right)$$

**14.44.2 Determination of Capacitor Rating for Correcting Power Factor to Desired Value**

For safety reasons, it is generally better to improve power factor for multiple loads as a part of the plant distribution system. In those cases where local codes or other circumstances require improving the power factor of an individual motor, the KVAR rating of the improvement capacitor may be calculated as follows:

$$KVAR = \frac{0.746 \times HP}{Eff} \times \left( \frac{\sqrt{1-(PF)^2}}{PF} - \frac{\sqrt{1-(PF_i)^2}}{PF_i} \right)$$

Where:
KVAR = Rating of three-phase power factor improvement capacitor
hp = As defined in 14.44.1
Eff = As defined in 14.44.1
PF = As defined in 14.44.1
$PF_i$ = Improved per unit power factor for the motor-capacitor combination

**14.44.3 Determination of Corrected Power Factor for Specified Capacitor Rating**

In some cases, it may be desirable to determine the resultant power factor, $PF_i$, where the power factor improvement capacitor selected within the maximum safe value specified by the motor manufacturer is known. The resultant full-load power factor, $PF_i$, may be calculated from the following:

$$PF_i = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\left( \frac{\sqrt{1-(PF)^2}}{PF} - \frac{KVAR \times Eff}{0.746 \times HP} \right)^2 + 1}}$$

WARNING: In no case should power factor improvement capacitors be applied in ratings exceeding the maximum safe value specified by the motor manufacturer. Excessive improvement may cause overexcitation resulting in high transient voltages, currents, and torques that can increase safety hazards to personnel and cause possible damage to the motor or to the driven equipment.

**14.44.4 Application of Power Factor Correction Capacitors on Power Systems**

The proper application of power capacitors to a bus with harmonic currents requires an analysis of the power system to avoid potential harmonic resonance of the power capacitors in combination with transformer and circuit inductance. For power distribution systems which have several motors connected to a bus, power capacitors connected to the bus rather than switched with individual motors is recommended to minimize the potential combinations of capacitance and inductance, and to simplify the application of any tuning filters that may be required. This requires that such bus-connected capacitor bands be sized so that proper bus voltage limits are maintained.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 14.44.5 Application of Power Factor Correction Capacitors on Motors Operated from Electronic Power Supply

The use of power capacitors for power factor correction on the load side of an electronic power supply connected to an induction motor is not recommended. The proper application of such capacitors requires an analysis of the motor, electronic power supply, and load characteristics as a function of speed to avoid potential overexcitation of the motor, harmonic resonance, and capacitor overvoltage. For such applications the drive manufacturer should be consulted.

## 14.45 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING

See 20.34.

## 14.46 ROTOR INERTIA FOR DYNAMIC BRAKING

The rotor inertia ($Wk^2$) in lb-ft$^2$ for the application of medium ac induction motors with dynamic braking equipment may be estimated by the following formula:

$$Wk^2 = \left[0.02 \times 2^{\left[\frac{Poles}{2}\right]} \times HP^{\left[1.35 - 0.05 \times \frac{Poles}{2}\right]}\right]$$

## 14.47 EFFECTS OF LOAD ON MOTOR EFFICIENCY

The efficiency of polyphase induction motors varies from zero at no load to a maximum value near rated load and then decreases as load increases further. The efficiency versus load curves in Figure 14-2 illustrate the typical profile of efficiency variation for various motor ratings from no load to 125% of rated load. Actual values of motor efficiencies at various load levels can be obtained by consulting the motor manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

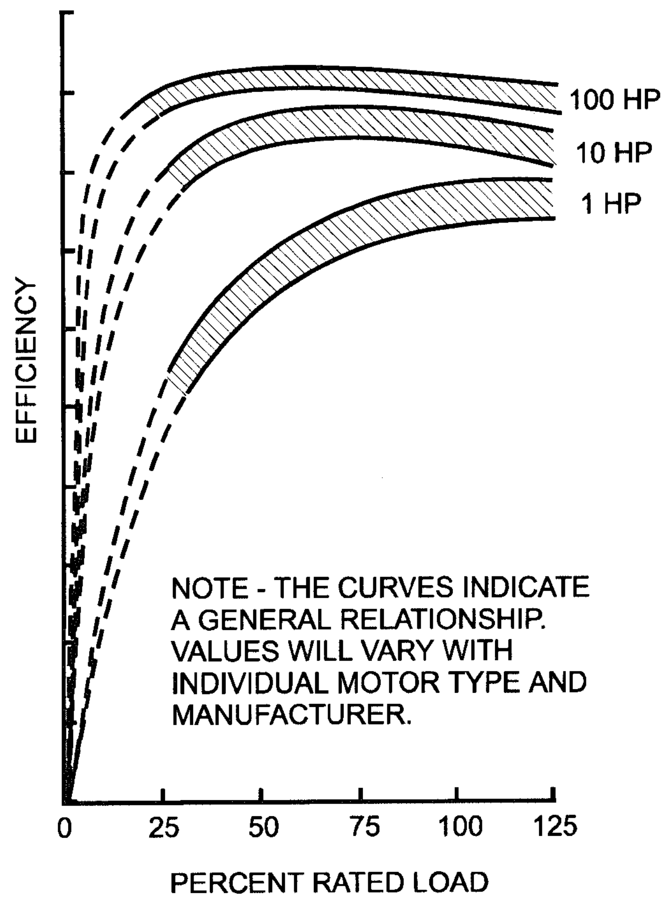



**Figure 14-2**
**TYPICAL EFFICIENCY VERSUS LOAD CURVES FOR 1800-RPM THREE-PHASE 60-HERTZ DESIGN B SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 14
# APPLICATION DATA—DC SMALL AND MEDIUM MOTORS

## 14.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 14 of Section II cover direct-current motors built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open-type.

## 14.60 OPERATION OF SMALL MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT

### 14.60.1 General

When direct-current small motors intended for use on adjustable-voltage electronic power supplies are operated from rectified power sources, the pulsating voltage and current wave forms affect motor performance characteristics (see 14.61). Because of this, the motors should be designed or specially selected to suit this type of operation.

A motor may be used with any power supply if the combination results in a form factor at rated load equal to or less than the motor rated form factor.

A combination of a power supply and a motor which results in a form factor at rated load greater than the motor rated form factor will cause overheating of the motor and will have an adverse effect on commutation.

There are many types of power supplies which can be used; including:

a. Single-phase, half-wave
b. Single-phase, half-wave, back rectifier
c. Single-phase, half-wave, alternating-current voltage controlled
d. Single-phase, full-wave, firing angle controlled
e. Single-phase, full-wave, firing angle controlled, back rectifier
f. Three-phase, half-wave, voltage controlled
g. Three-phase, half-wave, firing angle controlled

It is impractical to design a motor or to list a standard motor for each type of power supply. The combination of power supply and motor must be considered. The resulting form factor of the combination is a measure of the effect of the rectified voltage on the motor current as it influences the motor performance characteristics, such as commutation and heating.

### 14.60.2 Form Factor

The form factor of the current is the ratio of the root mean-square value of the current to the average value of the current.

Armature current form factor of a motor-rectifier circuit may be determined by measuring the rms armature current (using an electrothermic instrument,[1] electrodynamic instrument,[1] or other true rms responding instrument) and the average armature current (using a permanent-magnet moving-coil instrument).[1] The armature current form factor will vary with changes in load, speed, and circuit adjustment.

[1]These terms are taken from IEEE Std 100.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Armature current form factor of a motor-rectifier circuit may be determined by calculation. For this purpose, the inductance of the motor armature circuit should be known or estimated, including the inductance of any components in the power supply which are in series with the motor armature. The value of the motor inductance will depend upon the horsepower, speed, and voltage ratings and the enclosure of the motor and should be obtained from the motor manufacturer. The method of calculation of the armature current form factor should take into account the parameters of the circuit, such as the number of phases, the firing angle, half-wave, with or without back rectifier, etc., and whether or not the current is continuous or discontinuous. Some methods of calculation are described in 14.62.

Ranges of armature current form factors on some commonly used motor-rectifier circuits and recommended rated form factors of motors associated with these ranges are given in Table 14-2.

**Table 14-2**
**RECOMMENDED RATED FORM FACTORS**

| Typical Combination of Power source and Rectifier Type | Range of Armature Current Form Factors* | Recommended Rated Form Factors of Motors |
|---|---|---|
| **Single-phase thyristor (SCR) or thyratron with or without back rectifiers:** | | |
| Half-wave | 1.86-2 | 2 |
| Half-wave | 1.71-1.85 | 1.85 |
| Half-wave or full-wave | 1.51-1.7 | 1.7 |
| Full-wave | 1.41-1.5 | 1.5 |
| Full-wave | 1.31-1.4 | 1.4 |
| Full-wave | 1.21-1.3 | 1.3 |
| **Three-phase thyristor (SCR) or Thyratron with or without back rectifiers:** | | |
| Half-wave | 1.11-1.2 | 1.2 |
| Full-wave | 1.0-1.1 | 1.1 |

*The armature current form factor may be reduced by filters or other circuit means which will allow the use of a motor with a lower rated form factor.

## 14.61 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MEDIUM MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT

When a direct-current medium motor is operated from a rectified alternating-current supply, its performance may differ materially from that of the same motor when operated from a low-ripple direct-current source of supply, such as a generator or a battery. The pulsating voltage and current waveforms may increase temperature rise and noise and adversely affect commutation and efficiency. Because of these effects, it is necessary that direct-current motors be designed or specially selected to operate on the particular type of rectified supply to be used.

Part 10.60 describes the basis of rating direct-current motors intended for use with rectifier power supplies. These ratings are based upon tests of the motors using a test power supply specified in 12.66 because these power supplies are in common use. It is impractical to design a motor or develop a standard for every type of power supply.

A motor may, under some conditions, be applied to a power supply different from that used for the test power supply as the basis of rating. All direct-current motors intended for use on rectifier power supplies may be used on low-ripple power supplies such as a direct-current generator or a battery.

Because the letters used to identify the power supplies in common use have been chosen in alphabetical order of increasing magnitude of ripple current, a motor rated on the basis of one of these power supplies

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

may be used on any power supply designated by a lower letter of the alphabet. For example, a motor rated on the basis of an "E" power supply may be used on a "C" or "D" power supply.

If it is desired to use a motor on a power supply designated by a higher letter of the alphabet than the one on which it was rated, it may be necessary to add an inductance external to the motor to limit the ripple current to the magnitude implied by the motor rating.

For operation of direct-current motors on power supplies other than those described in 12.65, the combination of the power supply and the motor should be considered in consultation with the motor manufacturer.

## 14.62 ARMATURE CURRENT RIPPLE

Peak-to-peak armature current ripple is defined as the difference between the maximum value of the current waveform and the minimum value. The peak-to-peak armature current ripple may be expressed as a percent of the average armature current. The peak-to-peak armature current ripple is best measured on an oscilloscope incorporating capability for reading both direct-current and alternating-current values. An alternative method is to use a peak-to-peak-reading voltmeter, reading the voltage drop across a non-inductive resistance in series with the armature circuit.

The rms value of the ripple current cannot be derived from peak-to-peak values with any degree of accuracy because of variations in current waveform, and the converse relationship of deriving peak-to-peak values from rms values is at least equally inaccurate.

Armature current ripple of a motor-rectifier circuit may be estimated by calculation. For this purpose, the inductance of the motor armature circuit must be known or estimated, including the inductance of any components in the power supply which are in series with the motor armature. The value of the motor inductance will depend upon the horsepower, speed and voltage rating and the enclosure of the motor and must be obtained from the motor manufacturer. The method of calculation of the armature current ripple should take into account the parameters of the circuit, such as the number of phases, the firing angle, half-wave, with or without back rectifier, etc., and whether or not the current is continuous or discontinuous. Some methods of calculation are described in the following references:

"Characteristics of Phase-controlled Bridge Rectifiers with DC Shunt Motor Load" by R.W. Pfaff, AIEE Paper 58-40, *AIEE Transactions*, Vol. 77, Part II, pp. 49-53.

"The Armature Current Form Factor of a DC Motor Connected to a Controlled Rectifier" by E.F. Kubler, AIEE Paper 59-128, *AIEE Transactions*, Vol. 78, Part IIIA, pp. 764-770.

The armature current ripple may be reduced by filtering or other circuit means. A reduction in the rms armature current ripple reduces the heating of a motor, while a reduction in peak-to-peak armature current ripple improves the commutating ability of the motor.

## 14.63 OPERATION ON A VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY

The temperature rise of motors, when operated at full-load torque and at reduced armature voltage, will vary with the construction, with the enclosure, with the percentage of base speed and with the type of power supply. All self-ventilated and totally-enclosed motors suffer a loss of heat dissipating ability as the speed is reduced below the rated base speed, and this may require that the torque load be reduced to avoid overheating of the motor. In addition to this effect, it is characteristic of some rectifier circuits that the armature current ripple at rated current increases as the armature voltage is reduced, and this may require further load torque reduction. In general, such motors are capable of operation at 67 percent of rated torque at 50 percent of base speed without injurious heating. It is impractical to develop a standard for motors so operated, but derating data can be obtained from the motor manufacturer to determine if the motor will be satisfactory for a particular application.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

WARNING: Motors operated from variable voltage power supplies, should not be used in any Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations unless:

a. The motor is identified on the nameplate as acceptable for variable speed operation when used in Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations.
b. The actual operating speed range is not outside of the permissible operating speed range marked on the motor nameplate.
c. The actual power supply is consistent with the type of power supply identified in information which is supplied by the motor manufacturer.

For motors to be used in any Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

Failure to comply with this warning could result in an unsafe installation that could cause damage to property, serious injury or death to personnel, or both.

## 14.64 SHUNT FIELD HEATING AT STANDSTILL

In some applications of direct-current motors, the user may want to apply voltage to the shunt field winding during periods when the motor is stationary and the armature circuit is not energized. The percent of rated shunt field voltage and the duration of standstill excitation which a direct-current motor is capable of withstanding without excessive temperature will vary depending upon the size, enclosure, rating, and type of direct-current motor.

Some direct-current motors are designed to be capable of continuous excitation of the shunt field at standstill with rated field voltage applied. Under this condition, the shunt field temperature may exceed rated temperature rise, and prolonged operation under this condition may result in reduced insulation life.

Other direct-current motors require that the excitation voltage applied be reduced below the rated value if prolonged standstill excitation is planned to avoid excessive shunt field temperature.

The motor manufacturer should be consulted to obtain the heating capability of a particular direct-current motor.

## 14.65 BEARING CURRENTS

When a direct-current motor is operated from some unfiltered rectifier power supplies, bearing currents may result. Ripple currents, transmitted by capacitive coupling between the rotor winding and the core, may flow through the ground path to the transformer secondary. While these currents are small in magnitude, they may cause damage to either antifriction or sleeve bearings under certain circumstances.

## 14.66 EFFECT OF 50-HERTZ ALTERNATING-CURRENT POWER FREQUENCY

If a direct-current medium motor is to be applied to a rectifier system having a 50-hertz input frequency where the test power supply used as the basis of rating has a 60-hertz input frequency, the magnitude of the current ripple may be affected. In general, when other factors are equal, the ripple magnitude will be in approximate inverse ratio of the frequencies. A number of methods exist for compensating for the increase in ripple:

a. Add an external inductance equal to 20 percent of the original armature circuit inductance (including the motor) to obtain the same magnitude of ripple current as is obtained with the test power supply.

b. Utilize a motor designed for use on a 50-hertz test power supply.

c. Derate the horsepower rating of the motor.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

d. Select a different power supply such that the current ripple at 50 hertz will not exceed the current ripple of the test power supply.

Data should be obtained from the motor manufacturer to determine if the motor will be satisfactory for a particular application.

## 14.67 APPLICATION OF OVERHUNG LOADS TO MOTOR SHAFTS

### 14.67.1 Limitations

Figure 14-3 shows minimum design limits for overhung loads for dc motors having shaft extensions designated by the frame subscript AT. These limits should not be exceeded. Bearing and shaft failure constitute a safety hazard and safeguards suitable to each application should be taken.

Figure 14-3 shows limits for loads applied at the end of the shaft and at the center of the N-W dimension. In general, the closer the load is applied to the motor bearing the less will be the load on the bearing and the greater the assurance of trouble-free service. The center of the load should not be beyond the end of the shaft.

In the case of a sheave or pulley, the inner edge should not be closer to the bearing than the shoulder on the shaft but should be as close to this point as possible.

In the case of chain sprocket or gears, the outer edge of the sprocket or gear should not extend beyond the end of the motor shaft.

Shaft loads due to the weight of flywheels or other heavy shaft mounted components are not covered by Figure 14-3. Such loads affect system natural frequencies and should only be undertaken after consultation with the motor manufacturer.

Applications which result in a thrust or axial component of load such as helical gears are also not covered by Figure 14-3. The motor manufacturer should be consulted concerning these applications.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

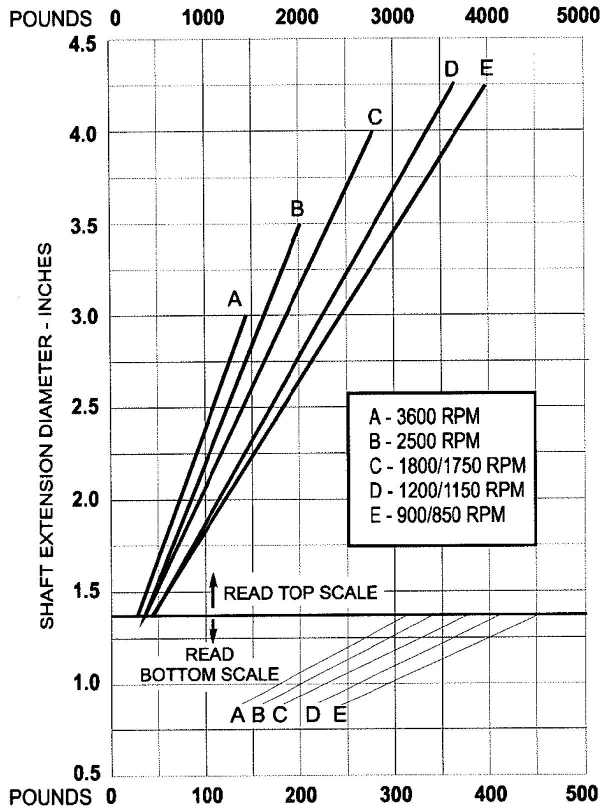



**Figure 14-3**
**SHAFT LOADING FOR DC MOTORS HAVING "AT" FRAME DESIGNATION—
RADIAL OVERHUNG LOAD—END OF SHAFT**

NOTES

1—For load at center of N-W dimensions add 10%.

2—For intermediate speeds interpolate between curves.

3—ATS shafts are excluded. Consult manufacturer for load capabilities.

4—See 14.67 for additional application information.

### 14.67.2 V-Belt Drives

The most common application that results in an overhung load on the shaft is a V-belt drive. V-belts are friction devices and depend on tension in the belts to prevent slipping. The following equation may be used to calculate the shaft load due to belt pull. Should the load exceed the values shown in Figure 14-3 the load should be reduced by reducing the belt tension, which may cause belt slippage, or by increasing the sheave diameter.

$$L_B = \frac{2N_B}{0.9}\left(16P_A - Y - \frac{MV^2}{10^6}\right)F_v$$

Where:
$L_B$ = Shaft overhung load due to belt tension, lb
$N_B$ = Number of belts
$P_A$ = Force required to deflect one belt 1/64 inch per inch of span, lbs

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Y = $2\,(f_{avg})\left(\frac{1}{64}\right)^2$ where f is a strain constant based on the type and section of belt. Available from belt manufacturer
M = 0.9 m where m is the weight per unit length, lb/in., of the type and section of belt. Available from belt manufacturer.
V = Belt speed, ft/min
$F_v$ = Vector sum correction factor. Corrects tight side and slack side tension vectors for unequal driver/driven sheave diameter. Assumes 5:1 tension ratio. Available in belt manufacturer's catalogs.

The above calculation should be made after all parameters are known and $P_A$ measured on the actual installation. Pre-installation calculations may be made by calculating the belt static tension required by the application and the value of $P_A$ necessary to attain that tension.

$$T_S = 15\left(\frac{2.5-G}{G}\right)\left(\frac{DHP \times 10^3}{VN_B}\right) + \frac{MV^2}{10^6}$$

Where:
$T_S$ = Belt static tension required by the application, lb
G = Arc of contact correction factor. Available from belt manufacturer
DHP = Drive horsepower, belt service factor x motor hp

Having calculated the required belt static tension, the minimum value of $P_A$ to attain the required static tension is:

$$P_A\,(MIN) = \frac{T_S + Y}{16}$$

This value may now be used in the first equation for pre-installation application calculations. In actual practice, a value up to 50% greater than $P_A$ (MIN) is sometimes used. In this case, the higher value should be used in the first equation.

### 14.67.3 Applications Other Than V-Belts

Shaft loads may also occur from applications other than V-belts. Examples are timing belts, sprocket chains and gears. Generally these will have little or no static tensioning and shaft overhung load will be a function of the transmitted torque. The shaft overhung load may be calculated by making a proper geometric analysis taking into account the parameters of the particular drive. Some of these parameters might be pitch diameter, tooth pressure angle, amount of pretensioning and anticipated transmitted torque.

### 14.67.4 General

The limits established in Figure 14-3 are maximums for acceptable service. For greater assurance of trouble-free service, it is recommended that lesser loads be used where possible. Larger pitch diameters and moving the load as close to the bearing as possible are helpful factors.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 14.68 RATE OF CHANGE OF ARMATURE CURRENT

Direct current motors can be expected to operate successfully with repetitive changes in armature current such as those which occur during a regular duty cycle provided that, for each change in current, the factor K, as defined in the following equation, does not exceed 25. In the equation, the equivalent time for the current change to occur is the time which would be required for the change if the current increased or decreased at a uniform rate equal to the maximum rate at which it actually increases or decreases (neglecting any high-frequency ripple).

$$K = \frac{(\text{Change in armature current / rated armature current})^2}{\text{Equivalent time in seconds for current change to occur}}$$

For adjustable-speed motors, this capability applies for all speeds within the rated speed range by armature voltage control when operated from the intended power supply. Reduced limits may apply when operated in the field control (field weaken) range and the manufacturer should be consulted.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 15

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 15
# DC GENERATORS

## 15.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 15 of Section II cover direct-current generators built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, rated 3/4 kilowatt at 3600 rpm up to and including generators having a continuous rating of 1.0 kW per rpm, open type.

## 15.10 KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 15.10.1 Standard Ratings

The kilowatt, speed, and voltage ratings of industrial direct-current generators and exciters shall be in accordance with Table 15-1.

**Table 15-1**
**KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS**

| Rating kW | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | Rating, Volts |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/4 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 1 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 1-1/2 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 2 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 3 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 4-1/2 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 6-1/2 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 9 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 13 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 17 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 21 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 25 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 33 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 40 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 50 | 3450 | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 125 and 250 |
| 65 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 250 |
| 85 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 250 |
| 100 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 250 |
| 125 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 250 |
| 170 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | ... | 250 |
| 200 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | 720 | 250 and 500 |
| 240 | ... | 1750 | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | 720 | 250 and 500 |
| 320 | ... | ... | 1450 | 1150 | 850 | 720 | 250 and 500 |
| 400 | ... | ... | ... | 1150 | 850 | 720 | 250 and 500 |
| 480 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 720 | 500 |
| 560 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 850 | 720 | 500 |
| 640 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 850 | 720 | 500 |
| 720 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 850 | 720 | 500 |
| 800 | ... | ... | ... | 1150 | 850 | ... | 500 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 15.10.2 Exciters

Kilowatt ratings for direct-connected exciters shall be in accordance with 15.10.1. The speed must necessarily be that of the machine to which the exciter is coupled.

## 15.11 NAMEPLATE TIME RATING, MAXIMUM AMBIENT TEMPERATURE, AND INSULATION SYSTEM CLASS

Industrial direct-current generators shall have a continuous time rating.

Industrial direct-current generators shall be rated on the basis of a maximum ambient temperature and the insulation system class. The rated value of the maximum ambient temperature shall be Class A, B, F, or H. All such ratings are based upon a load test with temperature rise values not exceeding those shown for the designated class of insulation system in 15.41. Ratings of direct-current generators for any other value of maximum ambient temperature shall be based on temperature rise values calculated in accordance with 15.41.2.

## 15.12 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following minimum amount of information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type designation and frame number
b. Kilowatt output
c. Time rating (see 15.11)
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which the generator is designed (see Note for 15.41.1 table)[1]
e. Insulation system designation (if field and armature use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the field being given first)[1]
f. Rated speed in rpm
g. Rated load voltage
h. Rated field voltage when different from rated armature voltage[2]
I. Rated current in amperes
j. Windings - series, shunt, or compound

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

## 15.40 TEST METHODS

Test to determine performance characteristics shall be made in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

## 15.41 TEMPERATURE RISE

### 15.41.1 Temperature Rise for Maximum Ambient of 40°C

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of direct-current generators, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the values given in the following table. All temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std. 113.

---

[1] As an alternative, these items shall be permitted to be replaced by a single item reading "Temperature rise for rated continuous load."

[2] As an alternative, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:

a. Field resistance in ohms at 25°C (optional)

b. Rated field current in amperes at rated load and speed

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | Totally Enclosed Nonventilated and Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled Generators, Including Variations Thereof | | | | Generators with all Other Enclosures | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation System (see 1.65) | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H |
| Time Rating - Continuous | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Rise, Degrees C | | | | | | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all windings other than those given in items b and c - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings - resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | |

NOTES

1—Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation.

2—The foregoing values of temperature rise are based upon operation at altitudes of 3300 feet (1000 meters) or less. For temperature rises for generators intended for operation at altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 meters), see 14.4.

### 15.41.2 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 15.41.1 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that dc machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of dc machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in 15.41.1 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. When a higher ambient temperature than 40°C is required, preferred values of ambient temperatures are 50°C, and 65°C.

### 15.41.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 15.41.1 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled dc generators may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled dc generator is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 15.41.1 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For dc generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 15.41.1 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 15.41.1 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For dc generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 15.41.1 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 15.41.1 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 120 | 150 | 180 | 205 |

*Note: This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 15.41.1

For example: A dc generator with a Class F insulation system is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 180°C and from 15.41.1 the Temperature Rise Limit is 130°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^\circ\text{C} - 25^\circ\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{180^\circ\text{C} - \left(40^\circ\text{C} + 130^\circ\text{C}\right)}{80^\circ\text{C}}\right\} = 13^\circ\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 15.41.1 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 130°C + 13°C = 143°C.

## 15.42 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION

See 12.73.

## 15.43 OVERLOAD

The generators shall be capable of carrying for 1 minute, with successful commutation as defined in 12.73, loads of 150 percent of the continuous-rated amperes, with rheostat set for rated-load excitation. No temperature limit applies at this overload.

## 15.44 VOLTAGE VARIATION DUE TO HEATING

For flat-compound-wound dripproof direct-current generators rated 50 kilowatts and smaller and employing a class B insulation system, the voltage at rated load, with the windings at ambient temperature within the usual service range, shall not exceed 112 percent of the voltage at rated load with the windings at the constant temperature attained when the generator is operating continuously at its rating and with the field rheostat set to obtain rated voltage at rated load.

## 15.45 FLAT COMPOUNDING

Flat-compounded generators shall have windings which will give approximately the same voltage at no load as at full load when operated at rated speed at a temperature equivalent to that which would be attained after a continuous run at rated load, and the field rheostat set to obtain rated voltage at rated load and left unchanged.

## 15.46 TEST FOR REGULATION

Combined regulation shall be measured in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 15.47 OVERSPEEDS FOR GENERATORS

Direct-current generators shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury an overspeed of 25 percent above rated speed.

## 15.48 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

### 15.48.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure

See 3.1.

### 15.48.2 Test Voltage

The effective value of the high-potential test voltages for direct-current generators shall be:

a. Generators of 250 watts output or more - 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage[1] of the generator.
b. Generators of less than 250 watts output having rated voltages not exceeding 250 volts – 1000 volts. (Generators rated above 250 volts shall be tested in accordance with item a.)

   Exception—Armature or field windings for connections to circuits of 35 volts or less shall be tested with 500 volts.

## 15.49 ROUTINE TESTS

Typical tests which may be made on direct-current generators are listed below:

All tests should be made in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

a. Full-load readings[2] at rated voltage
b. No-load readings[2] with rheostat set as in item a
c. High-potential test in accordance with 15.48

## 15.50 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

The following field data for direct-current generators may be used in supplying data to control manufacturers.

a. Manufacturer's name
b. Requisition or order number
c. Frame designation
d. Serial number
e. kW output
f. Shunt or compound-wound
g. Rated speed in rpm
h. Rated voltage
I. Rated current
j. Excitation voltage, or self excited
k. Resistance of shunt field at 25°C

---

[1] Where the voltage rating of a separately excited field of a generator is not stated, it shall be assumed to be 1.5 times the field resistance in ohms at 25°C times the rated field current.

[2] The word "readings" includes the following:

a. Speed in revolutions per minute
b. Voltage at generator terminals
c. Amperes in armature
d. Amperes in shunt field

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

l. Recommended value of resistance for rheostat for hand or regulator control
m. N.L. saturation

| | Percent Rated Armature Voltage | Field Current, Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| Max. field rheostat out | — | — |
| | — | — |
| | 100 | — |
| | — | — |
| | 50 | — |
| | — | — |
| Shunt field current at rated voltage and load .......................... | | |

## 15.51 REPORT OF TEST FORM

For typical test forms, see IEEE Std 113.

## 15.52 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113 using the direct measurement method or the segregated losses method. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, and speed.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of series windings (including commutating, compounding, and compensating fields, where applicable)
c. $I^2R$ loss of shunt field[1]
d. Core loss
e. Stray load loss
f. Brush contact loss
g. Brush friction loss
h. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from the shaft of the machine
I. Ventilating losses
j. Friction and windage loss[2]

In determining $I^2R$ losses, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated load temperature rise measured by resistance. Where the rated load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|

[1] For separately excited generators, the shunt field $I^2R$ loss shall be permitted to be omitted from the efficiency calculation if so stated.

[2] In the case of generators furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself shall be included in the efficiency calculations. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.

In the case of generators furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by calculation and experience with shop test bearings, and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | |
|---|---|
| A | 85 |
| B | 110 |
| F | 135 |
| H | 155 |

If the temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

## MANUFACTURING

### 15.60 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

See 14.6.

### 15.61 EQUALIZER LEADS OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

Between any two compound-wound generators, the equalizer connection circuit should have a resistance not exceeding 20 percent of the resistance of the series field circuit of the smaller generator. However, lower values of resistance are desirable.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 18

# Section II
# SMALL (FRACTIONAL) AND MEDIUM (INTEGRAL) MACHINES
# Part 18
# DEFINITE PURPOSE MACHINES

## 18.1 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 18 of Section II cover the following machines:

a. Alternating-Current Machines—Alternating-current machines up to and including the ratings built in frames corresponding to the continuous open-type ratings given in the table.

b. Direct-Current Machines—Direct-current motors, generators and motor-generator sets (direct-current output) built in frames with continuous dripproof ratings, or equivalent capacities, up to and including:

1. motors: 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type
2. generators: 1.0 kilowatt per rpm, open type

| | | Motors, Synchronous Hp Power Factor | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Motors Squirrel-Cage and Wound Rotor, Hp | Unity | 0.8 | Generators Synchronous, Revolving Field Type, kW at 0.8 Power Factor |
| 3600 | 500 | 200 | 150 | ... |
| 1800 | 500 | 200 | 150 | 150 |
| 1200 | 350 | 200 | 150 | 150 |
| 900 | 250 | 150 | 125 | 100 |
| 720 | 200 | 125 | 100 | 100 |
| 600 | 150 | 100 | 75 | 75 |
| 514 | 125 | 75 | 60 | 60 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MOTORS FOR HERMETIC REFRIGERATION COMPRESSORS

(A hermetic motor consists of a stator and rotor without shaft, end shields, or bearings for installation in refrigeration compressors of the hermetically sealed type.)

### 18.2 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single phase
   1. Split phase
   2. Capacitor start
   3. Two-value capacitor
   4. Permanent-split capacitor
b. Polyphase induction: Squirrel cage, constant speed

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## RATINGS

### 18.3 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.3.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings of single phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115, 200, and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

#### 18.3.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings for polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

### 18.4 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.5 SPEED RATINGS

Synchronous speed ratings shall be 1800 rpm and 3600 rpm for 60-hertz hermetic motors and 1500 rpm and 3000 rpm for 50-hertz hermetic motors.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.6 OPERATING TEMPERATURE

The operating temperature of a hermetic motor depends on the design of the cooling system as well as the motor losses. Therefore, the driven-device manufacturer has control of the operating temperature of the hermetic motor, and the motor manufacturer should be consulted on this phase of the application.

### 18.7 BREAKDOWN TORQUE AND LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT OF 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS

#### 18.7.1 Breakdown Torque

The breakdown torques of 60-hertz hermetic motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be in accordance with the values given in the following tables which represent the upper limit of the range of application for these motors.

#### 18.7.2 Locked-Rotor Current

The locked-rotor currents of 60-hertz hermetic motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied and with rotor locked, shall not exceed the values given in the following tables:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**SINGLE-PHASE HERMETIC MOTORS**

| 1800 Synchronous Rpm | | | 3600 Synchronous Rpm | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Breakdown Torque, Ounce-feet** | **Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 115 Volts** | | **Breakdown Torque, Ounce-feet** | **Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 115 Volts** |
| 10.5 | 20 | ... | 5.25 | 20 |
| 12.5 | 20 | ... | 6.25 | 20 |
| 15 | 20 | ... | 7.5 | 20 |
| 18 | 20 | ... | 9.0 | 20 |
| 21.5 | 20 | ... | 10.75 | 21 |
| 26 | 21.5 | ... | 13.0 | 23 |
| 31 | 23 | ... | 15.5 | 26 |
| 37 | 28 | 23* | 18.5 | 29 |
| 44.5 | 34 | 23* | 22.0 | 33 |
| 53.5 | 40 | ... | 27.0 | 38 |
| 64.5 | 48 | 46* | 32.0 | 43 |
| 77 | 57 | 46* | 38.5 | 49 |
| 92.5 | 68 | 46* | 46.0 | 56 |

*Motors having locked-rotor currents within these values usually have lower locked-rotor torques than motors with the same breakdown torque ratings and the higher locked-rotor current values.

**SINGLE-PHASE HERMETIC MOTORS (Continued)**

| 1800 Synchronous Rpm | | 3600 Synchronous Rpm | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Breakdown Torque, Pound-feet** | **Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 230 Volts** | **Breakdown Torque, Pound-feet** | **Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 230 Volts** |
| 7 | 36 | 3.5 | 32 |
| 9 | 38 | 4.5 | 39 |
| 11 | 44 | 5.5 | 46 |
| 14 | 56 | 7.0 | 56 |
| 18 | 68 | 9.0 | 69 |
| 23 | 85 | 11.5 | 85 |
| 29 | 104 | 14.5 | 104 |
| 36 | 126 | 18.0 | 126 |
| 45 | 155 | 22.5 | 154 |

**POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION HERMETIC MOTORS**

| 1800 Synchronous Rpm | 3600 Synchronous Rpm |
|---|---|

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Breakdown Torque, Pound-feet | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 230 Volts | Breakdown Torque, Pound-feet | Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes at 230 Volts |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | 24 | 4.5 | 24 |
| 11 | 30 | 5.5 | 30 |
| 14 | 38 | 7.0 | 38 |
| 28 | 48 | 9.0 | 48 |
| 23 | 59 | 11.5 | 59 |
| 29 | 71 | 14.5 | 71 |
| 36 | 85 | 18.0 | 85 |
| 45 | 102 | 22.5 | 102 |
| 56 | 125 | 28.0 | 125 |
| 70 | 153 | ... | ... |
| 88 | 189 | ... | ... |

The temperature of the motor at the start of the test for breakdown torque shall be approximately 25°C.

Where either single-phase or polyphase motors may be used in the same compressor, it is recommended that the polyphase motor used have at least the next larger breakdown torque rating than that of the single-phase motor selected.

### 18.8 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.9 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.10 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for single-phase hermetic motors shall be counter-clockwise facing the lead end.

### 18.11 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS

The terminal lead markings for single-phase hermetic motors shall be as follows:

a. Start winding – white
b. Common start and main – white with black tracer
c. Main winding – white with red tracer

### 18.12 METHOD OF TEST FOR CLEANLINESS OF SINGLE-PHASE HERMETIC MOTORS HAVING STATOR DIAMETERS OF 6.292 INCHES AND SMALLER

When a test for cleanliness of a single-phase hermetic motor having a stator outside diameter of 6.292 inches or smaller is made, the following extraction test procedure shall be used in determining the weights of residue:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 18.12.1 Stators

a. Place a sample stator in a cylindrical metal or porcelain enamel container having an inside diameter 0.50 to 1.5 inches larger than the outside diameter of the stator. Use a perforated or otherwise open spacer to support the stator so that the solvent may circulate freely.
b. Add sufficient methanol at room temperature (70° to 90°F) to completely cover the stator, including windings
c. Rotate the stator for 10 minutes at 200-240 rpm
d. Remove the stator, evaporate the liquid in the container to dryness, and heat the residue to constant weight at 220° to 230°F. The residue must be essentially free from metal particles.

### 18.12.2 Rotors

a. Place two rotors in a container holding 2 liters of toluol. Bring the solution to boil, and boil for 15 minutes.
b. Remove the rotors, evaporate the liquid in the container to dryness, and heat the residue to constant weight at 220° to 230°F. The residue shall be essentially free from metal particles.

## 18.13 METHOD OF TEST FOR CLEANLINESS OF HERMETIC MOTORS HAVING STATOR DIAMETERS OF 8.777 INCHES AND SMALLER

### 18.13.1 Purpose

The purpose of this test is to evaluate the cleanliness of a hermetic stator and rotor by determining the amount, for which weights are not specified, of insoluble residue (metallic chips, lint, dust, etc.) and soluble residue (winding oil, machining oil, etc.) present as a result of the various manufacturing processes. It is not the purpose of this particular procedure to determine the extractables present in an insulation system or to determine the suitability of an insulation system to resist the various refrigerants and oils present in a hermetic unit.

### 18.13.2 Description

The stator or rotor is vertically agitated in room-temperature Refrigerant 113 at a rate of forty to fifty 2.5-inch strokes per minute for 30 minutes. The Refrigerant 113 washes out insoluble and soluble residues with negligible solvent or chemical action on the insulation or metals present. The insoluble residue is separated from the Refrigerant 113 and the Refrigerant 113 is reduced to near dryness by distillation. Both the insoluble and the soluble residues are dried for 15 minutes at 125°C and weighed.

### 18.13.3 Sample Storage

The stator or rotor sample shall be placed in a plastic bag which shall be sealed at the site where the sample is taken. The sample shall be stored in this container until it is tested.

### 18.13.4 Equipment

a. Stator agitation equipment
b. Distilling equipment
c. Hot plate
d. Oven
e. Aluminum weighing dishes
f. Glass beakers
g. Stainless steel containers

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.13.5 Procedure**

a. Select a stainless steel container with a diameter which is 0.50 to 1.5 inches larger than the stator or rotor diameter and at least 4 inches higher than the total stator or rotor heights.

b. Position the stator or rotor on a holder so that there will be a 0.50-inch clearance between the stator or rotor and the bottom of the container at the bottom of the stroke. With the stator or rotor positioned in the container, pour in enough Refrigerant 113 so that there will be a minimum of 1 inch of liquid above the upper end wire or end ring with the supporting holder at the top of the stroke.

   The total residue content of the Refrigerant 113 used in the stator cleanliness test shall be 0.0010 grams per liter maximum. This shall be determined by transferring 1000 milliliters of Refrigerant 113 to a 4000-milliliter Erlenmeyer flask connected to a distilling condenser.

   Distill over the Refrigerant 113 until a volume of less than 100 milliliters remains in the flask. Transfer this portion to a tared aluminum dish which is to be carefully warmed on a hot plate until between 0.25 and 0.50 centimeters of liquid remains. Dry the dish and residue for 15 minutes at 125°C, cool for 15 minutes in a desiccator, and weigh to the nearest 0.001 gram.

c. Agitate vertically the stator or rotor in Refrigerant 113 at 25°C plus or minus 5°C at a rate of forty to fifty 2.5 inch strokes per minute for 30 minutes. After 30 minutes of agitation, lift the stator or rotor above the surface of the Refrigerant 113 and allow it to drain until the dripping stops.

d. Transfer the Refrigerant 113 containing the soluble and insoluble residue (from item c.) to a 4000-milliliter Erlenmeyer flask connected to a distilling condenser. Wash the stainless steel container with clean Refrigerant 113 several times and add the washings to the flask. Distill over the Refrigerant 113 until approximately 200 milliliters remain in the flask. Filter this portion through a pre-weighed high-retention filter. Wash the flask with clean Refrigerant 113 several times and filter these washings. Remove the filter and dry it for 15 minutes at 125°C, cool for 15 minutes in a desiccator, and weigh to the nearest 0.001 gram. The following information shall be reported:

   1. Weight of the residue

   2. Description of the residue

e. Transfer the filtered Refrigerant 113 to a 250-milliliter glass beaker. Wash the filtering flask several times with clean Refrigerant 113 and transfer these washings to the beaker . Carefully warm the beaker and the soluble residue until a volume of less than 100 milliliters remains in the beaker. Transfer the contents of the beaker to a tared aluminum dish. Carefully warm the aluminum dish on a hot plate until between 0.25 and 0.50 centimeters of liquid remains. Dry the dish and soluble residue for 15 minutes at 125°C, cool for 15 minutes in a desiccator, and weigh to the nearest 0.001 gram. The following information shall be reported:

   1. Weight of residue

   2. Description of residue

f. The report shall also include the date, stator or rotor type, and the outside diameter and the height of the lamination stacking.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.14 ROTOR BORE DIAMETERS AND KEYWAY DIMENSIONS FOR 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS[1]

The rotor bore diameters and keyway dimensions for 60-hertz hermetic motors shall be:

| | CA Dimension Tolerance, Inches | | Keyway Dimensions, Inches | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rotor Bore Diameter, Inches | Plus | Minus | Width | Depth Plus Diameter of Bore |
| 0.625 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | ... | ... |
| 0.750 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | ... | ... |
| 0.875 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.1885 | 0.9645 |
| | | | 0.1905 | 0.9795 |
| 1.000 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.1885 | 1.0908 |
| | | | 0.1905 | 1.1058 |
| 1.125 | 0.0008 | 0.0000 | 0.251 | 1.242 |
| | | | 0.253 | 1.257 |
| 1.250 | 0.0008 | 0.0000 | 0.251 | 1.367 |
| | | | 0.253 | 1.382 |
| 1.375 | 0.001 | 0.000 | 0.313 | 1.519 |
| | | | 0.315 | 1.534 |
| 1.500 | 0.001 | 0.000 | 0.376 | 1.669 |
| | | | 0.378 | 1.684 |
| 1.875 | 0.001 | 0.000 | 0.501 | 2.125 |
| | | | 0.503 | 2.140 |
| 2.125 | 0.001 | 0.000 | 0.501 | 2.375 |
| | | | 0.503 | 2.390 |

[1] For lettering of dimension sheets, see 18.18.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.15 DIMENSIONS FOR 60-HERTZ HERMETIC MOTORS[1]

To assist the designer of the hermetic compressor, the following parametric dimensions for 60-hertz hermetic motors have been compiled; they are based upon information supplied by member companies of the NEMA Motor and Generator Section that build hermetic motors.

| | | CG (Max) and CH (Max) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Three-Phase | | Single-Phase | | | | | Stud | |
| BH | Number of Poles | Lead End | Opposite Lead End | Lead End | Opposite Lead End | BL (Max) | DE (Min) | CB (Max)* | Circle | Diameter of Pin |
| 4.792 | 2 | ... | ... | 1.25 | 1.25 | 4.28 | 2.50 | 1.12 | 4.593 | 0.175 |
| 5.480 round | 2 | ... | ... | 1.25 | 1.22 | 4.75 | 2.75 | 1.31 | 5.280 | 0.255 |
| 5.480 round | 4 | ... | ... | 1.19 | 1.19 | 4.88 | 3.38 | 1.31 | 5.280 | 0.199 |
| 5.480 square | 2 | ... | ... | 1.19 | 1.19 | 4.69 | 2.75 | 1.31 | 5.280 | 0.199 |
| 5.480 square | 4 | ... | ... | 1.06 | 1.06 | 4.56 | 3.12 | 1.38 | 5.280 | 0.199 |
| 6.292 | 2 | 1.62 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.38 | 5.75 | 3.25 | 1.62 | 5.719 | 0.255 |
| 6.292 | 4 | 1.25 | 1.19 | 1.38 | 1.25 | 5.75 | 4.06 | 1.97 | 5.719 | 0.255 |
| 7.480 | 2 | 2.12 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 1.88 | 6.75 | 3.88 | 2.00 | 6.969 | 0.255 |
| 7.480 | 4 | 1.88 | 1.75 | 1.88 | 1.75 | 6.75 | 4.50 | 2.25 | 6.969 | 0.255 |
| 8.777 | 2 | 2.50 | 2.25 | 2.25 | 2.12 | 8.00 | 4.69 | 2.25 | 8.250 | 0.255 |
| 8.777 | 4 | 2.12 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 1.88 | 8.00 | 5.44 | 2.75 | 8.250 | 0.255 |
| 10.125 | 2 | 3.00 | 3.00 | 2.50 | 2.25 | 9.38 | 5.50 | 2.50 | 9.500 | 0.380 |
| 10.125 | 4 | 2.75 | 2.38 | 2.75 | 2.12 | 9.75 | 6.38 | 3.00 | 9.500 | 0.380 |
| 12.375** | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 15.562** | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Tolerances for BH Dimensions:

4.792, 5.480, 6.282, 7.480, - +0.000 inch, -0.002 inch

8.777, 10.125, 12.375, 15.562 - +0.000 inch, -0.003 inch

*Applies to punched counterbores. When a sleeve is used, the dimension should be reduced by 0.25 inch. A rotor counterbore will weaken the structure of the rotor core and will also tend to adversely affect performance by the removal of active material. It is therefore recommended that the counterbore be eliminated where possible and held to a minimum where required.

**With or without shell

## 18.16 FORMING OF END WIRE

The dimensions of end wires shown in 18.15 are suggested values for preliminary design work. Before housing dimensions are finalized, it is recommended that the motor manufacturer be consulted. In any particular motor, dimensions larger or smaller than those shown may be the practicable limit with normal end-wire forming practice. The forming of end wires should be evaluated carefully as excessive forming may tend to damage the stator insulation.

## 18.17 THERMAL PROTECTORS ASSEMBLED ON OR IN END WINDINGS OF HERMETIC MOTORS

When thermal protectors are used with hermetic motors, the protectors are usually assembled on or in the motor end windings and located so that the best possible heat transfer between the winding and protector can be afforded without abusing the insulation on the motor winding or on the protector. Care must be exercised in assembly as additional forming of the motor winding for location of the protector may weaken or destroy the motor winding insulation.

[1] For lettering of dimension sheets, see 18.18. For rotor bore diameters and keyway dimensions, see 18.14.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

It is usual practice for the thermal protector to be assembled on or in the winding by the motor manufacturer, or for the motor manufacturer to provide a formed pocket on or in the end winding for insertion of the protector.

Additional forming of the winding after installation of the protector is to be avoided. This forming may weaken the winding insulation, the protective insulation between the protector and the winding, or may change the protector calibration.

As the protector case is often a live current-carrying part, additional insulation between the protector and the winding may be necessary in addition to the motor conductor insulation. The motor manufacturer should be consulted.

End winding dimensions given in 18.15 are for motors without provision for thermal protectors; these dimensions must be increased when thermal protectors are provided. As thermal protectors of different sizes and shapes are available, the motor manufacturer should be consulted for end winding dimensions when thermal protectors are used.

### 18.18 LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR HERMETIC MOTORS FOR HERMETIC COMPRESSORS[1,2]

See Figure 18-1.

[1] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1.
[2] The dimensions given in 18.15 apply only when the leads are located as shown by solid lines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

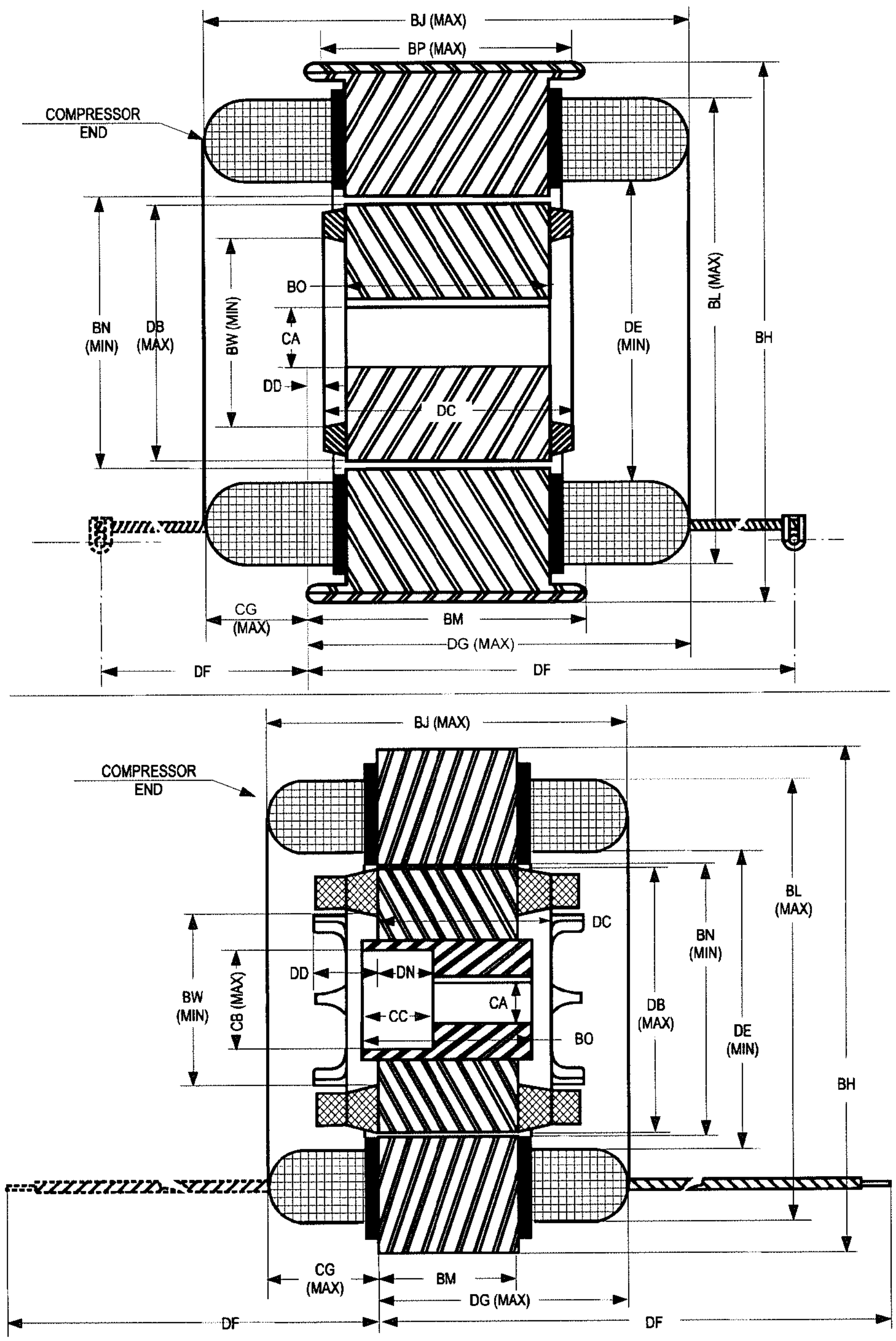



**Figure 18-1**
**LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR SHAFT-MOUNTED FANS AND BLOWERS

(Motors in this classification are designed for propeller fans or centrifugal blowers mounted on the motor shaft, with or without air drawn over the motors [not suitable for belted loads].)

### 18.19 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single-phase – 1/20 horsepower and larger
   1. Split-phase
   2. Permanent-split capacitor
   3. Shaded-pole
b. Polyphase induction - 1/8 horsepower and larger; squirrel cage, constant speed

## RATINGS

### 18.20 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.20.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

#### 18.20.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings of polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

### 18.21 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.22 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.22.1 Single-Speed Motors

See 10.32.1 and 10.32.2.

#### 18.22.2 Two-Speed Motors

a. Speed ratings
   1. Split-phase, pole-changing motors
      a) 1800/1200 rpm synchronous speeds, 1725/1140 rpm approximate full-load speeds
      b) 1200/900 rpm synchronous speeds, 1140/850 rpm approximate full-load speeds
      c) 1800/900 rpm synchronous speeds, 1725/850 rpm approximate full-load speeds
   2. Non-pole changing, single-voltage permanent-split-capacitor and shaded-pole motors shall be designed so that, when loaded by a fan or blower, they will operate at approximately the following speeds:
      a) High-speed connection - the full load rpm indicated in 10.32.2
      b) Low-speed connection - 66 percent of synchronous speed
b. Polyphase pole-changing motors - the speed ratings shall be the same as those listed for single-phase motors in item a.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.23 TEMPERATURE RISE

Motors for shaft-mounted fans and blowers shall have Class A insulation.[1] The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium shall be in accordance with 12.43.[2]

### 18.24 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.25 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT—SINGLE-PHASE

See 12.33.

### 18.26 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.27 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.28 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for motors for shaft-mounted fans and blowers shall be counterclockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.29 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Motors for shaft-mounted fans and blowers shall be constructed with the following mechanical features (see dimension diagrams in 18.30):

a. Totally enclosed or open
b. Horizontal motors shall have sleeve bearings and shall have provision for taking axial thrust. Vertical motors, depending on application, shall be permitted to be provided with either ball or sleeve bearings.
c. End-shield clamp bolts shall have a threaded extension which extends a minimum of 0.38 inch beyond the nut.
d. The shaft extension shall be in accordance with 4.4.1.

### 18.30 DIMENSIONS AND LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR SHAFT-MOUNTED FANS AND BLOWERS

See Figures 18-2, 18-3, and 18-4.

### 18.31 TERMINAL MARKINGS

See 18.58.

---

[1] See 1.66 for description of Class A insulation.
[2] Where air flow is required over the motor from the driven fan or blower in order not to exceed the values given in 12.43, the motor nameplate shall state "air over" and sufficient air shall be provided to meet the required temperature rise limit. The nameplate rating is then dependent upon sufficient air flow over the motor in the final application.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.32 TERMINAL LEAD LENGTHS

See 18.56.

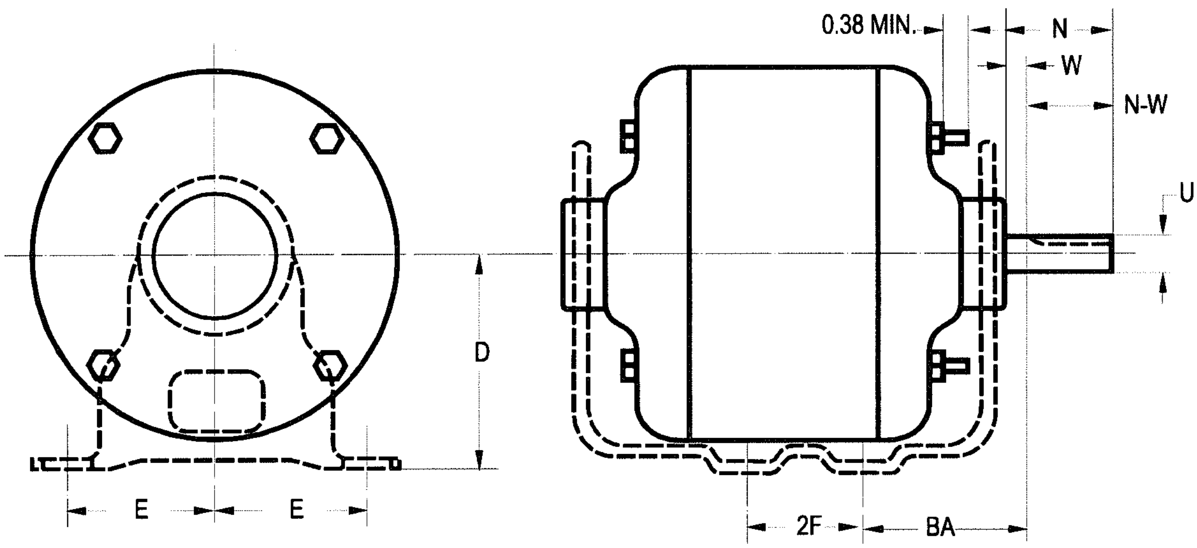
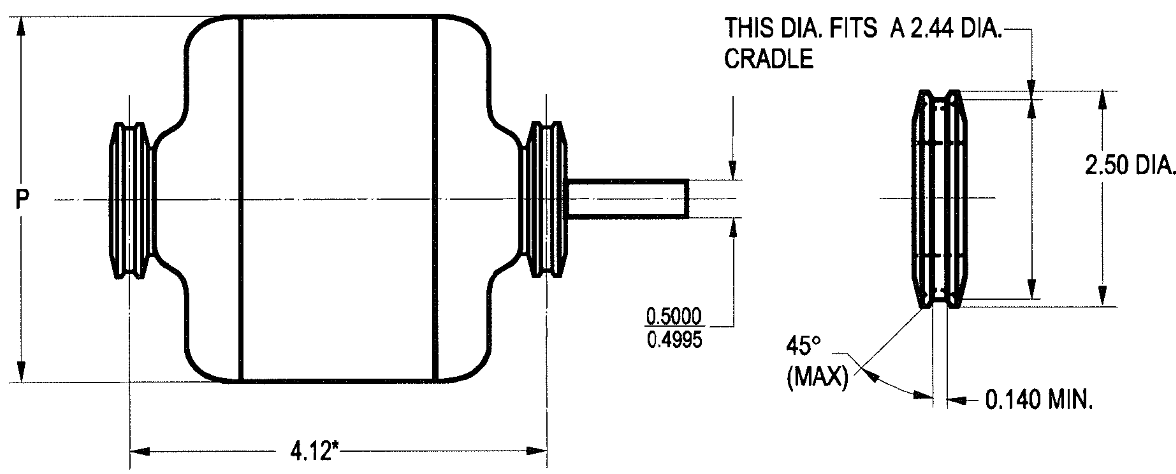


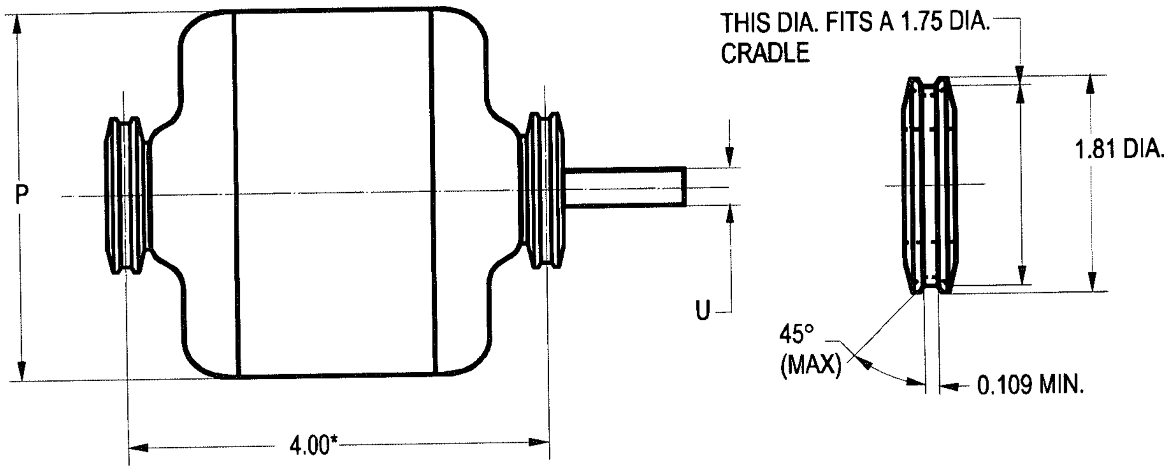

**Figure 18-2**
**MOTORS WITH BASE**




* When this dimension is greater or less than 4.12 inches, it shall vary in increments of 0.25 inch.

**Figure 18-3**
**MOTORS WITHOUT BASE**
**(P DIMENSION 4.38 INCHES AND LARGER)**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




*When this dimension is greater or less than 4.00 inches, it shall vary in increments of 0.25 inch.

| P, Inches | U, Inches |
|---|---|
| Over 3.5 | 0.3120 - 0.3125 |
| 3.5 and smaller | Standard not yet developed |

**Figure 18-4**
**MOTORS WITHOUT BASE**
**(P DIMENSION SMALLER THAN 4.38 INCHES)**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR BELTED FANS AND BLOWERS BUILT IN FRAMES 56 AND SMALLER

(Belted fan and blower motors are motors for operating belt-driven fans or blowers such as are commonly used in conjunction with hot-air-heating and refrigeration installations and attic ventilators.)

### 18.33 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single- and two-speed
   1. Split phase
   2. Capacitor start
   3. Polyphase

## RATINGS

### 18.34 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.34.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

#### 18.34.2 Polyphase Motors

The voltage ratings of polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

### 18.35 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz

### 18.36 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.36.1 Single-Speed Motors

a. Speed ratings
   1. 60 hertz – 1800 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 rpm approximate full-load speed
   2. 50 hertz – 1500 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 rpm approximate full-load speed
b. Horsepower ratings
   1. Split-phase – 1/6, 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, and 3/4 horsepower
   2. Capacitor-start – 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, and 1 horsepower
   3. Polyphase – 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, and 1 horsepower

#### 18.36.2 Two-Speed Motors

a. Speed Ratings
   1. 60 hertz - 1800/1200 rpm synchronous speeds, 1725/1140 rpm approximate full-load speeds, 1800/900 rpm synchronous speeds, 1725/850 rpm approximate full-load speeds
   2. 50 hertz - 1500/1000 rpm synchronous speeds, 1425/950 rpm approximate full-load speeds
b. Horsepower ratings
   1. Split-phase - 1/6, 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, and 3/4 horsepower
   2. Capacitor-start - 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, and 1 horsepower at highest speed
   3. Polyphase - 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, and 1 horsepower at highest speed

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.37 TEMPERATURE RISE

Motors for belted fans and blowers shall have either Class A or B insulation. The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium shall be in accordance with 12.43.

### 18.38 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.39 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

See 12.33 for single-phase motors and 12.35 for three-phase motors.

### 18.40 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.41 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.42 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

Single-phase motors for belted fans and blowers shall be adaptable for either direction of rotation and shall be arranged for counter-clockwise rotation when facing the end opposite the drive.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.43 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Motors for belted fans and blowers shall have the following mechanical features (see 18.44):

a. Open or dripproof
b. Resilient mounting
c. Automatic reset thermal overload protector
d. Mounting dimensions and shaft extensions in accordance with 4.4.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.44 LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR BELTED FANS AND BLOWERS[1]

See Figure 18-5.

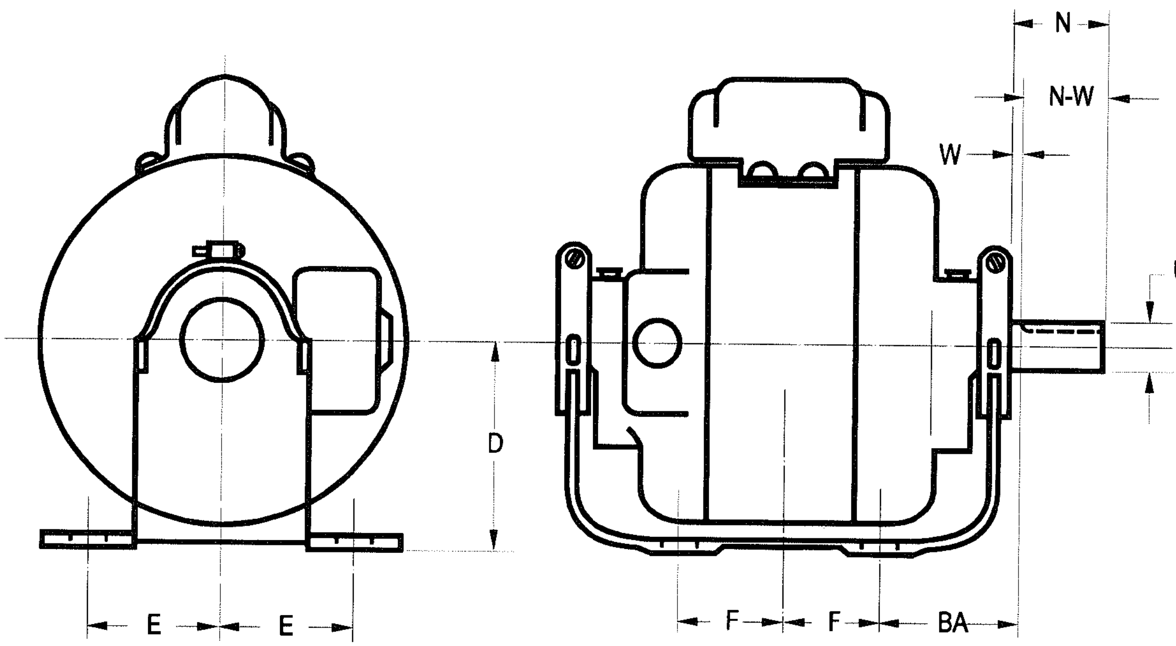



**Figure 18-5**
**LETTERING OF DIMENSIONS**

[1] For meaning of letter dimensions, see 4.1. for general mechanical features, see 18.43.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSERS AND EVAPORATOR FANS

### 18.45 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Shaded pole
b. Permanent-split capacitor

## RATINGS

### 18.46 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115, 200, 230, and 265 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

### 18.47 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 60 and 50 hertz.

### 18.48 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.48.1 Horsepower Ratings

a. Shaded-pole motors – 1/20, 1/15, 1/12, 1/10, 1/8, 1/6, 1/5, 1/4, and 1/3 horsepower
b. Permanent-split capacitor motors – 1/20, 1/15, 1/12, 1/10, 1/8, 1/6, 1/5, 1/4, 1/3, and 1/2 horsepower

#### 18.48.2 Speed Ratings

| 60 Hertz | | 50 Hertz | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Synchronous Rpm | Approximate Full-Load Rpm | Synchronous Rpm | Approximate Full-Load Rpm |
| 1800 | 1550 | 1500 | 1300 |
| 1200 | 1050 | 1000 | 875 |
| 900 | 800 | ... | ... |

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.49 TEMPERATURE RISE

Shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors for air conditioning condensers and evaporator fans shall have a Class A or B insulation system.[1] The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium shall be in accordance with 12.43.[2]

### 18.50 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS

See 10.34, Table 10-6.

[1] See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.
[2] Where air flow is required over the motor from the driven fan in order not to exceed the values given in 12.43, the motor nameplate shall state "air over."

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.51 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

See 3.1 and 12.3.

The high-potential test voltage for the compressor motor is frequently higher than that for the fan motor. In such cases, the high-potential test voltage applied to the air conditioning unit should be made without the fan motor being connected; or, if the fan motor has been connected, the high-potential test voltage applied to the air conditioning unit should not exceed 85 percent of the high-potential test voltage for the fan motor.

## 18.52 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.53 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED

The variation from specified operating speed for permanent-split capacitor motors shall not exceed plus or minus 20 percent of the difference between synchronous speed and the specified speed for operating speeds above 65 percent of synchronous speed.

The variation from specified operating speed for shaded-pole motors shall not exceed plus or minus 20 percent of the difference between synchronous speed and the specified operating speed for operating speeds above 85 percent of synchronous speed and shall not exceed plus or minus 30 percent of the difference between synchronous speed and the specified operating speed for operating speeds between 75 percent and 85 percent of synchronous speed.

In determining the variation from rated speed, the motor shall be tested with a fan which requires the specified torque at the specified operating speed. This variation in specified operating speed shall be measured with rated voltage and frequency applied to the motor. The test shall be made after the motor windings have attained a temperature of 65°C or the operating temperature, whichever temperature is lower.

If capacitors, speed control, or other auxiliary devices are not provided by the motor manufacturer, nominal values of impedance for these devices shall be used during the test.

At operating speeds below the foregoing percentages of synchronous speeds, greater variations from the specified operating speed may be expected. At operating speeds much below the foregoing, starting performance, bearing life, and speed variation are very likely to be unsatisfactory to the user.

## 18.54 TERMINAL MARKINGS—MULTISPEED SHADED-POLE MOTORS

See 18.55.

## MANUFACTURING

## 18.55 TERMINAL MARKINGS

See 18-58.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.56 TERMINAL LEAD LENGTHS

When shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors are provided with terminal leads, the lead length shall be 12 in., including 0.75 in. of bare wire at the end.[1]

Tolerances for leads shall be in accordance with the following.

| Lengths | Tolerances, Inches | |
|---|---|---|
| | Plus | Minus |
| 0.75 inch stripped length | 0.06 | 0.06 |
| 12 to 36 inches, inclusive, lead lengths | 2 | 0 |
| Above 36 inches lead length | 3 | 0 |

## 18.57 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features:

a. Open or totally enclosed
b. Sleeve or ball bearing
c. Shaft extension and mounting dimensions in accordance with 18.59 through 18.61 and the following.
   1. Maximum shaft extension length shall be 8.00 in.
   2. Maximum overall length of a shaft with double extensions shall be 20.00 in.
   3. The tolerance for the permissible shaft runout, when measured at the end of the shaft extension (See 4.11), shall be 0.002-in. indicator reading on extensions up to 2.00 in. long with a 0.001-in. additional allowance for each 1.00-in. increment of the extension over the 2.00-in. length.

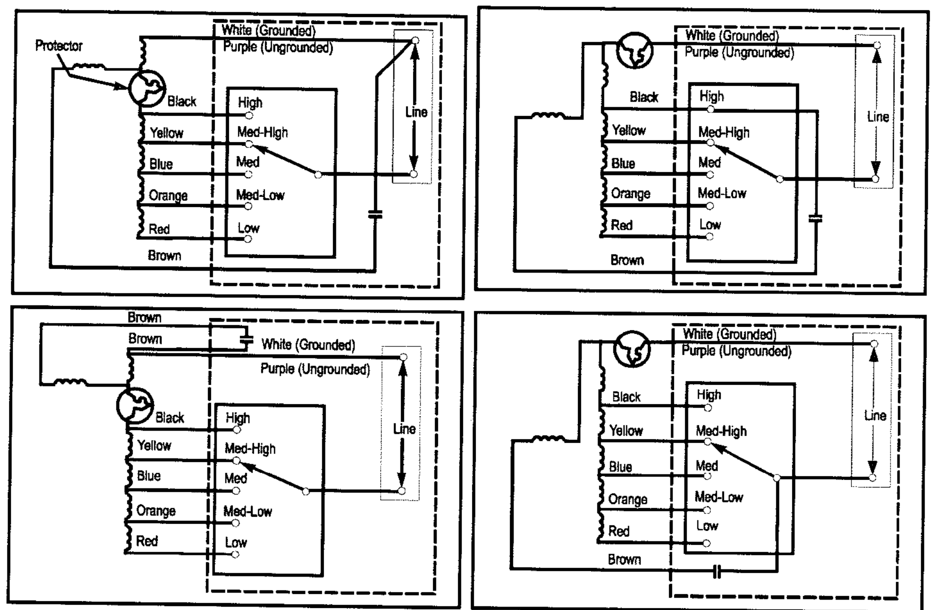
[1] Where longer leads are required, the lead length shall vary in 3-inch increments up to 36 inches and in 6-inch increments for lengths over 36 inches.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.58 TERMINAL MARKINGS FOR NON-POLE-CHANGING MULTISPEED SINGLE-VOLTAGE NONREVERSIBLE PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS AND SHADED POLE MOTORS[1, 2, 3]

When multispeed single-voltage permanent-split capacitor (Figures 18-6a-6e) or shaded-pole motors (Figure 18-6f) are provided with terminal leads, the leads shall be identified by the terminal lead colors in Figure 18-6.

18-6a 18-6b



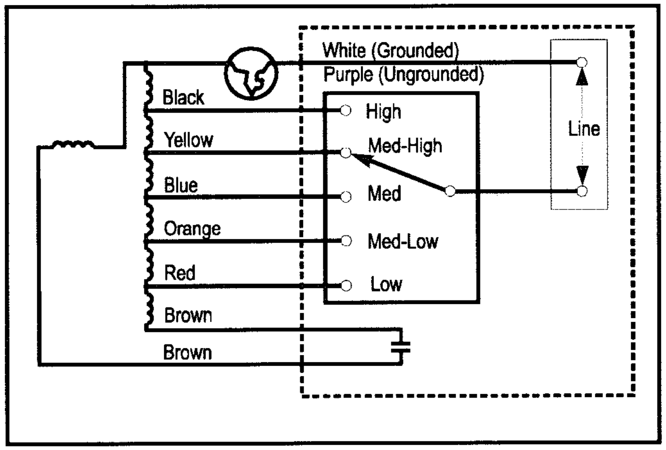

18-6c 18-6d

**Figure 18-6**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS**

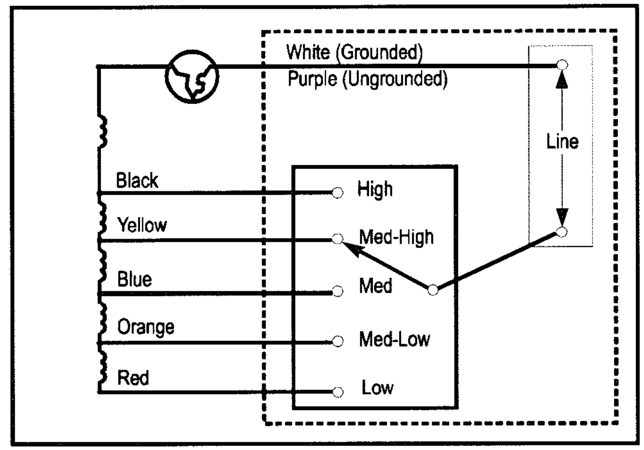
---

[1] When identification of capacitor leads is necessary, brown shall be used to identify the lead to the connected to the outer wrap of the capacitor and pink to identify the lead to be connected to the inner wrap.
[2] Where the motor may see either a grounded or ungrounded common line lead, purple shall be used to identify the common line lead.
[3] For single-speed motors, use the colors specified for high speed.
For two-speed motors, use the colors specified for high and low speeds.
For three-speed motors, use the colors specified for high, medium, and low speeds.
For four-speed motors, use the colors specified for high, medium-high, medium-low, and low speeds.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




18-6e




18-6f

**Figure 18-6 (Continued)**
**TERMINAL MARKINGS**

NOTES
1—Parts shown within the dotted area are not a part of the motor. They are included in the diagram to clarify the motor terminal connections to be made by the user and should be displayed in a connection diagram on each individual motor.
2—The capacitor may or may not be mounted on the motor when two capacitor leads are provided.
3—In Figures c and e, the electrical location of the auxiliary winding and capacitor may be reserved.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.59 DIMENSIONS OF SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS HAVING A P DIMENSION 4.38 INCHES AND LARGER**

See Figure 18-7.

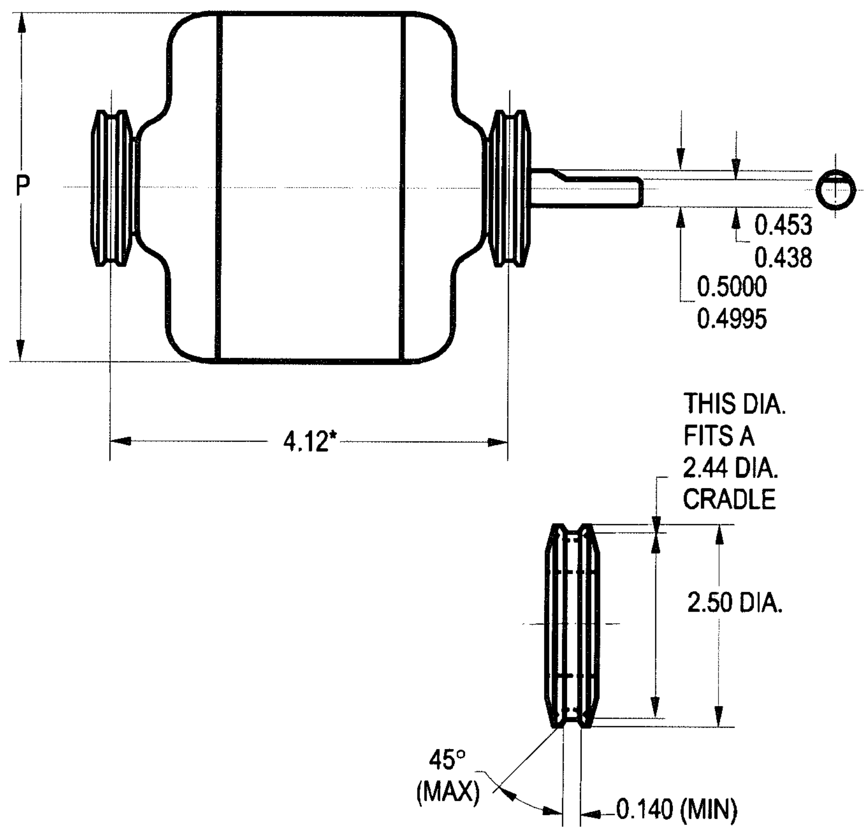


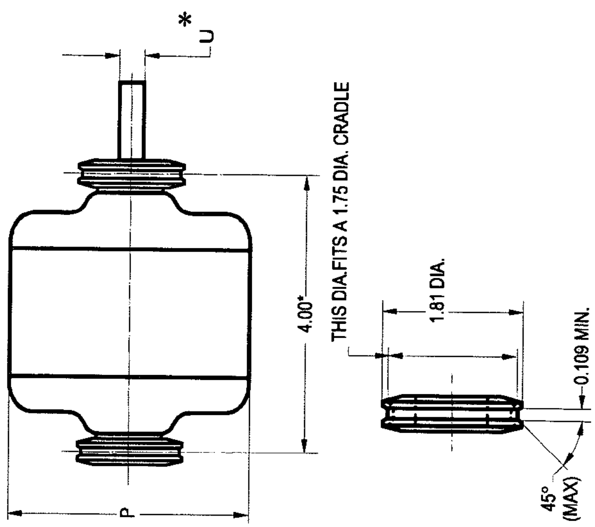

**Figure 18-7**
**DIMENSIONS**

*When this dimension is greater or less than 4.12 inches, it shall varying increments of 0.25 inch.

NOTE -The shaft extension length should be in 0.25-inch increments.
For motors with double shaft extensions the overall length of the shaft should also be in 0.25-inch increments.
For motors having shaft extensions of 3.00 inches and longer, the recommended maximum usable length of flat is 2.50 inches.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.60 DIMENSIONS OF SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS HAVING A P DIMENSION SMALLER THAN 4.38 INCHES

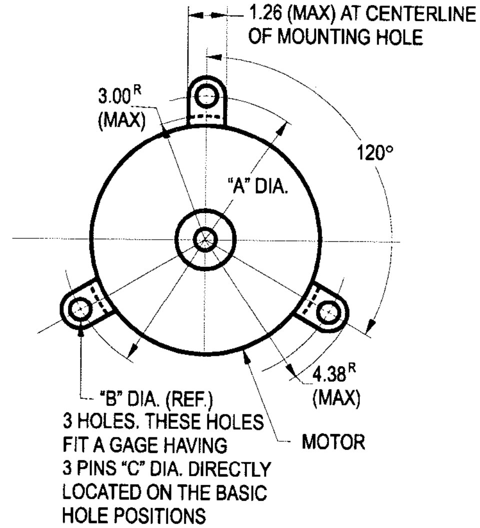



See Figure 18-8.

*When this dimension is greater or less than 4.00 inches, it shall vary in increments of 0.25 inch.
†For motors having a P dimension less than 4.38 inches down to but not including 3.50 inches, the U dimension shall be 0.3120-0.3125 inch.

**Figure 18-8**
**MOTORS HAVING P DIMENSION SMALLER THAN 4.38 INCHES**

## 18.61 DIMENSIONS FOR LUG MOUNTING FOR SHADED-POLE AND PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR MOTORS




See Figure 18-9.

| A Hole Circle Diameter | B Hole Diameter* | C Gag Pin Diameter |
|---|---|---|
| 7.00 | 0.410 | 0.330 |
| 7.25 | 0.280 | 0.200 |
| 7.38 | 0.750 | 0.661 |
| 7.50 | 0.750 | 0.661 |

*Typical examples of diameters for these mounting holes.
All dimensions in inches.

**Figure 18-9**
**LUG MOUNTING DIMENSIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## APPLICATION DATA

### 18.62 NAMEPLATE CURRENT

The input current of shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors when operating at rated load, or rated speed with rated voltage and frequency applied, may be expected to vary plus or minus 10-percent from the average value for the particular motor design. Since usual practice is to mark motor nameplates with rated currents approximately 5 percent above the average full-load values, some motors may be expected to have input currents 5 percent greater than the nameplate value. In those cases where the capacitors are not provided by the motor manufacturer, larger tolerances in input current may be expected.

### 18.63 EFFECT OF VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE UPON OPERATING SPEED

The effect of variation from rated voltage upon the operating speed of typical designs of shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors used for fan drives is shown by speed-torque curves in Figures 18-10 and 18-11, respectively. In each set of curves the solid curve intersecting the 0 torque axis near 100 percent of synchronous speed illustrates the speed-torque characteristic of an average motor of a typical design. The dashed curves enveloping the solid curve illustrate the variation in speed-torque characteristics of the typical motor design when tested at rated voltage and frequency. The dot-dash curves illustrate the variation in speed-torque characteristics within plus or minus 10-percent variation in line voltage for motors of the typical design when operated at rated frequency.

In order to illustrate the variation in motor speed when driving a specified fan, a family of typical fan speed torque curves are shown, intersecting the typical average motor speed-torque curve at operating speeds of 95, 90, 85, 80, 75, and 70 percent of synchronous speed.

A study of the curves shows that, when the operating speed is too low a percentage of synchronous speed, extremely wide variations in operating speed of motors of a particular design may be expected within the plus or minus 10-percent variation from rated voltage that may be encountered in service. Variation in air flow characteristics of the fan of a particular design are not included. Care should be exercised in applying the motor and fan to an air conditioner application, particularly where two- or three-speed operation is desired, so that the operating speed is kept within the range where tolerable starting characteristics and variations in operating speed may be obtained. Close cooperation among the motor manufacturer, fan manufacturer, and air conditioner manufacturer is recommended.

### 18.64 INSULATION TESTING

Motors for air conditioner condenser and evaporator fans are subjected to unusual application conditions requiring special care in the testing of insulation systems.

#### 18.64.1 Test Conditions

#### 18.64.1.1 Water Present

One general class of test conditions results in liquid water remaining in the motor or on the windings. This tends to produce erratic and non-repeatable results due to variations in actual contact of water drops with weak or damaged spots in the insulation system. In testing, the motor must be electrically disconnected from all other components of the air conditioning unit and connected to a separate power source. Where short-time tests of this type are used, it should be recognized that they may adequately detect weak or damaged insulation systems, but they are of doubtful significance in measuring the effect of longtime exposure of a particular system to moisture.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 18.64.1.2 High Humidity

The second general class of test conditions subjects the motor to high humidity without liquid water being present. This type of test, when conducted over longer periods of time, is more indicative of the relative life expectancy of various motor insulation systems, as they are more uniformly exposed to the deteriorating conditions. To be significant, these tests should be conducted at close to 100-percent relative humidity and continued as long as practicable. Testing time may be shortened by increasing the ambient temperature.

### 18.64.2 Test Method

IEEE Std 117 describes a suitable test method for evaluating insulation systems. Due to environmental conditions experienced in certain air conditioner applications, it may be desirable to modify the humidity, temperature, contaminants, and vibration specified in IEEE Std 117 to suit known application conditions.

It must be recognized that test conditions and methods of measuring the effects of short-time accelerated insulation tests result in only comparative data between different designs or insulation systems. Extended life tests in the air conditioner under actual service conditions on at least one motor design are necessary to relate test results to actual life.

When comparing insulation systems by any test, a method of determining the end point of the life of the system should be established. The repetitive surge test described in IEEE Std 117 between windings and between windings and ground is a suitable test for this purpose.

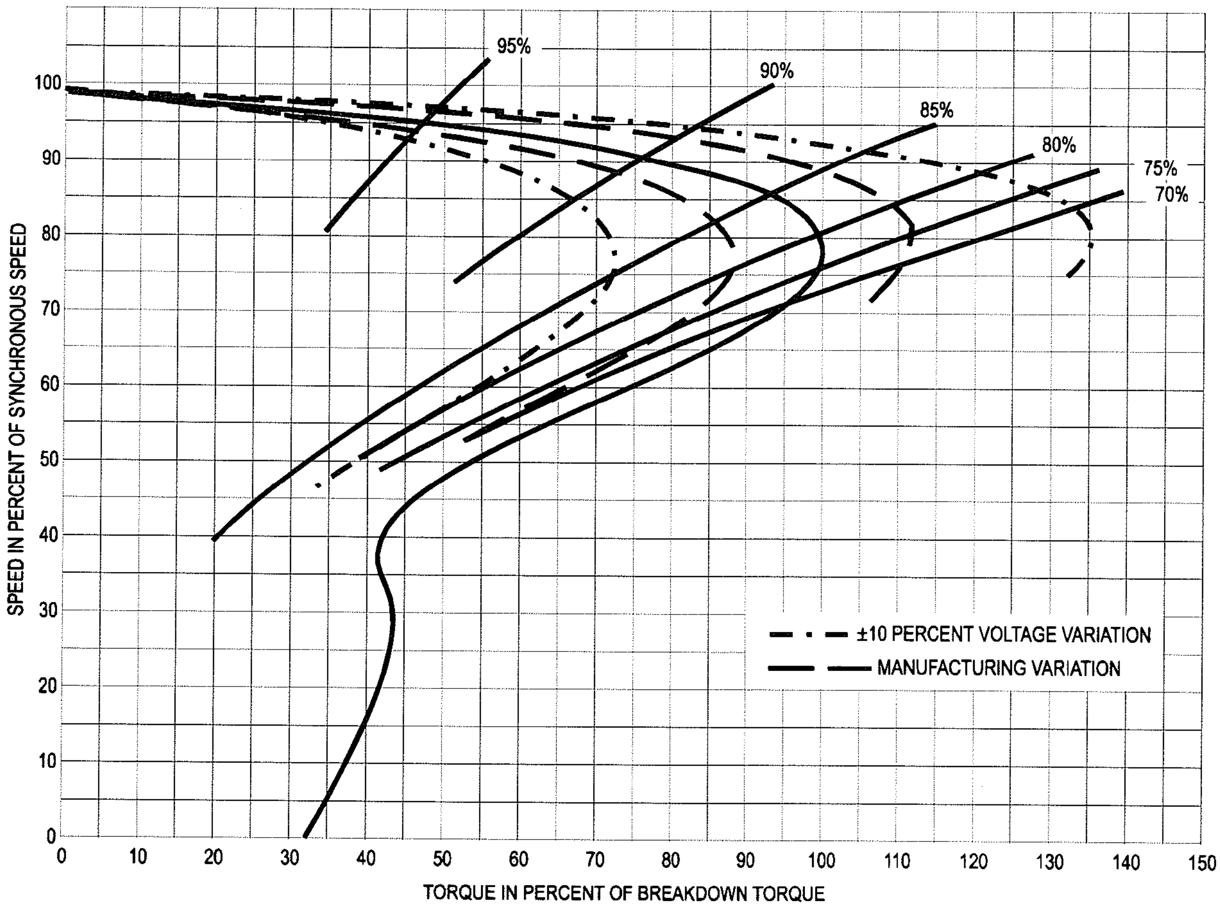
Neither a direct-current insulation resistance test or an alternating-current leakage current test give dependable comparisons between insulation systems in determining the end point in life under test conditions and should not be used for this purpose. The measurements may provide an indication of deterioration of a particular insulation system under test or in service, but comparisons of absolute values are frequently misleading. Measurement of alternating-current leakage current to ground is a check of shock hazard conditions. It is used as such in some testing laboratory specifications.

## 18.65 SERVICE CONDITIONS

Motors for air conditioning condenser and evaporator fans are subjected to environmental conditions such as high humidity, high and low ambient temperatures, water from condensation or rain, and salt air. Extreme care should be used in the proper application of these motors in order that successful operation and good service will result. The following factors should be considered:

a. The motor should be enclosed or adequately shielded to prevent splashing of condensate or rain water into the motor. The wiring to the motor should be arranged to prevent water on the wires from draining into the motor enclosure.
b. The flow of air through the air conditioning unit should be controlled to minimize carrying excessive amounts of moisture or rain over and into the motor.
c. The air conditioning unit should be designed to prevent the possibility of water entering the motor lubrication system.
d. When the ambient temperature of the motor is higher than 40°C for long periods of time, the motor should be derated or abnormal deterioration of the insulation may be expected.
e. When the motor ambient temperature is below 10°C, particular care must be given to the motor starting characteristics and bearing lubricant.
f. Speed stability of air conditioning fan motors may be poor when operating at low speeds. See 18.53 for variations to be expected in motor speeds.

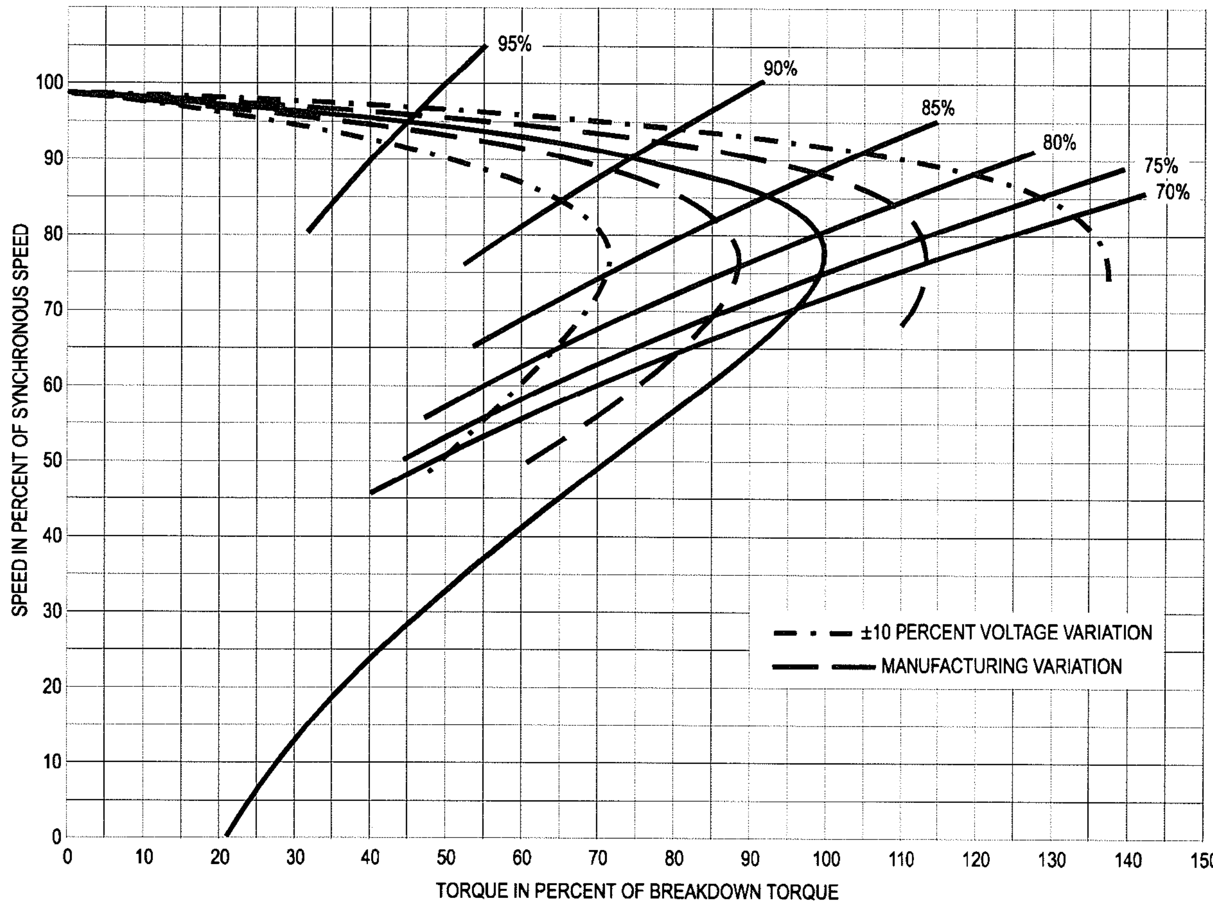
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




NOTE—Fan load based upon nominal speed-torque curve.

**Figure 18-10**
**TYPICAL SHADED-POLE SPEED-TORQUE CURVE**
**SHOWING EXPECTED SPEED VARIATION DUE TO MANUFACTURING AND VOLTAGE VARIATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




NOTE—Fan load based upon nominal speed-torque curve.

**Figure 18-11**
**TYPICAL PERMANENT-SPLIT CAPACITOR SPEED-TORQUE CURVE**
**SHOWING EXPECTED SPEED VARIATION DUE TO MANUFACTURING AND VOLTAGE VARIATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR SUMP PUMPS

(A sump pump motor is one which furnishes power for operating a pump used for draining basements, pits or sumps.)

## 18.66 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Single-phase—Split-phase

## RATINGS

## 18.67 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

## 18.68 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

## 18.69 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

### 18.69.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be 1/4, 1/3, and 1/2 horsepower.

### 18.69.2 Speed Ratings

Full-load speed ratings shall be:

a. 60- hertz – 1800 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 rpm approximate full-load speed
b. 50 hertz – 1500 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 rpm approximate full-load speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

## 18.70 TEMPERATURE RISE

Sump pump motors shall have either Class A or Class B insulation.[1] The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the following values:

| Class of Insulation ................................. | A | B |
|---|---|---|
| Coil Windings, Degrees C | | |
| Single phase | | |
| thermometer ........................................ | 50 | 70 |
| resistance ............................................ | 60 | 80 |
| The temperature attained by cores and squirrel-cage windings shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | |

## 18.71 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS

Ratings of single-phase induction motors shall be in accordance with 10.34.

## 18.72 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS

For 60-hertz motors, the breakdown and locked-rotor torques (see 1.50 and 1.47) shall be not less than the following:

[1] See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Hp | Torque, Oz-ft | |
|---|---|---|
| | Breakdown | Locked Rotor |
| 1/4 | 21.5 | 14.0 |
| 1/3 | 31.5 | 20.0 |
| 1/2 | 40.5 | 20.0 |

The temperature of the motor at the start of the test shall be approximately 25°C.

## 18.73 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

See 3.1 and 12.3.

## 18.74 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.75 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for sump pump motors shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

## MANUFACTURING

## 18.76 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Sump pump motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features (see Figure 18-12):

a. Open construction. Top end bracket to be totally enclosed or to have ventilating openings protected by louvers, or the equivalent.
b. Bearings shall be suitable for vertical operation.
c. Bottom end bracket to have hub machined for direct mounting on support pipe.
d. Motors shall be permitted to be equipped with automatic thermal protector.
e. Motor frame shall have provision for connection of ground lead.
f. When provided, supply cords shall be three-conductor of at least 18 AWG cord.

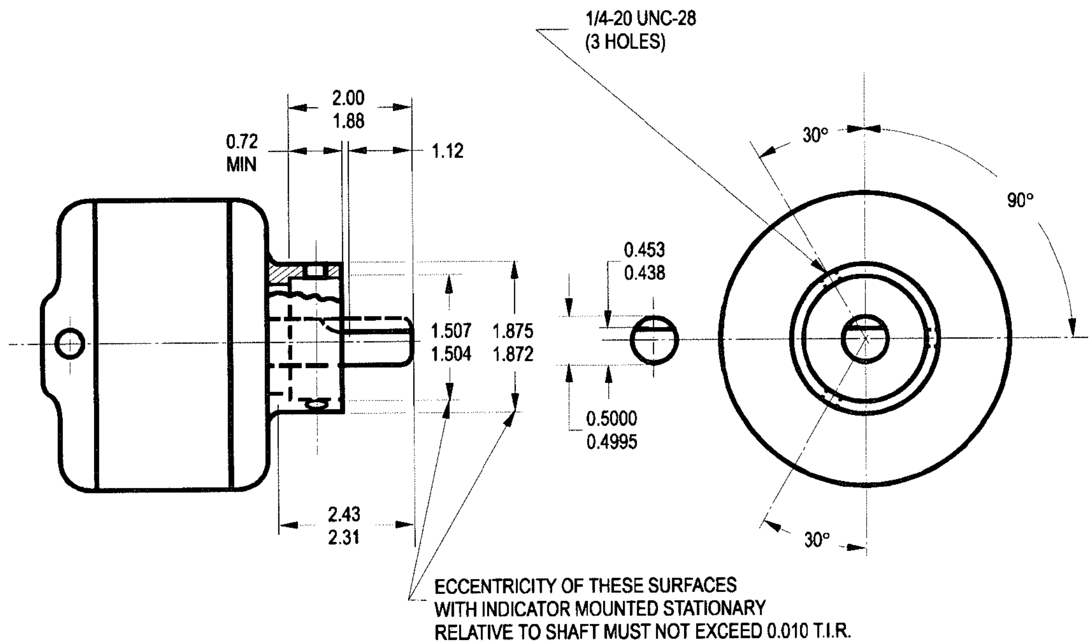
## 18.77 DIMENSIONS FOR SUMP PUMP MOTORS, TYPE K

See Figure 18-12.

## 18.78 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER

When a motor built in a frame given in 4.4.1 is designed in accordance with the standards for sump pump motors, the frame number shall be followed by the suffix letter K to indicate such construction. Sump pump motors are normally built in 48 or 56 frame sizes.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




All dimensions in inches

**Figure 18-12**
**SUMP PUMP MOTOR DIMENSIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMPS

(A motor of Class I, Group D explosion-proof construction as approved by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for belt or direct-couple drive of gasoline dispensing pumps of the size commonly used in automobile service stations.)

### 18.79 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single-phase
   1. Capacitor start
   2. Repulsion-start induction
b. Polyphase: Squirrel-cage, constant speed

## RATINGS

### 18.80 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.80.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115/230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110/220 volts

#### 18.80.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings of polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 volts

### 18.81 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.82 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.82.1 Horsepower Ratings

The horsepower ratings shall be 1/3, 1/2, and 3/4 horsepower.

#### 18.82.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 1800 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 rpm approximate full-load speed
b. 50 hertz – 1500 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 rpm approximate full-load speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.83 TEMPERATURE RISE

Gasoline dispensing pump motors shall have Class A insulation. They shall be rated 30 minutes or continuous, and the temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the following values:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | |
|---|---|
| Coil Windings, Degrees C | |
| Single-phase and polyphase | |
| thermometer ........................................................ | 55 |
| resistance ............................................................ | 65 |
| The temperature attained by cores and squirrel-cage windings shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | |
| NOTE—All temperature rises are based on an ambient temperature of 40°C. Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if this ambient temperature is exceeded in regular operation. | |

NOTE—See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

## 18.84 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATINGS

The horsepower ratings of single-phase motors is based upon breakdown torque (see 1.50). For small motors for gasoline dispensing pumps, the value of breakdown torque to be expected by the user for any horsepower shall fall within the range given in the following table:

| | **Torque, Oz-ft** | |
|---|---|---|
| **Hp** | **115 Volts 60 Hertz** | **110 Volts 50 Hertz** |
| 1/3 | 46.0-53.0 | 55.0-64.0 |
| 1/2 | 53.0-73.0 | 64.0-88.0 |
| 3/4 | 73.0-100.0 | 88.0-120.0 |

The minimum value of breakdown torque obtained in the manufacture of any design will determine the rating of the design. Tolerances in manufacturing will result in individual motors having breakdown torque from 100 percent to approximately 115 percent of the value on which the rating is based, but this excess torque shall not be relied upon by the user in applying the motor to its load.

The temperature of the motor at the start of the test shall be approximately 25°C.

## 18.85 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE

The locked-rotor torques (see 1.47) of single-phase small motors for gasoline dispensing pumps shall be not less than those shown in the following table:

| | **Torque, Oz-ft** | |
|---|---|---|
| **Hp** | **115 Volts 60 Hertz** | **110 Volts 50 Hertz** |
| 1/3 | 46.0 | 55.0 |
| 1/2 | 61.0 | 73.0 |
| 3/4 | 94.0 | 101.0 |

The temperature of the motor at the start of the test shall be approximately 25°C.

## 18.86 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

See 12.33 for Design N motors.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.87 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

## 18.88 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.89 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

## MANUFACTURING

## 18.90 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Gasoline dispensing pump motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features: (see 18.92)

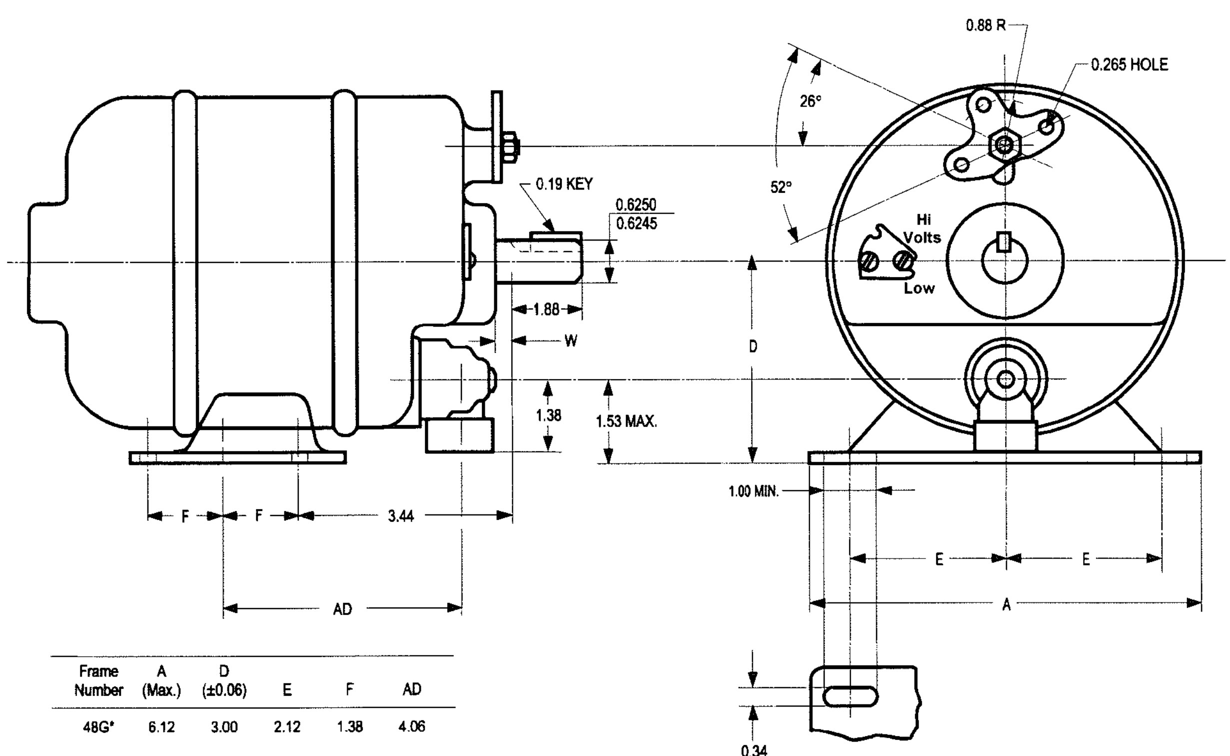
a. Totally enclosed, explosion proof, Class I, Group D
b. Rigid base mounting
c. Built-in line switch and operating lever (optional)
d. A motor that may exceed its maximum safe temperature under any operating condition (including locked rotor and single phasing) shall be provided with a temperature-limiting device within the motor enclosure. The temperature-limiting device shall not open under full-load conditions within its time rating and shall prevent dangerous temperatures from occurring on the exterior surface of the rotor enclosure with respect to ignition of the explosion atmosphere involved. The maximum safe temperature is 280°C (536°F) for Class I, Group D. The temperature limiting device shall open the motor circuit directly.
e. Voltage selector switch built in on the same end as the swivel connector on single-phase motors
f. Line leads 36 inches long brought out through the swivel connector
g. Swivel connector and line switch shall be permitted to be furnished in locations 90 and 180 degrees from that shown in 18.92

## 18.91 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER

When a motor having the dimensions given in 18.92 is designated in accordance with the standards for gasoline dispensing pump motors, the frame number shall be followed by the letter G. See Figure 18-13.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.92 DIMENSIONS FOR GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMP MOTORS, TYPE G[1]




| Frame Number | A (Max.) | D (±0.06) | E | F | AD |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 48G* | 6.12 | 3.00 | 2.12 | 1.38 | 4.06 |
| 56G* | 6.75 | 3.50 | 2.44 | 1.50 | 4.19 |
| 61G | 7.81 | 3.81 | 2.97 | 1.62 | 4.31 |

*Approved as Suggested Standard for Future Design.
All dimensions in inches.

**Figure 18-13**
**DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE G GASOLINE DISPENSING PUMP MOTORS**

[1] For tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.5.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR OIL BURNERS

(A motor for operating mechanical-draft oil burners for domestic installations.)

### 18.93 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Single-phase – Split-phase

## RATINGS

### 18.94 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

### 18.95 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.96 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.96.1 Horsepower Ratings

The horsepower ratings shall be 1/12, 1/8, and 1/6 horsepower.

#### 18.96.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 1800 and 3600 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 and 3450 rpm approximate full-load speed
b. 50 hertz – 1500 and 3000 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 and 2850 rpm approximate full-load speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.97 TEMPERATURE RISE

Oil-burner motors shall have either Class A or Class B insulation.[1] The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the following values:

| **Class of Insulation** | **A** | **B** |
|---|---|---|
| Coil Windings, Degrees C* | | |
| Guarded motors | | |
| thermometer | 50 | 70 |
| resistance | 60 | 80 |
| Totally enclosed motors | | |
| thermometer | 55 | 75 |
| resistance | 65 | 85 |
| The temperatures attained by cores and squirrel-cage windings shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | |

*Where two methods of temperature measurement are listed, a temperature rise within the values listed in the table, measured by either method, demonstrates conformity with the standard.

NOTE—All temperature rises are based on an ambient temperature of 40°C. Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if this ambient temperature is exceeded in regular operation.

[1] See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.98 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

## 18.99 LOCKED-ROTOR CHARACTERISTICS

The locked-rotor torque (see 1.47) and locked-rotor current (see 1.53) of 60-hertz motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be in accordance with the following table:

| Hp | Minimum Torque, Oz-ft | Maximum Current Amperes* |
|---|---|---|
| | 1800 Synchronous Rpm | |
| 1/12 | 7.0 | 20.0 |
| 1/8 | 10.0 | 23.0 |
| 1/6 | 12.0 | 25.0 |
| | 3600 Synchronous Rpm | |
| 1/12 | 4.0 | 20.0 |
| 1/8 | 6.0 | 22.0 |
| 1/6 | 7.0 | 24.0 |

*115-volt values.

## 18.100 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

## 18.101 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.102 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation of oil burner motors shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

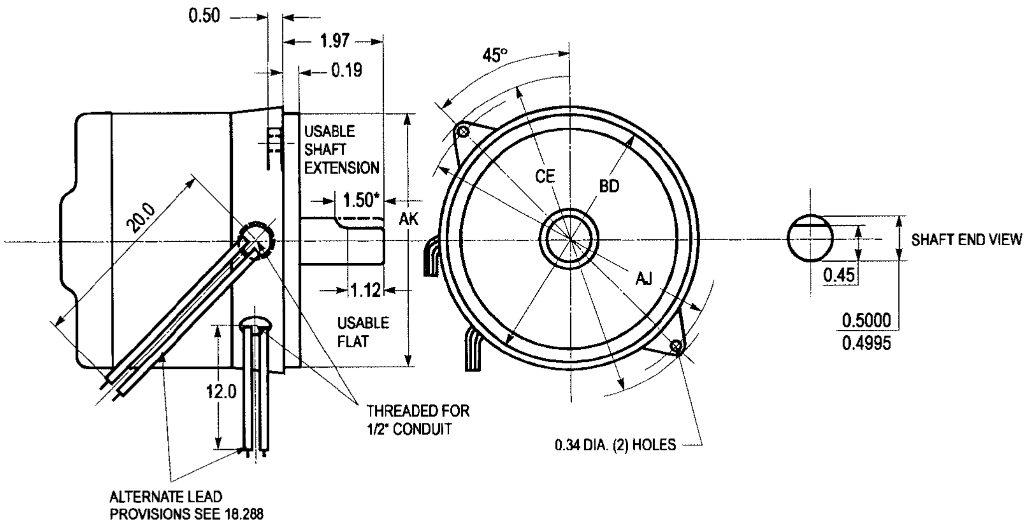
## MANUFACTURING

## 18.103 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Oil burner motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features: (see Figure 18-14)

a. Guarded or totally enclosed
b. Motors are to be supplied with nameplate in accordance with 10.39 and in addition marked with the words "oil burner motor."
c. Motors are to be equipped with manual reset inherent thermal overload protector provided with suitable marking to so indicate and with directions for resetting.
d. Motors shall be supplied with:
    1. Terminal leads consisting of two 20-inch lengths of flexible single-conductor wire which enter the enclosure through a hole tapped for 1/2-inch conduit located at 3 o'clock facing the end of the motor opposite the drive end.
    2. A 12-inch maximum length of two-wire 18 AWG Type SO cable brought out of the enclosure at 5 o'clock facing the end of the motor opposite the drive end.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




All dimensions in inches
*If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the applications, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 0.25 inch increments.

**Figure 18-14**
**MECHANICAL FEATURES FOR OIL BURNER MOTOR CONSTRUCTION**

All dimensions in inches.
*If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 0.25 inch increments

## 18.104 DIMENSIONS FOR FACE-MOUNTING MOTORS FOR OIL BURNERS, TYPES M AND N

Dimensions and tolerances for face-mounted small motors for oil burners shall be as follows:

### 18.104.1 Dimensions

| AJ | AK | BD Max | CE Max |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6.750 | 5.500 | 6.25 | 7.75 |
| 7.250 | 6.375 | 7.00 | 8.25 |

## 18.105 TOLERANCES

a. Maximum face runout – 0.008-in. indicator reading
b. Maximum pilot eccentricity – 0.008-in. indicator reading
c. AK dimension – +0.000, -0.005 in.

## 18.106 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER

### 18.106.1 Suffix Letter M

When a motor of a frame size given in 4.4.1 is designed in accordance with the standards for oil burner motors and has an AK dimension of 5.500 inches, the frame number shall be followed by the suffix letter M to indicate such construction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.106.2 Suffix Letter N**

When a motor of a frame size given in 4.4.1 is designed in accordance with the standards for oil burner motors and have an AK dimension of 6.375 inches, the frame number shall be followed by the suffix letter N to indicate such construction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR HOME LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT

(A home laundry equipment motor is one which furnishes power for driving a home washing machine, dryer, or a combination washer-dryer.)

### 18.107 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Single phase

a. Split phase
b. Capacitor start

## RATINGS

### 18.108 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage ratings of single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

### 18.109 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.110 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.110.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be 1/12, 1/8, 1/6, 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, and 3/4 horsepower.

#### 18.110.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz
   1. Single speed – 1800 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 rpm approximate full-load speed
   2. Two speed – 1800/1200 rpm synchronous speeds, 1725/1140 rpm approximate full-load speeds
b. 50 hertz
   1. Single speed – 1500 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 rpm approximate full-load speed
   2. Two speed – 1500/1000 rpm synchronous speeds, 1425/950 rpm approximate full-load speeds

### 18.111 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviation see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's name (shall be permitted to be coded)
b. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
c. Horsepower output (optional if amperes is marked)
d. Insulation system designation (if other than Class A)
e. Rpm at full-load
f. Frequency
g. Voltage
h. Full-load amperes (optional if horsepower is marked)
I. For motors equipped with thermal protection, the words "thermally protected" or "thermally protected L," whichever is applicable (L designates locked rotor protection only)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.112 TEMPERATURE RISE

Motors for home laundry equipment shall have either Class A, Class B, or Class F insulation.[1] The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the motor when tested in accordance with the rating shall not exceed the following values:

| Coil Windings - Resistance, Degrees C* | |
|---|---|
| Class A Insulation | 60 |
| Class B insulation | 80 |
| Class F insulation | 105 |
| The temperature attained by cores and squirrel-cage windings shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | |

*These temperature rises are based on an ambient temperature of 40°C

### 18.113 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34, Table 10-5.

### 18.114 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

The locked-rotor current of 115-volt laundry equipment motors shall not exceed 50 amperes when tested in accordance with IEEE Std 114 with the current value being read at the end of the 3-second period.

### 18.115 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.116 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.117 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Motors for home laundry equipment shall be constructed with the following mechanical features:

a. Open
b. Sleeve bearing
c. Mounting
   The motors shall be provided with one of the following
   1. Mounting rings for resilient mounting. The mounting rings dimensions and the spacing between mounting rings shall be as shown in 18.118.
   2. Extended studs. Stud spacing dimensions shall be as shown in 18.118
d. Shaft extension in accordance with 18.118
e. When blade terminals are used, the blade shall be 0.25 inch wide and 0.03 inch thick.

[1] See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.118 DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR HOME LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT

See Figure 18-15.

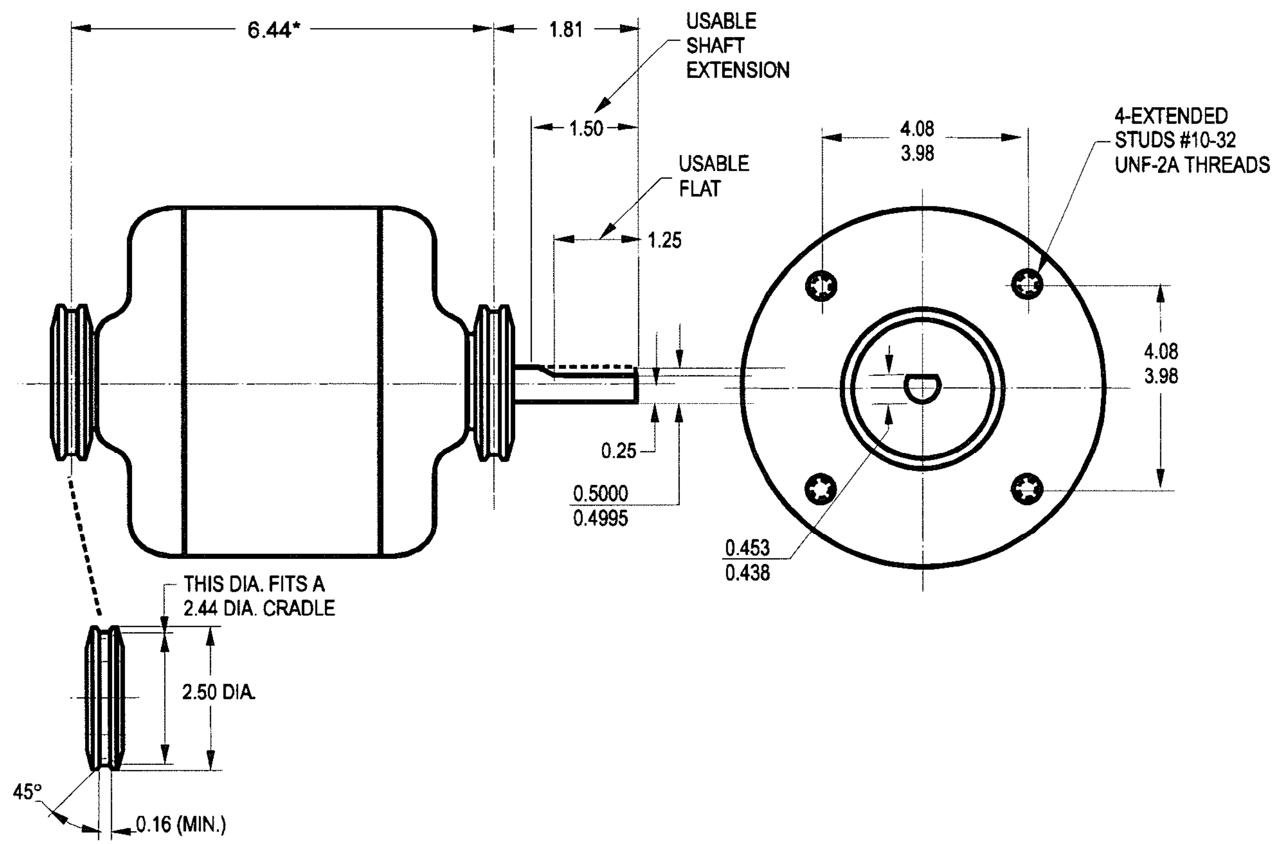



**Figure 18-15**
**MOTOR DIMENSIONS**

*When this dimension is greater or less than 6.44 in., it shall vary in increments of 0.50 in.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MOTORS FOR JET PUMPS

(A jet-pump motor is an open dripproof-type motor built for horizontal or vertical operation for direct-driven centrifugal ejector pumps.)

## 18.119 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single-phase
   1. Split phase
   2. Capacitor start
b. Polyphase induction; Squirrel-cage

## RATINGS

## 18.120 VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 18.120.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings for single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz
   1. Split-phase – 115 and 230 volts
   2. Capacitor start – 115/230 volts[1]
b. 50 hertz
   1. Split-phase – 110 and 220 volts
   2. Capacitor start – 110/220 volts[2]

### 18.120.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings for polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

## 18.121 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

## 18.122 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND SERVICE FACTOR RATINGS

The horsepower ratings shall be 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, 1, 1-1/2, 2, and 3 horsepower.
The service factor and minimum rpm at service factor shall be:

| Hp | Service Factor | Minimum Rpm at Service Factor* |
|---|---|---|
| | **60 Hertz** | |
| 1/3 | 1.75 | 3450 |
| 1/2 | 1.60 | 3450 |
| 3/4 | 1.50 | 3450 |
| 1 | 1.40 | 3450 |
| 1-1/2 | 1.30 | 3450 |
| 2 | 1.20 | 3450 |
| 3 | 1.15 | 3450 |
| | **50 Hertz** | |
| All | 1.0 | 2850 |

*This speed is obtained in a test at rated voltage when the temperature of the winding and the other parts of the machine are at approximately 25°C at the start of the test.

[1] Single-phase three-horsepower are rated for 230-volt operation only.
[2] Single-phase three-horsepower motors are rated for 220-volt operation only.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TEST AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.123 TEMPERATURE RISE

Motors for jet pumps shall have a Class A or Class B insulation system.[1] The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium shall be in accordance with 12.43 for small ac motors and 12.44 for medium ac motors.

### 18.124 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.125 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS

For breakdown torque, see 12.32 for single-phase induction motors and 12.37 for polyphase induction motors.

### 18.126 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

See 12.33, 12.34, or 12.35, depending on type and rating of motor.

### 18.127 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.128 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.129 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for jet-pump motors shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.130 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Jet-pump motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features:
(See Figures 18-16 and 18-17.)

a. Open dripproof construction
b. Grease-lubricated ball bearing on one end suitable for taking axial thrust and with either oil-lubricated sleeve bearing or a ball bearing on the other end suitable for horizontal or vertical position. The axial thrust may be taken at either end consistent with design practice.
c. The face mounting for the drive end shall be in accordance with Figure 18-16.
d. The end shield at the end opposite the drive shall be totally enclosed or shall provide a suitable means to accommodate a drip cover when required for vertical mounting.
e. Standard shaft extension shall be in accordance with Figure 18-16 (frame 56C). Alternate standard shaft extension shall be in accordance with Figure 18-17 (frame 56J).[2]
f. Terminals for line lead connections shall be located in the end shield at the end opposite the drive end at the 3 o'clock position.

[1] See 1.66 for description of Class A and Class B insulation systems.
[2] If the shaft extension length of the motor is not suitable for the application, it is recommended that deviations from this length be in 1/4-inch increments.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

g. The capacitor unit, when mounted externally on capacitor motors, shall be attached to the motor frame 90 degrees counterclockwise from the terminal location facing the end opposite the drive end as shown by the dotted lines in Figure 18-16.
h. Frame-mounted nameplates shall be attached to the motor in the area from 0 to 10 degrees counterclockwise from the motor terminal location facing the end opposite the drive end. The nameplate shall be so located that it will be read when the motor is mounted in a vertical position and the drip cover, when used, is in place. Any other instruction plates shall be immediately adjacent to the motor nameplate.
i. Automatic reset thermal overload protector shall be provided on single-phase motors.
j. When the alternate shaft extension shown in Figure 18-17 is used, a means shall be provided for holding the shaft during assembly or removal of the pump impeller (3/32-inch screwdriver slot in opposite end of shaft, flat in shaft, etc.).

### 18.131 DIMENSION FOR FACE-MOUNTED MOTORS FOR JET PUMPS[1,2,3]

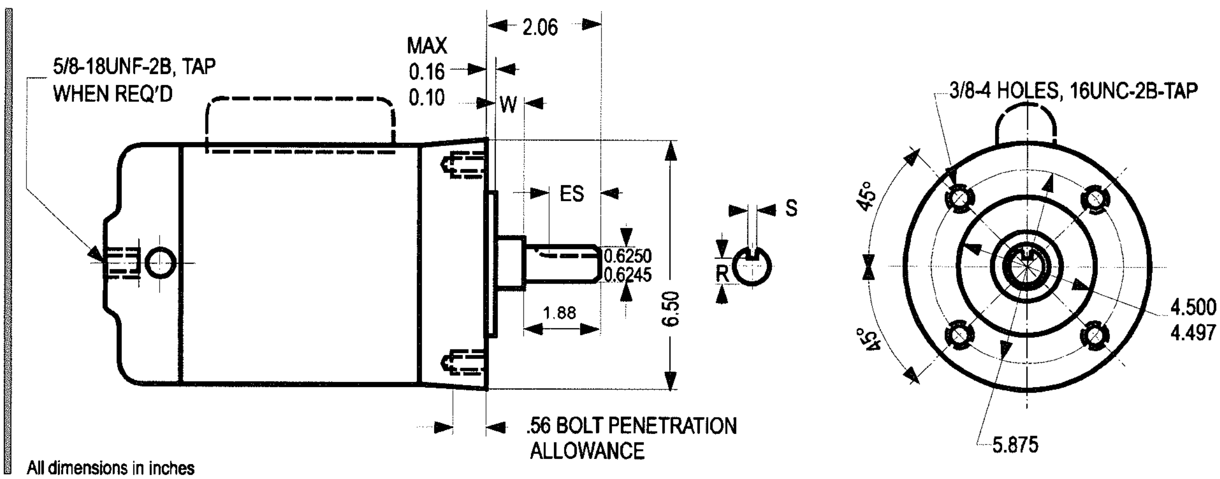
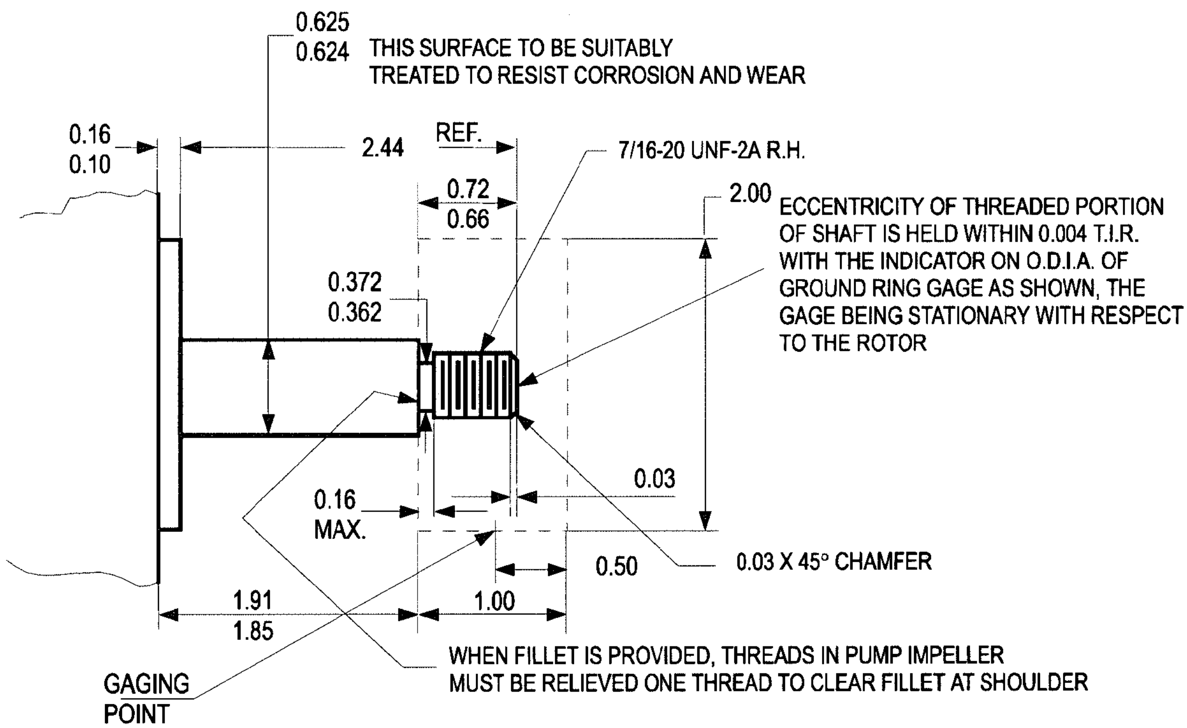



**Figure 18-16**
**FACE-MOUNTED JET PUMP MOTOR DIMENSIONS**

[1] Face runout or eccentricity of rabbet (with indicator mounted on the shaft) will be within 0.004-inch gage reading.
[2] For general mechanical features, see 18.130.
[3] See 4.4.1 for key dimensions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




All dimensions in inches

**Figure 18-17**
**FACE-MOUNTED JET PUMP MOTOR DIMENSIONS**

## 18.132 FRAME NUMBER AND FRAME SUFFIX LETTER

When a motor of a frame size given in 4.4.1 is designed in accordance with the standards for jet-pump motors and has the alternate standard shaft extension (threaded shaft) shown in Figure 18-17, the frame number shall be followed by the suffix letter J to indicate such construction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR COOLANT PUMPS

(A coolant-pump motor is an enclosed ball-bearing-type motor built for horizontal or vertical operation for direct connection to direct-driven centrifugal coolant pumps.)

### 18.133 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single-phase
   1. Split-phase
   2. Capacitor start
   3. Repulsion-start induction
b. Polyphase induction
   Squirrel cage, constant speed
c. Direct current
   Compound wound

## RATINGS

### 18.134 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.134.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings for single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz
   1. Split-phase - 115 and 230 volts
   2. Capacitor start
      a) 1/4 horsepower and smaller – 115 and 230 volts
      b) 1/3 horsepower and larger – 115/230 volts
b. 50 hertz
   1. Split-phase – 110 and 220 volts
   2. Capacitor start
      a) 1/4 horsepower and smaller – 110 and 220 volts
      b) 1/3 horsepower and larger – 110/220 volts

#### 18.134.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings for polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 220, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

#### 18.134.3 Direct-current Motors

115 and 230 volts.

### 18.135 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies for single-phase and polyphase induction motors shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.136 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

Horsepower and speed ratings shall be as noted in the following table:

| | 60 Hertz | | 50 Hertz | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Brake Hp Rating | Synchronous Rpm | Approximate Full-Load Rpm | Synchronous Rpm | Approximate Full-Load Rpm |
| 1/20 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/12 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/8 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/6 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/4 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/3 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1/2 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 3/4 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |
| | 1800 | 1725 | 1500 | 1425 |
| 1 | 3600 | 3450 | 3000 | 2850 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.137 TEMPERATURE RISE

Motors for coolant pumps shall have Class A insulation.[1]

The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium for each of the various parts of the motor, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the following values:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Coil Windings, Degrees C** | |
| Single-phase and polyphase-induction motors* | |
| thermometer | 55 |
| resistance | 65 |
| Direct-current motors - thermometer | 55 |
| Commutators - thermometer | 65 |
| The temperatures attained by cores, squirrel-cage windings, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders and brushes, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | |

*Where two methods of temperature measurement are listed, a temperature rise within the values listed in the table, measured by either method, demonstrates conformity with the standard.

NOTE—All temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if this ambient temperature is exceeded in regular operation.

### 18.138 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.139 TORQUE CHARACTERISTICS

For breakdown torque, see 12.32 for single induction motors and 12.37 for polyphase-induction motors.

### 18.140 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

See 12.33.

### 18.141 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.142 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44 and 12.68.

### 18.143 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for coolant-pump motors is clockwise, facing the end opposite the drive end.

[1] See 1.66 for description of Class A insulation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.144 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

Coolant-pump motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features:
(see 18.131)

a. Totally enclosed
b. Grease-lubricated ball bearings suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting which shall have suitable provision for taking axial trust away from the front end.
c. Back end shield shall be machined in accordance with Figure 18-16, except that the 5/8"-18 tapped hole in the bearing hub shall be omitted.
d. The straight shaft extension shall be in accordance with 4.4.1 and 4.5 or, alternatively, in accordance with Figure 18-17.
e. Terminals or leads shall be located in the front end shield or on the frame adjacent to the front end shield.
f. The capacitor unit, when mounted externally on capacitor motors, shall be attached to the motor frame 90 degrees counterclockwise from the terminal location while facing the front end of the motors.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—4-INCH

(A submersible motor for deep well pumps is a motor designed for operation while totally submerged in water having a temperature not exceeding 25°C (77°F).)

### 18.145 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

a. Single-phase
   1. Split-phase
   2. Capacitor
b. Polyphase induction: Squirrel cage, constant speed

## RATINGS

### 18.146 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.146.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings for single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 115 and 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 110 and 220 volts

#### 18.146.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings for polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

### 18.147 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.148 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.148.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be:

a. Single-phase, 115 volts – 1/4, 1/3, and 1/2 horsepower
b. Single-phase, 230 volts – 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, 1, 1-1/2, 2, and 3 horsepower
c. Polyphase induction – 1/4, 1/3, 1/2, 3/4, 1, 1-1/2, 2, 3, and 5 horsepower

#### 18.148.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 3600 rpm synchronous speed
b. 50 hertz – 3000 rpm synchronous speed

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.149 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.150 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

#### 18.150.1 Single-Phase Small Motors

For single-phase small motors, see 12.33.

#### 18.150.2 Single-Phase Medium Motors

For single-phase medium motors, see 12.34.

#### 18.150.3 Three-Phase Medium Motors

For three-phase medium squirrel-cage induction motors, see 12.35.

### 18.151 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.152 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX

See 12.44.
Length and size of cable should be taken into consideration, and the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

### 18.153 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.154 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

The direction of rotation for submersible motors is clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

### 18.155 THRUST CAPACITY

When submersible pump motors are operated in a vertical position with the shaft up, they shall be capable of withstanding the following thrust:

| Horsepower | Thrust, Pounds |
|---|---|
| 1/4 - 1-1/2, incl. | 300 |
| 2-5, include. | 900 |

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.156 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS

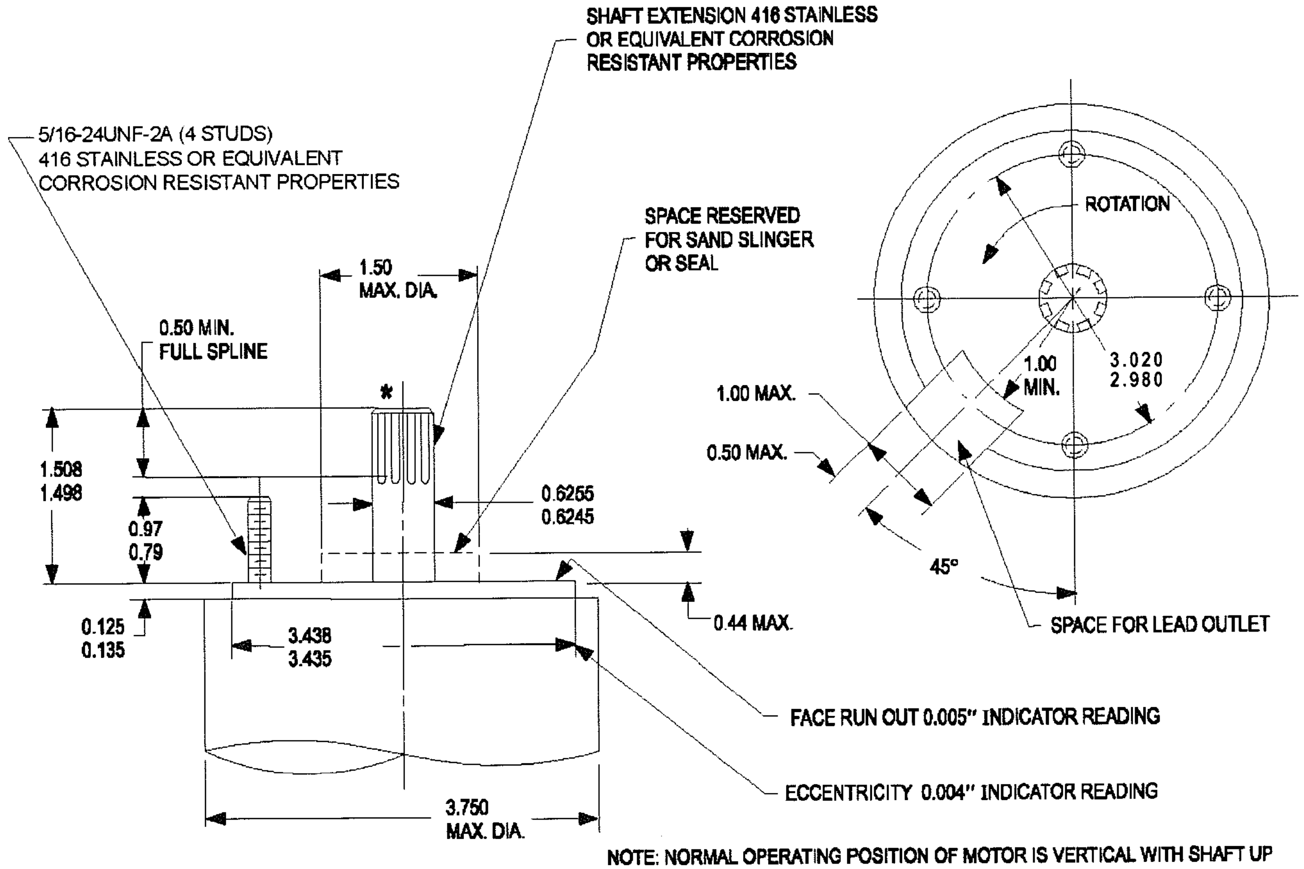
The terminal lead markings for single-phase submersible pump motors shall be as follows:

a. Auxiliary winding – red
b. Main winding – black
c. Common auxiliary winding and main winding – yellow

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.157 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

See Figure 18-18.




All dimensions in inches.
*Spline Data—14 teeth, 24/48 pitch, 30-degree pressure angle, flat or fillet root, side fit, tolerance Class 5, in accordance with ANSI B92.1 with major diameter reduced to 0.012 inch to allow use with former short dedendum and present standard internal splines.

**Figure 18-18**
**GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—6-INCH

(A submersible motor for deep well pumps is a motor designed for operation while totally submerged in water having a temperature not exceeding 25°C (77°F).)

### 18.158 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

See 18.145.

## RATINGS

### 18.159 VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.159.1 Single-Phase Motors

The voltage ratings for single-phase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 230 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 volts

#### 18.159.2 Polyphase Induction Motors

The voltage ratings for polyphase motors shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 220 and 380 volts

### 18.160 FREQUENCIES

See 18.147.

### 18.161 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.161.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be:

a. Single-phase 230 volts – 3, 5, and 7-1/2 horsepower
b. Polyphase induction – 3, 5, 7-1/2, 10, 15, 20, 25, and 30 horsepower

#### 18.161.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 3600 rpm synchronous speed
b. 50 hertz – 3000 rpm synchronous speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.162 BASIS FOR HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.163 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

**18.163.1** For single-phase medium motors, see 12.34.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.163.2** For three-phase medium squirrel-cage induction motors, the locked-rotor current, when measured with rated voltage and frequency impressed and with rotor locked, shall not exceed the following:

| Three-phase 60 Hertz Motors at 230 Volts* | |
|---|---|
| **Hp** | **Locked-Rotor Current, Amperes** |
| 3 | 64 |
| 5 | 92 |
| 7½ | 130 |
| 10 | 190 |
| 15 | 290 |
| 20 | 390 |
| 25 | 500 |
| 30 | 600 |

*Locked-rotor current of motors designed for voltages other than 230 volts shall be inversely proportional to the voltages.

## 18.164 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

## 18.165 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX

See 12.44. Length and size of cable should be taken into consideration, and the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

## 18.166 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.167 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

See 18.154.

## 18.168 THRUST CAPACITY

When submersible pump motors are operated in a vertical position with the shaft up, they shall be capable of withstanding the following thrusts:

| Hp | Thrust, pounds |
|---|---|
| 3 | 300 |
| 5 | 500 |
| 7-1/2 | 750 |
| 10 | 1000 |
| 15 | 1500 |
| 20 | 2000 |
| 25 | 2500 |
| 30 | 3000 |

# MANUFACTURING

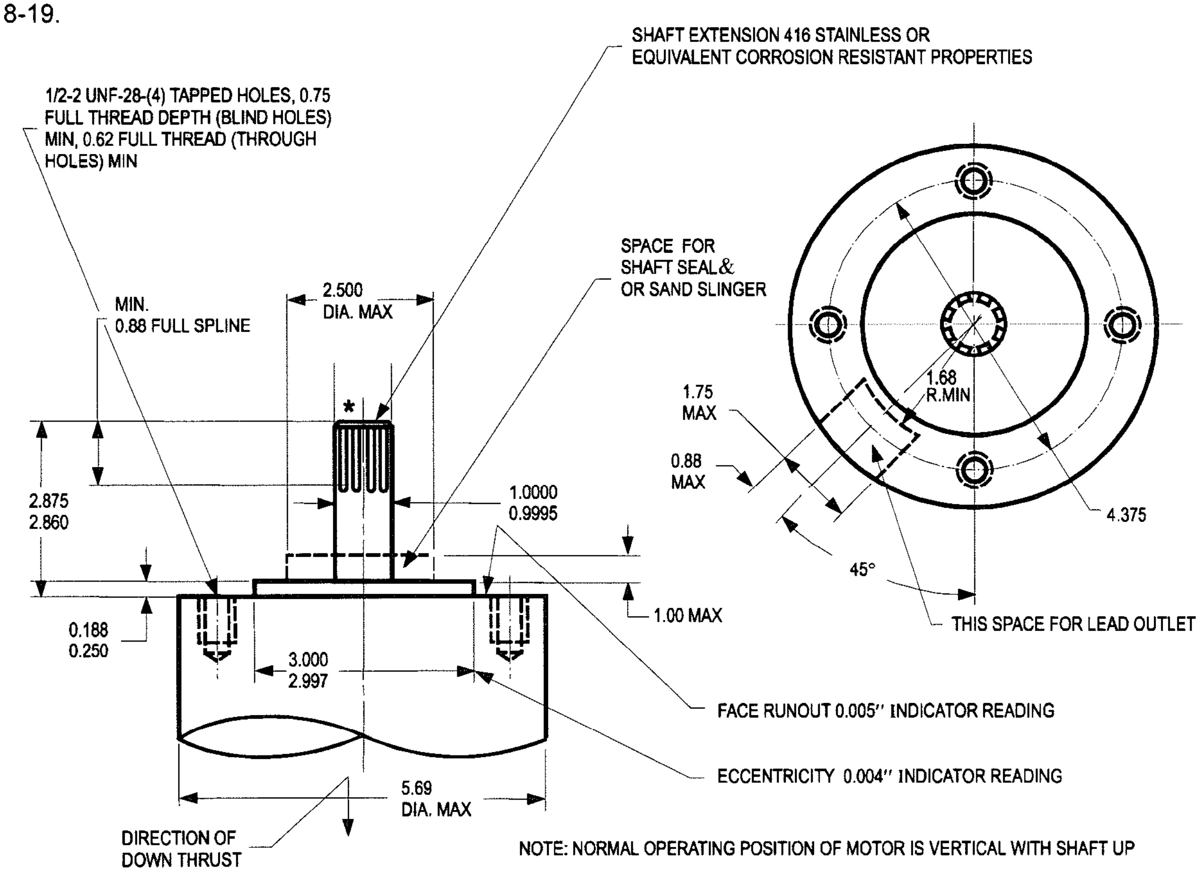
## 18.169 TERMINAL LEAD MARKINGS

See 18.156.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.170 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

See Figure 18-19.




All dimensions in inches.
*Spline Data—15 teeth, 16/32 pitch, 30-degree pressure angle, flat or fillet root, side fit, tolerance Class 5, in accordance with ANSI B92.1, with major diameter reduced 0.016 inch to allow use with former short dedendum and present standard internal splines.

**Figure 18-19**
**GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS FOR DEEP WELL PUMPS—8-INCH

(A submersible motor for deep well pumps is a motor designed for operation while totally submerged in water having a temperature not exceeding 25°C (77°F).)

### 18.171 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Polyphase induction squirrel-cage, constant speed.

## RATINGS

### 18.172 VOLTAGE RATINGS

Voltage ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 460 and 575 volts
b. 50 hertz – 380 volts

### 18.173 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 60 and 50 hertz.

### 18.174 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.174.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be 40, 50, 60, 75, and 100 horsepower.

#### 18.174.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 3600 rpm synchronous speed
b. 50 hertz – 3000 rpm synchronous speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.175 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT

For squirrel-cage induction motors, the locked-rotor current, when measured with rated voltage and frequency impressed and with rotor locked, shall not exceed the following:

| Three-Phase 60 Hertz Motors at 460 Volts* | |
|---|---|
| **Hp** | **Locked-Rotor current, Amperes** |
| 40 | 380 |
| 50 | 470 |
| 60 | 560 |
| 75 | 700 |
| 100 | 930 |

*Locked-rotor current of motors designed for voltages other than 460 volts shall be inversely proportional to the voltages.

### 18.176 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.177 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE AT CONTROL BOX

See 12.44. Length and size of cable should be taken into consideration, and the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

## 18.178 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

## 18.179 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

See 18.154.

## 18.180 THRUST CAPACITY

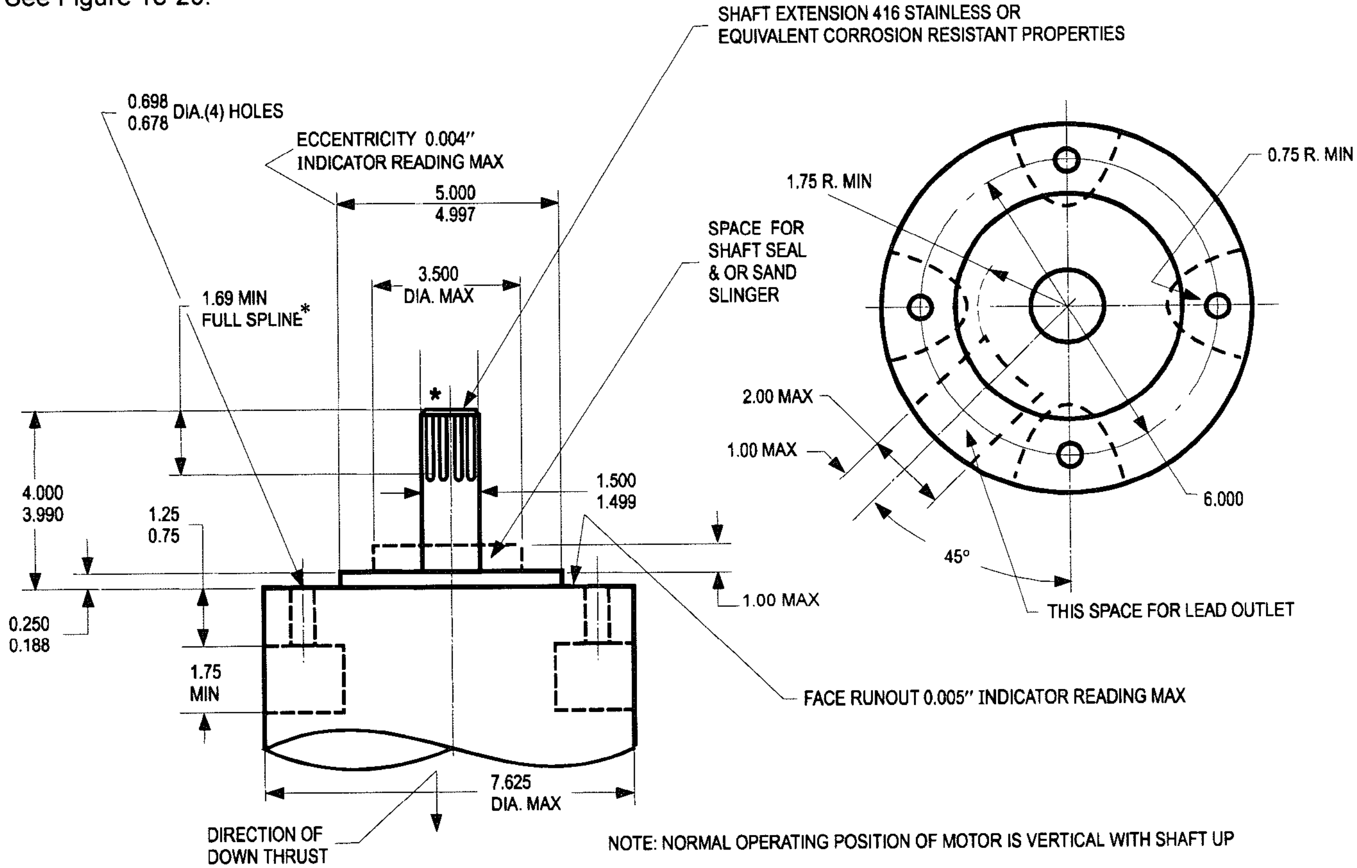
When submersible pump motors are operated in a vertical position with the shaft up, they shall be capable of withstanding the following thrust:

| Hp | Thrust, Pounds |
|---|---|
| 40 | 4000 |
| 50 | 5000 |
| 60 | 6000 |
| 75 | 7500 |
| 100 | 10000 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.181 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES

See Figure 18-20.




*Spline Data—23 teeth, 16/32 pitch, 30 degree pressure angle, fillet root, side fit, tolerance Class 5, in accordance with ANSI B92.1.

**Figure 18-20**
**GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MEDIUM DC ELEVATOR MOTORS

### 18.182 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO TYPE

#### 18.182.1 Class DH

Class DH direct-current high-speed elevator motors are open-type motors for use with gear-driven elevators. Speed variation is obtained primarily by armature voltage control.

#### 18.182.2 Class DL

Class DL direct-current low-speed elevator motors are open-type motors for the use with gearless elevators. Speed variation is obtained primarily by armature voltage control.

## RATINGS

### 18.183 VOLTAGE RATINGS

Because the speed variation of direct-current elevator motors is primarily obtained by armature voltage control, these motors are operated over a wide range of voltages. Usually the highest applied armature voltage should not exceed 600 volts. Whenever possible, it is recommended that voltage ratings of 230 or 240 volts should be utilized for motors of all horsepower ratings, although voltage ratings of 115 or 120 volts may be used for motors having ratings of 10 horsepower and smaller.

### 18.184 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.184.1 Class DH

When the voltage rating of a Class DH direct-current elevator motor is either 230 or 240 volts (see 18.183), the horsepower and speed ratings shall be:

| Hp | Speed, Rpm | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7½ | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | ... |
| 10 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | ... |
| 15 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | ... |
| 20 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 25 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 30 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 40 | 1750 | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 50 | ... | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 60 | ... | 1150 | 850 | 650 |
| 75 | ... | ... | 850 | 650 |
| 100 | ... | ... | 850 | 650 |

#### 18.184.2 Class DL

Because of the multiplicity of combinations of traction sheave diameters, car speeds, car loading ratings, and roping, it is impracticable to develop a standard for horsepower and speed ratings for Class DL direct-current elevator motors.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.185 BASIS OF RATING

### 18.185.1 Class DH

A Class DH direct-current elevator motor shall have a time rating of 15 minutes, 30 minutes, or 60 minutes. When operated at rated horsepower, speed, and time, the temperature rise of the motor shall be in accordance with 18.192.

### 18.185.2 Class DL

A Class DL direct-current elevator motor shall have a time rating of 60 minutes. When operated at rated horsepower, speed, and time, the temperature rise of the motor shall be in accordance with 18.192.

NOTE—When the elevator duty cycle permits, a Class DL direct-current elevator motor may have a time rating of 30 minutes.

## 18.186 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS

See 10.66.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

## 18.187 ACCELERATION AND DECELERATION CAPACITY

Class DH or DL direct-current elevator motors shall be capable of carrying successfully at least 200 percent of rated armature current for a period not to exceed 3 seconds at any voltage up to 70 percent of rated armature voltage and a momentary load of at least 230 percent of rated armature current within the same voltage range.

## 18.188 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO LOAD

### 18.188.1 Class DH

When Class DH direct-current elevator motors (see 18.184) are operated at rated voltage, the variation in speed from full-load to no-load hot, based upon full-load speed hot with constant field current maintained, shall not exceed 10 percent.

### 18.188.2 Class DL

When Class DL direct-current elevator motors are operated at rated voltage, the variation in speed from full-load to no-load hot, based upon full-load speed hot with constant field current maintained, shall not exceed 20 percent.

## 18.189 VARIATION FROM RATED SPEED

When Class DH or Class DL direct-current elevator motors (see 18.184) are operated at rated armature and field voltage and load, the actual full-load speed hot shall not vary by more than plus or minus 7.5 percent from rated speed.

## 18.190 VARIATION IN SPEED DUE TO HEATING

### 18.190.1 Open-Loop Control System

When a Class DH or Class DL direct-current elevator motor is intended for use in an open-loop elevator control system and is operated at rated armature and field voltage and load, the variation in speed from full-load cold to full-load hot during a run of a specified duration shall not exceed 10 percent of the full-load speed hot.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 18.190.2 Closed-Loop Control System

When a Class DH or Class DL direct-current elevator motor is intended for use in a closed-loop elevator control system and is operated at rated armature and field voltage and load, the variation in speed from full-load cold to full-load hot during a run of a specified duration shall not exceed 15 percent of the full-load speed hot.

### 18.191 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.192 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rise, above the temperature of cooling medium, for each of the various parts of Class DH and Class DL direct-current elevator motors, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the values given in the following table. All temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

| Time Rating | 15 minutes | | 30 and 60 minutes | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation* | A | B | A | B |
| Load, Percent of Rated Capacity | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Temperature Rise, † Degrees C | | | | |
| a. Armature windings and all other windings other than those given in items b and c - resistance | 80 | 115 | 70 | 100 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings - resistance | 80 | 115 | 70 | 100 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings - resistance | 80 | 115 | 70 | 100 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | |

*See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

**All temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113. Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if this ambient temperature is exceeded in regular operation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MOTOR-GENERATOR SETS FOR DC ELEVATOR MOTORS

(A motor-generator set consisting of an open-type induction motor direct-connected to an open-type direct-current adjustable-voltage generator for supplying power to a direct-current elevator motor.)

## RATINGS

### 18.193 BASIS OF RATING

#### 18.193.1 Time Rating

The induction motor and the direct-current adjustable-voltage generator shall each have a continuous time rating.

#### 18.193.2 Relation to Elevator Motor

The kilowatt rating of the direct-current adjustable-voltage generator and the horsepower rating of the induction motor do not necessarily bear any definite relation to the rating of the direct-current elevator motor to which they furnish power because of the difference in time rating.

### 18.194 GENERATOR VOLTAGE RATINGS

#### 18.194.1 Value

The direct-current adjustable-voltage generator shall be capable of producing the rated voltage of the direct-current elevator motor to which it is supplying power.

#### 18.194.2 Maximum Value

Since the direct-current elevator motor and the direct-current adjustable-voltage generator are rated on different bases, the generator rated voltage may be less than that of the direct-current elevator motor. Usually the highest rated voltage of the generator should not exceed 600 volts. Whenever possible, it is recommended that the rated voltage of the generator be 250 volts.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.195 VARIATION IN VOLTAGE DUE TO HEATING

#### 18.195.1 Open-Loop Control System

When an elevator direct-current adjustable-voltage generator is intended for use in an open-loop control system, the change in armature voltage from full-load cold to full-load hot, with a fixed voltage applied to the generator field, shall not exceed 10 percent.

#### 18.195.2 Closed-Loop Control System

When an elevator direct-current adjustable-voltage generator is intended for use in a closed-loop control system, the change in armature voltage from full-load cold to full-load hot, with a fixed voltage applied to the generator field, shall not exceed 15 percent.

### 18.196 OVERLOAD

Both the induction motor and the direct-current adjustable-voltage generator shall be capable of supplying the peak load required for the direct-current elevator motor to which it is supplying power. See 18.187.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.197 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

The various parts of the set shall be given high-potential tests in accordance with 3.1 for single-phase and polyphase induction motors and in accordance with 15.48 for direct-current generators.

## 18.198 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE

All sets shall operate successfully at rated load and frequency with the motor voltage not more than 10 percent above or below the nameplate rating but not necessarily in accordance with the standards established for operation at normal rating.

## 18.199 VARIATION FROM RATED FREQUENCY

All sets shall operate successfully at rated load and voltage with the motor frequency not more than 5 percent above or below the nameplate rating but not necessarily in accordance with the standards established for operation at normal rating.

## 18.200 COMBINED VARIATION OF VOLTAGE AND FREQUENCY

All sets shall operate successfully at rated load with a combined variation in motor voltage and frequency not more than 10 percent above or below the nameplate rating, provided the limits of variations given in 18.198 and 18.199 are not exceeded, but not necessarily in accordance with the standards established for operation at normal rating.

## 18.201 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of each machine in the set, when tested in accordance with their ratings, shall not exceed the following values:

### 18.201.1 Induction Motors

See 12.44.

### 18.201.2 Direct-Current Adjustable-Voltage Generators

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Class of Insulation* | A | B |
| Load, Percent of Rated Capacity | 100 | 100 |
| Time Rating - Continuous | | |
| Temperature Rise, **Degrees C | | |
| a. Armature windings and all other windings other than those given in items b and c – resistance | 70 | 100 |
| b. Multi-layer field windings – resistance | 70 | 100 |
| c. Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings – resistance | 70 | 100 |
| d. The temperature attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | |

*See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

**All temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113. Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if this ambient temperature is exceeded in regular operation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MEDIUM AC POLYPHASE ELEVATOR MOTORS

### 18.202 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Polyphase alternating-current high-speed motors, Class AH, for use with gear-driven elevators shall include:

#### 18.202.1 AH1

All single-speed internal-resistance-type elevator motors having a squirrel-cage secondary or other form of secondary winding having no external connection and designed for only one synchronous speed.

#### 18.202.2 AH2

All single-speed external-resistance-type elevator motors having a wound secondary with means for connection to an external starting resistance and designed for only one synchronous speed.

#### 18.202.3 AH3

All multispeed internal-resistance-type elevator motors having a squirrel-cage secondary or other forms of secondary winding having no external connection and designed to give two or more synchronous speeds.

## RATINGS

### 18.203 BASIS OF RATING—ELEVATOR MOTORS

Squirrel-cage elevator motors shall be rated primarily on the basis of locked-rotor torque, but they may also be given a horsepower rating. The horsepower ratings shall be those ratings given under 18.206 and shall be the brake-horsepower the motor will actually develop without exceeding the standard temperature rise for the standard time rating as given in 18.208.

### 18.204 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage ratings shall be:

a. Class AH1 motors, 1 horsepower to 10 horsepower, inclusive, at 1200 and 1800 rpm - 115 volts
b. Class AH1 motors other than those covered in item a, Class AH2 motors, and Class AH3 motors - 200, 230, 460, and 575 volts

### 18.205 FREQUENCY

The frequency shall be 60 hertz.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.206 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

Horsepower and synchronous speed ratings of open-type Class AH1 squirrel-cage motors for elevators and similar applications shall be as given in the following table:

| 60 HERTZ, TWO- AND THREE-PHASE | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | |
| 1 | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... |
| 7½ | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | ... |
| 10 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 |
| 15 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 |
| 20 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 |
| 25 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 |
| 30 | ... | ... | 900 | 720 | 600 |
| 40 | ... | ... | 900 | 720 | 600 |

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

## 18.207 LOCKED-ROTOR TORQUE FOR SINGLE-SPEED SQUIRREL-CAGE ELEVATOR MOTORS

The locked-rotor torque for Class AH1 elevator motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than 285 percent of rated synchronous torque.

For the selection of gearing and other mechanical design features of the elevator, 335 percent of rated synchronous torque shall be used as a maximum value of locked-rotor torque for Class AH1 elevator motors.

## 18.208 TIME-TEMPERATURE RATING

The rated horsepower or torque of elevator motors under Class AH1 shall be based on a 30-minute run at rated horsepower or rated torque and corresponding speed with a temperature rise not to exceed the values given in 12.44.

## 18.209 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

## 18.210 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.211 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type designation (optional)
b. Horsepower rating
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise
e. Rpm at full load
f. Starting torque (pounds at 1 foot)
g. Frequency
h. Number of phases
I. Voltage
j. Full-load amperes
k. Code letter for locked-rotor kVA (see 10.37)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MEDIUM AC CRANE MOTORS

## RATINGS

### 18.212 VOLTAGE RATINGS

Voltage ratings shall be:

| Hp | Voltage Ratings, Volts |
|---|---|
| **60 Hertz** | |
| 1-10, incl. | 115, 200, 230, 460, and 575 |
| 15-125, incl. | 200, 230, 460, and 575 |
| 150 | 460 and 575 |
| **50 Hertz** | |
| 1-125, incl. | 220 and 380 |
| 150 | 380 |

### 18.213 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

### 18.214 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

Horsepower and speed ratings for intermittent-rated alternating-current wound-rotor crane motors shall be:

| Hertz | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ratings Hp | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | ... | ... | ... |
| 1½ | 1800 | 1200 | ... | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 3 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 5 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 7½ | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 10 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 15 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | ... | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | ... | ... |
| 20 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | ... |
| 25 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | ... | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | ... |
| 30 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | .. | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | ... |
| 40 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | 500 |
| 50 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | 500 |
| 60 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | 500 |
| 75 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | 500 |
| 100 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | 750 | 600 | 500 |
| 125 | 1800 | 1200 | ... | 720 | 600 | 1500 | 1000 | ... | 600 | 500 |
| 150 | 1800 | ... | ... | ... | 600 | 1500 | ... | ... | ... | 500 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.215 SECONDARY DATA FOR WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS

| Hp Rating | Secondary Volts* | Maximum Secondary Amperes | External Resistance,** Ohms | Hp Rating | Secondary Volts* | Maximum Secondary Ampere | External Resistance,** Ohms |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 90 | 6 | 7 | 25 | 220 | 60 | 1.75 |
| 1-1/2 | 110 | 7.3 | 7 | 30 | 240 | 65 | 1.75 |
| 2 | 120 | 8.4 | 7 | 40 | 315 | 60 | 2.75 |
| 3 | 145 | 10 | 7 | 50 | 350 | 67 | 2.75 |
| 5 | 140 | 19 | 3.5 | 60 | 375 | 74 | 2.75 |
| 7-1/2 | 165 | 23 | 3.5 | 75 | 385 | 90 | 2.30 |
| 10 | 195 | 26.5 | 3.5 | 100 | 360 | 130 | 1.50 |
| 15 | 240 | 32.5 | 3.5 | 125 | 385 | 150 | 1.40 |
| 20 | 265 | 38 | 3.5 | 150 | 380 | 185 | 1.10 |

*Tolerance plus or minus 10 percent

**Tolerance plus or minus 5 percent

NOTE—100 percent external ohms is the resistance per leg in a 3-phase wye-connected bank of resistance which will limit the motor locked-rotor torque to 100 percent.

## 18.216 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following minimum amount of information shall be given on all nameplates:
For abbreviations, see 1.79.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Class of insulation system and maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed (see 12.44.1)
e. Rpm at full load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Full-load primary amperes
j. Secondary amperes at full load
k. Secondary open-circuit voltage

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.217 FRAME SIZES FOR TWO- AND THREE-PHASE 60-HERTZ OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS HAVING CLASS B INSULATION SYSTEMS**

| | | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1800 | 1200 | 900 |
| Hp Rating | Time Rating, Enclosure | | Frame Designation* | |
| 10 | 30 minutes, open | 256X | 284X | 286X |
| 15 | | 284X | 286X | 324X |
| 20 | 30 minutes, totally enclosed | 286X | 324X | 326X |
| 25 | | 324X | 326X | 364X |
| 30 | | 326X | 364X | 364X |
| 40 | | 364X | 364X | 365X |
| 50 | 60 minutes, open | 364X | 365X | 404X |
| 60 | | 365X | 404X | 405X |
| 75 | 30 minutes, totally enclosed | 404X | 405X | 444X |
| 100 | | 405X | 444X | 445X |
| 125 | | 444X | 445X | ... |
| 150 | | 445X | ... | ... |

*Dimensions for these frame designations are given in 18.230.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.218 TIME RATINGS

The time ratings for open and totally enclosed alternating-current wound-rotor motors shall be 15, 30, and 60 minutes.

### 18.219 TEMPERATURE RISE

For temperature rise of Class B insulation system, see 12.44.

### 18.220 BREAKDOWN TORQUE

#### 18.220.1 Minimum Value

The breakdown torque for alternating-current wound-rotor crane motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than 275 percent of full-load torque.

#### 18.221.2 Maximum Value

For the selection of gearing and other mechanical design features of the crane, 375 percent of rated full-load torque shall be used as the maximum value of breakdown torque for an alternating-current wound-rotor crane motor.

### 18.222 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.223 OVERSPEEDS**

Alternating-current wound-rotor crane motors having standard horsepower and speed ratings and built in frame sizes given in 18.217 shall be so constructed that they will withstand, without mechanical injury, an overspeed which is 50 percent above synchronous speed.

**18.224 PLUGGING**

Alternating-current wound-rotor crane motors shall be designed to withstand reversal of the phase rotation of the power supply at rated voltage when running at the overspeed given in 18.223.

**18.225 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY**

See 12.44.

**18.226 ROUTINE TESTS**

The routine tests shall be:

a. No-load readings of current and speed at normal voltage and frequency and with collector rings short-circuited. On 50-hertz motors, these readings shall be permitted to be taken at 60 hertz if 50 hertz is not available.
b. Measurement of open-circuit voltage ratio
c. High-potential test in accordance with 3.1 and 12.3

**18.227 BALANCE OF MOTORS**

See Part 7.

**18.228 BEARINGS**

Bearings for wound-rotor crane motors shall be of the antifriction type.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.229 DIMENSIONS FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT WOUND-ROTOR OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED CRANE MOTORS[1]

See Figure 18-21.

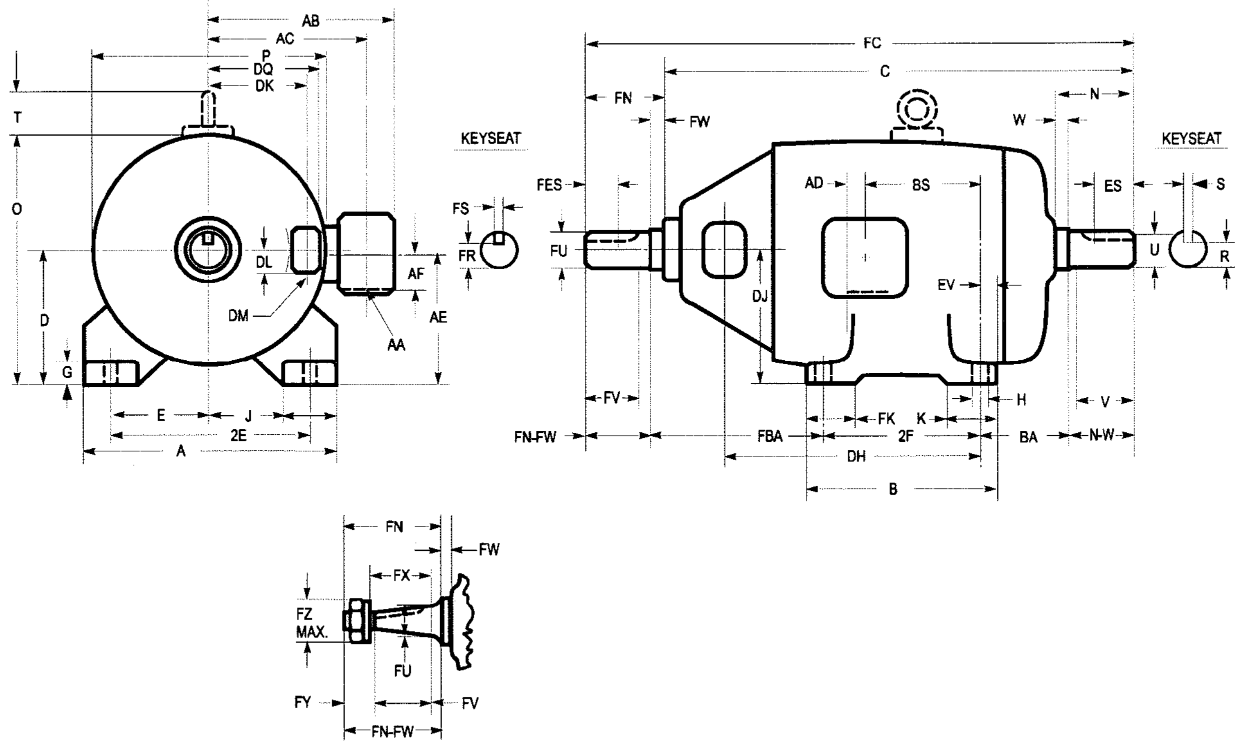



**Figure 18-21**
**DIMENSIONS FOR OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED CRANE MOTORS**

[1] See 18.230 for shaft style at end opposite drive.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.230 DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES FOR ALTERNATING-CURRENT OPEN AND TOTALLY ENCLOSED WOUND-ROTOR CRANE MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS[1]

| Frame Designation | A Max | D* | E** | 2F** | AA Min | A | H** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 254X | 12.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 8.25 | 1 | 4.25 | 0.53 |
| 256X | 12.50 | 6.25 | 5.00 | 10.00 | 1 | 4.25 | 0.53 |
| 284X | 14.00 | 7.0 | 5.50 | 9.50 | 1-1/4 | 4.75 | 0.53 |
| 286X | 14.00 | 7.0 | 5.50 | 11.00 | 1-1/4 | 4.75 | 0.53 |
| 324X | 16.00 | 8.0 | 6.25 | 10.50 | 1-1/2 | 5.25 | 0.66 |
| 326X | 16.00 | 8.0 | 6.25 | 12.00 | 1-1/2 | 5.25 | 0.66 |
| 364X | 18.00 | 9.0 | 7.00 | 11.25 | 2 | 5.88 | 0.66 |
| 365X | 18.00 | 9.0 | 7.00 | 12.25 | 2 | 5.88 | 0.66 |
| 404X | 20.00 | 10.0 | 8.00 | 12.25 | 2 | 6.62 | 0.81 |
| 405X | 20.00 | 10.0 | 8.00 | 13.75 | 2 | 6.62 | 0.81 |
| 444X | 22.00 | 11.0 | 9.00 | 14.50 | 2-1/2 | 7.50 | 0.81 |
| 445X | 22.00 | 11.0 | 9.00 | 16.50 | 2-1/2 | 7.50 | 0.81 |

| | | Drive End-Straight Shaft Extension† | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Keyseat † | | |
| Frame Designation | U | N-W | V Min | R | ES Min | S |
| 254X | 1.3750 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.201 | 2.78 | 0.312 |
| 256X | 1.3750 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.201 | 2.78 | 0.312 |
| 284X | 1.625 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.416 | 2.53 | 0.375 |
| 286X | 1.625 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.416 | 2.53 | 0.375 |
| 324X | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.41 | 0.500 |
| 326X | 1.875 | 3.75 | 3.50 | 1.591 | 2.41 | 0.500 |
| 364X | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 |
| 365X | 2.375 | 4.75 | 4.50 | 2.021 | 3.03 | 0.625 |
| 404X | 2.875 | 5.75 | 5.50 | 2.450 | 3.78 | 0.750 |
| 405X | 2.875 | 5.75 | 5.50 | 2.450 | 3.78 | 0.750 |
| 444X | 3.375 | 5.50 | 5.25 | 2.880 | 4.03 | 0.875 |
| 445X | 3.375 | 5.50 | 5.25 | 2.880 | 4.03 | 0.875 |

| | | | | Opposite Drive End-Shaft Extension† | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | Keyseat ‡ | | |
| Frame Designation | Shaft Style | FU | FN-FW | FV†† | FX | FY | FZ Max | Shaft Threaded | Width | Depth | Length ‡ |
| 254X | Straight | 1.1250 | 3.00 | 2.75 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 0.250 | 0.125 | 2.41 |
| 256X | Straight | 1.1250 | 3.00 | 2.75 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 0.250 | 0.125 | 2.41 |
| 284X | Tapered | 1.3750 | 4.12 | 2.62 | 2.75 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-12 | 0.312 | 0.156 | 2.25 |
| 286X | Tapered | 1.3750 | 4.12 | 2.62 | 2.75 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-12 | 0.312 | 0.156 | 2.25 |
| 324X | Tapered†† | 1.625 | 4.50 | 2.88 | 3.00 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-12 | 0.375 | 0.188 | 2.50 |
| 326X | Tapered †† | 1.625 | 4.50 | 2.88 | 3.00 | 1.25 | 2.00 | 1-12 | 0.375 | 0.188 | 2.50 |
| 364X | Tapered †† | 2.125 | 4.88 | 3.50 | 3.62 | 1.38 | 2.75 | 1-1/2-8 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 3.25 |
| 365X | Tapered †† | 2.125 | 4.88 | 3.50 | 3.62 | 1.38 | 2.75 | 1-1/2-8 | 0.500 | 0.250 | 3.25 |
| 404X | Tapered †† | 2.375 | 5.25 | 3.75 | 3.88 | 1.50 | 3.25 | 1-3/4-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.50 |
| 405X | Tapered †† | 2.375 | 5.25 | 3.75 | 3.88 | 1.50 | 3.25 | 1-3/4-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.50 |
| 444X | Tapered †† | 2.625 | 5.88 | 4.12 | 4.25 | 1.75 | 3.62 | 2-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.88 |
| 445X | Tapered †† | 2.625 | 5.88 | 4.12 | 4.25 | 1.75 | 3.62 | 2-8 | 0.625 | 0.312 | 3.88 |

(See next page for notes.)

[1] For meaning of letter dimensions, see 4.1 and 18.229.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

All dimensions in inches.

* Dimension D will never be greater than the above values, but it may be less such that shims are usually required for coupled or geared machines. When the exact dimension is required, shims up to 0.03 inch may be necessary.

** The tolerance for the E and 2F dimensions shall be ± 0.03 inch and for the H dimension shall be + 0.05 inch, - 0 inch.

† For tolerances on shaft extensions and keyseats, see 4.9.

††For straight shafts, this is a minimum dimension.

‡ The tolerance on the length of the key is ±0.03 inch.

††The standard taper of shafts shall be at the rate of 1.25 inches in diameter per foot of length. The thread at the end of the tapered shaft shall be provided with a nut and a suitable locking device.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MEDIUM SHELL-TYPE MOTORS FOR WOODWORKING AND MACHINE-TOOL APPLICATIONS

### 18.231 DEFINITION OF SHELL-TYPE MOTOR

A shell-type motor consists of a stator and rotor without shaft, end shields, bearings, or conventional frame. Separate fans or fans larger than the rotor are not included.

### 18.232 TEMPERATURE RISE—SHELL-TYPE MOTOR

The temperature rise of a shell-type motor depends on the design of the ventilating system as well as on the motor losses. The motor manufacturer's responsibility is limited to (a) supplying motors with losses, characteristics, current densities, and flux densities consistent with complete motors of similar ratings, size, and proportion: and (b) when requested, supplying information regarding the design of a ventilating system which will dissipate the losses within the rated temperature rise.

Therefore, obviously, the machine manufacturer is ultimately responsible for the temperature rise.

### 18.233 TEMPERATURE RISE FOR 60-HERTZ SHELL-TYPE MOTORS OPERATED ON 50-HERTZ

When 40°C continuous 60-hertz single-speed shell-type motors are designed as suitable for operation on 50-hertz circuits at the 60-hertz voltage and horsepower rating, they will operate without injurious heating if the ventilation system is in accordance with the motor manufacturers' recommendations.

### 18.234 OPERATION AT OTHER FREQUENCIES—SHELL-TYPE MOTORS

All two-pole 40°C continuous 60-hertz shell-type motors shall be capable of operating on proportionally increased voltage at frequencies up to and including 120 hertz. The horsepower load shall be permitted to be increased in proportion to one half of the increased speed.

### 18.235 RATINGS AND DIMENSIONS FOR SHELL-TYPE MOTORS[1]

#### 18.235.1 Rotor Bore and Keyway Dimensions, Three-Phase 60-Hertz 40°C Open Motors, 208, 220, 440, and 550 Volts

#### 18.235.1.1 Straight Rotor Bore Motors

| Hp Rating | Rotor Bores | | | Rotor Keyways | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Two Pole | Normal Diameter Inches | Maximum Diameter Inches | Minimum Diameter, Inches | Bores, Inches | Keys, Inches |
| | | BH = 8-Inch Diameter | | | |
| 1-1/2 to 10 | 1-1/2 | 2 | None | 1-1/2 to 1-3/4, incl. | 3/8 x 3/16 |
| | | | | 2 | 1/2 x 1/4 |
| | | BH = 10-Inch Diameter | | | |
| 7-1/2 to 20 | 1-7/8 | 2-3/8-4-, 6-, & 8-pole motors* | None | 1-7/8 | 3/8 x 3/16 |
| | | 2-1/8-2 pole motors | None | 2 to 2-3/8, incl. | 1/2 x 1/4 |
| | | BH = 12.375-Inch Diameter | | | |
| 15 to 25 | 2-1/4 | 2-3/4 | | 2-1/4 to 2-1/2, incl. | 1/2 x 1/4 |
| | | | | 2-3/4 | 3/4 x 3/8 |

*All other 4-, 6-, and 8-pole Hp ratings will have same rotor bores as 2-pole ratings by frame size.

[1] See 18.236.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 18.235.1.2 Tapered Rotor Bores*

| BH Dimension | Range of Bore on Big End |
|---|---|
| 8 | 1.75 to 2 inches - For all pole combinations |
| 10 | 2.125 to 2.375 inches - For 4, 6, and 8 poles |
| | 2.125 to 2.25 inches - For 2 poles |
| 12.375 | 2.5 to 2.75 inches - For all pole combinations |

*All rotor bore dimensions are based on the use of magnetic shaft material.

The small-end diameter will be whatever comes depending on length of rotor using ¼ inch taper per foot.

### 18.235.2 BH and BJ Dimensions in Inches, Open Type Three-Phase 60-Hertz 40°C Continuous, 208, 220, 440, and 550 Volts

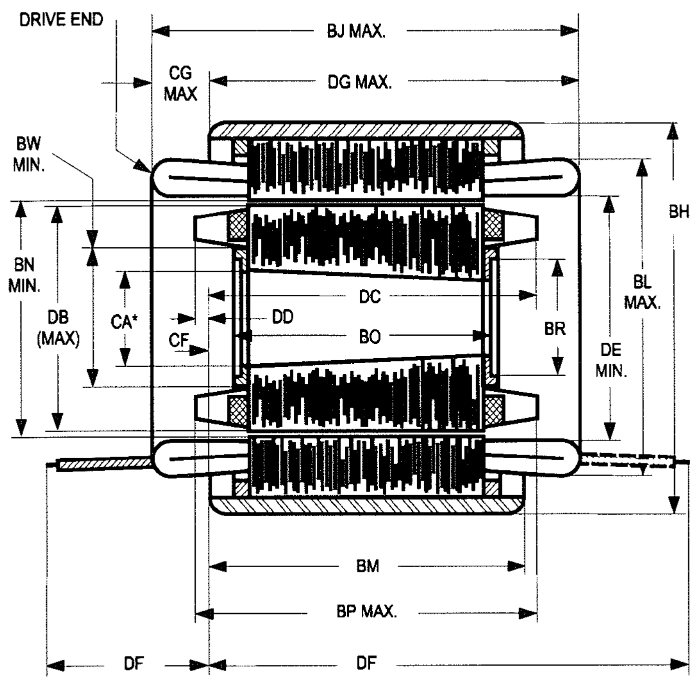
| Horsepower | | | | BJ Maximum | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Poles | | | | Poles | | |
| 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 2 | 4 | 6 and 8 |
| BH = 8-Inch Diameter | | | | | | |
| 1-1/2 | 1 | 3/4 | ... | 6-3/4 | 6-3/4 | 6-1/8 |
| 2 | 1-1/2 | 1 | 1/2 | 7-1/2 | 7-1/8 | 6-7/8 |
| 3 | 2 | 1-1/2 | 3/4 | 8 | 7-5/8 | 7-3/8 |
| 5 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 9-3/8 | 9 | 8-3/4 |
| 7-1/2 | 5 | 3 | 1-1/2 | 11-1/2 | 11-1/8 | 10-7/8 |
| 10 | ... | ... | ... | 13-1/2 | ... | ... |
| BH = 10-Inch Diameter | | | | | | |
| 7-1/2 | 5 | 3 | 2 | 9-1/2 | 9 | 8-5/8 |
| 10 | 7-1/2 | 5 | 3 | 11 | 10-1/2 | 10-1/8 |
| 15 | 10 | 7-1/2 | 5 | 12-3/4 | 12-1/4 | 11-7/8 |
| 20 | 15 | 10 | 7-1/2 | 14½ | 14 | 13-5/8 |
| BH = 12.375-Inch Diameter | | | | | | |
| 15 | 10 | 7-1/2 | 1/2 | 11 | 10-3/8 | 9-7/8 |
| 20 | 15 | 10 | 7-1/2 | 12-1/4 | 11-5/8 | 11-1/8 |
| 25 | 20 | 15 | 10 | 13-1/2 | 12-7/8 | 12-3/8 |

$$\text{Maximum BK} = \frac{\text{Maximum BJ}}{2} + 1/4$$

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.236 LETTERING FOR DIMENSION SHEETS FOR SHELL-TYPE MOTORS[1]**

See Figure 18-22.



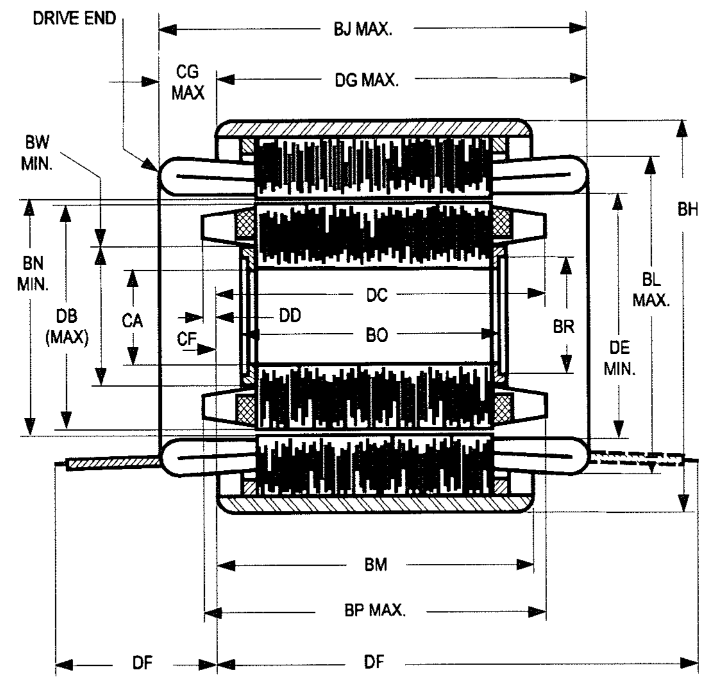




**Figure 18-22**
**DIMENSION SHEET LETTERING**

[1] For the meaning of letter dimensions, see 4.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MEDIUM AC SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS

(These standards were developed jointly with the Hydraulic Institute.)

## 18.237 DIMENSION FOR TYPE VP VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT, SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE, DIRECT CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS[1, 2, 3, 4]

| | | | | | BF Clearance Hole | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Frame Designations*** | **AJ**** | **AK** | **BB Min** | **BD Max** | **Number** | **Size** |
| 143VP and 145VP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 182VP and 184VP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 213VP and 215VP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 254VP and 256VP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 284VP and 286VP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 |
| 324VP and 326VP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 |
| 364VP and 365VP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 |
| 404VP and 405VP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 |
| 444VP and 445VP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 |

| | | | | Keyseat | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Frame Designations*** | **U** | **V Min** | **AH†** | **R** | **ES Min** | **S** | **EU** |
| 143VP and 145VP | 0.8750 | 2.75 | 2.75 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.28 | 0.190-0.188 | 0.6875 |
| 182VP and 184VP | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.75 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 | 0.8750 |
| 213VP and 215VP | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.75 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 | 0.8750 |
| 254VP and 256VP | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.75 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 | 0.8750 |
| 284VP and 286VP | 1.1250 | 2.75 | 2.75 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 | 0.8750 |
| 324VP and 326VP | 1.625 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 | 1.2500 |
| 364VP and 365VP | 1.625 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 | 1.2500 |
| 404VP and 405VP | 1.625 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 | 1.2500 |
| 444VP and 445VP | 2.125 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 | 1.7500 |

*The assignment of horsepower and speed ratings to these frames shall be in accordance with Part 13, except for the inclusion of the suffix letter VP in place of the suffix letters T and TS.

**AJ dimension—centerline of bolt holes shall be within 0.025 inch of true location. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimension.

†The tolerance on the AH dimension shall be ±0.06 inch. Dimension AH shall be measured with motor in vertical position, shaft down.

[1] The tolerance for the permissible shaft runout shall be 0.002-inch indicator reading (see 4.11).

[2] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 18-23.

[3] For tolerance on AK dimension, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.13.

[4] For tolerance on shaft extension diameters and keyseats, see 4.9 and 4.10.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

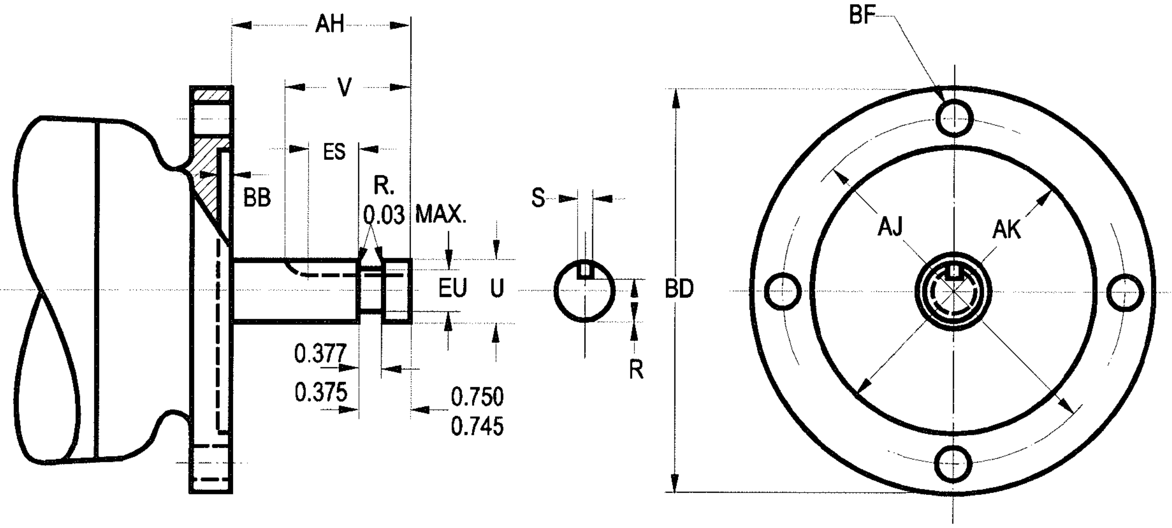



**Figure 18-23**
**DIMENSIONS FOR MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS**

All dimensions in inches.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.238 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE P AND PH ALTERNATING-CURRENT SQUIRREL-CAGE VERTICAL HOLLOW-SHAFT MOTORS FOR VERTICAL TURBINE PUMP APPLICATIONS[1, 2]

### 18.238.1 Base Dimensions

| Item* | Frame Designation | AJ** | AK | BB Min | BD Max | Clearance | BF Tap Size | Number | EO Min |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 182TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.50 |
| 2 | 184TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.50 |
| 3 | 213TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.50 |
| 4 | 215TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.50 |
| 5 | 254TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.75 |
| 6 | 256TP | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.75 |
| 7 | 284TP† | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.75 |
| 8 | 286TP† | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 2.75 |
| 9 | 324TP† | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 10 | 326TP† | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 11 | 364TP† | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 12 | 365TP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 13 | 404TP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.50 |
| 14 | 405TP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 4.50 |
| 15 | 444TP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 5.00 |
| 16 | 445TP | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 5.00 |
| 17 | ... | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 20.00 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | ... |
| 18 | ... | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 24.50 | 0.69†† | 5/8-11 | 4 | ... |
| 19 | ... | 26.000 | 22.000 | 0.25 | 30.50 | 0.81†† | 3/4-10 | 4 | ... |

All dimensions in inches.
*See 18.238.2 for the coupling dimensions of the motors covered in items 1 through 16.
†These frames have the following alternative base dimensions, the coupling dimensions given in 18.238.2 remaining unchanged:

| | Base Dimensions | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | BF | | | |
| Frame Designations | AJ** | AK | BB Min | BD Max | Clearance | Tap Size | Number | EO Min |
| 324TPH | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 12.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 326TPH | 9.125 | 8.250 | 0.19 | 12.00 | 0.44 | ... | 4 | 4.00 |
| 284TPH | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | ... | 4 | 2.75 |
| 286TPH | 14.750 | 13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 0.69 | | 4 | 2.75 |

**AJ dimension—centerline of bolt holes shall be within 0.025 inch of true location. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimension.
††Either clearance hole or up size shall be specified.

[1] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-5.
[2] For tolerances on AK dimension, face runout, and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet, see 4.13.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.238.2 Coupling Dimensions[1]

| | Coupling Dimensions | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Standard Bore | | | | | Maximum Bore | | | | |
| Item* | BX** | EW | R | BY | BZ | BX** | EW | R | BY | BZ |
| 1 | 0.751 | 0.188-0.190 | 0.837-0.847 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 |
| 2 | 0.751 | 0.188-0.190 | 0.837-0.847 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 |
| 3 | 0.751 | 0.188-0.190 | 0.837-0.847 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 |
| 4 | 0.751 | 0.188-0.190 | 0.837-0.847 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 |
| 5 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.251 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.367-1.377 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 |
| 6 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.251 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.367-1.377 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 |
| 7 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.251 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.367-1.377 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 |
| 8 | 1.001 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.114-1.124 | 10-32 | 1.375 | 1.251 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.367-1.377 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 |
| 9 | 1.188 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.304-1.314 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 | 1.501 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.669-1.679 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 |
| 10 | 1.188 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.304-1.314 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 | 1.501 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.669-1.679 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 |
| 11 | 1.188 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.304-1.314 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 | 1.501 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.669-1.679 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 |
| 12 | 1.188 | 0.250-0.252 | 1.304-1.314 | 1/4-20 | 1.750 | 1.501 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.669-1.679 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 |
| 13 | 1.438 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.605-1.615 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 | 1.688 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.859-1.869 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 |
| 14 | 1.438 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.605-1.615 | 1/4-20 | 2.125 | 1.688 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.859-1.869 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 |
| 15 | 1.688 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.859-1.869 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 | 1.938 | 0.500-0.502 | 2.160-2.170 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 |
| 16 | 1.688 | 0.375-0.377 | 1.859-1.869 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 | 1.938 | 0.500-0.502 | 2.160-2.170 | 1/4-20 | 2.500 |

All dimensions in inches
*See the correspondingly numbered item in 18.238.1 for the frame designation and base dimensions of the motors to which these coupling dimensions apply.
**The tolerance on the BX dimension shall be as follows
BX dimension—1.001 to 1.500 inches, inclusive, +0.001 inch, -0.000 inch
BX dimension—larger than 1.500 inches, +0.0015 inch, -0.000 inch

[1] For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see 4.1 and Figure 4-5.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MEDIUM AC SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR CLOSE-COUPLED PUMPS

(A face-mounting close-coupled pump motor is a medium alternating-current squirrel-cage induction open or totally enclosed motor, with or without feet, having a shaft suitable for mounting an impeller and sealing device. For explosion proof motors, see Note 3 of Figure 18-24.)

## RATINGS

### 18.239 VOLTAGE RATINGS

See 10.30.

### 18.240 FREQUENCIES

See 10.31.1.

### 18.241 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS

See 10.40.

### 18.242 NAMEPLATE TIME RATINGS

See 10.36.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.243 TEMPERATURE RISE

See 12.44.

### 18.244 TORQUES

For single-phase medium motors, see 12.32.
For polyphase medium motors, see 12.38, 12.39, and 12.40.

### 18.245 LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENTS

For single-phase medium motors, see 12.34. For three-phase medium motors, see 12.35.

### 18.246 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.247 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.248 BALANCE OF MOTORS

See Part 7.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.249 FRAME ASSIGNMENTS

Frame assignments shall be in accordance with Part 13, except for the omission of the suffix letters T and TS and the inclusion of the suffix letters in accordance with 18.250, (i.e., 254JP).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.250 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPES JM AND JP ALTERNATING-CURRENT FACE-MOUNTING CLOSE-COUPLED PUMP MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS

(This standard was developed jointly with the Hydraulic Institute.)

See Figure 18-24.

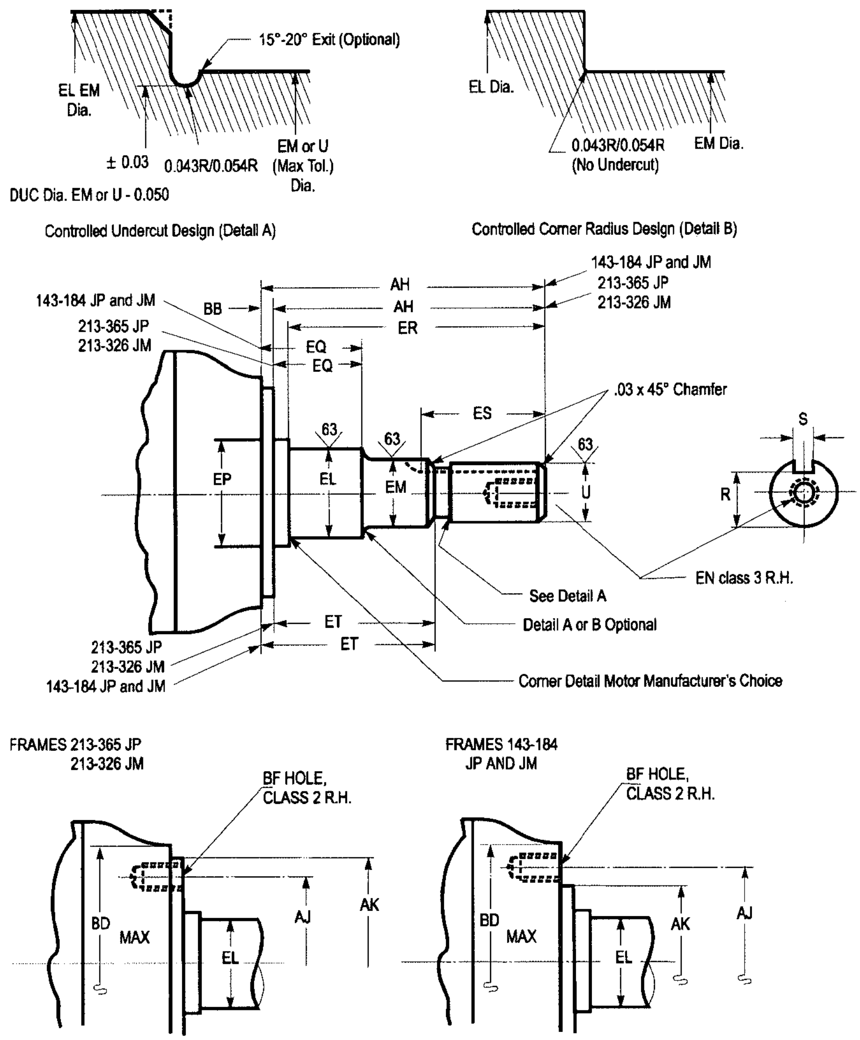



**Figure 18-24**
**DIMENSIONS FOR PUMP MOTORS HAVING ANTIFRICTION BEARINGS**

NOTES
1—AH, EQ, and ET dimensions measured with the shaft pulled by hand away from the motor to the limit of end play.
2—AJ dimension - centerline of bolt holes is within 0.015 inch of true location for frames 143 to 256 JM and JP, inclusive, and within 0.025 inch of true location for frames 284 to 365 JM and JP, inclusive. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimensions.
3—Shaft end play should not exceed the bearing internal axial movement. Bearing mounting fits should be as recommended for pump application by the bearing manufacturer. (This note applies to open and totally enclosed motors. For explosion-proof motor, the individual motor manufacturer should be contacted.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 1 of 18.250
## DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE JM ALTERNATING-CURRENT FACE-MOUNTING CLOSE-COUPLED PUMP MOTORS

| Frame Designations | U | AH* | AJ** | AK | BB | BD Max | BF Number | BF Tap Size | BF Bolt Penetration Allowance |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143JM and 145JM | 0.8745<br>0.8740 | 4.281<br>4.219 | 5.875 | 4.500<br>4.497 | 0.156<br>0.125 | 6.62 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 |
| 182JM and 184JM | 0.8745<br>0.8740 | 4.281<br>4.219 | 5.875 | 4.500<br>4.497 | 0.156<br>0.125 | 6.62 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 |
| 213JM and 215JM | 0.8745<br>0.8740 | 4.281<br>4.219 | 7.250 | 8.500<br>8.497 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 254JM and 256JM | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 5.281<br>5.219 | 7.250 | 8.500<br>8.497 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 10.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 284JM and 286JM | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 5.281<br>5.219 | 11.000 | 12.500<br>12.495 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |
| 324JM and 326JM | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 5.281<br>5.219 | 11.000 | 12.500<br>12.495 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |

| Frame Designations | EL | EM | EN Tap Size | EN Tap Drill Depth Max | EN Bolt Penetration Allowance | EP Min | EQ* | ER Min | Keyseat R | Keyseat ES Min | Keyseat S | ET* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143JM and 145JM | 1.156<br>1.154 | 1.0000<br>0.9995 | 3/8-16 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.156 | 0.640<br>0.610 | 4.25 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.65 | 0.190-0.188 | 2.890<br>2.860 |
| 182JM and 184JM | 1.250<br>1.248 | 1.0000<br>0.9995 | 3/8-16 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.250 | 0.640<br>0.610 | 4.25 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.65 | 0.190-0.188 | 2.890<br>2.860 |
| 213JM and 215JM | 1.250<br>1.248 | 1.0000<br>1.3745 | 3/8-16 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.750 | 0.640<br>0.610 | 4.25 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.65 | 0.190-0.188 | 2.890<br>2.860 |
| 254JM and 256JM | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 1.750 | 0.640<br>0.610 | 5.25 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 3.015<br>2.985 |
| 284JM and 286JM | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 2.125 | 0.645<br>0.605 | 5.25 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 3.020<br>2.980 |
| 324JM and 326JM | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 2.125 | 0.645<br>0.605 | 5.25 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 3.020<br>2.980 |

See next page for notes.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

All dimensions in inches.
*AH, EQ, and ET dimensions measured with the shaft pulled by hand away from the motor to the limit of end play.
**AJ dimension—centerline of bolt holes is within 0.015 inch of true location for frames 154 to 256 JM and JP, inclusive, and within 0.025 inch of true location for frames 284 to 365 JM and JP, inclusive. True location is determined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimension.
NOTE—For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see Figure 18-24 and 4.1.
Tolerances (see 4.11.)
Face runout—
143JM to 256 JM frames, include., 0.004 – inch indicator reading
284JM to 326 JM frames, include., 0.006 – inch indicator reading
Permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet—
143JM to 256 JM frames, include., 0.004 – inch indicator reading
284JM to 326 JM frames, include., 0.006 – inch indicator reading
Permissible shaft runout—
143JM to 256 JM frames, include., 0.002 – inch indicator reading
284JM to 326 JM frames, include., 0.003 – inch indicator reading

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 2 of 18.250
## DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE JP ALTERNATING-CURRENT FACE-MOUNTING CLOSE-COUPLED PUMP MOTORS

| Frame Designations | U | AH* | AJ** | AK | BB | BD Max | BF Number | BF Tap Size | BF Bolt Penetration Allowance |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143JP and 145JP | 0.8745<br>0.8740 | 7.343<br>7.281 | 5.875 | 4.500<br>4.497 | 0.156<br>0.125 | 6.62 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 |
| 182JP and 184JP | 0.8745<br>0.8740 | 7.343<br>7.281 | 5.875 | 4.500<br>4.497 | 0.156<br>0.125 | 6.62 | 4 | 3/8-16 | 0.56 |
| 213JP and 215JP | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 8.156<br>8.094 | 7.250 | 8.500<br>8.497 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 9.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 254JP and 256JP | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 8.156<br>8.094 | 7.250 | 8.500<br>8.497 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 10.00 | 4 | 1/2-13 | 0.75 |
| 284JP and 286JP | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 8.156<br>8.094 | 11.000 | 12.500<br>12.495 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |
| 324JP and 326JP | 1.2495<br>1.2490 | 8.156<br>8.094 | 11.000 | 12.500<br>12.495 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |
| 364JP and 365JP | 1.6245<br>1.6240 | 8.156<br>8.094 | 11.000 | 12.500<br>12.495 | 0.312<br>0.250 | 14.00 | 4 | 5/8-11 | 0.94 |

| Frame Designations | EL | EM | EN Tap Size | EN Tap Drill Depth Max | EN Bolt Penetration Allowance | EP Min | EQ* | ER Min | Keyseat R | Keyseat ES Min | Keyseat S | ET* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143JM and 145JM | 1.156<br>1.154 | 1.0000<br>0.9995 | 3/8-16 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.156 | 1.578<br>1.548 | 7.312 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.65 | 0.190-0.188 | 5.952<br>5.922 |
| 182JP and 184JP | 1.250<br>1.248 | 1.0000<br>0.9995 | 3/8-16 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.250 | 1.578<br>1.548 | 7.312 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.65 | 0.190-0.188 | 5.952<br>5.922 |
| 213JP and 215JP | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.12 | 0.75 | 1.750 | 2.390<br>2.360 | 8.125 | 1.112-1.097 | 1.65 | 0.252-0.250 | 5.890<br>5.860 |
| 254JP and 256JP | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 1.750 | 2.390<br>2.360 | 8.125 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 5.890<br>5.860 |
| 284JP and 286JP | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 2.125 | 2.390<br>2.360 | 8.125 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 5.895<br>5.855 |
| 324JP and 326JP | 1.750<br>1.748 | 1.3750<br>1.3745 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 2.125 | 2.395<br>2.355 | 8.125 | 1.112-1.097 | 2.53 | 0.252-0.250 | 5.895<br>5.855 |
| 364JP and 365JP | 2.125<br>2.123 | 1.7500<br>1.7495 | 1/2-13 | 1.50 | 1.00 | 2.500 | 2.395<br>2.355 | 8.125 | 1.416-1.401 | 2.53 | 0.377-0.375 | 5.895<br>5.855 |

See next page for notes.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

All dimensions in inches.

*AH, EQ, and ET dimensions measured with the shaft pulled by hand away from the motor to the limit of end play.

**AJ dimension—centerline of bolt holes is within 0.015 inch of true location for frames 143 to 256 JM and JP, inclusive, and within 0.025 inch of true location for frames 284 to 365 JM and JP, inclusive. True location is determined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of the AK dimension.

NOTE—For the meaning of the letter dimensions, see Figure 18-24 and 4.1.

Tolerances (see 4.11.)

Face runout—
- 143JP to 256 JP frames, include., 0.004 – inch indicator reading
- 284JP to 326 JP frames, include., 0.006 – inch indicator reading

Permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet—
- 143JP to 256 JP frames, include., 0.004 – inch indicator reading
- 284JP to 326 JP frames, include., 0.006 – inch indicator reading

Permissible shaft runout—
- 143JP to 256 JP frames, include., 0.002 – inch indicator reading
- 284JP to 326 JP frames, include., 0.003 – inch indicator reading

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.251 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE LP AND LPH VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE DIRECT-CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS (HAVING THE THRUST BEARING IN THE MOTOR) FOR CHEMICAL PROCESS IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS

See Figure 18-25.

| | | | | | BF Clearance Hole | | | | | | | | Keyseat | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frame Designations | AJ** | AK | BB Min | BD Max | Number | Size | U | V Min | AH*** | EP Min | EU | R | ES Min | S |
| 143LP and 145LP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.156 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 182LP and 184LP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.156 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 213LP and 215LP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.750 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 1.28 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 254LP and 256LP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.750 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 1.28 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 284LP and 286LP* | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |
| 324LP and 326LP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |
| 364LP and 365LP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |
| 404LP and 405LP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |
| 444LP and 445LP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |

All dimensions in inches.

*These frames have the following alternate dimensions:

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 284LPH and 286LPH | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |

** AJ centerline of bolt holes within 0.025 inch for all frames of true location. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of AK.

***Dimension measured with motor in vertical position shaft down.

NOTES

1—Total axial end play of shaft is 0.002 inch maximum under 50 pounds reversing static load with motor in horizontal position at ambient temperature.

2—Radial displacement at end of motor shaft is 0.001 inch maximum at ambient temperature with zero axial load and a 25-pound force applied at the pump end of the motor shaft.

3—The assignment of horsepower and speed ratings to these frames should be in accordance with Part 13, except for the inclusion of the suffix letters LP and LPH in place of the suffix letters T and TS.

4—Motor balance should not exceed 0.001 inch for all operating speeds. See Part 7 for method of measurement.

Tolerances (See 4.11)

Face runout and permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet – 0.004-inch indicator reading

Permissible shaft runout – 0.001-inch indicator reading

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

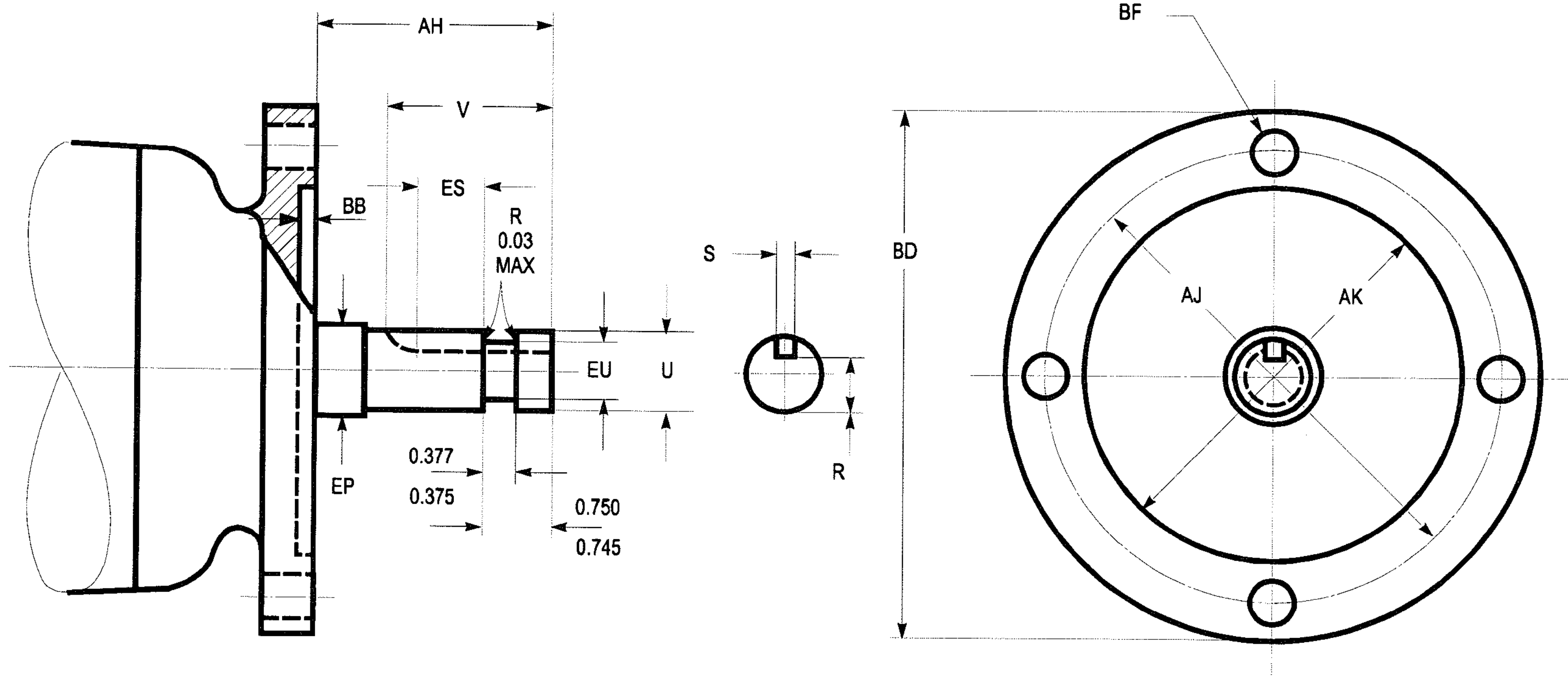



**Figure 18-25**
**DIMENSIONS OF INDUCTION MOTORS FOR CHEMICAL PROCESS IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 18.252 DIMENSIONS FOR TYPE HP AND HPH VERTICAL SOLID-SHAFT SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE DIRECT-CONNECTED SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS FOR PROCESS AND IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS

(This standard was developed jointly with the Hydraulic Institute.)

See Figure 18-26

| Frame Designations | AJ* | AK | BB Min | BD Max | BF Clearance Hole Number | BF Clearance Hole Size | U | V Min | AH† | EP Min | EU | Keyseat R | Keyseat ES Min | Keyseat S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 143HP and 145HP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 0.8750<br>0.8745 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.156 | 0.688<br>0.683 | 0.771-0.756 | 1.28 | 0.190-0.188 |
| 182HP and 184HP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.156 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 213HP and 215HP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.375 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 254HP and 256HP | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.750 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 284HP and 286HP†† | 9.125 | 8.253<br>8.250 | 0.19 | 10.00 | 4 | 0.44 | 1.1250<br>1.1245 | 2.75 | 2.781<br>2.719 | 1.750 | 0.875<br>0.870 | 0.986-0.971 | 1.28 | 0.252-0.250 |
| 324HP and 326HP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 4.50 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.125 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 364HP and 365HP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 4.50 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 2.250 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 404HP and 405HP†† | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 4.50 | 4.562<br>4.438 | 2.250 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 444HP and 445HP | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4.50 | 4.562<br>4.438 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |
| ††These frames have the following alternate dimensions: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 284HPH and 286HPH | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 1.6250<br>1.6245 | 4.50 | 4.531<br>4.469 | 1.750 | 1.250<br>1.245 | 1.416-1.401 | 3.03 | 0.377-0.375 |
| 404HPH and 405HPH | 14.750 | 13.505<br>13.500 | 0.25 | 16.50 | 4 | 0.69 | 2.1250<br>2.1240 | 4.50 | 4.562<br>4.438 | 2.250 | 1.750<br>1.745 | 1.845-1.830 | 3.03 | 0.502-0.500 |

All dimensions in inches.

*AJ centerline of bolt holes within 0.025 inch for all frames of true location. True location is defined as angular and diametrical location with reference to the centerline of AK.

†Dimension measured with motor in vertical position shaft down.

NOTES

1—Where continuous thrust in either direction may occur, the shaft end play should not exceed the bearing internal axial movement. The bearing and mounting fits should be as recommended by the bearing manufacturer for pump applications. Note 1 applies to open and totally enclosed motors only; for explosion-proof motors, contact individual motor manufacturers.

2—The assignment of horsepower and speed ratings to these frames should be in accordance with Part 13, except for the inclusion of the suffix letters HP and HPH in place of the suffix letters T and TS.

Tolerances (see 4.11)

- Face runout—
  - For AK dimension 8.250 inch, 0.004-inch indicator reading
  - For AK dimension 13.500 inch, 0.006-inch indicator reading
- Permissible eccentricity of mounting rabbet—
  - For AK dimension 8.250 inch, 0.004-inch indicator reading
  - For AK dimension 13.500 inch, 0.006-inch indicator reading
- Permissible shaft runout—
  - For AK dimension 8.250 inch, 0.002-inch indicator reading
  - For AK dimension 13.500 inch, 0.002-inch indicator reading

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

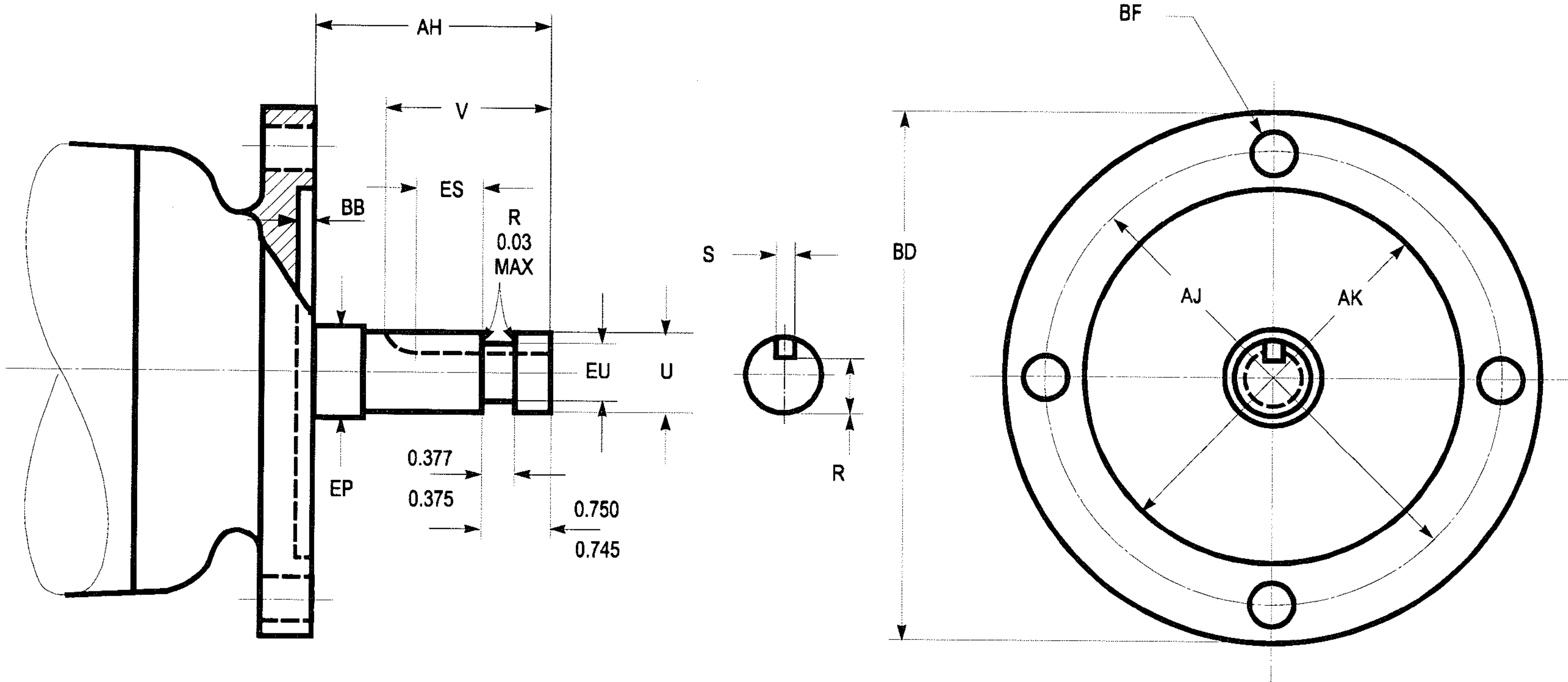



**Figure 18-26**
**DIMENSIONS OF INDUCTION MOTORS FOR PROCESS AND IN-LINE PUMP APPLICATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## DC PERMANENT-MAGNET TACHOMETER GENERATORS FOR CONTROL SYSTEMS

(A direct-current permanent-magnet control tachometer generator is a direct-current generator designed to have an output voltage proportional to rotor speed for use in open-loop or closed-loop control systems.)

### 18.253 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Direct-current permanent-magnet excited.

### 18.254 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO OUTPUT VOLTAGE RATING

a. High-voltage type
b. Low-voltage type

## RATINGS

### 18.255 OUTPUT VOLTAGE RATINGS

The output voltage ratings of high-voltage-type tachometer generators shall be 50, 100, and 200 volts per 1000 rpm.

The output voltage rating of low-voltage-type tachometer generators shall be 2, 4, 8, 16, and 32 volts per 1000 rpm.

### 18.256 CURRENT RATING

The current rating of high-voltage-type tachometer generators shall be 25 milliamperes at the highest rate of speed.

Low-voltage-type tachometer generators do not have a current rating. In general, the load impedance should be at least 1000 times the armature resistance.

### 18.257 SPEED RATINGS

The speed range of high-voltage-type tachometer generators shall be 100-5000, 100-3600, 100-2500, 100-1800, and 100-1250 rpm.

The speed range of low-voltage-type tachometer generators shall be 100-10000, 100-5000, and 100-3600 rpm.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.258 TEST METHODS

Tests to determine performance characteristics shall be made in accordance with IEEE Std 251.

### 18.259 TEMPERATURE RISE

Control tachometer generators shall have a Class A insulation system[1] and shall be designed for use in a maximum ambient of 65°C. The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium for each of the various parts of the generator, when tested in accordance with the rating, shall not exceed the following values:

[1] See 1.66 for description of classes of insulation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| | High-Voltage Type | Low-Voltage Type |
|---|---|---|
| Coil Windings, Degrees C | | |
| Armature - resistance ............................ | 40 | 50 |
| Commutators - thermometer .............. | 40 | 40 |
| The temperatures attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders and brushes) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | |

Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature stated above is exceeded in regular operation.

### 18.260 VARIATION FROM RATED OUTPUT VOLTAGE

#### 18.260.1 High-Voltage Type

The no-load voltage of individual generators shall be within plus or minus 5 percent of the rated output voltage.

#### 18.260.2 Low-Voltage Type

The voltage with specified load impedance shall be within plus or minus 5 percent of the rated output voltage.

### 18.261 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

#### 18.261.1 Test

See 3.1.

#### 18.261.2 Application

The high-potential test shall be made by applying 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the tachometer generator. Rated voltage shall be determined by using the tachometer generator rated voltage at maximum rated speed.

### 18.262 OVERSPEED

Control tachometer generators shall be so constructed that, in an emergency, they will withstand without mechanical injury a speed of 125 percent of the maximum rated speed.

This overspeed may damage the commutator and brush surfaces with a resulting temporary change in performance characteristics.

### 18.263 PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

The following typical performance data shall be available for each control tachometer generator. Data will normally be supplied in tabulated form.

#### 18.263.1 High-Voltage Type

a. Peak-to-peak or root mean square ripple voltage data, as specified, expressed as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed range and at one or more load impedances
b. Linearity data as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed range at no-load and at one or more load impedances
c. Reversing error data as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed range at no-load
d. Short-time voltage stability data at constant speed and load impedance in percent of average voltage
e. Long-time voltage stability data at constant speed and load impedance in percent voltage change per hour
f. Rotor resistance between bars of opposite polarity corrected to 25°C

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

g. Standstill (break-away) and maximum running torque in ounce-feet or ounce-inches
h. $Wk^2$ of rotor in $lb\text{-}in.^2$
i. Total weight of generator

**18.263.2 Low-Voltage Type**

a. Peak-to-peak or root mean square ripple voltage data, as specified, expressed as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed range and at one or more load impedances
b. Linearity data as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed range at no-load and at one or more load impedances
c. Reversing error data as a percentage of output voltage over the rated speed at no load
d. Rotor resistance between bars of opposite polarity corrected to 25°C
e. $Wk^2$ of rotor in $oz\text{-}in.^2$

**MANUFACTURING**

**18.264 NAMEPLATE MARKING**

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

**18.264.1 High-Voltage Type**

a. Manufacturer's name or identification symbol
b. Manufacturer's type designation
c. Manufacturer's serial number or date code
d. Electrical type[1]
e. Voltage rating - volts per 1000 rpm
f. Speed range[1]
g. Maximum ambient temperature[1]
h. Calibration voltage—no-load test voltage and speed[1]

**18.264.2 Low-Voltage Type**

a. Manufacturer's name or identification symbol
b. Manufacturer's type designation
c. Voltage rating—volts per 1000 rpm

**18.265 DIRECTION OF ROTATION**

The standard direction of rotation shall be clockwise facing the end opposite the drive end.

Tachometer generators may be operated on a reversing cycle provided that the period of operation on any one direction of rotation is no longer than 1 hour and a reasonable balance of time on each direction is maintained. Unequal operating time in both directions may result in uneven brush wear which can cause different output voltages, ripple content, and reversing error data. For such an application condition, the tachometer generator manufacturer should be consulted.

**18.266 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURES**

Control tachometer generators shall be constructed with the following mechanical features:

[1] On small units where nameplate size is such that it is impractical to mark all data, items d, f, g, and h shall be permitted to be on a separate card or tag.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**18.266.1 High-Voltage Type**

a. Totally enclosed
b. Ball bearing
c. Generators built in frame 42 and larger shall have dimensions according to 4.5.1 or 4.5.5.
d. Generators built in frame 42 and larger shall have provisions for 1/2-inch conduit connection.

**18.266.2 Low-Voltage Type**

a. Open or totally enclosed
b. Ball bearing

**18.267 TERMINAL MARKINGS**

For clockwise rotation facing the end opposite the drive end, the positive terminal shall be marked "A-2" or colored red and the negative terminal shall be marked "A-1" or colored black.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TORQUE MOTORS

### 18.268 DEFINITION

A torque motor is a motor rated for operation at standstill.

### 18.269 NAMEPLATE MARKINGS

#### 18.269.1 AC Torque Motors

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Locked rotor torque
c. Time rating
d. Maximum ambient temperature for which motor is designed
e. Insulation system designation (if stator and rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation system designations shall be given on the nameplate, that for the stator being given first)
f. Synchronous rpm
g. Frequency
h. Number of phases
i. Rated load amperes (locked rotor)
j. Voltage
k. The words "thermally protected" for motors equipped with thermal protectors[1]

#### 18.269.2 DC Torque Motors

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Locked rotor torque
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise
e. Voltage
f. Rated-load amperes (locked rotor)
g. Type of winding
h. The words "thermally protected" for motors equipped with thermal protectors[1]

[1] Thermal protection shall be permitted to be indicated on a separate plate.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## SMALL MOTORS FOR CARBONATOR PUMPS

### 18.270 CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO ELECTRICAL TYPE

Single-phase— Split-phase

## RATINGS

### 18.271 VOLTAGE RATINGS

The voltage rating of single-phase 60-hertz motors shall be 115 or 230 volts.

### 18.272 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 60 and 50 hertz.

### 18.273 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

#### 18.273.1 Horsepower Ratings

Horsepower ratings shall be 1/6, 1/4, and 1/3 horsepower.

#### 18.273.2 Speed Ratings

Speed ratings shall be:

a. 60 hertz – 1800 rpm synchronous speed, 1725 rpm approximate full-load speed
b. 50 hertz – 1500 rpm synchronous speed, 1425 rpm approximate full-load speed

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 18.274 TEMPERATURE RISE

Carbonator pump motors shall have either Class A or B insulation systems. The temperature rise above the temperature of the cooling medium shall be in accordance with 12.43.

### 18.275 BASIS OF HORSEPOWER RATING

For single-phase induction motors, see 10.34.

### 18.276 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

See 3.1 and 12.3.

### 18.277 MAXIMUM LOCKED-ROTOR CURRENT—SINGLE PHASE

See the values for Design O motors in 12.33.

### 18.278 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

See 12.44.

### 18.279 DIRECTION OF ROTATION

Motors for carbonator pumps shall normally be arranged for counterclockwise rotation when facing the end opposite the drive end but shall be capable of operation in either direction.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## MANUFACTURING

### 18.280 GENERAL MECHANICAL FEATURE

Carbonator-pump motors shall be constructed with the following mechanical features: (see 18.281)

a. Open or dripproof
b. Sleeve bearing
c. Resilient mounting
d. Automatic reset thermal overload protector
e. Mounting dimensions and shaft extension in accordance with 18.281

### 18.281 DIMENSIONS FOR CARBONATOR PUMP MOTORS

See Figure 18-27.

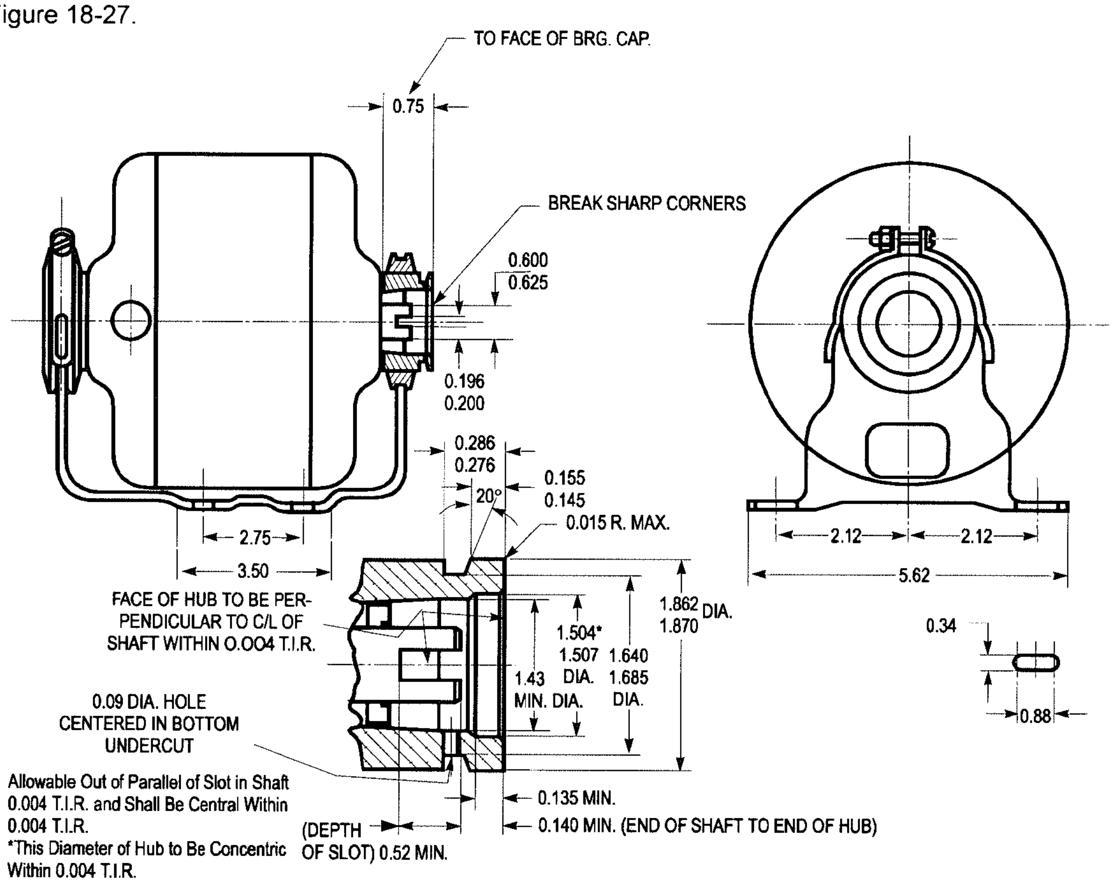



**Figure 18-27**
**CARBONATOR PUMP MOTOR DIMENSIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 20

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section III
# LARGE MACHINES
# Part 20
# LARGE MACHINES—INDUCTION MACHINES

## 20.1 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 20 of Section III cover induction machines having (1) a continuous rating greater than given in the table below and (2) all ratings of 450 rpm and slower speeds.

| Synchronous Speed | Motors, Squirrel-Cage and Wound-Rotor, Hp | Generators, Squirrel-Cage kW |
|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 500 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 100 |

## 20.2 BASIS OF RATING

Induction machines covered by this Part 20 shall be rated on a continuous-duty basis unless otherwise specified. The output rating of induction motors shall be expressed in horsepower available at the shaft at a specified speed, frequency, and voltage.

The output rating of induction generators shall be expressed in kilowatts available at the terminals at a specified speed, frequency, and voltage.

## 20.3 MACHINE POWER AND SPEED RATINGS

Motor horsepower ratings shall be as follows:

| Motor Hp Ratings | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 100 | 600 | 2500 | 9000 | 19000 |
| 125 | 700 | 3000 | 10000 | 20000 |
| 150 | 800 | 3500 | 11000 | 22500 |
| 200 | 900 | 4000 | 12000 | 25000 |
| 250 | 1000 | 4500 | 13000 | 27500 |
| 300 | 1250 | 5000 | 14000 | 30000 |
| 350 | 1500 | 5500 | 15000 | 35000 |
| 400 | 1750 | 6000 | 16000 | 40000 |
| 450 | 2000 | 7000 | 17000 | 45000 |
| 500 | 2250 | 8000 | 18000 | 50000 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Generator output ratings shall be as follows:

| Generator kW Ratings | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 75 | 450 | 1750 | 5500 | 14000 | 27500 |
| 100 | 500 | 2000 | 6000 | 15000 | 30000 |
| 125 | 600 | 2250 | 7000 | 16000 | 32500 |
| 150 | 700 | 2500 | 8000 | 17000 | 35000 |
| 200 | 800 | 3000 | 9000 | 18000 | 37500 |
| 250 | 900 | 3500 | 10000 | 19000 | 40000 |
| 300 | 1000 | 4000 | 11000 | 20000 | 45000 |
| 350 | 1250 | 4500 | 12000 | 22500 | 50000 |
| 400 | 1500 | 5000 | 13000 | 25000 | |

Synchronous speed ratings shall be as follows:

| Synchronous Speed Ratings, Rpm at 60 Hertz* | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3600 | 720 | 400 | 277 |
| 1800 | 600 | 360 | 257 |
| 1200 | 514 | 327 | 240 |
| 900 | 450 | 300 | 225 |

*At 50 hertz, the speeds are 5/6 of the 60-hertz speeds.

NOTE—It is not practical to build induction machines of all ratings at all speeds.

## 20.4 POWER RATINGS OF MULTISPEED MACHINES

The power ratings of multispeed machines shall be selected as follows:

### 20.4.1 Constant Power

The horsepower or kilowatt rating for each rated speed shall be selected from 20.3.

### 20.4.2 Constant Torque

The horsepower or kilowatt rating for the highest rated speed shall be selected from 20.3. The horsepower or kilowatt rating for each lower speed shall be determined by multiplying the horsepower or kilowatt rating at the highest speed by the ratio of the lower synchronous speed to the highest synchronous speed.

### 20.4.3 Variable Torque

#### 20.4.3.1 Variable Torque Linear

Torque varies directly with speed and the horsepower or kilowatt rating for the highest rated speed shall be selected from 20.3. The horsepower or kilowatt rating for each lower speed shall be determined by multiplying the horsepower or kilowatt rating at the highest speed by the square of the ratio of the lower synchronous speed to the highest synchronous speed.

#### 20.4.3.2 Variable Torque Square

The torque varies as the square of speed and the horsepower or kilowatt rating for the highest rated speed shall be selected from 20.3. The horsepower or kilowatt rating for each lower speed shall be determined by multiplying the horsepower or kilowatt rating at the highest speed by the cube of the ratio of the lower synchronous speed to the highest synchronous speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.5 VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 20.5.1 Voltage Ratings

For three phase ac machines, 50 Hz or 60 Hz, intended to be directly connected to distribution or utilization systems, the rated voltages shall be selected from the voltages given in following table. Other voltages are subject to the approval between manufacturer and purchaser.

| Nominal System voltages for 50 Hz* | | Nominal System voltages for 60 Hz | Preferred motor rated voltages for 60 Hz (North American Practice) |
|---|---|---|---|
| a) | b) | 480 | 460 |
| 400 | 400 | 600 | 575 |
| 3300 | 3000 | 2400 | 2300 |
| 6600 | 6000 | 4160 | 4000 |
| 11000 | 10000 | 6900 | 6600 |
| | | 13800 | 13200 |

* Either one of the voltage series a) or b) is used in certain countries for 50 Hz.

NOTE—Induction generators shall have the nominal system voltage ratings as shown

### 20.5.2 Preferred Machine Power and Voltage Rating

It is not practical to build induction machines of all ratings for all voltages. In general, based on motor design and manufacturing considerations, preferred motor voltage ratings are as follows:

a) 60 HZ power supply:

| Horsepower | KW | Voltage Rating |
|---|---|---|
| 100-600 | 75-500 | 460 or 575 |
| 200-5000 | 150-3500 | 2300 |
| 200-10000 | 150-7000 | 4000 |
| 1000-15000 | 800-10000 | 6600 |
| 3500 and up | 2500 and up | 13200 |

b) 50 HZ power supply:

| Horsepower | KW | Voltage Rating |
|---|---|---|
| 100-500 | 75-375 | 400 |
| 600-8000 | 500-6000 | 3000 - 3300 |
| 700-15000 | 500 – 12500 | 6000 - 6600 |
| 3000 and up | 2500 and up | 10000 - 11000 |

## 20.6 FREQUENCIES

The frequencies shall be 50 or 60 hertz.

## 20.7 SERVICE FACTOR

### 20.7.1 Service Factor of 1.0

When operated at rated voltage and frequency, induction machines covered by this Part 20 will have a service factor of 1.0 and a temperature rise not in excess of that specified in 20.8.1.

In those applications requiring an overload capacity, the use of a higher rating is recommended to avoid exceeding the adequate torque handling capacity.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 20.7.2 Service Factor of 1.15

When specified, motors furnished in accordance with this standard will have a service factor of 1.15 and a temperature rise not in excess of that specified in 20.8.2 when operated at the service factor horsepower rating with rated voltage and frequency maintained.

### 20.7.3 Application of Motors with a Service Factor of 1.15

#### 20.7.3.1 General

A motor having a 1.15 service factor is suitable for continuous operation at rated load under the usual service conditions given in 20.28.2. When the voltage and frequency are maintained at the value on the nameplate, the motor may be overloaded up to the horsepower obtained by multiplying the rated horsepower by the service factor shown on the nameplate. When the motor is operated at a 1.15 service factor, it may have efficiency, power factor and speed values different from those at rated load.

NOTE—The percent values of locked-rotor current, locked-rotor torque, and breakdown torque are based on the rated horsepower. Motors operating in the service factor range may not have the torque margin during acceleration as stated in 20.9.

#### 20.7.3.2 Temperature Rise

When operated at the 1.15-service-factor-load, the motor will have a temperature rise not in excess of that specified in 20.8.2 with rated voltage and frequency maintained. No temperature rise is specified or implied for operation at rated load.

Operation at the temperature-rise values given in 20.8.2 for a 1.15-service-factor load causes the motor insulation to age thermally at approximately twice the rate that occurs at the temperature-rise value given in 20.8.1 for a motor with a 1.0 service-factor load; that is, operating 1 hour at specified 1.15 service factor temperature-rise values is approximately equivalent to operating 2 hours at the temperature-rise values specified for a motor with a 1.0 service factor.

NOTE—The tables in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 apply individually to a particular motor rating (that is, a 1.0 or 1.15 service factor), and it is not intended or implied that they be applied as a dual rating to an individual motor.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 20.8 TEMPERATURE RISE

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the induction machine, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in the following tables. The temperature of the cooling air (see exception in 20.8.3) is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the tables are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 112.

### 20.8.1 Machines with a 1.0 Service Factor at Rated Load

| | | | Temperature Rise, Degrees C<br>Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination | A | B | F | H |
| a | Insulated windings | | | | | |
| | 1. All horsepower (kW) ratings | Resistance | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| | 2. 1500 horsepower and less | Embedded detector* | 70 | 90 | 115 | 140 |
| | 3. Over 1500 horsepower (1120 kW) | | | | | |
| | a) 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector* | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |
| | b) Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector* | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| b | The temperatures attained by cores, squirrel-cage windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders and brushes, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

*Embedded detectors are located within the slot of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For machines equipped with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard. (See 20.27.)

### 20.8.2 Machines with a 1.15 Service Factor at Service Factor Load

| | | | Temperature Rise, Degrees C<br>Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination | A | B | F | H |
| a | Insulated windings | | | | | |
| | 1. All horsepower (kW) ratings | Resistance | 70 | 90 | 115 | 135 |
| | 2. 1500 horsepower and less | Embedded detector* | 80 | 100 | 125 | 150 |
| | 3. Over 1500 horsepower (1120 kW) | | | | | |
| | a) 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector* | 75 | 95 | 120 | 145 |
| | b) Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector* | 70 | 90 | 115 | 135 |
| b | The temperatures attained by cores, squirrel-cage windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders and brushes, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | |

*Embedded detectors are located within the slot of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For machines equipped with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard. (See 20.27.)

### 20.8.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that induction machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of induction machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C.

(Exception—for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a. On machines designed for cooling water temperature of 5°C to 30°C–the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.

b. On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises for the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 by the number of degrees that the temperature of the air leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C.)

### 20.8.4 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

### 20.8.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled induction machines may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

than 40°C. When an air-cooled induction machine is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For machines for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 20.8.1 and 20.8.2 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature for 20.8.1, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |
| Reference Temperature for 20.8.2, Degrees C | 115 | 140 | 165 | 190 |

*NOTE—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 20.8.1 and 20.8.2

For example: A 1.0 service factor rated motor with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from 20.8.1 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{o}C - 25^{o}C\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{o}C - \left(40^{o}C + 105^{o}C\right)}{80^{o}C}\right\} = 13^{o}C$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 20.8.1 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

## 20.9 CODE LETTERS (FOR LOCKED-ROTOR KVA)

The code letter designations for locked-rotor kVA per horsepower as measured at full voltage and rated frequency are as follows:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Letter Designation | kVA per Horsepower* | Letter Designation | kVA per Horsepower* |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | 0-3.15 | K | 8.0-9.0 |
| B | 3.15-3.55 | L | 9.0-10.0 |
| C | 3.55-4.0 | M | 10.0-11.2 |
| D | 4.0-4.5 | N | 11.2-12.5 |
| E | 4.5-5.0 | P | 12.5-14.0 |
| F | 5.0-5.6 | R | 14.0-16.0 |
| G | 5.6-6.3 | S | 16.0-18.0 |
| H | 6.3-7.1 | T | 18.0-20.0 |
| J | 7.1-8.0 | U | 20.0-22.4 |
| | | V | 22.4-and up |

*Locked kVA per horsepower range includes the lower figure up to, but not including, the higher figure. For example, 3.14 is designated by letter A and 3.15 by letter B.

**20.9.1** Multispeed motors shall be marked with the code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for the highest speed at which the motor can be started, except constant-horsepower motors which shall be marked with the code letter for the speed giving the highest locked-rotor kVA per horsepower.

**20.9.2** Single-speed motors starting on Y connection and running on delta connection shall be marked with a code letter corresponding to the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower for the Y connection.

**20.9.3** Broad- or dual-voltage motors which have a different locked-rotor kVA per horsepower on the different voltages shall be marked with the code letter for the voltage giving the highest locked-rotor kVA per horsepower.

**20.9.4** Motors with 60- and 50-hertz ratings shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower on 60 Hertz.

**20.9.5** Part-winding-start motors shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kVA per horsepower that is based upon the locked-rotor current for the full winding of the motor.

## 20.10 TORQUE

### 20.10.1 Standard Torque

The torques, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the following:

| Torques | Percent of Rated Full-Load Torque |
|---|---|
| Locked-rotor* | 60 |
| Pull-up* | 60 |
| Breakdown* | 175 |
| Pushover** | 175 |

*Applies to squirrel-cage induction motors or induction generators when specified for self-starting

**Applies to squirrel-cage induction generators

In addition, the developed torque at any speed up to that at which breakdown occurs, with starting conditions as specified in 20.14.2, shall be higher than the torque obtained from a curve that varies as the square of the speed and is equal to 100 percent of rated full-load torque at rated speed by at least 10 percent of the rated full-load torque.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 20.10.2 High Torque

When specified, the torques with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall not be less than the following:

| Torques | Percent of Rated Full-load Torque |
|---|---|
| Locked-rotor | 200 |
| Pull-up | 150 |
| Breakdown | 190 |

In addition, the developed torque at any speed up to that at which breakdown occurs, with starting conditions as specified in 20.14.2, shall be higher than the torque obtained from a curve that has a constant 100 percent of rated full-load torque from zero speed to rated speed, by at least 10 percent of the rated full-load torque.

### 20.10.3 Motor Torques When Customer Specifies A Custom Load Curve

When the customer specifies a load curve, the torques may be lower than those specified in 20.10.1 provided the motor developed torque exceeds the load torque by a minimum of 10% of the rated full-load torque at any speed up to that at which breakdown occurs, with starting conditions as specified by the customer ( refer to 20.14.2.3 ).

A torque margin of lower than 10% is subject to individual agreement between the motor manufacturer and user.

### 20.10.4 Motor With 4.5 pu and Lower Locked-Rotor Current

The limit for breakdown torque given in 20.10.1 shall not apply for motors requiring locked-rotor current of 4.5 pu or lower. Instead the breakdown torque shall not be less than 150% of rated full-load torque for such machines.

## 20.11 LOAD WK² FOR POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS

Table 20-1 lists load $Wk^2$ which polyphase squirrel-cage motors having performance characteristics in accordance with this Part 20 can accelerate without injurious temperature rise provided that the connected load has a speed torque characteristic according to 20.10.1. For torque-speed characteristics according to 20.10.2 maximum load $Wk^2$ shall be 50 percent of the values listed in Table 20-1.

The values of $Wk^2$ of connected load given in Table 20-1 were calculated from the following formula[1]:

$$\text{Load } Wk^2 = A\left[\frac{Hp^{0.95}}{\left(\frac{RPM}{1000}\right)^{2.4}}\right] - 0.0685\left[\frac{Hp^{1.5}}{\left(\frac{RPM}{1000}\right)^{1.8}}\right]$$

Where:

A = 24 for 300 to 1800 rpm, inclusive, motors
A = 27 for 3600 rpm motors

[1] This formula may not be applicable to ratings not in Table 20-1. Consult the manufacturer for the ratings that are not shown.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.12 NUMBER OF STARTS

### 20.12.1 Starting Capabiltity

Squirrel-cage induction motors (or induction generators specified to start and accelerate a connected load) shall be capable of making the following starts, providing the $Wk^2$ of the load, the load torque during acceleration, the applied voltage, and the method of starting are those for which the motor was designed.

a. Two starts in succession, coasting to rest between starts, with the motor initially at ambient temperature.

b. One start with the motor initially at a temperature not exceeding its rated load operating temperature.

### 20.12.2 Additional Starts

If additional starts are required, it is recommended that none be made until all conditions affecting operation have been thoroughly investigated and the apparatus has been examined for evidence of excessive heating. It should be recognized that the number of starts should be kept to a minimum since the life of the motor is affected by the number of starts.

### 20.12.3 Information Plate

When requested by the purchaser, a separate starting information plate should be supplied on the motor.

## 20.13 OVERSPEEDS

Squirrel-cage and wound-rotor induction machines shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical injury overspeeds above synchronous speed in accordance with the following table. During this overspeed condition the machine is not electrically connected to the supply.

| Synchronous Sped, Rpm | Overspeed, Percent of Synchronous Speed |
|---|---|
| 1801 and over | 20 |
| 1800 and below | 25 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 20-1
## LOAD $Wk^2$ FOR POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS*

| Hp | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 900 | 720 | 600 | 514 | 450 | 400 | 360 | 327 | 300 |
| | Load $Wk^2$ (Exclusive of Motor $Wk^2$), Lb-ft$^2$ | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 100 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12670 | 16830 | 21700 | 27310 | 33690 |
| 125 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15610 | 20750 | 26760 | 33680 | 41550 |
| 150 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 13410 | 18520 | 24610 | 31750 | 39960 | 49300 |
| 200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 12060 | 17530 | 24220 | 32200 | 41540 | 52300 | 64500 |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 9530 | 14830 | 21560 | 29800 | 39640 | 51200 | 64400 | 79500 |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | 6540 | 11270 | 17550 | 25530 | 35300 | 46960 | 60600 | 76400 | 94300 |
| 350 | ... | ... | ... | 7530 | 12980 | 20230 | 29430 | 40710 | 54200 | 69900 | 88100 | 10880 |
| 400 | ... | ... | 4199 | 8500 | 14670 | 22870 | 33280 | 46050 | 61300 | 79200 | 99800 | 123200 |
| 450 | ... | ... | 4666 | 9460 | 16320 | 25470 | 37090 | 51300 | 68300 | 88300 | 111300 | 137400 |
| 500 | ... | ... | 5130 | 10400 | 17970 | 28050 | 40850 | 56600 | 75300 | 97300 | 122600 | 151500 |
| 600 | 443 | 2202 | 6030 | 12250 | 21190 | 33110 | 48260 | 66800 | 89100 | 115100 | 145100 | 179300 |
| 700 | 503 | 2514 | 6900 | 14060 | 24340 | 38080 | 55500 | 76900 | 102600 | 132600 | 167200 | 206700 |
| 800 | 560 | 2815 | 7760 | 15830 | 27440 | 42950 | 62700 | 86900 | 115900 | 149800 | 189000 | 233700 |
| 900 | 615 | 3108 | 8590 | 17560 | 30480 | 47740 | 69700 | 96700 | 129000 | 166900 | 210600 | 260300 |
| 1000 | 668 | 3393 | 9410 | 19260 | 33470 | 52500 | 76600 | 106400 | 141900 | 183700 | 231800 | 286700 |
| 1250 | 790 | 4073 | 11380 | 23390 | 40740 | 64000 | 93600 | 130000 | 173600 | 224800 | 283900 | 351300 |
| 1500 | 902 | 4712 | 13260 | 27350 | 47750 | 75100 | 110000 | 153000 | 204500 | 265000 | 334800 | 414400 |
| 1750 | 1004 | 5310 | 15060 | 31170 | 54500 | 85900 | 126000 | 175400 | 234600 | 304200 | 384600 | 476200 |
| 2000 | 1096 | 5880 | 16780 | 34860 | 61100 | 96500 | 141600 | 197300 | 264100 | 342600 | 433300 | 537000 |
| 2250 | 1180 | 6420 | 18440 | 38430 | 67600 | 106800 | 156900 | 218700 | 293000 | 380300 | 481200 | 596000 |
| 2500 | 1256 | 6930 | 20030 | 41900 | 73800 | 116800 | 171800 | 239700 | 321300 | 417300 | 528000 | 655000 |
| 3000 | 1387 | 7860 | 23040 | 48520 | 85800 | 136200 | 200700 | 280500 | 376500 | 489400 | 620000 | 769000 |
| 3500 | 1491 | 8700 | 25850 | 54800 | 97300 | 154800 | 228600 | 319900 | 429800 | 559000 | 709000 | 881000 |
| 4000 | 1570 | 9460 | 28460 | 60700 | 108200 | 172600 | 255400 | 358000 | 481600 | 627000 | 796000 | 989000 |
| 4500 | 1627 | 10120 | 30890 | 66300 | 118700 | 189800 | 281400 | 395000 | 532000 | 693000 | 881000 | 1095000 |
| 5000 | 1662 | 10720 | 33160 | 71700 | 128700 | 206400 | 306500 | 430800 | 581000 | 758000 | 963000 | 1198000 |
| 5500 | 1677 | 11240 | 35280 | 76700 | 138300 | 222300 | 330800 | 465600 | 628000 | 821000 | 1044000 | 1299000 |
| 6000 | ... | 11690 | 37250 | 81500 | 147500 | 237800 | 354400 | 499500 | 675000 | 882000 | 1123000 | 1398000 |
| 7000 | ... | 12400 | 40770 | 90500 | 164900 | 267100 | 399500 | 565000 | 764000 | 1001000 | 1275000 | 1590000 |
| 8000 | ... | 12870 | 43790 | 98500 | 181000 | 294500 | 442100 | 626000 | 850000 | 1114000 | 1422000 | 1775000 |
| 9000 | ... | 13120 | 46330 | 105700 | 195800 | 320200 | 482300 | 685000 | 931000 | 1223000 | 1563000 | 1953000 |
| 10000 | ... | 13170 | 48430 | 112200 | 209400 | 344200 | 520000 | 741000 | 1009000 | 1327000 | 1699000 | 2125000 |
| 11000 | ... | ... | 50100 | 117900 | 220000 | 366700 | 556200 | 794000 | 1084000 | 1428000 | 1830000 | 2291000 |
| 12000 | ... | ... | 51400 | 123000 | 233500 | 387700 | 590200 | 844800 | 1155000 | 1524000 | 1956000 | 2452000 |
| 13000 | ... | ... | 52300 | 127500 | 244000 | 407400 | 622400 | 893100 | 1224000 | 1617000 | 2078000 | 2608000 |
| 14000 | ... | ... | 52900 | 131300 | 253600 | 425800 | 652800 | 934200 | 1289000 | 1707000 | 2195000 | 2758000 |
| 15000 | ... | ... | 53100 | 134500 | 262400 | 442900 | 681500 | 983100 | 1352000 | 1793000 | 2309000 | 2904000 |

*See MG 1-20.11

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.14 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

### 20.14.1 Running

Induction machines shall operate successfully under running conditions at rated load with a variation in the voltage or the frequency up to the following:

a. Plus or minus 10 percent of rated voltage, with rated frequency
b. Plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency, with rated voltage
c. A combined variation in voltage and frequency of 10 percent (sum of absolute values) of the rated values, provided the frequency variation does not exceed plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency.

Performance within these voltage and frequency variations will not necessarily be in accordance with the standards established for operation at rated voltage and frequency.

### 20.14.2 Starting

#### 20.14.2.1 Standard

Induction machines shall start and accelerate to running speed a load which has a torque characteristic not exceeding that listed in 20.10 and an inertia value not exceeding that listed in 20.11 with the voltage and frequency variations specified in 20.14.1.

#### 20.14.2.2 Low Voltage Option

When low voltage starting is specified, induction machines shall start and accelerate to running speed a load which has a torque characteristic not exceeding that listed in 20.10 and an inertia value not exceeding that listed in 20.11 with the following voltage and frequency variations:

a. -15 percent of rated voltage with rated frequency
b. ±5 percent of rated frequency, with rated voltage
c. A combined variation in voltage and frequency of 15 percent (sum of absolute values) of the rated values, provided the frequency variation does not exceed ±5 percent of rated frequency.

#### 20.14.2.3 Other

For loads with other characteristics, the starting voltage and frequency limits may be different. The limiting values of voltage and frequency under which an induction machine will successfully start and accelerate to running speed depend on the margin between the speed-torque curve of the induction machine at rated voltage and frequency and the speed-torque curve of the load under starting conditions. Since the torque developed by the induction machine at any speed is approximately proportional to the square of the voltage and inversely proportional to the square of the frequency it is generally desirable to determine what voltage and frequency variations will actually occur at each installation, taking into account any voltage drop resulting from the starting current drawn by the machine. This information and the torque requirements of the driven (or driving) machine define the machine speed-torque curve, at rated voltage and frequency, which is adequate for the application.

## 20.15 OPERATION OF INDUCTION MACHINES FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY OR VARIABLE-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLIES, OR BOTH

Induction machines to be operated from solid-state or other types of variable-frequency or variable-voltage power supplies, or both, for adjustable-speed applications may require individual consideration to provide satisfactory performance. Especially for operation below rated speed, it may be necessary to reduce the machine rating to avoid overheating. The induction machine manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a machine for such applications.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.16 TESTS

### 20.16.1 Test Methods

The method of testing polyphase induction machines shall be in accordance with the following:

a. IEEE Std 112
b. All tests shall be made by the manufacturer. (The order of listing does not necessarily indicate the sequence in which the tests shall be made.)
c. Multispeed machines shall be tested at each speed.

### 20.16.2 Routine Tests on Machines Completely Assembled in Factory

The following tests shall be made on machines completely assembled in the factory and furnished with shaft and complete set of bearings:

a. Measurement of winding resistance
b. No-load motoring readings of current, power, and speed at rated voltage and frequency. On 50-hertz machines, these readings shall be permitted to be taken at 60 hertz.
c. Measurement of open-circuit voltage ratio on wound-rotor machines
d. High-potential test in accordance with 20.17.

### 20.16.3 Routine Tests on Machines Not Completely Assembled in Factory

The following factory tests shall be made on all machines not completely assembled in the factory:

a. Measurement of winding resistance
b. High-potential test in accordance with 20.17

## 20.17 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

### 20.17.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure

See 3.1.

### 20.17.2 Test Voltage—Primary Windings

The test voltage shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine.[1]

### 20.17.3 Test Voltage—Secondary Windings of Wound Rotors

The test voltage shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the maximum voltage which will appear between slip rings on open-circuit with rated voltage on the primary and with the rotor either at standstill or at any speed and direction of rotation (with respect to the rotating magnetic field) required by the application for which the machine was designed.[1]

---

[1] A direct instead of an alternating voltage is sometimes used for high-potential test on primary windings of machines rated 6000 volts or higher. In such cases, a test voltage equal to 1.7 times the alternating-current test voltage (effective value) as given in 20.17.2 and 20.17.3 is recommended. Following a direct-voltage high-potential test, the tested winding should be thoroughly grounded. The insulation rating of the winding and the test level of the voltage applied determine the period of time required to dissipate the charge and, in many cases, the ground should be maintained several hours to dissipate the charge to avoid hazard to personnel.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.18 MACHINE WITH SEALED WINDINGS—CONFORMANCE TESTS

An alternating-current squirrel-cage machine with sealed windings shall be capable of passing the following tests:

### 20.18.1 Test for Stator Which Can Be Submerged

After the stator winding is completed, join all leads together leaving enough length to avoid creepage to terminals and perform the following tests in the sequence indicated:

a. The sealed stator shall be tested while all insulated parts are submerged in a tank of water containing a wetting agent. The wetting agent shall be non-ionic and shall be added in a proportion sufficient to reduce the surface tension of water to a value of 31 dyn/cm ($31 \times 10^3$ μN/m) or less at 25°C.

b. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 10-minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE Std 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

c. Subject the winding to a 60-hertz high-potential test of 1.15 times the rated line-to-line rms voltage for 1 minute. Water must be at ground potential during this test.

d. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 1 minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE Std 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

e. Remove winding from water, rinse if necessary, dry, and apply other tests as may be required.

### 20.18.2 Test for Stator Which Cannot Be Submerged

When the wound stator, because of its size or for some other reason, cannot be submerged, the tests shall be performed as follows:

a. Spray windings thoroughly for one-half hour with water containing a wetting agent. The wetting agent shall be non-ionic and shall be added in a proportion sufficient to reduce the surface tension of water to a value of 31 dyn/cm ($31 \times 10^3$ μN/m) or less at 25°C.

b. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 10-minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

c. Subject the winding to a 60-hertz high-potential test of 1.15 times the rated line-to-line rms voltage for 1 minute.

d. Using 500 volts direct-current, take a 1-minute insulation resistance measurement following the procedure as outlined in IEEE 43. The minimum insulation resistance in megohms shall be ≥ 5 times the machine rated kilovolts plus 5.

e. Rinse winding if necessary, dry, and apply other tests as may be required.

NOTE—The tests in 20.18.1 and 20.18.2 are recommended as a test on a representative sample or prototype and should not be construed as a production test.

## 20.19 MACHINE SOUND

See Part 9 for Sound Power Limits and Measurement Procedures.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.20 REPORT OF TEST FORM FOR INDUCTION MACHINES

For typical test forms, see IEEE Std 112.

## 20.21 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 112. Unless otherwise specified, the stray-load loss shall be determined by direct measurement (test loss minus conventional loss).

When using Method B, Dynamometer, efficiency shall be determined by loss segregation including the smoothing of stray-load loss as outlined in IEEE 112.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. Stator $I^2R$
b. Rotor $I^2R$
c. Core loss
d. Stray load loss
e. Friction and windage loss[1]
f. Power required for auxiliary items such as external pumps or fans necessary for the operation of the machine shall be stated separately.

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 75 |
| B | 95 |
| F | 115 |
| H | 130 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system (e.g., motors for metal rolling mill service), the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

## 20.22 MECHANICAL VIBRATION

See Part 7.

[1] In the case of induction machines furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the machine itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be specified.
In the case of induction machines furnished with less than a less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.23 REED FREQUENCY OF VERTICAL MACHINES

In a single degree of freedom system, the static deflection of the mass ($\Delta_s$, inches) is related to the resonant frequency of the system ($f_n$, cycles per minute) as follows:

$$f_n = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{g/\Delta_s}$$

Where: g = 1389600 in/min$^2$

Vertical or other flange-mounted induction machines are frequently mounted on some part of the driven (or driving) machine such as a pump adapter. The resulting system may have a radial resonant frequency (reed frequency) the same order of magnitude as the rotational speed of the induction machine. This system frequency can be calculated from the preceding equation. When the resonant frequency of the system is too close to the rotational speed, a damaging vibration level may result.

The vertical induction machine manufacturer should supply the following information to aid in determining the system resonant frequency, $f_n$:

a. Machine weight
b. Center of gravity location—This is the distance from the machine mounting flange to the center of gravity of the machine.
c. Machine static deflection—This is the distance the center of gravity would be displaced downward from its original position if the machine were horizontally mounted. This value assumes that the machine uses its normal mounting and fastening means but that the foundation to which it is fastened does not deflect.

## 20.24 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS

When the line voltages applied to a polyphase induction motor are not equal, unbalanced currents in the stator windings will result. A small percentage voltage unbalance will result in a much larger percentage current unbalance. Consequently, the temperature rise of the motor operating at a particular load and percentage voltage unbalance will be greater than for the motor operating under the same conditions with balanced voltages.

Voltages should be evenly balanced as closely as can be read on a voltmeter. If the voltages are unbalanced, the rated horsepower of polyphase squirrel-cage induction motors should be multiplied by the factor shown in Figure 20-2 to reduce the possibility of damage to the motor.[1] Operation of the motor with more than a 5-percent voltage unbalance is not recommended.

When the derating curve of Figure 20-2 is applied for operation on unbalanced voltages, the selection and setting of the overload device should take into account the combination of the derating factor applied to the motor and the increase in current resulting from the unbalanced voltages. This is a complex problem involving the variation in motor current as a function of load and voltage unbalance in addition to the characteristics of the overload device relative to $I_{maximum}$ or $I_{average}$. In the absence of specific information it is recommended that overload devices be selected or adjusted, or both, at the minimum value that does not result in tripping for the derating factor and voltage unbalance that applies. When the unbalanced voltages are anticipated, it is recommended that the overload devices be selected so as to be responsive to $I_{maximum}$ in preference to overload devices responsive to $I_{average}$.

[1] The derating factor shown in Figure 20-2 is applicable only to motors with normal starting torque, (i.e., motors typically intended for service with centrifugal pumps, fans, compressors, etc.) where the required starting or pull-up torque, or both, is less than 100 percent of rated full-load torque. For motors with other torque characteristics, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

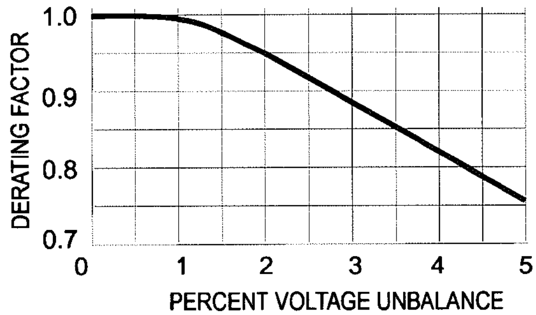



**Figure 20-2**
**POLYPHASE SQUIRREL-CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS DERATING FACTOR DUE TO UNBALANCED VOLTAGE**

### 20.24.1 Effect on Performance—General

The effect of unbalanced voltages on polyphase induction motors is equivalent to the introduction of a "negative sequence voltage" having a rotation opposite to that occurring with balanced voltages. This negative-sequence voltage produces an air gap flux rotating against the rotation of the rotor, tending to produce high currents. A small negative-sequence voltage may produce current in the windings considerably in excess of those present under balanced voltage conditions.

### 20.24.2 Voltage Unbalance Defined

The voltage unbalance in percent may be defined as:

$$\text{percent voltage unbalance} = 100 \times \frac{\text{maximum voltage deviation from average voltage}}{\text{average voltage}}$$

EXAMPLE: With voltages of 2300, 2220, and 2185, the average is 2235, the maximum deviation from the average is 65, the percentage unbalance = 100 x 65/2235 = 2.9 percent

### 20.24.3 Torques

The locked-rotor torque and breakdown torque are decreased when the voltage is unbalanced. If the voltage unbalance is extremely severe, the torques might not be adequate for the application.

### 20.24.4 Full-Load Speed

The full-load speed is reduced slightly when the motor operates at unbalanced voltages.

### 20.24.5 Currents

The locked-rotor current will be unbalanced to the same degree that the voltages are unbalanced but the locked rotor kVA will increase only slightly.

The currents at normal operating speed with unbalanced voltages will be greatly unbalanced in the order of 6 to 10 times the voltage unbalance.

## MANUFACTURING

### 20.25 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 20.25.1 Alternating-Current Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Motors

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Rpm at rated load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Rated-load amperes
j. Code letter (see 20.9)
k. Service factor

### 20.25.2 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[2]
e. Rpm at rated load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Rated-load amperes
j. Secondary amperes at full load
k. Secondary voltage
l. Service factor

### 20.25.3 Polyphase Squirrel-Cage Generators

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Kilowatt rating
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Rpm at rated load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Rated-load amperes

---

[1] As an alternative marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:
a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the machine is designed (see 20.8.3).
b. Insulation system designation (if stator and rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the stator being given first).

[2] As an alternative marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:
a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the machine is designed (see 20.8.3).
b. Insulation system designation (if stator and rotor use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the stator being given first).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 20.25.4 Polyphase Wound-Rotor Generators

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Kilowatt rating
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Rpm at rated load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Rated-load amperes
j. Secondary amperes at full speed
k. Secondary voltage

## 20.26 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS AND BOXES

### 20.26.1 Box Dimensions

When induction machines covered by this Part 20 are provided with terminal housings for line cable connections,[1] the minimum dimensions and usable volume shall be as indicated in Table 20-3 for Type I terminal housings or Figure 20-3 for Type II terminal housings.

Unless otherwise specified, when induction machines are provided with terminal housings, a Type I terminal housing shall be supplied.

### 20.26.2 Accessory Lead Terminations

For machines rated 601 volts and higher, accessory leads shall terminate in a terminal box or boxes separate from the machine terminal housing. As an exception, current and potential transformers located in the machine terminal housing shall be permitted to have their secondary connections terminated in the machine terminal housing if separated from the machine leads by a suitable physical barrier.

### 20.26.3 Lead Terminations of Accessories Operating at 50 Volts or Less

For machines rated 601 volts and higher, the termination of leads of accessory items normally operating at a voltage of 50 volts (rms) or less shall be separated from leads of higher voltage by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact or shall be terminated in a separate box.

[1] Terminal housings containing stress cones, surge capacitors, surge arresters, current transformers, or potential transformers require individual consideration.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 20-3**
**TYPE I TERMINAL HOUSING:**
**UNSUPPORTED AND INSULATED TERMINATIONS**

| Voltage | Maximum Full-Load Current | Minimum Usable Volume, Cubic Inches | Minimum Internal Dimension, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0-600 | 400 | 900 | 8 | ... |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | ... |
| | 1200 | 4600 | 14 | ... |
| 601-2400 | 160 | 180 | 5 | ... |
| | 250 | 330 | 6 | ... |
| | 400 | 900 | 8 | ... |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | 12.6 |
| | 1500 | 5600 | 16 | 20.1 |
| 2401-4800 | 160 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 700 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 1000 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1500 | 10740 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 13400 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 4801-6900 | 260 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 680 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1000 | 9400 | 18 | 25 |
| | 1500 | 11600 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 14300 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 6901-13800 | 400 | 44000 | 22 | 28.3 |
| | 900 | 50500 | 25 | 32.3 |
| | 1500 | 56500 | 27.6 | 32.3 |
| | 2000 | 62500 | 30.7 | 32.3 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of machine leads.

## 20.27 EMBEDDED TEMPERATURE DETECTORS

Embedded temperature detectors are temperature detectors built into the machine during construction at points which are inaccessible after the machine is built.

Unless otherwise specified, when machines are equipped with embedded detectors they shall be of the resistance temperature detector type. The resistance element shall have a minimum width of 0.25 inch, and the detector length shall be approximately as follows:

| Core Length Inches | Approximate Detector Length, Inches |
|---|---|
| 12 or less | 6 |
| Greater than 12 and less than 40 | 10 |
| 40 or greater | 20 |

For motors rated 6000 hp or less or generators rated less than 5000 kW or 5000 kVA, the minimum number of detectors shall equal the number of phases for which the machine is wound (i.e., three detectors for a three-phase machine). For motors rated greater than 6000 hp or generators rated 5000 kW (or kVA) or higher the minimum number of detectors shall be six. The detectors shall be suitably distributed around the circumference, located between the coil sides, and in positions having normally the highest temperature along the length of the slot.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

The detector shall be located in the center of the slot (with the respect to the slot width) and in intimate contact with the insulation of both the upper and lower coil sides whenever possible; otherwise, it shall be in contact with the insulation of the upper coil side (that is, the coil side nearest the air gap). Each detector shall be installed, and its leads brought out, so that the detector is effectively protected from contact with the cooling medium. If the detector does not occupy the full length of the core, suitable packing shall be inserted between the coils to the full length of the core to prevent the cooling medium from directly contacting the detector.

| | Minimum Dimensions (Inches) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Machine Voltage** | **L** | **W** | **D** | **A** | **B** | **C** | **X** | **E** | **F** | **G** |
| 460-600 | 24 | 18 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 4 | 5 | 2-1/2 | 4 | 12 |
| 2300-4160 | 26 | 27 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 5-1/2 | 8 | 3-1/2 | 5 | 14 |
| 6600-6900 | 36 | 30 | 18 | 9-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 30 |
| 13200-13800 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 13-1/2 | 11-1/2 | 8-1/2 | 13-1/2 | 6-1/2 | 9-1/2 | 36 |

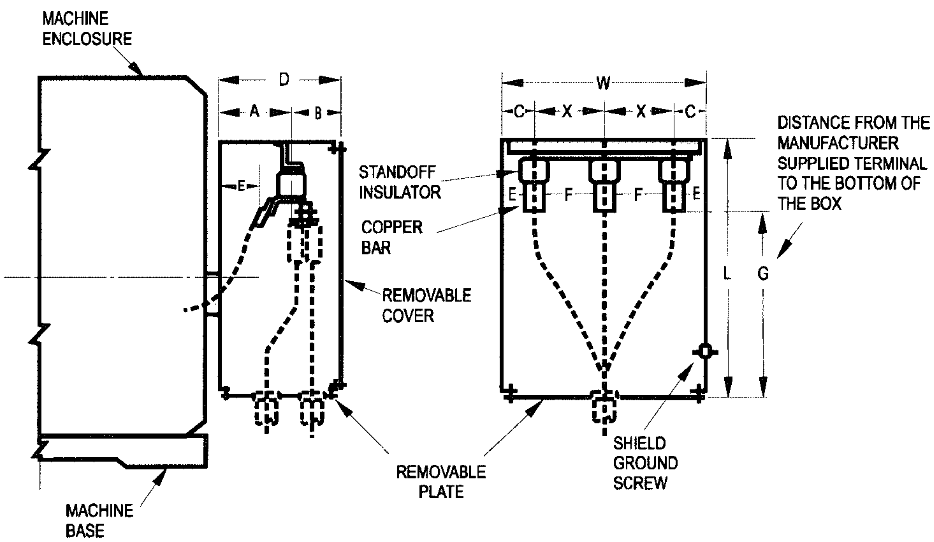



**Figure 20-3**
**TYPE II MACHINE TERMINAL HOUSING STANDOFF—INSULATOR-SUPPORTED INSULATED OR UNINSULATED TERMINATIONS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## APPLICATION DATA

## 20.28 SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 20.28.1 General

Induction machines should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions.

Machines conforming to this Part 20 are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driven (or driving) equipment and the induction machine manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 20.28.2 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a. Exposure to an ambient temperature in the range of -15°C to 40°C or, when water cooling is used, an ambient temperature range of 5°C (to prevent freezing of water) to 40°C, except for machines other than water cooled having slip rings for which the minimum ambient temperature is 0°C.
b. An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. A location and supplementary enclosure, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the machine.

### 20.28.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the machine. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
    1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
    2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
    3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
    4. Nuclear radiation
    5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
    6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
    7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
    8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the machine shaft

b. Operation where:
    1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage or frequency, or both (see 20.14)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

2. The deviation factor of the alternating-current supply voltage exceeds 10 percent
3. The alternating-current supply voltage is unbalanced by more than 1 percent (see 20.24)
4. Low noise levels are required
5. The power system is not grounded (see 20.36)

c. Operation at speeds other than the rated speed (see 20.14)

d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position

e. Operation where subjected to:
   1. Torsional impact loads
   2. Repetitive abnormal overloads
   3. Reversing or electric braking
   4. Frequent starting (see 20.12)
   5. Out-of-phase bus transfer (see 20.33)
   6. Frequent short circuits

## 20.29 END PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR COUPLED SLEEVE BEARING HORIZONTAL INDUCTION MACHINES

### 20.29.1 General

Operating experience on horizontal sleeve bearing induction machines has shown that sufficient thrust to damage bearings may be transmitted to the induction machine through a flexible coupling. Damage to induction machine bearings due to thrusts under such conditions will be avoided if the following limits are observed by the induction machine manufacturer and the driven (or driving) equipment/induction machine assembler.

### 20.29.2 Limits

Where induction machines are provided with sleeve bearings, the machine bearings and limited-end-float coupling should be applied as indicated in the following table:

| Machine Hp (kW) | Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Min. Motor Rotor End Float, Inches | Max. Coupling End Float,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 500 (400) and below | 1800 and below | 0.25 | 0.09 |
| 300 (250) to 500 (400) incl. | 3600 and 3000 | 0.50 | 0.19 |
| 600 (500) and higher | all speeds | 0.50 | 0.19 |

*Couplings with elastic axial centering forces are usually satisfactory without these precautions.

### 20.29.3 Marking Requirements

To facilitate the assembly of driven (or driving) equipment and sleeve bearing induction machines, the induction machine manufacturer should:

a. Indicate on the induction machine outline drawing the minimum machine rotor end play in inches.
b. Mark rotor end play limits on machine shaft.

NOTE—The induction machine and the driven (or driving) equipment should be assembled and adjusted at the installation site so that there will be some endwise clearance in the induction machine bearing under all operating conditions. The difference between the rotor end play and the end float in the coupling allows for expansion and contraction in the driven (or driving) equipment, for clearance in the driven (or driving) equipment thrust bearing, for endwise movement in the coupling, and for assembly.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.30 PULSATING STATOR CURRENT IN INDUCTION MOTORS

When the driven load, such as that of reciprocating type pumps, compressors, etc., requires a variable torque during each revolution, it is recommended that the combined installation have sufficient inertia in its rotating parts to limit the variations[1] in motor stator current to a value not exceeding 66 percent of full-load current.

## 20.31 ASEISMATIC CAPABILITY

### 20.31.1 General

The susceptibility of induction machines to earthquake damage is particularly influenced by their mounting structures. Therefore, the asiesmatic capability requirements for induction machines should be based on the response characteristics of the system consisting of the induction machine and mounting structure or equipment on which the induction machine will be mounted when subjected to the specified earthquake ground motions.

### 20.31.2 Frequency Response Spectrum

System aseismatic capability requirements should preferably be given in terms of the peak acceleration which a series of "single-degree-of-freedom" oscillators, mounted on the induction machine support structure system, would experience during the specified earthquake. A family of continuous plots of peak acceleration versus frequency over the complete frequency range and for various values of damping is referred to as a "frequency response spectrum" for the induction machine and support structure system. This frequency response spectrum should be utilized by those responsible for the system or mounting structure, or both, to determine the aseismatic capability requirement which is to be applied to the induction machine alone when it is mounted on its supporting structure. The induction machine manufacturer should furnish the required data for induction machine natural frequency or mass stiffness, or both, to allow this determination to be made.

### 20.31.3 Units for Capability Requirements

Induction machine aseismatic capability requirements should preferably be stated as a single acceleration or "g" value as determined from the system structural characteristics and input data as outlined in 20.31.1 and 20.31.2.

### 20.31.4 Recommended Peak Acceleration Limits

For induction machines covered by this Part 20, it is recommended that the supporting base structure for the induction machine limit the peak acceleration due to earthquakes to the following maximum values:

a. One and one-half g's in any direction
b. One g vertically upward and downward in addition to the normal downward gravity of one g.

The loads imposed as a result of the foregoing inputs can be assumed to have negligible effect upon the operation of the induction machine.

NOTES

1—Accelerations are given in g's or multiples of the "standard" gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/sec$^2$) (9.81 meter/sec$^2$) and are based on an assumed damping factor of 1 percent. Horizontal and vertical accelerations are assumed to act individually but not simultaneously.

2—The axial restraint of the shaft in most horizontal applications is provided by the driven (or driving) equipment or other devices external to the induction machine. In such cases, the axial seismic loading of the shaft should be included in the requirements for the driven (or driving) equipment. In other applications, restraint of the driven (or driving) equipment rotor may be provided by the induction machine. In such cases, the axial seismic loading of the shaft should be included in the requirements for the induction machine.

---

[1] The basis for determining this variation should be by oscillograph or similar measurement and not by ammeter readings. A line should be drawn on full-load current of the motor. (The maximum value of the motor stator current is to be assumed as 1.41 times the rated full-load current.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

3—When a single g value is given, it is implied that this g value is the maximum value of peak acceleration on the actual frequency response curve for the induction machine when mounted on its supporting structure for a particular value of system structural damping and specified earthquake ground motion. Values for other locations are frequently inappropriate because of nonrigid characteristics of the intervening structure.

## 20.32 BELT, CHAIN, AND GEAR DRIVE

When induction machines are for belt, chain, or gear drive, the manufacturer should be consulted.

## 20.33 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING

Induction machines are inherently capable of developing transient current and torque considerably in excess of rated current and torque when exposed to an out-of-phase bus transfer or momentary voltage interruption and reclosing on the same power supply. The magnitude of this transient torque may range from 2 to 20 times rated torque and is a function of the machine, operating conditions, switching time, rotating system inertias and torsional spring constants, number of motors on the bus, etc.

### 20.33.1 Slow Transfer or Reclosing

A slow transfer or reclosing is defined as one in which the length of time between disconnection of the motor from the power supply and reclosing onto the same or another power supply is equal to or greater than one and a half motor open-circuit alternating-current time constants (see 1.60).

It is recommended that slow transfer or reclosing be used so as to limit the possibility of damaging the motor or driven (or driving) equipment or both. This time delay permits a sufficient decay in rotor flux linkages so that the transient current and torque associated with the bus transfer or reclosing will remain within acceptable levels. When several motors are involved, the time delay should be based on one and a half times the longest open-circuit time constant of any motor on the system being transferred or reclosed.

### 20.33.2 Fast Transfer or Reclosing

A fast transfer or reclosing is defined as one which occurs within a time period shorter than one and a half open-circuit alternating-current constants. In such cases transfer or reclosure should be timed to occur when the difference between the motor residual voltage and frequency, and the incoming system voltage and frequency will not result in damaging transients.

The rotating masses of motor-load system, connected by elastic shafts, constitute a torsionally responsive mechanical system which is excited by the motor electromagnetic (air gap) transient torque that consists of the sum of an exponentially decaying unidirectional component and exponentially decaying oscillatory components at several frequencies, including power frequency and slip frequency. The resultant shaft torques may be either attenuated or amplified with reference to the motor electromagnetic (air-gap) torque, and for this reason it is recommended that the electromechanical interactions of the motor, the driven equipment, and the power system be studied for any system where fast transfer or reclosure is used.

The electrical and mechanical parameters required for such a study will be dependent upon the method of analysis and the degree of detail employed in the study. When requested, the motor manufacturer should furnish the following and any other information as may be required for the system study:

a. Reactances and resistances for the electrical equivalent circuit for the motor, as depicted in Figure 1-4, for both unsaturated and saturated (normal slip frequency) condition
b. $Wk^2$ of the motor rotor
c. Spring constant of the motor shaft

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 20.34 POWER FACTOR CORRECTION

WARNING: When power factor correction capacitors are to be switched with an induction machine, the maximum value of corrective kVAR should not exceed the value required to raise the no-load power factor to unity. Corrective kVAR in excess of this value may cause over-excitation resulting in high transient voltages, currents, and torques that can increase safety hazards to personnel and can cause possible damage to the machine or to the driven (or driving) equipment. For applications where overspeed of the machine is contemplated (i.e., induction generators, paralleled centrifugal pumps without check valves), the maximum corrective kVAR should be further reduced by an amount corresponding to the square of the expected overspeed.

a. The maximum value of corrective kVAR to be switched with an induction machine can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{kVAR} \le \frac{0.9 \times I_{nl} \times E \times \sqrt{3}}{1000 \times (1+OS)^2}$$

Where:

$I_{nl}$ = No-load current at rated voltage
E = Rated voltage
OS = Per unit maximum expected overspeed

b. The use of capacitors for power factor correction, switched at the motor terminals, is not recommended for machines subjected to high speed bus transfer or reclosing, elevator motors, multi-speed motors, motors used on plugging or jogging applications, and motors used with open transition autotransformer or wye delta starting. For such applications the machine manufacturer should be consulted before installing power factor corrective capacitors switched with the machine.

Closed transition autotransformer starters may introduce a large phase shift between the supply voltage and the motor internal voltage during the transition period when the autotransformer primary is in series with the motor winding. To minimize the resultant transient current and torque when the autotransformer is subsequently shorted out, capacitors for power factor correction should be connected on the line side of the autotransformer.

## 20.35 SURGE CAPABILITIES OF AC WINDINGS WITH FORM-WOUND COILS

### 20.35.1 General

Stator winding insulation systems of ac machines are exposed to stresses due to the steady state operating voltages and to steep-fronted voltage surges of high amplitudes. Both types of voltages stress the ground insulation. The steep-fronted surge also stresses the turn insulation. If the rise time of the surge is steep enough (0.1 to 0.2 μsec), most of the surge could appear across the first or line coil and its distribution in the coil could be non-linear.

### 20.35.2 Surge Sources

The steep-fronted surges appearing across the motor terminals are caused by lightning strikes, normal circuit breaker operation, motor starting, aborted starts, bus transfers, switching windings (or speeds) in two-speed motors, or switching of power factor correction capacitors. Turn insulation testing itself also imposes a high stress on the insulation system.

### 20.35.3 Factors Influencing Magnitude and Rise Time

The crest value and rise time of the surge at the motor depends on the transient event taking place, on the electrical system design, and on the number and characteristics of all other devices in the system.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

These include, but are not limited to, the motor, the cables connecting the motor to the switching device, the type of switching device used, the length of the busbar and the number and sizes of all other loads connected to the same busbar.

### 20.35.4 Surge Protection

Although certain surge withstand capability levels must be specified for the windings, it is desirable, because of the unpredictable nature of the surge magnitudes and rise times, that for critical applications surge protection devices be installed at or very close to the motor terminals to slope back the rise of the incoming surge thereby making it more evenly distributed across the entire winding.

### 20.35.5 Surge Withstand Capability for Standard Machines

Stator windings of ac machines, unless otherwise specified, shall be designed to have a surge withstand capability of 2 pu (per unit) at a rise time of 0.1 to 0.2 μs and 4.5 pu at 1.2μs, or longer, where one pu is the crest of the rated motor line-to-ground voltage, or:

$$1\text{pu} = \sqrt{2/3} \times V_{L-L}$$

### 20.35.6 Special Surge Withstand Capability

When higher surge capabilities are required, the windings shall be designed for a surge withstand capability of 3.5 pu at a rise time of 0.1 to 0.2 μs and 5 pu at a rise time of 1.2 μs or longer. This higher capability shall be by agreement between the customer and the manufacturer.

### 20.35.7 Testing

Unless otherwise agreed to between the customer and the manufacturer, the method of test and the test instrumentation used shall be per IEEE Std 522.

The test may be made at any of the following steps of manufacture:

a. On individual coils before installation in slots
b. On individual coils after installation in slots, prior to connection with stator slot wedging and endwinding support systems installed
c. On completely wound and finished stator

The actual step where testing is done shall be a matter of agreement between the customer and the manufacturer.

### 20.35.8 Test Voltage Values

The test voltage steps at 20.35.7.a and 20.35.7.b shall be at least:

a. 65% of the values specified in 20.35.5 or 20.35.6 for unimpregnated coils
b. 80% of the values specified in 20.35.5 or 20.35.6 for resin-rich coils

## 20.36 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM

Alternating-current machines are intended for continuous operation with the neutral at or near ground potential. Operation on ungrounded systems with one line at ground potential should be done only for infrequent periods of short duration, for example as required for normal fault clearance. If it is intended to operate the machine continuously or for prolonged periods in such conditions, a special machine with a level of insulation suitable for such operation is required. The motor manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a motor for such an application.

Grounding of the interconnection of the machine neutral points should not be undertaken without consulting the System Designer because of the danger of zero-sequence components of currents of all frequencies under some operating conditions and the possible mechanical damage to the winding under line-to-neutral fault conditions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Other auxiliary equipment connected to the motor such as, but not limited to, surge capacitors, power factor correction capacitors, or lightning arresters, may not be suitable for use on an ungrounded system and should be evaluated independently.

## 20.37 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT

Induction motors while running and at rated temperature shall be capable of withstanding a current equal to 150 percent of the rated current for 30 seconds.

Excess capacity is required for the coordination of the motor with the control and protective devices. The heating effect in the machine winding varies approximately as the product of the square of the current and the time for which this current is being carried. The overload condition will thus result in increased temperatures and a reduction in insulation life. The motor should therefore not be subjected to this extreme condition for more than a few times in its life.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 21

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section III
# LARGE MACHINES
# Part 21
# LARGE MACHINES—SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

(The standards in this Part 21 do not apply to nonexcited synchronous motors, nor do they necessarily apply to synchronous motors of motor-generator sets.)

## RATINGS

### 21.1 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 21 of this Section III cover (1) synchronous motors built in frames larger than those required for synchronous motors having the continuous open-type ratings given in the table below, and (2) all ratings of synchronous motors of the revolving-field type of 450 rpm and slower speeds.

| | Motors, Synchronous, Hp | |
|---|---|---|
| | Power Factor | |
| Synchronous Speed | Unity | 0.8 |
| 3600 | 500 | 400 |
| 1800 | 500 | 400 |
| 1200 | 350 | 300 |
| 900 | 250 | 200 |
| 720 | 200 | 150 |
| 600 | 150 | 125 |
| 514 | 125 | 100 |

### 21.2 BASIS OF RATING

Synchronous motors covered by this Part 21 shall be rated on a continuous-duty basis unless otherwise specified. The output rating shall be expressed in horsepower available at the shaft at a specified speed, frequency, voltage, and power factor.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.3 HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS

| Horsepower Ratings | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 20 | 600 | 6000 | 27500 | |
| 25 | 700 | 7000 | 30000 | |
| 30 | 800 | 8000 | 32500 | |
| 40 | 900 | 9000 | 35000 | |
| 50 | 1000 | 10000 | 37500 | |
| 60 | 1250 | 11000 | 40000 | |
| 75 | 1500 | 12000 | 45000 | |
| 100 | 1750 | 13000 | 50000 | |
| 125 | 2000 | 14000 | 55000 | |
| 150 | 2250 | 15000 | 60000 | |
| 200 | 2500 | 16000 | 65000 | |
| 250 | 3000 | 17000 | 70000 | |
| 300 | 3500 | 18000 | 75000 | |
| 350 | 4000 | 19000 | 80000 | |
| 400 | 4500 | 20000 | 90000 | |
| 450 | 5000 | 22500 | 100000 | |
| 500 | 5500 | 25000 | | |
| **Speed Ratings, Rpm at 60 Hertz*** | | | | |
| 3600 | 514 | 277 | 164 | 100 |
| 1800 | 450 | 257 | 150 | 95 |
| 1200 | 400 | 240 | 138 | 90 |
| 900 | 360 | 225 | 129 | 86 |
| 720 | 327 | 200 | 120 | 80 |
| 600 | 300 | 180 | 109 | ... |

*At 50 hertz, the speeds are 5/6 of the 60-hertz speeds.

NOTE - It is not practical to build motors of all horsepower ratings at all speeds.

## 21.4 POWER FACTOR

The power factor for synchronous motors shall be unity or 0.8 leading (overexcited).

## 21.5 VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 21.5.1 Voltage Ratings

For three phase ac machines, 50 Hz or 60 Hz, intended to directly connected to distribution or utilization systems, the rated voltages shall be selected from the voltages given in following table. Other voltages are subject to the approval between manufacturer and end user.

| Nominal System voltages for 50 Hz* | | Nominal System voltages for 60 Hz | Preferred motor rated voltages for 60 Hz (North American Practice) |
|---|---|---|---|
| a) | b) | 480 | 460 |
| 400 | 400 | 600 | 575 |
| 3300 | 3000 | 2400 | 2300 |
| 6600 | 6000 | 4160 | 4000 |
| 11000 | 10000 | 6900 | 6600 |
| | | 13800 | 13200 |

* Either one of the voltage series a) or b) is used in certain countries for 50 Hz.

NOTE—For synchronous motors with a leading power factor (overexcited) the recommended rated voltage is the nominal system voltages for 60 Hz.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 21.5.2 Preferred Motor Output/Voltage Rating

It is not practical to build synchronous machines of all ratings for all voltages. In general, based on motor design and manufacturing considerations, preferred motor voltage ratings are as follows:

a) 60 HZ power supply:

| Horsepower | Voltage Rating |
|---|---|
| 100-600 | 460 - 575 |
| 200-5000 | 2300 - 2400 |
| 200-10000 | 4000 - 4160 |
| 1000-15000 | 6000 - 6600 |
| 3500 and up | 13200 - 13800 |

b) 50 HZ power supply:

| Horsepower | Voltage Rating |
|---|---|
| 100-500 | 380 - 440 |
| 600-8000 | 3000 - 3300 |
| 700- 15000 | 6000 - 6600 |
| 3000 and up | 10000 - 11000 |

## 21.6 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

## 21.7 EXCITATION VOLTAGE

The excitation voltages for field windings shall be 62-1/2, 125, 250, 375, and 500 volts direct current. These excitation voltages do not apply to motors of the brushless type with direct-connected exciters.

NOTE—It is not practical to design all horsepower ratings of motors for all of the foregoing excitation voltages.

## 21.8 SERVICE FACTOR

### 21.8.1 Service Factor of 1.0

When operated at rated voltage and frequency, synchronous motors covered by this Part 21 and having a rated temperature rise in accordance with 21.10.1 shall have a service factor of 1.0.

In those applications requiring an overload capacity, the use of a higher horsepower rating, as given in 21.3, is recommended to avoid exceeding the temperature rise for the insulation class used and to provide adequate torque capacity.

### 21.8.2 Service Factor of 1.15

When a service factor other than 1.0 is specified, it is preferred that motors furnished in accordance with this Part 21 will have a service factor of 1.15 and temperature rise not in excess of that specified in 21.10.2 when operated at the service factor horsepower with rated voltage and frequency maintained.

### 21.8.3 Application of Motor with 1.15 Service Factor

#### 21.8.3.1 General

A motor having a 1.15 service factor is suitable for continuous operation at rated load under the usual service conditions given in 21.28.2. When the rated voltage and frequency are maintained, the motor may be overloaded up to the horsepower obtained by multiplying the rated horsepower by the service factor

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

shown on the nameplate. At the service factor load, the motor will have efficiency and power factor or field excitation values different from those at rated load.

1.0 power factor motors will have their field excitation adjusted to maintain the rated power factor. Motors with power factors other than 1.0 (i.e., over-excited) will have their field excitation held constant at the rated load value and the power factor allowed to change.

NOTE—The percent values of locked-rotor, pull-in and pull-out torques and of locked-rotor current are based on the rated horsepower.

#### 21.8.3.2 Temperature Rise

When operated at the 1.15 service factor load the motor will have a temperature rise not in excess of that specified in 21.10.2 with rated voltage and frequency applied and the field set in accordance with 21.8.3.1. No temperature rise is specified or implied for operation at rated load.

NOTES

1—Tables 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 apply individually to a particular motor at 1.0 or 1.15 service factor. It is not intended or implied that they be applied to a single motor both at 1.0 and 1.15 service factors.

2—Operation at temperature rise values given in 21.10.2 and for a 1.15 service factor load causes the motor insulation to age thermally at approximately twice the rate that occurs at the temperature rise values given in 21.10.1 for a motor with a 1.0 service factor load, i.e., operation for one hour at specified 1.15 service factor is approximately equivalent to operation for two hours at 1.0 service factor.

## 21.9 TYPICAL KW RATINGS OF EXCITERS FOR 60-HERTZ SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

When synchronous motors have individual exciters, the kilowatt ratings given in Tables 21-1 to 21-4, inclusive, represent typical kilowatt ratings for such exciters.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-1**
**1.0 POWER FACTOR, 60-HERTZ, SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS, 1800-514 RPM**

| | Exciter Ratings, kW | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | |
| **Hp** | **1800** | **1200** | **900** | **720** | **600** | **514** |
| 20 | 0.75 | 0.75 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 25 | 0.75 | 0.75 | 1.0 | ... | ... | ... |
| 30 | 0.75 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.5 | ... | ... |
| 40 | 0.75 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | ... |
| 50 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | ... |
| 60 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | ... |
| 75 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| 100 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| 125 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| 150 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 |
| 200 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 250 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 300 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 350 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| 400 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 450 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 500 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 600 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 700 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 |
| 800 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 900 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 1000 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 1250 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 |
| 1500 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 1750 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 2000 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 |
| 2250 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 |
| 2500 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 3000 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 |
| 3500 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 4000 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 |
| 4500 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 |
| 5000 | 17 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 |
| 5500 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 |
| 6000 | 21 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 7000 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 |
| 8000 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 9000 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 |
| 10000 | 33 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 11000 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 12000 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 |
| 13000 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 14000 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 15000 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 16000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 |
| 17000 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 18000 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 19000 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 20000 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 22500 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 25000 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 |
| 27500 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 30000 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-2**
**0.8 POWER FACTOR, 60-HERTZ, SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS, 1800-514 RPM**

| | Exciter Ratings, kW | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | |
| **Hp** | **1800** | **1200** | **900** | **720** | **600** | **514** |
| 20 | 0.75 | 1.5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 25 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.0 | ... | ... | ... |
| 30 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | ... | ... |
| 40 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | ... |
| 50 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | ... |
| 60 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | ... |
| 75 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 100 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 125 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 150 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| 200 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 250 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 300 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 |
| 350 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 400 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 450 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 500 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 600 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 |
| 700 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 |
| 800 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 900 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 1000 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 |
| 1250 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 |
| 1500 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 1750 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 |
| 2000 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 2250 | 13 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 |
| 2500 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 |
| 3000 | 17 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 |
| 3500 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 4000 | 21 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 |
| 4500 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 |
| 5000 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 5500 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 |
| 6000 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 7000 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 |
| 8000 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 9000 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 10000 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 80 | 85 |
| 11000 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 12000 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 13000 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 |
| 14000 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 |
| 15000 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 16000 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 |
| 17000 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 |
| 18000 | 85 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 19000 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 20000 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 170 |
| 22500 | 125 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 25000 | 125 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 27500 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 30000 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 200 | 200 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 21-3
## 1.0 POWER FACTOR, 60-HERTZ, SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS, 450-150 RPM

| | Exciter Ratings, kW | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hp | 450 | 400 | 360 | 327 | 300 | 277 | 257 | 240 | 225 | 200 | 180 | 164 | 150 |
| 20 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| 25 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| 30 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 |
| 40 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 50 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 60 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 75 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 100 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 125 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 150 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 200 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 250 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 300 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 350 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 |
| 400 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 450 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 500 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 600 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 700 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 800 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 |
| 900 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 1000 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 31 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 1250 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 |
| 1500 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 1750 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 2000 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
| 2250 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
| 2500 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 |
| 3000 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 3500 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 4000 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 |
| 4500 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 5000 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 5500 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 |
| 6000 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 7000 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 8000 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 9000 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 10000 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 11000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 |
| 12000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 13000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 14000 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 15000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 |
| 16000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 |
| 17000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 18000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 19000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 |
| 20000 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-4**
**0.8 POWER FACTOR, 60-HERTZ, SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS, 450-150 RPM**

| | Exciter Ratings, kW | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hp | 450 | 400 | 360 | 327 | 300 | 277 | 257 | 240 | 225 | 200 | 180 | 164 | 150 |
| 20 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| 25 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 30 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 40 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 |
| 60 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 75 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 |
| 100 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 |
| 125 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 |
| 150 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 200 | 6.5 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 250 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| 300 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 |
| 350 | 9.0 | 9.0 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 400 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 450 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 |
| 500 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 |
| 600 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 700 | 13 | 13 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 800 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 |
| 900 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
| 1000 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
| 1250 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 1500 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 1750 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 2000 | 25 | 25 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 2250 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 2500 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 3000 | 33 | 33 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 3500 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| 4000 | 40 | 40 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 4500 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 5000 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 5500 | 50 | 50 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 |
| 6000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 7000 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 8000 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 |
| 9000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 10000 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| 11000 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 12000 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 13000 | 100 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| 14000 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 170 | 170 |
| 15000 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 16000 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 17000 | 125 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 18000 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 19000 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |
| 20000 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 | 170 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

## 21.10 TEMPERATURE RISE—SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the synchronous motor, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in the appropriate table. The temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the tables are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115.

### 21.10.1 Machines with 1.0 Service Factor at Rated Load

| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination | Temperature Rise, Degrees C — Class of Insulation System A | B | F | H |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Armature winding | | | | | |
| | 1. All horsepower ratings | Resistance | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| | 2. 1500 horsepower and less | Embedded detector* | 70 | 90 | 115 | 140 |
| | 3. Over 1500 horsepower | | | | | |
| | a) 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector* | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |
| | b) Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector* | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| b. | Field winding | | | | | |
| | 1. Salient-pole motors | Resistance | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| | 2. Cylindrical rotor motors | Resistance | ... | 85 | 105 | 125 |
| c. | The temperatures attained by cores, amortisseur windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | |

*Embedded detectors are located within the slots of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For motors equipped with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard (see 20.28).

### 21.10.2 Machines with 1.15 Service Factor at Service Factor Load

| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination | Temperature Rise, Degrees C — Class of Insulation System A | B | F | H |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Armature winding | | | | | |
| | 1. All horsepower ratings | Resistance | 70 | 90 | 115 | 135 |
| | 2. 1500 horsepower and less | Embedded detector* | 80 | 100 | 125 | 150 |
| | 3. Over 1500 horsepower | | | | | |
| | a) 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector* | 75 | 95 | 120 | 145 |
| | b) Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector* | 70 | 90 | 115 | 135 |
| b. | Field winding | | | | | |
| | 1. Salient-pole motors | Resistance | 70 | 90 | 115 | 135 |
| | 2. Cylindrical rotor motors | Resistance | ... | 95 | 115 | 135 |
| c. | The temperatures attained by cores, amortisseur windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | |

*Embedded detectors are located within the slots of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For motors equipped with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard (see 20.28).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 21.10.3 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that synchronous motors may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of the motors in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the motors given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C.

(Exception—for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a) On machines designed for cooling water temperatures of 5°C to 30°C—temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.

b) On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises for the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 by the number of degrees that the temperature leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C.)

### 21.10.4 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

### 21.10.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Motors for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled synchronous motors may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled synchronous motor is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 21.10.1 and 21.10.2 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature for 21.10.1, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |
| Reference Temperature for 21.10.2, Degrees C | 115 | 140 | 165 | 190 |

*NOTE—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Temperature Rise Limit** = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 21.10.1 and 21.10.2

For example: A 1.0 service factor rated motor with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from 20.10.1 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \{40^{O}C - 25^{O}C\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{O}C - (40^{O}C + 105^{O}C)}{80^{O}C}\right\} = 13^{O}C$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 20.10.1 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

## 21.11 TORQUES[1]

### 21.11.1 General

The locked-rotor, pull-in, and pull-out torques, with rated voltage and frequency applied, shall be not less than the values shown in Table 21-5. The motors shall be capable of delivering the pull-out torque for at least 1 minute.

### 21.11.2 Motor Torques When Customer Supplies Load Curve

When the load curve is provided by the customer, the motor developed torque shall exceed the load torque by a minimum of 10% of motor rated torque at all locations throughout the speed range up the motor pull-in torque point for any starting condition specified by customer. (refer to 21.17.2). A torque margin of lower than 10% is subject to individual agreement between motor manufacturer and user. Pull – out torque shall be 150% at rated voltage, rated frequency with rated exitation current applied.

Torque values as specified in Table 21-5 do not apply.

## 21.12 NORMAL WK² OF LOAD[2]

Experience has shown that the pull-in torque values in Table 21-5 are adequate when the load inertia does not exceed the values of Table 21-6. The values of load inertia have been calculated using the following empirical formula:

$$\text{Normal } Wk^2 \text{ of load} = \frac{0.375 \text{ x } (\text{horsepower rating})^{1.15}}{(\text{speed in rpm}/1000)^2}$$

---

[1] Values of torque apply to salient-pole machines. Values of torque for cylindrical rotor machines are subject to individual negotiation between manufacturer and user.

[2] Values of normal $Wk^2$ of load apply to salient-pole machines. Values of normal $Wk^2$ for cylindrical-rotor machines are subject to individual negotiation between manufacturer and user.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-5**
**TORQUE VALUES**

| | | | Torques, Percent of Rated Full-Load Torque | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Speed, Rpm** | **Hp** | **Power Factor** | **Locked-Rotor** | **Pull-In (Based on Normal $Wk^2$ of Load)*†** | **Pull-Out†** |
| 500 to 1800 | 200 and below | 1.0 | 100 | 100 | 150 |
| | 150 and below | 0.8 | 100 | 100 | 175 |
| | 250 to 1000 | 1.0 | 60 | 60 | 150 |
| | 200 to 1000 | 0.8 | 60 | 60 | 175 |
| | 1250 and larger | 1.0 | 40 | 60 | 150 |
| | | 0.8 | 40 | 60 | 175 |
| 450 and below | All ratings | 1.0 | 40 | 30 | 150 |
| | | 0.8 | 40 | 30 | 200 |

*Values of normal $Wk^2$ of load are given in 21.12.

†With rated excitation current applied.

## 21.13 NUMBER OF STARTS[1]

### 21.13.1 Starting Capability

Synchronous motors shall be capable of making the following starts, providing the $Wk^2$ of the load, the load torque during acceleration, the applied voltage, and the method of starting are those for which the motor was designed:

a. Two starts in succession, coasting to rest between starts, with the motor initially at ambient temperature
b. One start with the motor initially at a temperature not exceeding its rated load operating temperature

### 21.13.2 Additional Starts

If additional starts are required, it is recommended that none be made until all conditions affecting operation have been thoroughly investigated and the apparatus examined for evidence of excessive heating. It should be recognized that the number of starts should be kept to a minimum since the life of the motor is affected by the number of starts.

### 21.13.3 Information Plate

When requested by the purchaser, a separate starting information plate will be supplied on the motor.

## 21.14 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, frequency, and power factor.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of field
c. Core loss
d. Stray-load loss

---

[1] The number of starts applies to salient-pole machines. The number of starts for cylindrical-rotor machines is subject to individual negotiation between manufacturer and user.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

e. Friction and windage loss[1]
f. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from the shaft of the machine

Power required for auxiliary items, such as external pumps or fans, that are necessary for the operation of the motor shall be stated separately.

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation system | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 75 |
| B | 95 |
| F | 115 |
| H | 130 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

## 21.15 OVERSPEED

Synchronous motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical damage overspeeds above synchronous speed in accordance with the following table. During this overspeed condition the machine is not electrically connected to the supply.

| Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Overspeed, Percent of Synchronous Speed |
|---|---|
| 1500 and over | 20 |
| 1499 and below | 25 |

## 21.16 OPERATION AT OTHER THAN RATED POWER FACTORS

### 21.16.1 Operation of an 0.8 Power-factor Motor at 1.0 Power-factor

For an 0.8-power factor motor which is to operate at 1.0 power factor, with normal 0.8-power factor armature current and with field excitation reduced to correspond to that armature current at 1.0 power factor, multiply the rated horsepower and torque values of the motor by the following constants to obtain horsepower at 1.0 power factor and the torques in terms of the 1.0-power factor horsepower rating.

| | |
|---|---|
| Horsepower | 1.25 |
| Locked-rotor torque | 0.8 |
| Pull-in torque | 0.8 |
| Pull-out torque (approx.) | 0.6 |

For example, consider a 1000-horsepower 0.8-power factor motor which has a locked-rotor torque of 100 percent, a pull-in torque of 100 percent, and a pull-out torque of 200 percent and which is to be operated at 1.0 power factor. In accordance with the foregoing, this motor would be operated at 1250 horsepower, 1.0 power factor, 80 percent locked-rotor torque (based upon 1250 horse power), 80 percent pull-in torque (based upon 1250 horsepower) and a pull-out torque of approximately 120 percent (based upon 1250 horsepower).

[1] In the case of motors which are furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, may be specified.
In the case of motors which are furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 21.16.2 Operation of a 1.0 Power-factor Motor at 0.8 Power-factor

For a 1.0-power factor motor which is to operate at 0.8 power factor, with normal 1.0-power factor field excitation and the armature current reduced to correspond to that excitation, multiply the rated horsepower and torque values of the motor by the following constants to obtain the horsepower at 0.8-power factor and the torques in terms of the 0.8 power factor horsepower rating.

| | |
|---|---|
| Horsepower | 0.35 |
| Locked-rotor Torque | 2.85 |
| Pull-in torque | 2.85 |
| Pull-out torque (approx.) | 2.85 |

For example, consider a 1000-horsepower 1.0-power factor motor which has a locked-rotor torque of 100 percent, a pull-in torque of 100 percent, and a pull-out torque of 200 percent and which is to be operated at 0.8-power factor. In accordance with the foregoing, this motor could be operated at 350 horsepower, 0.8-power factor, 285 percent locked-rotor torque (based upon 350 horsepower), 285 percent pull-in torque (based upon 350 horsepower) and a 570 percent pull-out torque (based upon 350 horsepower).

## 21.17 VARIATIONS FROM RATED VOLTAGE AND RATED FREQUENCY

### 21.17.1 Running

Motors shall operate successfully in synchronism, rated exciting current being maintained, under running conditions at rated load with a variation in the voltage or the frequency up to the following:

a. Plus or minus 10 percent of rated voltage, with rated frequency
b. Plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency, with rated voltage
c. A combined variation in voltage and frequency of 10 percent (sum of absolute values) of the rated values, provided the frequency variation does not exceed plus or minus 5 percent of rated frequency

Performance within these voltage and frequency variations will not necessarily be in accordance with the standards established for operation at rated voltage and frequency.

### 21.17.2 Starting

The limiting values of voltage and frequency under which a motor will successfully start and synchronize depend upon the margin between the locked-rotor and pull-in torques of the motor at rated voltage and frequency and the corresponding requirements of the load under starting conditions. Since the locked-rotor and pull-in torques of a motor are approximately proportional to the square of the voltage and inversely proportional to the square of the frequency, it is generally desirable to determine what voltage and frequency variations will actually occur at each installation, taking into account any voltage drop resulting from the starting current drawn by the motor. This information and the torque requirements of the driven machine determine the values of locked-rotor and pull-in torque at rated voltage and frequency that are adequate for the application.

## 21.18 OPERATION OF SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS FROM VARIABLE-FREQUENCY POWER SUPPLIES

Synchronous motors to be operated from solid-state or other types of variable-frequency power supplies for adjustable-speed-drive applications may require individual consideration to provide satisfactory performance. Especially for operation below rated speed, it may be necessary to reduce the motor torque load below the rated full-load torque to avoid overheating the motor. The motor manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a motor for such applications.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-6**
**NORMAL $Wk^2$ OF LOAD IN $LB\text{-}FT^2$**

| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Hp** | **1800** | **1200** | **900** | **720** | **600** | **514** | **450** | **400** | **360** | **327** |
| 20 | 3.63 | 8.16 | 14.51 | 22.7 | 32.7 | 44.4 | 58.0 | 73.5 | 90.7 | 109.7 |
| 25 | 4.69 | 10.55 | 18.76 | 29.3 | 42.2 | 57.4 | 75.0 | 95.0 | 117.2 | 141.9 |
| 30 | 5.78 | 13.01 | 23.1 | 36.1 | 52.0 | 70.8 | 92.5 | 117.1 | 144.6 | 174.9 |
| 40 | 8.05 | 18.11 | 32.2 | 50.3 | 72.5 | 98.6 | 123.8 | 163.0 | 201 | 244 |
| 50 | 10.41 | 23.4 | 41.6 | 65.0 | 93.7 | 127.5 | 166.5 | 211 | 260 | 315 |
| 60 | 12.83 | 28.9 | 51.3 | 80.2 | 115.5 | 157.2 | 205 | 260 | 321 | 388 |
| 75 | 16.59 | 37.3 | 66.4 | 103.7 | 149.3 | 203 | 265 | 336 | 415 | 502 |
| 100 | 23.1 | 52.0 | 92.4 | 144.3 | 208 | 283 | 369 | 468 | 577 | 699 |
| 125 | 29.8 | 67.2 | 119.3 | 186.6 | 269 | 366 | 478 | 604 | 746 | 903 |
| 150 | 36.8 | 82.8 | 147.2 | 230 | 331 | 451 | 589 | 745 | 920 | 1114 |
| 200 | 51.2 | 115.3 | 205 | 320 | 461 | 628 | 820 | 1038 | 1281 | 1550 |
| 250 | 66.2 | 149.0 | 265 | 414 | 596 | 811 | 1060 | 1341 | 1656 | 2000 |
| 300 | 81.7 | 183.8 | 327 | 511 | 735 | 1001 | 1307 | 1654 | 2040 | 2470 |
| 350 | 97.5 | 219 | 390 | 610 | 878 | 1195 | 1561 | 1975 | 2440 | 2950 |
| 400 | 113.7 | 256 | 455 | 711 | 1024 | 1393 | 1820 | 2300 | 2840 | 3440 |
| 450 | 130.2 | 293 | 521 | 814 | 1172 | 1595 | 2080 | 2640 | 3260 | 3940 |
| 500 | 147.0 | 331 | 588 | 919 | 1323 | 1801 | 2350 | 2980 | 3670 | 4450 |
| 600 | 181.3 | 408 | 725 | 1133 | 1632 | 2220 | 2900 | 3670 | 4530 | 5480 |
| 700 | 216 | 487 | 866 | 1353 | 1948 | 2650 | 3460 | 4380 | 5410 | 6550 |
| 800 | 252 | 568 | 1009 | 1577 | 2270 | 3090 | 4040 | 5110 | 6310 | 7630 |
| 900 | 289 | 650 | 1156 | 1806 | 2600 | 3540 | 4620 | 5850 | 7220 | 8740 |
| 1000 | 326 | 734 | 1305 | 2040 | 2940 | 4000 | 5220 | 6610 | 8160 | 9870 |
| 1250 | 422 | 949 | 1687 | 2640 | 3790 | 5160 | 6750 | 8540 | 10540 | 12750 |
| 1500 | 520 | 1170 | 2080 | 3250 | 4680 | 6370 | 8320 | 10530 | 13000 | 15730 |
| 1750 | 621 | 1397 | 2480 | 3880 | 5590 | 7610 | 9930 | 12570 | 15520 | 18780 |
| 2000 | 724 | 1629 | 2900 | 4520 | 6510 | 8870 | 11580 | 14660 | 18100 | 21900 |
| 2250 | 829 | 1865 | 3320 | 5180 | 7460 | 10150 | 13260 | 16780 | 20700 | 25100 |
| 2500 | 936 | 2110 | 3740 | 5850 | 8420 | 11460 | 14970 | 18950 | 23400 | 28300 |
| 3000 | 1154 | 2600 | 4620 | 7210 | 10390 | 14140 | 18460 | 23400 | 28800 | 34900 |
| 3500 | 1378 | 3100 | 5510 | 8610 | 12400 | 16880 | 22000 | 27900 | 34400 | 41700 |
| 4000 | 1606 | 3610 | 6430 | 10040 | 14460 | 19680 | 25700 | 32500 | 40200 | 48600 |
| 4500 | 1839 | 4140 | 7360 | 11500 | 16550 | 22500 | 29400 | 37200 | 46000 | 55600 |
| 5000 | 2080 | 4670 | 8310 | 12980 | 18690 | 25400 | 33200 | 42000 | 51900 | 62800 |
| 5500 | 2320 | 5210 | 9270 | 14480 | 20900 | 28400 | 37100 | 46900 | 57900 | 70100 |
| 6000 | 2560 | 5760 | 10240 | 16000 | 23000 | 31400 | 41000 | 51900 | 64000 | 77500 |
| 7000 | 3060 | 6880 | 12230 | 19110 | 27500 | 37500 | 48900 | 61900 | 76400 | 92500 |
| 8000 | 3560 | 8020 | 14260 | 22300 | 32100 | 43700 | 57000 | 72200 | 89100 | 107800 |
| 9000 | 4080 | 9180 | 16330 | 25500 | 36700 | 50000 | 65300 | 82700 | 102000 | 123500 |
| 10000 | 4610 | 10370 | 18430 | 28800 | 41500 | 56400 | 73700 | 93300 | 115200 | 139400 |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-6 (Continued)**

| Hp | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300 | 277 | 257 | 240 | 225 | 200 | 180 | 164 | 150 |
| 20 | 130.6 | 153.3 | 177.8 | 204 | 232 | 294 | 363 | 439 | 522 |
| 25 | 168.8 | 198.1 | 230 | 264 | 300 | 380 | 469 | 567 | 675 |
| 30 | 208 | 244 | 283 | 325 | 370 | 468 | 578 | 700 | 833 |
| 40 | 290 | 340 | 395 | 453 | 515 | 652 | 805 | 974 | 1159 |
| 50 | 375 | 440 | 510 | 585 | 666 | 843 | 1041 | 1259 | 1499 |
| 60 | 462 | 542 | 629 | 721 | 821 | 1040 | 1283 | 1553 | 1848 |
| 75 | 597 | 701 | 813 | 933 | 1062 | 1344 | 1659 | 2010 | 2390 |
| 100 | 831 | 976 | 1132 | 1299 | 1478 | 1871 | 2310 | 2790 | 3330 |
| 125 | 1075 | 1261 | 1463 | 1679 | 1910 | 2420 | 2980 | 3610 | 4300 |
| 150 | 1325 | 1555 | 1804 | 2070 | 2360 | 2980 | 3680 | 4450 | 5300 |
| 200 | 1845 | 2170 | 2510 | 2880 | 3280 | 4150 | 5120 | 6200 | 7380 |
| 250 | 2380 | 2800 | 3250 | 3730 | 4240 | 5370 | 6620 | 8010 | 9540 |
| 300 | 2940 | 3450 | 4000 | 4600 | 5230 | 6620 | 8170 | 9880 | 11760 |
| 350 | 3510 | 4120 | 4780 | 5490 | 6240 | 7900 | 9750 | 11800 | 14050 |
| 400 | 4090 | 4800 | 5570 | 6400 | 7280 | 9210 | 11370 | 13760 | 16380 |
| 450 | 4690 | 5500 | 6380 | 7320 | 8330 | 10550 | 13020 | 15760 | 18750 |
| 500 | 5290 | 6210 | 7200 | 8270 | 9410 | 11910 | 14700 | 17790 | 21200 |
| 600 | 6530 | 7660 | 8880 | 10200 | 11600 | 14680 | 18130 | 21900 | 26100 |
| 700 | 7790 | 9140 | 10610 | 12180 | 13850 | 17530 | 21600 | 26200 | 31200 |
| 800 | 9090 | 10660 | 12370 | 14200 | 16150 | 20400 | 25200 | 30500 | 36300 |
| 900 | 10400 | 12210 | 14160 | 16260 | 18490 | 23400 | 28900 | 35000 | 41600 |
| 1000 | 11740 | 13780 | 15980 | 18350 | 20900 | 26400 | 32600 | 39500 | 47000 |
| 1250 | 15180 | 17810 | 20700 | 23700 | 27000 | 34200 | 42200 | 51000 | 60700 |
| 1500 | 18720 | 22000 | 25500 | 29200 | 33300 | 42100 | 52000 | 62900 | 74900 |
| 1750 | 22400 | 26200 | 30400 | 34900 | 39700 | 50300 | 62100 | 75100 | 89400 |
| 2000 | 26100 | 30600 | 35500 | 40700 | 46300 | 58600 | 72400 | 87600 | 104200 |
| 2250 | 29800 | 35000 | 40600 | 46600 | 53000 | 67100 | 82900 | 100300 | 119400 |
| 2500 | 33700 | 39500 | 45800 | 52600 | 59900 | 75800 | 93600 | 113200 | 134700 |
| 3000 | 41500 | 48800 | 56500 | 64900 | 73900 | 93500 | 115400 | 139600 | 166200 |
| 3500 | 49600 | 58200 | 67500 | 77500 | 88200 | 111600 | 137800 | 166700 | 198400 |
| 4000 | 57800 | 67900 | 78700 | 90400 | 102800 | 130100 | 160600 | 194400 | 231000 |
| 4500 | 66200 | 77700 | 90100 | 103500 | 117700 | 149000 | 183900 | 223000 | 265000 |
| 5000 | 74700 | 87700 | 101700 | 116800 | 132900 | 168200 | 208000 | 251000 | 299000 |
| 5500 | 83400 | 97900 | 113500 | 130300 | 148300 | 187700 | 232000 | 280000 | 334000 |
| 6000 | 92200 | 108200 | 125500 | 144000 | 163900 | 207000 | 256000 | 310000 | 369000 |
| 7000 | 110100 | 129200 | 149800 | 172000 | 195700 | 248000 | 306000 | 370000 | 440000 |
| 8000 | 128300 | 150600 | 174700 | 201000 | 228000 | 289000 | 356000 | 431000 | 513000 |
| 9000 | 146900 | 172500 | 200000 | 230000 | 261000 | 331000 | 408000 | 494000 | 588000 |
| 10000 | 165900 | 194700 | 226000 | 259000 | 295000 | 373000 | 461000 | 558000 | 664000 |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-6 (Continued)**

| Hp | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 138 | 129 | 120 | 109 | 100 | 95 | 90 | 86 | 80 |
| 20 | 613 | 711 | 816 | 988 | 1175 | 1310 | 1451 | 1600 | 1837 |
| 25 | 793 | 919 | 1055 | 1277 | 1519 | 1693 | 1876 | 2070 | 2370 |
| 30 | 977 | 1134 | 1301 | 1575 | 1874 | 2090 | 2310 | 2550 | 2930 |
| 40 | 1361 | 1578 | 1811 | 2190 | 2610 | 2910 | 3220 | 3550 | 4080 |
| 50 | 1759 | 2040 | 2340 | 2830 | 3370 | 3760 | 4160 | 4590 | 5270 |
| 60 | 2170 | 2520 | 2890 | 3490 | 4160 | 4630 | 5130 | 5660 | 6500 |
| 75 | 2800 | 3250 | 3760 | 4520 | 5370 | 5990 | 6640 | 7320 | 8400 |
| 100 | 3900 | 4530 | 5200 | 6290 | 7480 | 8340 | 9240 | 10180 | 11690 |
| 125 | 5040 | 5850 | 6720 | 8130 | 9670 | 10780 | 11940 | 13160 | 15110 |
| 150 | 6220 | 7220 | 8280 | 10020 | 11930 | 13290 | 14720 | 16230 | 18640 |
| 200 | 8660 | 10040 | 11530 | 13950 | 16600 | 18500 | 20500 | 22600 | 25900 |
| 250 | 11190 | 12980 | 14900 | 18030 | 21500 | 23900 | 26500 | 29200 | 33500 |
| 300 | 13810 | 16010 | 18380 | 22200 | 26500 | 29500 | 32700 | 36000 | 41400 |
| 350 | 16480 | 19120 | 21900 | 26600 | 31600 | 35200 | 39000 | 43000 | 49400 |
| 400 | 19220 | 22300 | 25600 | 31000 | 36800 | 41100 | 45500 | 50200 | 57600 |
| 450 | 22000 | 25500 | 29300 | 35500 | 42200 | 47000 | 52100 | 57400 | 65900 |
| 500 | 24800 | 28800 | 33100 | 40000 | 47600 | 53100 | 58800 | 64800 | 74400 |
| 600 | 30600 | 35500 | 40800 | 49400 | 58700 | 65400 | 72500 | 79900 | 91800 |
| 700 | 36600 | 42400 | 48700 | 58900 | 70100 | 78100 | 86600 | 95500 | 109600 |
| 800 | 42700 | 49500 | 56800 | 68700 | 81800 | 91100 | 100900 | 111300 | 127800 |
| 900 | 48800 | 56600 | 65000 | 78700 | 93600 | 104300 | 115600 | 127400 | 146300 |
| 1000 | 51000 | 63900 | 73400 | 88800 | 105700 | 117800 | 130500 | 143900 | 165100 |
| 1250 | 71300 | 82600 | 94900 | 114800 | 136600 | 152200 | 168700 | 185900 | 213000 |
| 1500 | 87900 | 101900 | 117000 | 141600 | 168500 | 187700 | 208000 | 229000 | 263000 |
| 1750 | 104900 | 121700 | 139700 | 169000 | 201000 | 224000 | 248000 | 274000 | 314000 |
| 2000 | 122300 | 141900 | 162900 | 197100 | 235000 | 261000 | 290000 | 319000 | 366000 |
| 2250 | 140100 | 162500 | 186500 | 226000 | 269000 | 299000 | 332000 | 366000 | 420000 |
| 2500 | 158100 | 183400 | 211000 | 255000 | 303000 | 338000 | 374000 | 413000 | 474000 |
| 3000 | 195000 | 226000 | 260000 | 314000 | 374000 | 417000 | 462000 | 509000 | 584000 |
| 3500 | 233000 | 270000 | 310000 | 375000 | 446000 | 497000 | 551000 | 608000 | 697000 |
| 4000 | 271000 | 315000 | 361000 | 437000 | 520000 | 580000 | 643000 | 708000 | 813000 |
| 4500 | 311000 | 361000 | 414000 | 501000 | 596000 | 664000 | 736000 | 811000 | 931000 |
| 5000 | 351000 | 407000 | 467000 | 565000 | 673000 | 750000 | 831000 | 916000 | 1051000 |
| 5500 | 392000 | 454000 | 521000 | 631000 | 751000 | 836000 | 927000 | 1022000 | 1173000 |
| 6000 | 433000 | 502000 | 576000 | 697000 | 830000 | 924000 | 1024000 | 1129000 | 1296000 |
| 7000 | 517000 | 599000 | 688000 | 832000 | 991000 | 1104000 | 1223000 | 1348000 | 1548000 |
| 8000 | 602000 | 699000 | 802000 | 971000 | 1155000 | 1287000 | 1426000 | 1572000 | 1805000 |
| 9000 | 690000 | 800000 | 918000 | 1111000 | 1323000 | 1474000 | 1633000 | 1800000 | 2070000 |
| 10000 | 779000 | 903000 | 1037000 | 1254000 | 1493000 | 1663000 | 1843000 | 2030000 | 2330000 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.19 SPECIFICATION FORM FOR SLIP-RING SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

The specification form for listing performance data on synchronous motors with slip rings shall be as follows:

Date ________________

| SLIP-RING SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR RATING | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp (Output) | Power Factor | kVA | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes (Approx.) | Frame |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

| Hp (Output) | Temperature Rise Guarantees Temperature Rise (Degrees C) Not to Exceed | | | Excitation Requirements (Maximum) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | | |
| | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | Resistance | kW | Exciter Rated Voltage |
| | | | | | |

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding 40°C and altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters). High-potential test in accordance with MG1-21.22.

| Torque and kVA (Expressed in terms of above full-load rating with 100-percent voltage applied) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Pull-In Torque | | |
| Locked-Rotor Code Letter | Percent Locked-Rotor kVA | Percent Locked-Rotor Torque | Percent Torque | Maximum Load $Wk^2$-lb.$ft^2$ | Percent Pull-Out Torque Sustained for 1 Minute With Rated-Load Excitation |
| | | | | | |

If started on reduced voltage, the starting torque of the motor will be reduced approximately in proportion to the square of the reduced voltage applied.

| Minimum Efficiencies | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp (Output) | Power Factor | Full Load | 3/4 Load | 1/2 Load | |
| | | | | | |

| Approximate Weight, Pounds | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature and field windings at _____ °C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.* Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

*a. In the case of a motor furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

b. In the case of a motor furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.20 SPECIFICATION FORM FOR BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

The specification form for listing performance data on brushless synchronous motors shall be as follows:

Date ________________

| BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR RATING | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp (Output) | Power Factor | kVA | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes (Approx.) | Frame |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

| | Temperature Rise Guarantees Temperature Rise (Degrees C) Not to Exceed | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | Excitation Requirements* (2) (Maximum) | |
| Hp (Output) | | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | Resistance | Watts | Exciter Rated Field Voltage |
| | Motor | | | | | |
| | Exciter* (1) | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

*For rotating transformer give (1) data for equivalent winding temperatures and (2) input kVA and voltage instead of excitation for exciter.

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding 40°C and altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters). High-potential test in accordance with MG1-21.22.

| Torque and kVA (Expressed in terms of above full-load rating with 100-percent voltage applied) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Pull-In Torque | | |
| Locked-Rotor Code Letter | Percent Locked-Rotor kVA | Percent Locked-Rotor Torque | Percent Torque | Maximum Load $Wk^2$-lb.$ft^2$ | Percent Pull-Out Torque Sustained for 1 Minute With Rated-Load Excitation |
| | | | | | |

If started on reduced voltage, the starting torque of the motor will be reduced approximately in proportion to the square of the reduced voltage applied.

| Minimum Efficiencies | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp (Output) | Power Factor | Full Load | 3/4 Load | 1/2 Load | |
| | | | | | |

| Approximate Weight, Pounds | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature and field windings at _____ °C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.* Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

*a. In the case of a motor furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

b. In the case of a motor furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.21 ROUTINE TESTS

### 21.21.1 Motors Not Completely Assembled in the Factory

The following tests shall be made on all motors which are not completely assembled in the factory, including those furnished without a shaft, or a complete set of bearings, or neither:

a. Resistance of armature and field windings
b. Polarity of field coils
c. High-potential test in accordance with 21.22

### 21.21.2 Motors Completely Assembled in the Factory

The following tests shall be made on motors which are completely assembled in the factory and furnished with a shaft and a complete set of bearings:

a. Resistance of armature and field windings
b. Check no-load field current at normal voltage and frequency.[1]
c. High-potential test in accordance with 21.22.

## 21.22 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

### 21.22.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure

See 3.1.

### 21.22.2 Test Voltage—Armature Windings

The test voltage for all motors shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine.[2]

### 21.22.3 Test Voltage—Field Windings, Motors with Slip Rings

The test voltage for all motors with slip rings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Motor to be started with its field short-circuited or closed through an exciting armature; ten times rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 2500 volts nor more than 5000 volts.

b. Motor to be started with a resistor in series with the field winding; twice the rms value of the IR drop across the resistor but in no case less than 2500 volts, the IR drop being taken as the product of the resistance and the current which would circulate in the field winding if short-circuited on itself at the specified starting voltage.

### 21.22.4 Test Voltage—Assembled Brushless Motor Field Winding and Exciter Armature Winding

The test voltage for all assembled brushless motor field windings and exciter armature windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Rated excitation voltage ≤ 350 volts direct-current; ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts

b. Rated excitation voltage > 350 volts direct-current; 2800 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage

---

[1] On motors having brushless excitation systems, check instead the exciter field current at no-load with normal voltage and frequency on the motor.
[2] A direct instead of an alternating voltage is sometimes used for high-potential tests on primary windings of machines rated 6000 volts or higher. In such cases, a test voltage equal to 1.7 times the alternating-current test voltage (effective value) as given in 21.22.2 and 21.22.3 is recommended. Following a direct-voltage high-potential test, the tested winding should be thoroughly grounded. The insulation rating of the winding and the test level of the voltage applied determine the period of time required to dissipate the charge and, in many cases, the ground should be maintained for several hours to dissipate the charge to avoid hazard to personnel.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

c. Alternatively, the brushless exciter rotor (armature) shall be permitted to be tested at 1000 volts plus twice the rated nonrectified alternating-current voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts.

The brushless circuit components (diodes, thyristors, etc.) on an assembled brushless exciter and synchronous machine field winding shall be short-circuited (not grounded) during the test.

### 21.22.5 Test Voltage—Brushless Exciter Field Winding

The test voltage for all brushless exciter field windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Rated excitation voltage ≤ 350 volts direct-current; ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts
b. Rated excitation voltage > 350 volts direct-current; 2800 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage
c. Exciters with alternating-current excited stators (fields) shall be tested at 1000 volts plus twice the alternating-current rated voltage of the stator

## 21.23 MACHINE SOUND

See 20.19.

## 21.24 MECHANICAL VIBRATION

See Part 7.

## MANUFACTURING

## 21.25 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on nameplates. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Rpm at full load
f. Frequency
g. Number of phases
h. Voltage
i. Rated amperes per terminal
j. Rated field current[2]
k. Rated excitation voltage[2]
l. Rated power factor
m. Code letter (see 10.37)
n. Service factor

---

[1] As an alternative marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following.
a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the motor is designed (see 21.10.3).
b. Insulation system designation (if armature and field use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, with that for the armature being given first).

[2] Applies to exciter in case of brushless machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate are:

o. Enclosure or IP code
p. Manufacturer's name, mark, or logo
q. Manufacturer's plant location
r. Serial number or date of manufacture

## 21.26 MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSINGS AND BOXES

### 21.26.1 Box Dimensions

When motors covered by this Part 21 are provided with terminal housings for line cable connections,[1] the minimum dimension and usable volume shall be as indicated in Table 21-7 for Type I terminal housings or Figure 21-1 for Type II terminal housings.

Unless otherwise specified, when motors are provided with terminal housings, a Type I terminal housing shall be supplied.

### 21.26.2 Accessory Lead Terminations

For motors rated 601 volts and higher, accessory leads shall terminate in a terminal box or boxes separate from the motor terminal housing. As an exception, current and potential transformers located in the motor terminal housing shall be permitted to have their secondary connections terminated in the motor terminal housing if separated from the motor leads by a suitable physical barrier.

### 21.26.3 Lead Terminations of Accessories Operating at 50 Volts of Less

For motors rated 601 volts and higher, the termination of leads of accessory items normally operating at a voltage of 50 volts (rms) or less shall be separated from leads of higher voltage by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact or shall be terminated in a separate box.

[1] Terminal housings containing surge capacitors, surge arresters, current transformers, or potential transformers, require individual consideration.

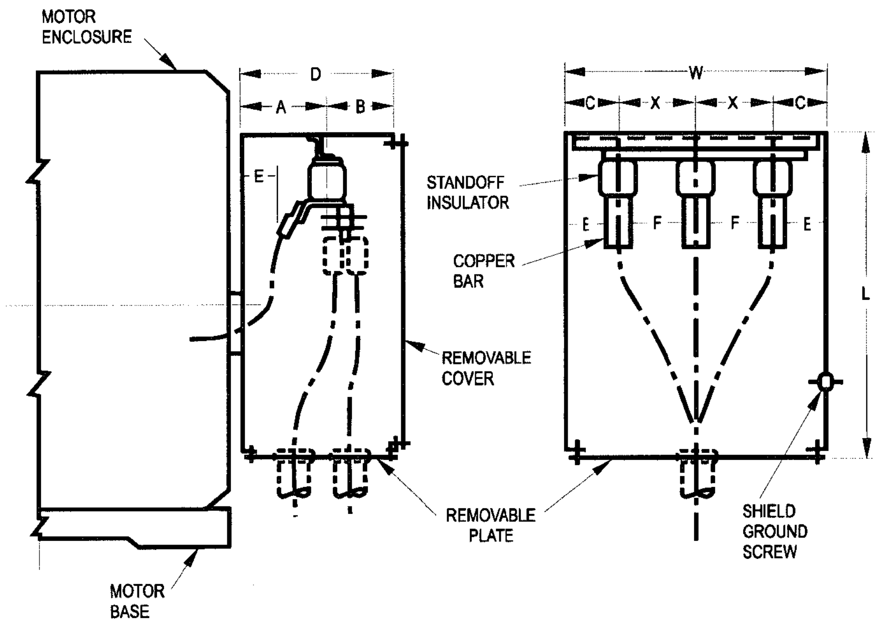
© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-7**
**TYPE I TERMINAL HOUSING UNSUPPORTED AND INSULATED TERMINATIONS**

| Voltage | Maximum Full-Load Current | Minimum Usable Volume, Cubic Inches | Minimum Internal Dimension, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0-600 | 400 | 900 | 8 | ... |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | ... |
| | 1200 | 4600 | 14 | ... |
| 601-2400 | 160 | 180 | 5 | ... |
| | 250 | 330 | 6 | ... |
| | 400 | 900 | 8 | ... |
| | 600 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 900 | 3200 | 10 | 12.6 |
| | 1500 | 5600 | 16 | 20.1 |
| 2401-4800 | 160 | 2000 | 8 | 12.6 |
| | 700 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 1000 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1500 | 10740 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 13400 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 4801-6900 | 260 | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 680 | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| | 1000 | 9400 | 18 | 25 |
| | 1500 | 11600 | 20 | 25 |
| | 2000 | 14300 | 22 | 28.3 |
| 6901-13800 | 400 | 4400 | 22 | 28.3 |
| | 900 | 50500 | 25 | 32.3 |
| | 1500 | 56500 | 27.6 | 32.3 |
| | 2000 | 62500 | 30.7 | 32.3 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of machine leads.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




| Motor Voltage | Minimum Dimensions (Inches) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | L | W | D | A | B | C | X | E | F |
| 460-575 | 24 | 18 | 18 | 9½ | 8½ | 4 | 5 | 2½ | 4 |
| 2300-4000 | 26 | 27 | 18 | 9½ | 8½ | 5½ | 8 | 3½ | 5 |
| 6600 | 36 | 30 | 18 | 9½ | 8½ | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 |
| 13200 | 48 | 42 | 25 | 13½ | 11½ | 8½ | 13½ | 6¾ | 9½ |

**Figure 21-1**
**TYPE II MOTOR TERMINAL HOUSING STANDOFF-INSULATOR-SUPPORTED INSULATED OR UNINSULATED TERMINATIONS**

## 21.27 EMBEDDED DETECTORS

See 20.28.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**APPLICATION DATA**

## 21.28 SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 21.28.1 General

Motors should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to this Part 21 are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driven equipment and the motor manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 21.28.2 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a. An ambient temperature in the range of 0°C to 40°C, or when water cooling is used, in the range of 5°C to 40°C
b. An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. A location and supplementary enclosures, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the motor

### 21.28.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the motor. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
   1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
   2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
   3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
   4. Nuclear radiation
   5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
   6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
   7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
   8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the motor shaft

b. Operation where:
   1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage or frequency, or both (see 21.17)
   2. The deviation factor of the alternating-current supply voltage exceeds 10 percent
   3. The alternating-current supply voltage is unbalanced by more than 1 percent (see 21.29)
   4. Low noise levels are required

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

5. The power system is not grounded (see 21.39).

c. Operation at speeds other than rated speed (see 21.17)

d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position

e. Operation where subjected to:
   1. Torsional impact loads
   2. Repetitive abnormal overloads
   3. Reversing or electric braking
   4. Frequent starting (see 21.13)
   5. Out-of-phase bus transfer

## 21.29 EFFECTS OF UNBALANCED VOLTAGES ON THE PERFORMANCE OF POLYPHASE SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

When the line voltages applied to a polyphase synchronous motor are not equal, unbalanced currents in the stator windings will result. A small percentage voltage unbalance will result in a much larger percentage current unbalance.

Voltages should be evenly balanced as closely as can be read on a voltmeter. If the voltages are unbalanced, the rated horsepower of polyphase synchronous motors should be multiplied by the factor shown in Figure 21-2 to reduce the possibility of damage to the motor.[1] Operation of the motor with more than a 5-percent voltage unbalance is not recommended.

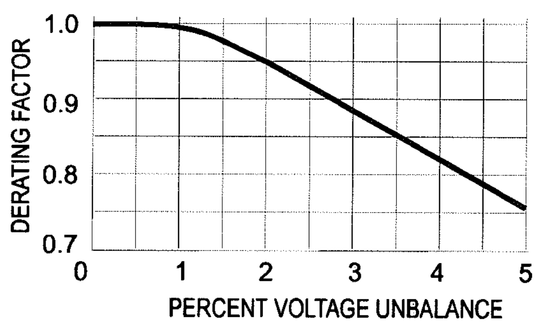



**Figure 21-2**
**POLYPHASE SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR DERATING FACTOR DUE TO UNBALANCED VOLTAGE**

When the derating curve of Figure 21-2 is applied for operation on unbalanced voltages, the selection and setting of the overload device should take into account the combination of the derating factor applied to the motor and the increase in current resulting from the unbalanced voltages. This is a complex problem involving the variation in motor current as a function of load and voltage unbalance in addition to the characteristics of the overload device relative to $I_{maximum}$ or $I_{average}$. In the absence of specific information it is recommended that overload devices be selected or adjusted, or both, at the minimum value that does not result in tripping for the derating factor and voltage unbalance that applies. When unbalanced voltages are anticipated, it is recommended that negative sequence current relays be installed or the overload devices be selected so as to be responsive to $I_{maximum}$ in preference to overload devices responsive to $I_{average}$.

[1] The derating factor shown in Figure 21-2 is applicable only to motors with normal starting torque and normal locked-rotor current, i.e., motors typically intended for service with centrifugal pumps, fans, compressors, and so forth, where the required starting torque is less than 100 percent of rated full-load torque. For motors with other starting torque characteristics, or motors with specified limits on locked-rotor current, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 21.29.1 Effect on Performance

#### 21.29.1.1 Temperature Rise

The temperature rise of the motor operating at a particular load and percentage voltage unbalance will be greater than for the motor operating under the same conditions with balanced voltages.

#### 21.29.1.2 Currents

The effect of unbalanced voltages on polyphase synchronous motors is equivalent to the introduction of a "negative-sequence voltage" having a rotation opposite to that occurring with balanced voltages. This negative sequence voltage produces an air gap flux rotating against the rotation of the rotor, tending to produce high currents. A small negative-sequence voltage may produce significant continuous current in the amortisseur (cage) winding, which normally carries little or no current when the motor is running in synchronism, along with slightly higher current in the stator winding.

The negative-sequence current at normal operating speed with unbalanced voltages may be in the order of four to ten times the voltage unbalance.

The locked-rotor current will be unbalanced to the same degree that the voltages are unbalanced but the locked-rotor kVA will increase only slightly.

#### 21.29.1.3 Torques

The locked-rotor torque, pull-in torque, and pull-out torque are decreased when the voltage is unbalanced. If the voltage unbalance is extremely severe, the torques might not be adequate for the application.

### 21.29.2 Voltage Unbalance Defined

The voltage unbalance in percent may be defined as follows.

$$\text{percent voltage unbalance} = 100 \times \frac{\text{max imum voltage deviation from average voltage}}{\text{average voltage}}$$

EXAMPLE—With voltages of 2300, 2220, and 2185 the average is 2235, the maximum deviation from the average is 65, and the percent unbalance = 10 x 65/2235 = 2.9 percent.

## 21.30 COUPLING END PLAY AND ROTOR FLOAT FOR HORIZONTAL MOTORS

See 20.30.

## 21.31 BELT, CHAIN, AND GEAR DRIVE

When motors are for belt, chain, or gear drive, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

## 21.32 PULSATING ARMATURE CURRENT

When the driven load, such as that of reciprocating-type pumps, compressors, etc., requires a variable torque during each revolution, it is recommended that the combined installation have sufficient inertia in its rotating parts to limit the variations in motor armature current to a value not exceeding 66 percent of full-load current.

NOTE—The basis for determining this variation should be by oscillograph measurement and not by ammeter readings. A line should be drawn on the oscillogram through the consecutive peaks of the current wave. This line is the envelope of the current wave. The variation is the difference between the maximum and minimum ordinates of this envelope. This variation should not exceed 66 percent of the maximum value of the rated full-load current of the motor. (The maximum value of the motor armature current to be assumed as 1.41 times the rated full-load current.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.33 TORQUE PULSATIONS DURING STARTING OF SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

When operated at other than synchronous speed, all salient-pole synchronous motors develop a pulsating torque superimposed on the average torque. During starting and acceleration (with no field excitation applied), the frequency of the torque pulsations is at any instant equal to the per-unit slip times twice the line frequency. Thus, for a 60-hertz motor, the frequency of the torque pulsation varies from 120 hertz at zero speed to zero hertz at synchronous speed.

Any system consisting of inertias connected by shafting has one or more natural torsional frequencies. During acceleration by a salient-pole synchronous motor, any torsional natural frequency at or below twice line frequency will be transiently excited.

When it is desired to investigate the magnitudes of the torques which are transiently imposed upon the shafting during starting, the instantaneous torque pulsations should be considered in addition to the average torque.

## 21.34 BUS TRANSFER OR RECLOSING

Synchronous motors are inherently capable of developing transient current and torque considerably in excess of rated current and torque when exposed to an out-of-phase bus transfer or momentary voltage interruption and reclosing on the same power supply. The magnitude of this transient torque may range from 2 to 20 times rated torque and is a function of the machine, operating conditions, switching time, rotating system inertias and torsional spring constants, number of motors on the bus, etc.

### 21.34.1 Slow Transfer or Reclosing

A slow transfer or reclosing is defined as one in which the length of time between disconnection of the motor from the power supply and reclosing onto the same or another power supply is equal to or greater than one and a half motor open-circuit alternating-current time constant.

It is recommended that slow transfer or reclosing be used so as to limit the possibility of damaging the motor or driven (or driving) equipment, or both. This time delay permits a sufficient decay in rotor flux linkages so that the transient current and torque associated with the bus transfer or reclosing will remain within acceptable levels. When several motors are involved, the time delay should be based on one and a half times the longest open-circuit time constant of any motor on the system being transferred or reclosed.

### 21.34.2 Fast Transfer or Reclosing

A fast transfer or reclosing is defined as one which occurs within a time period (typically between 5 and 10 cycles) shorter than one and a half open circuit alternating-current time constant. In such cases transfer or reclosure should be timed to occur when the difference between the motor residual voltage and frequency, and the incoming system voltage and frequency will not result in damaging transients.

The rotating masses of a motor-load system, connected by elastic shafts, constitutes a torsionally responsive mechanical system which is excited by the motor electromagnetic (air-gap) transient torque that consists of the sum of an exponentially decaying unidirectional component and exponentially decaying oscillatory components at several frequencies, including power frequency, slip frequency and twice slip frequency. The resultant shaft torques may be either attenuated or amplified with reference to the motor electromagnetic (air-gap) torque, and for this reason it is recommended that the electromechanical interactions of the motor, the driven equipment, and the power system be studied for any system where fast transfer or reclosing is used.

The electrical and mechanical parameters required for such a study will be dependent upon the method of analysis and the degree of detail employed in the study. When requested, the motor manufacturer should furnish the following and any other information as may be required for the system study:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

a. Synchronous, transient and subtransient reactances and time constants as well as resistances
b. $Wk^2$ of the motor and exciter rotors
c. A detailed shaft model with elastic data, masses, shaft lengths and diameters of different sections

### 21.34.3 Bus Transfer Procedure

For slow bus transfers, and for fast transfers if the study indicates that the motor will not remain in synchronism, the following procedures are recommended:

a. Motor with slip rings—Remove the field excitation, reestablish conditions for resynchronizing and delay transfer or reclosing for one-and-one-half open circuit alternating-current time constants.

b. Brushless motor—Remove the exciter field excitation, reestablish conditions for resynchronizing, and delay transfer or reclosing for one-and-one-half open circuit alternating time constants.

## 21.35 CALCULATION OF NATURAL FREQUENCY OF SYNCHRONOUS MACHINES DIRECT-CONNECTED TO RECIPROCATING MACHINERY

### 21.35.1 Undamped Natural Frequency

The undamped natural frequency of oscillation of a synchronous machine connected to an infinite system is:

$$f_n = \frac{35200}{n}\sqrt{\frac{P_r \times f}{Wk^2}}$$

Where:

$f_n$ = natural frequency in cycles per minute
$n$ = synchronous speed in revolutions per minute
$P_r$ = synchronizing torque coefficient (see 21.35.2)
$W$ = weight of all rotating parts in pounds
$k$ = radius of gyration of rotating parts in feet

### 21.35.2 Synchronizing Torque Coefficient, $P_r$

When a pulsating torque is applied to its shaft, the synchronous machine rotor will oscillate about its average angular position in the rotating magnetic field produced by the currents in the stator. As a result of this oscillation, a pulsating torque will be developed at the air gap, a component of which is proportional to the angular displacement of the rotor from its average position. The proportionality factor is the synchronizing torque coefficient, $P_r$. It is expressed in kilowatts, at synchronous speed, per electrical radian.

### 21.35.3 Factors Influencing $P_r$

The value of $P_r$, for a given machine, is dependent upon (1) the voltage and frequency of the power system, (2) the magnitude of the applied load, (3) the operating power factor, (4) the power system impedance, and (5) the frequency of the torque pulsations. It is recommended that, unless other conditions are specified, the value of $P_r$ submitted be that corresponding to operation at rated voltage, frequency, load, and power factor, with negligible system impedance and a pulsation frequency, in cycles per minute, equal to the rpm for synchronous motors and equal to one-half the rpm for synchronous generators.

## 21.36 TYPICAL TORQUE REQUIREMENTS

Typical torque requirements for various synchronous motor applications are listed in Table 21-8. In individual cases, lower values may be adequate or higher values may be required depending upon the design of the particular machine and its operating conditions.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

When using Table 21-8, the following should be noted:

a. The locked-rotor and pull-in torque values listed are based upon rated voltage being maintained at the motor terminals during the starting period. If the voltage applied to the motor is less than the rated voltage because of a drop in line voltage or the use of reduced-voltage starting, the locked-rotor and pull-in torque values specified should be appropriately higher than the torque values at rated voltage. Alternatively, the locked-rotor and pull-in torque values listed in the table should be specified together with the voltage at the motor terminals for each torque value.

b. The locked-rotor and pull-in torque values listed in Table 21-8 are also based upon the selection of a motor whose rating is such that the normal running load does not exceed rated horsepower. If a smaller motor is used, correspondingly higher locked-rotor and pull-in torques may be required.

c. The pull-in torque developed by a synchronous motor is not a fixed value but varies over a wide range depending upon the $Wk^2$ of its connected load. Hence, to design a motor which will synchronize a particular load, it is necessary to know the $Wk^2$ of the load as well as the pull-in torque. For the applications listed in Table 21-8, the $Wk^2$ of the load divided by the normal $Wk^2$ of load (see 21.12) will usually fall within the range of the values shown in the last column. Where a rotating member of the driven equipment operates at a speed different from that of the motor, its $Wk^2$ should be multiplied by the square of the ratio of its speed to the motor speed to obtain the equivalent inertia at the motor shaft.

d. For some applications, torque values are listed for (a) starting with the driven machine unloaded in some manner and (b) starting without unloading of the driven machine. Even though the driven machine is normally unloaded for starting, the higher torque values required for starting under load may be justified since, with suitable control, this will allow automatic resynchronization following pull-out due to a temporary overload or voltage disturbance.

e. The pull-out torque values listed in Table 21-8 take into account the peak loads typical of the application and include an allowance for usual variations in line voltage. Where severe voltage disturbances are expected and continuity of operation is important, higher values of pull-out torque may be justified.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-8**
**TYPICAL TORQUE REQUIREMENTS FOR SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR APPLICATIONS**

| Item No. | Application | Torques in Percent of Motor Full-Load Torque: Locked-Rotor | Pull-In | Pull-Out | Ratio of $Wk^2$ of Load to Normal $Wk^2$ of Load |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Attrition mills (for grain processing) - starting unloaded | 100 | 60 | 175 | 3-15 |
| 2 | Ball mills (for rock and coal) | 140 | 110 | 175 | 2-4 |
| 3 | Ball mills (for ore) | 150 | 110 | 175 | 1.5-4 |
| 4 | Banbury mixers | 125 | 125 | 250 | 0.2-1 |
| 5 | Band mills | 40 | 40 | 250 | 50-110 |
| 6 | Beaters, standard | 125 | 100 | 150 | 3-15 |
| 7 | Beaters, breaker | 125 | 100 | 200 | 3-15 |
| 8 | Blowers, centrifugal—starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Inlet or discharge valve closed | 30 | 40-60* | 150 | 3-30 |
| | b. Inlet or discharge valve open | 30 | 100 | 150 | 3-30 |
| 9 | Blowers, positive displacement, rotary - by-passed for starting | 30 | 25 | 150 | 3-8 |
| 10 | Bowl mills (coal pulverizers) - starting unloaded | | | | |
| | a. Common motor for mill and exhaust fan | 90 | 80 | 150 | 5-15 |
| | b. Individual motor for mill | 140 | 50 | 150 | 4-10 |
| 11 | Chippers - starting empty | 60 | 50 | 250 | 10-100 |
| 12 | Compressors, centrifugal - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Inlet or discharge valve closed | 30 | 40-60* | 150 | 3-30 |
| | b. Inlet or discharge valve open | 30 | 100 | 150 | 3-30 |
| 13 | Compressors, Fuller Company | | | | |
| | a. Starting unloaded (by-pass open) | 60 | 60 | 150 | 0.5-2 |
| | b. Starting loaded (by-pass closed) | 60 | 100 | 150 | 0.5-2 |
| 14 | Compressors, Nash-Hyotr - starting unloaded | 40 | 60 | 150 | 2-4 |

See page 30 for notes applying to this table

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-8 (Continued)**

| Item No. | Application | Torques in Percent of Motor Full-Load Torque | | | Ratio of $Wk^2$ of Load to Normal $Wk^2$ of Load |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Locked-Rotor | Pull-In | Pull-Out | |
| 15 | Compressors, reciprocating - starting unloaded | | | | |
| | a. Air and gas | 30 | 25 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| | b. Ammonia (discharge pressure 100-250 psi) | 30 | 25 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| | c. Freon | 30 | 40 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| 16 | Crushers, Bradley-Hercules - starting unloaded | 100 | 100 | 250 | 2-4 |
| 17 | Crushers, cone - starting unloaded | 100 | 100 | 250 | 1-2 |
| 18 | Crushers, gyratory - starting unloaded | 100 | 100 | 250 | 1-2 |
| 19 | Crushers, jaw - starting unloaded | 150 | 100 | 250 | 10-50 |
| 20 | Crushers, roll - staring unloaded | 150 | 100 | 250 | 2-3 |
| 21 | Defibrators (see Beaters, standard) | | | | |
| 22 | Disintegrators, pulp (see Beaters, standard) | | | | |
| 23 | Edgers | 40 | 40 | 250 | 5-10 |
| 24 | Fans, centrifugal (except sintering fans) - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Inlet or discharge valve closed | 30 | 40-60* | 150 | 5-60 |
| | b. Inlet or discharge valve open | 30 | 100 | 150 | 5-60 |
| 25 | Fans, centrifugal sintering - starting with inlet gates closed | 40 | 100 | 150 | 5-60 |
| 26 | Fans, propeller type - starting with discharge valve open | 30 | 100 | 150 | 5-60 |
| 27 | Generators, alternating-current | 20 | 10 | 150 | 2-15 |
| 28 | Generators, direct-current (except electroplating) | | | | |
| | a. 150 kW and smaller | 20 | 10 | 150 | 2-3 |
| | b. Over 150 kW | 20 | 10 | 200 | 2-3 |
| 29 | Generators, electroplating | 20 | 10 | 150 | 2-3 |
| 30 | Grinders, pulp, single, long magazine-type - starting unloaded | 50 | 40 | 150 | 2-5 |
| 31 | Grinders, pulp, all except single, long magazine-type - starting unloaded | 40 | 30 | 150 | 1-5 |
| 32 | Hammer mills - starting unloaded | 100 | 80 | 250 | 30-60 |
| 33 | Hydrapulpers, continuous type | 125 | 125 | 150 | 5-15 |
| 34 | Jordans (see Refiners, conical) | | | | |
| 35 | Line shafts, flour mill | 175 | 100 | 150 | 5-15 |
| 36 | Line shafts, rubber mill | 125 | 110 | 225 | 0.5-1 |
| 37 | Plasticators | 125 | 125 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| 38 | Pulverizers, B & W - starting unloaded | | | | |
| | a. Common motor for mill and exhaust fan | 105 | 100 | 175 | 20-60 |
| | b. Individual motor for mill | 175 | 100 | 175 | 4-10 |
| 39 | Pumps, axial flow, adjustable blade - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Casing dry | 5-40** | 15 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | b. Casing filled, blades feathered | 5-40** | 40 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| 40 | Pumps, axial flow, fixed blade - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Casing dry | 5-40** | 15 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | b. Casing filled, discharge closed | 5-40** | 175-250* | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | c. Casing filled, discharge open | 5-40** | 100 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| 41 | Pumps, centrifugal, Francis impeller - starting with | | | | |
| | a. Casing dry | 5-40** | 15 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | b. Casing filled, discharge closed | 5-40** | 60-80* | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | c. Casing filled, discharge open | 5-40** | 100 | 150 | 0.2-2 |

See page 30 for notes applying to this table.

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-8 (Continued)**

| Item No. | Application | Torques in Percent of Motor Full-Load Torque | | | Ratio of $Wk^2$ of Load to Normal $Wk^2$ of Load |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Locked-Rotor | Pull-In | Pull-Out | |
| 42 | Pumps, centrifugal, radial impeller - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Casing dry | 5-40** | 15 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | b. Casing filled, discharge closed | 5-40** | 40-60* | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | c. Casing filled, discharge open | 5-40** | 100 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| 43 | Pumps, mixed flow - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Casing dry | 5-40** | 15 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | b. Casing filled, discharge closed | 5-40** | 82-125* | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| | c. Casing filled, discharge open | 5-40** | 100 | 150 | 0.2-2 |
| 44 | Pumps, reciprocating - starting with: | | | | |
| | a. Cylinders dry | 40 | 30 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| | b. By-pass open | 40 | 40 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| | c. No by-pass (three cylinder) | 150 | 100 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| 45 | Refiners, conical (Jordan, Hydrafiners, Claflins, Mordens) - starting with plug out | 50 | 50-100† | 150 | 2-20 |
| 46 | Refiners, disc type - starting unloaded | 50 | 50 | 150 | 1-20 |
| 47 | Rod mills (for ore grinding) | 160 | 120 | 175 | 1.5-4 |
| 48 | Rolling mills | | | | |
| | a. Structural and rail roughing mills | 40 | 30 | 300-400†† | 0.5-1 |
| | b. Structural and rail finishing mills | 40 | 30 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | c. Plate mills | 40 | 30 | 300-400†† | 0.5-1 |
| | d. Merchant mill trains | 60 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | e. Billet, skelp, and sheet bar mills, continuous, with lay-shaft drive | 60 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | f. Rod mills, continuous with lay-shaft drive | 100 | 60 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | g. Hot strip mills, continuous, individual drive roughing stands | 50 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | h. Tube piercing and expanding mills | 60 | 40 | 300-400†† | 0.5-1 |
| | i. Tube rolling (plug) mills | 60 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | j. Tube reeling mills | 60 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | k. Brass and copper roughing mills | 50 | 40 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| | l. Brass and copper finishing mills | 150 | 125 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| 49 | Rubber mills, individual drive | 125 | 125 | 250 | 0.5-1 |
| 50 | Saws, band (see Band mills) | | | | |
| 51 | Saws, edger (see Edgers) | | | | |
| 52 | Saws, trimmer | 40 | 40 | 250 | 5-10 |
| 53 | Tube mills (see Ball mills) | | | | |
| 54 | Vacuum pumps, Hytor | | | | |
| | a. With unloader | 40 | 30 | 150 | 2-4 |
| | b. Without unloader | 60 | 100 | 150 | 2-4 |
| 55 | Vacuum pumps, reciprocating - starting unloaded | 40 | 60 | 150 | 0.2-15 |
| 56 | Wood hogs | 60 | 50 | 250 | 30-100 |

*The pull-in torque varies with the design and operating conditions. The machinery manufacturer should be consulted.

**For horizontal shaft pumps and vertical shaft pumps having no thrust bearing (entire thrust load carried by the motor), the locked-rotor torque required is usually between 5 and 20 percent, while for vertical shaft machines having their own thrust bearing a locked-rotor torque as high as 40 percent is sometimes required.

†The pull-in torque required varies with the design of the refiner. The machinery manufacturer should be consulted. Furthermore, even though 50 percent pull-in torque is adequate with the plug out, it is sometimes considered desirable to specify 100 percent to cover the possibility that a start will be attempted without complete retraction of the plug.

††The pull-out torque varies depending upon the rolling schedule.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 21.37 COMPRESSOR FACTORS

The pulsating torque of a reciprocating compressor produces a pulsation in the current which the driving motor draws from the line. To limit this current pulsation to an acceptable value, the proper $Wk^2$ must be provided in the rotating parts. Table 21-9 gives data for calculating the amount of $Wk^2$ required.

Table 21-9 lists a wide variety of compressor applications, each representing a compressor of a certain type together with a set of operating conditions. The application number assigned is for convenient identification. For each application, the table gives a range of values for the compressor factor, C, which will limit the current pulsation to 66 percent of motor full-load current (the limit established in 21.33) and also the range of values which will limit the current pulsation to 40 percent and to 20 percent of motor full-load current. The method of measuring pulsation is also given in 21.32.

The values of compressor factor, C, which are required to keep the current pulsation within specified limits are determined by the physical characteristics of the compressor, such as number of cylinders, whether single or double acting, number of stages, crank angle, and weight of reciprocating parts, together with the operating conditions, such as kind of gas compressed, suction and discharge pressures, and method of unloading. They are independent of the characteristics of the synchronous motor used to drive the compressor.

The compressor factor which will be provided by a synchronous motor is a function of the total $Wk^2$ of the rotating parts (motor, compressor, and flywheel) and certain motor characteristics as given by the formula:

$$C = \frac{0.746 \times Wk^2 \times (n)^4}{P_r \times f \times 10^8}$$

Where:

W, k, n, $P_r$, and f are as defined in 21.36. This means that the total $Wk^2$ must have a value:

$$Wk^2 = \frac{C \times f \times P_r \times 10^8}{0.746 \times (n)^4}$$

Where:

C is within the range of acceptable values for the compressor application involved.

For most of the compressor applications listed in Table 21-9, the compressor factor must be within a single range of values for a given current pulsation. For certain applications, however, two ranges of values are shown. The lower range is commonly referred to as the "loop" since it corresponds to a loop or valley in the curve of current pulsations versus compressor factor for that application.

The motor characteristic, $P_r$, increases with an increase in line voltage or the excitation current and decreases with a reduction in these operating variables. Since the compressor factor provided by a motor varies inversely with the value of $P_r$, an increase in line voltage or excitation current will reduce the value of compressor factor provided and vice versa. Hence, if the line voltage or excitation current are expected to depart appreciably from rated values (on which the value of $P_r$ is based), it may be necessary to take this into account by placing narrower limits on the range of values for the compressor factor than those shown in Table 21-9. This is particularly important if the $Wk^2$ selected gives a compressor factor in the "loop" since then either an increase or a decrease in the compressor factor may increase the current pulsation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

The compressor factors in Table 21-9 were calculated from typical values of the physical characteristics for each type of compressor and, therefore, a compressor factor within the range of values shown will, in most cases, limit the current pulsation to the value indicated. Particular cases will, however, occur where a compressor and its operating conditions correspond to one of the applications listed, and yet a compressor factor within a narrower range must be provided to limit the current pulsation to the value indicated because the compressor characteristics differ significantly from those assumed.

### 21.38 SURGE CAPABILITIES OF AC WINDINGS WITH FORM-WOUND COILS

Surge withstand capabilities of armature winding shall be as per 20.35.

### 21.39 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM

Alternating-current machines are intended for continuous operation with the neutral at or near ground potential. Operation on ungrounded systems with one line at ground potential should be done only for infrequent periods of short duration, for example as required for normal fault clearance. If it is intended to operate the machine continuously or for prolonged periods in such conditions, a special machine with a level of insulation suitable for such operation is required. The motor manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a motor for such an application.

Grounding of the interconnection of the machine neutral points should not be undertaken without consulting the System Designer because of the danger of zero-sequence components of currents of all frequencies under some operating conditions and the possible mechanical damage to the winding under line-to-neutral fault conditions.

Other auxiliary equipment connected to the motor such as, but not limited to, surge capacitors, power factor correction capacitors, or lightning arresters, may not be suitable for use on an ungrounded system and should be evaluated independently.

### 21.40 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT

Synchronous motors while running and at rated temperature shall be capable of withstanding a current equal to 150 percent of the rated current for 30 seconds.

Excess capacity is required for the coordination of the motor with the control and protective devices. The heating effect in the machine winding varies approximately as the product of the square of the current and the time for which this current is being carried. The overload condition will thus result in increased temperatures and a reduction in insulation life. The motor should therefore not be subjected to this extreme condition for more than a few times in its life.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9**
**COMPRESSOR FACTORS**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor *C* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **66% Pulsation** | **40% Pulsation** | **20% Pulsation** |
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Horizontal - Single-stage - Equal Suction (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** | | | |
| 1 | One-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage. | 14.0 and over | 20.0 and over | 28.0 and over |
| 3 | One-cylinder, HDA ammonia or freon compressor half load by using clearance pocket on head end. | 28.0 and over | 40.0 and over | 72.0 and over |
| 5 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, 90-degree cranks for duplex operation only. | 2.0 to 6.0 or 12.0 and over | 3.5 to 4.5 or 14.0 and over | 20.0 and over |
| 7 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, 90-degree cranks for single-cylinder operation, with one crank disconnected. (When both cranks are connected and both cylinders are operating normally, this becomes equivalent to Application 5 and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 7.) | 12.0 and over | 14.0 and over | 20.0 and over |
| 9 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, 90-degree cranks for duplex operation with clearance pockets on all cylinder ends, balanced operation at all loads.<br>NOTE—The current variation may be 125 percent if unbalanced operation of clearance pockets is used. | 2.0 to 6.0 or 12.0 and over | 3.5 to 4.5 or 14.0 and over | 20.0 and over |
| 11 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, 90-degree cranks, with clearance pockets at one end of each cylinder to completely unload that cylinder end. (Under balanced operation with clearance pockets not in use, this becomes equivalent to Application 5 and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 11. | 16.0 and over | 21.0 and over | 32.5 and over |
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Horizontal - Two-stage - Equal Suction (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** | | | |
| 21 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, 90-degree cranks - no partial capacity operation. | 13.0 and over | 16.0 and over | 23.0 and over |
| 23 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, 90-degree cranks for duplex operation with clearance pockets on all cylinder ends and with balanced operation at all loads. | 13.0 and over | 16.0 and over | 23.0 and over |
| 25 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, two-stage, 90-degree cranks, with clearance pockets at one end of each cylinder to completely unload that cylinder end. (Under balanced operation with clearance pockets not in use, this becomes equivalent to Application 21 and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 25.) | 17.0 and over | 23.0 and over | 35.5 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor *C* 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Vertical - Single-stage - Equal Suction (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** | | | |
| 41 | Two-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, single-stage, 180-degree cranks. The value of compressor factor *C* to use depends upon the weight of reciprocating parts as determined by factor called "Q." $Q = \frac{0.065 x W x R^2 x (S/100)^3}{I. Hp.}$ where W = weight of reciprocating parts per cylinder. R = crank radius, in feet. S = revolutions per minute. I. Hp. = indicated horsepower of both cylinders, total. | | | |
| | For values of Q of 0.2 to 0.4 | 9.5 or over | 14.5 and over | 26.0 and over |
| | For values of Q of 0.4 to 0.6 | 8.5 or over | 13.0 and over | 23.0 and over |
| | For values of Q of 0.6 to 0.8 | 7.5 or over | 11.0 and over | 19.5 and over |
| | For values of Q of 0.8 to 1.0 | 6.5 or over | 9.5 and over | 16.5 and over |
| | For values of Q of 1.0 to 1.4 | 5.7 or over | 8.0 and over | 14.0 and over |
| 43 | Two-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 180 degrees, with by-passes at one-third or one-half of piston stroke, to reduce capacity. By-passes always opened together for balanced operation. | 9 and over | 13.5 and over | 25.0 and over |
| 45 | Two-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 180, single-stage. Half load by closing inlet valve on one cylinder. | 40 and over | 60.0 and over | 111.0 and over |
| 47 | Twin vertical, two-cylinder, single-acting, single-stage, for twin operation only with cranks of the two compressors set at 90 degrees. (This application consists of two identical independent compressors, each V.D.S.A. with one motor between arranged for driving both compressors.) | 2.5 and over | 4.0 and over | 7.0 and over |
| 49 | Twin vertical, two-cylinder, single-acting, single-stage, with cranks of the two compressors set at 90 degrees as in Application 47, except when used for single compressor operation, that is, motor arranged for driving only one compressor. (When both compressors are operating this becomes equivalent to Application 47 and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 49.) | 6 and over | 8.0 and over | 15.0 and over |
| 51 | Three-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, single-stage, cranks at 120 degrees. | 35.5 and over | 5.5 and over | 9.5 and over |
| 53 | Three-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, single-stage, cranks at 120 degrees with by-passes at one-third or one-half of piston stroke, to reduce capacity. By-passes always opened together for balanced operation. | 3.5 and over | 5.5 and over | 9.5 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor *C* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **66% Pulsation** | **40% Pulsation** | **20% Pulsation** |
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Vertical - Single-stage - Equal Suction (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** ***(Continued)*** | | | |
| 55 | Twin, three-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, single-stage for twin operation only with cranks of the two compressors set at 60 degrees. (This application consists of two identical independent compressors, with one motor between arranged for driving both compressors.) | 1 and over | 2.0 and over | 3.5 and over |
| 57 | Twin, three-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, single-stage, cranks of the two compressors set at 60 degrees as in Application 55 except when used for single compressor operation, that is, one compressor disconnected. (When both compressors are operating, this becomes equivalent to Application 55, and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 57.) | 2.5 and over | 4.0 and over | 6.5 and over |
| 58A | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees. Operation at full load and no load only. | 2.5 and over | 4 and over | 7 and over |
| 58B | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees. Capacity reduction by-passes on each cylinder operated together for balanced operation at all loads. | 2.5 and over | 4 and over | 7 and over |
| 58C | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees with three-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinders working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - mid-stroke by-pass open on two cylinders whose cranks are 180 degrees apart.<br>One half load - mid-stroke by-pass open on all cylinders. | 6 and over | 11 and over | 16 and over |
| 58D | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees with three-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinders working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - mid-stroke by-pass open on two cylinders whose cranks are 90 degrees apart.<br>One half load - mid-stroke by-pass open on all cylinders. | 20 and over | 25 and over | 45 and over |
| 58E | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinders working normally.<br>Seven-eighths load - mid-stroke by-pass open on one cylinder.<br>Three-quarters load - mid-strike by-pass open on cylinders whose cranks are 180 degrees apart.<br>Five-eighths load - mid-stroke by-pass open on three cylinders.<br>One-half load - mid-stroke by-pass open on all cylinders. | 16 and over | 20 and over | 32 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor *C* 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Split Suction - Horizontal - One-Cylinder - Double-acting (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** | | | |
| 58F | Four-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 90 degrees with five-step control. | | | |
| | Full load - all cylinders working normally. | | | |
| | Seven-eighths load - mid-stroke by-pass open on one cylinder. | | | |
| | Three-quarters load - mid-stroke by-pass open on two cylinders whose cranks are 90 degrees apart | | | |
| | Five-eighths load - mid-stroke by-pass open on three cylinders. | | | |
| | One-half load - mid-stroke by-pass open on all cylinders. | 20 and over | 26 and over | 45 and over |
| 58G | Two-cylinder, vertical, single-acting, cranks at 180 degrees with three-step control. | | | |
| | Full load - both cylinders working normally. | | | |
| | Three-quarters load - mid-stroke by-pass open on one cylinder. | | | |
| | One-half load - mid-stroke by-pass open on two cylinders. | 20 and over | 26 and over | 42 and over |

**Ammonia or Freon - Split Suction - Horizontal - One-Cylinder - Double-acting (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)**

| Application No. | Pressures Suction Head-end | Pressures Suction Crank-end | Discharge | 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 61 | 5 | 20 | 185 | 23 and over | 32.5 and over | 55.0 and over |
| 62 | 0 | 20 | 185 | 28 and over | 40.0 and over | 72.0 and over |
| 63 | 20 | 5 | 185 | 26 and over | 37.0 and over | 65.0 and over |
| 64 | 20 | 0 | 185 | 30 and over | 43.5 and over | 78.0 and over |

**Ammonia or Freon - Split Suctions - Horizontal - Two-cylinder - Double-acting - Cranks at 90 Degrees (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)**

| Application No. | Pressures Suction Leading Cylinder Head-end | Pressures Suction Leading Cylinder Crank-end | Pressures Suction Lagging Cylinder Head-end | Pressures Suction Lagging Cylinder Crank-end | Discharge | 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 81 | 5 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 185 | 16.5 and over | 22.0 and over | 34.5 and over |
| 82 | 0 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 185 | 19.5 and over | 26.5 and over | 44.0 and over |
| 83 | 20 | 5 | 20 | 20 | 185 | 19.0 and over | 26.0 and over | 42.0 and over |
| 84 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 20 | 185 | 22.0 and over | 30.5 and over | 52.0 and over |
| 85 | 20 | 20 | 5 | 20 | 185 | 14.5 and over | 19.0 and over | 28.0 and over |
| 86 | 20 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 185 | 17.0 and over | 22.5 and over | 36.0 and over |
| 87 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 5 | 185 | 17.0 and over | 22.5 and over | 36.0 and over |
| 88 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 0 | 185 | 20.0 and over | 27.5 and over | 45.5 and over |
| 89 | 5 | 20 | 5 | 20 | 185 | 18.0 and over | 24.0 and over | 39.0 and over |
| 90 | 0 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 185 | 21.0 and over | 29.0 and over | 48.5 and over |
| 91 | 20 | 5 | 20 | 5 | 185 | 21.0 and over | 29.0 and over | 48.5 and over |
| 92 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 0 | 185 | 23.0 and over | 32.0 and over | 55.0 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor *C* 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Ammonia or Freon - Split Suctions - Vertical - Two-cylinder - Single-acting - Cranks at 180 Degrees (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi)** | | | |
| 101 | Five lbs suction on one cylinder, 20 lbs suction on the other, 185 lbs discharge on both cylinders. | 22.5 and over | 31.5 and over | 54.0 and over |
| 103 | Zero lbs suction on one cylinder, 20 lbs suction on the other, with 185 lbs discharge on both cylinders. | 25.0 and over | 35.5 and over | 62.0 and over |
| | Ammonia or Freon - Split Suctions - Vertical - Three-cylinder - Single-acting (Discharge Pressure 100-250 Psi) | | | |
| 121 | Five lbs suction on one cylinder, 20 lbs suction on both of the other two cylinders, with 185 lbs discharge on all cylinders. | 16.5 and over | 20.0 and over | 35.0 and over |
| 123 | Zero lbs suction on one cylinder, 20 lbs suction on both of the other two cylinders, with 185 lbs discharge on all three cylinders. | 19.5 and over | 26.5 and over | 44.0 and over |
| | **Air-Single-stage (Based on Standard Pressures Not Over 160 Psi)** | | | |
| 141 | Single-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, two-step control.<br>Full load - both cylinder ends working normally.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 14.5 and over | 20.0 and over | 30.0 and over |
| 143 | Single-cylinder, double-acting, single-stage, suction valve held open at head-end. | 40 and over | 60.0 and over | 111.0 and over |
| 145 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, two-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>No load - operating with all suction valves lifted. | 3.0 to 5.5 or 12.5 and over | 15.5 and over | 21.5 and over |
| 147 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, three-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on both ends of "lagging" cylinder.<br>No load - suction valves lifted on both ends of both cylinders. | 14.0 and over (for worst condition) | 19.0 and over | 27.0 and over |
| 148 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, three-step control. Cylinders mounted on vertical frame with cranks at 180 degrees.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on two crank ends, two head ends working normally.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 9.5 and over | 14.5 and over | 26.0 and over |
| 149 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves lifted on head-end of :lagging: cylinder.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on both ends of "lagging" cylinder.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on both ends of "lagging' cylinder and also head-end of "leading" cylinder.<br>No load - suction valves lifted on both ends of both cylinders. | 25.0 and over (for worst condition) | 38.0 and over | 66.0 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor C 66% Pulsation | Compressor Factor C 40% Pulsation | Compressor Factor C 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Air-Single-stage (Based on Standard Pressures Not Over 160 Psi) (Continued)** | | | |
| 151 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with any step unloading by clearance pockets maintaining balanced operation at all loads. | 3.0 to 5.5 or 12.5 and over | 16.0 and over | 21.5 and over |
| 153 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, tandem duplex (the two cylinders of each frame operated by a single connecting rod with the cylinders on same side of shaft or on opposite sides with tie rod), with 90 degrees between the cranks on the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves lifted on crank-end of one cylinder and head end of other cylinder on one side.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on head-end on one cylinder, and crank-end of other cylinder on both sides.<br>One-quarter load - all suction valves in both cylinders on one side lifted, and suction valves on crank-end of one cylinder and head-end of other cylinder on other side lifted. | 4.5 to 6 or 12.5 and over | 16.0 and over | 21.5 and over |
| 155 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, opposed duplex (the two cylinders of each frame on opposite sides of shaft operated by individual connecting rods driven by a single crank), with 90 degrees between the cranks of the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves lifted on both head-ends, or both crank-ends, of one opposed frame.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on all head-ends, or all crank-ends.<br>One-quarter load - all suction valves lifted on both cylinders of one opposed frame and on both head-ends , or on both crank-ends of the opposed frame.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 4.5 and over | 6.0 and over | 10.0 and over |
| 157 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, balanced opposite duplex (the two cylinders of each frame on opposite sides of shaft operated by individual connecting rods and individual cranks 180 degrees apart), with 90 degrees between the cranks of the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves lifted on head-end of one cylinder, crank-end of other cylinder on one opposed frame.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on head-end on one cylinder and crank-end of opposed cylinder on each frame.<br>One-quarter load - all suction valves lifted on both cylinders of one opposed frame and on head-end of one cylinder and crank-end of the other cylinder on second opposed frame.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 4.5 to 5.5 or 12.5 and over | 16.0 and over | 21.5 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor C 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Air-Two-stage (Based on Standard Pressures Not Over 160 Psi)** | | | |
| 161 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with two-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>No load - suction valves lifted on both ends of both cylinders. | 4.0 to 5.0 or<br>13.5 and over | 17.5 and over | 24.5 and over |
| 163 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with three-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on end of each cylinder (it makes no difference which end of either cylinder).<br>No load - all valves lifted. | 26.0 and over (for worst condition) | 37.0 and over | 65.0 and over |
| 165 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with four-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - head-end of high pressure cylinder and crank-end of low pressure cylinder on clearance pockets<br>One-half load - all ends on clearance pockets.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 13.5 and over (for worst condition) | 17.5 and over | 24.5 and over |
| 167 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with any step control. all steps of unloading accomplished by clearance pockets maintaining balanced operation at all loads. | 4.0 to 5.0 or<br>13.5 and over | 17.5 and over | 24.5 and over |
| 169 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with five step control.<br>Full load -all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - head-end of high-pressure cylinder and crank-end of low pressure cylinder on clearance pockets.<br>One-half load - all ends of both cylinders on clearance pockets.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on head-end of high-pressure cylinder and crank-end of low-pressure cylinder. Opposite ends of cylinders on clearance pockets.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 24.0 and over (for worst condition) | 34.0 and over | 58.5 and over |
| 171 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - two head-ends working normally, two crank-ends on clearance pockets.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on two head-ends. Two crank-ends working normally.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on two head-ends. Two crank-ends on clearance pockets.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 26.0 and over (for worst condition) | 38.0 and over | 65.0 and over |

(*Continued*)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor C 66% Pulsation | Compressor Factor C 40% Pulsation | Compressor Factor C 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Air-Two-stage (Based on Standard Pressures Not Over 160 Psi) (*Continued*)** | | | |
| 173 | Three-cylinder (two low-pressure cylinders in tandem), double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, two-stage, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves lifted on head-end of one low-pressure cylinder.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on both ends of one low-pressure cylinder, and on crank-end of high-pressure cylinder.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on both ends of one low-pressure cylinder, one end of other low-pressure cylinder, and crank-end of high-pressure cylinder.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 17.5 and over (for worst condition) | 23.5 and over | 37.5 and over |
| 175 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, tandem duplex (one high-pressure cylinder and one low-pressure cylinder on each frame operated by a single connecting rod with the cylinders on same side of shaft, or on opposite sides with a tie rod), with 90 degrees between the cranks of the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - suction valves on head-end of low-pressure cylinder, and crank-end of high-pressure cylinder, on one side lifted.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on head-ends of both low-pressure cylinders, and on crank-ends of both high-pressure cylinders.<br>One-quarter load - all suction valves in both cylinders on one side lifted, and suction valves on crank-end of low-pressure cylinder and head-end of high-pressure cylinder on other side lifted.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 4.5 to 6.0 or 12.5 and over (for worst condition) | 16.0 and over | 21.5 and over |
| 177 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, cranks at 90 degrees, with three-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Sixty-percent load - head-ends on clearance pockets.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 3.0 to 5.0 or 13.5 and over (for worst condition) | 17.5 and over | 24.5 and over |
| 179 | Two-cylinder, double-acting, single-crank cylinders set at 90 degrees, angle compound air compressors, full- and no-load only, single-crank. | 3.5 to 7.0 or 11.5 and over | 14.0 and over | 19.0 and over |
| 181 | Twin, two-cylinder, double-acting, compound air compressors, 180 degrees apart, twin operation only. | 2.0 and over | 3.5 and over | 5.0 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | Compressor Factor C | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
| | **Air-Two-stage (Based on Standard Pressures Not Over 160 Psi) (*Continued*)** | | | |
| 183 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, opposed duplex (one high-pressure cylinder and one low-pressure cylinder on each frame on opposite sides of shaft and operated by individual connecting rods driven by a single crank), with 90 degrees between the cranks of the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - crank-ends of all cylinders on clearance pockets, all other cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on crank-ends all cylinders, all other cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on head-ends all cylinders, the crank-ends of all cylinders on clearance pockets.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 4.5 to 5.5 or 12.5 and over | 16.0 and over | 21.5 and over |
| 187 | Four-cylinder, double-acting, balanced opposed duplex (one high-pressure cylinder and one low-pressure cylinder on each frame on opposite sides of shaft and operated by individual connecting rods and individual cranks 180 degrees apart), with 90 degrees between the cranks of the two frames, with five-step control.<br>Full load - all cylinder ends working normally.<br>Three-quarters load - head-end of high-pressure cylinder and crank-end of low pressure cylinder on both frames on clearance pockets, all other cylinder ends working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on all cylinder ends on one opposed frame, the cylinders of other opposed frames working normally.<br>One-quarter load - suction valves lifted on all cylinder ends of one opposed frame, the head-end of high-pressure cylinder and crank-end of low-pressure cylinder on clearance pockets and opposite ends of same cylinders working normally.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 13.0 and over | 16.5 and over | 23.0 and over |
| 189 | Two-cylinder (cylinders mounted on vertical fame with cranks at 180 degrees), double-acting, with three-step control.<br>Full load - both cylinders working normally.<br>One-half load - suction valves lifted on two crank-ends, two head-ends working normally.<br>No load - all suction valves lifted. | 13.0 and over | 16.5 and over | 23.0 and over |

(Continued)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 21-9 (Continued)**

| Application No. | Application (Description) | | Compressor Factor C 66% Pulsation | 40% Pulsation | 20% Pulsation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **$CO_2$ - Horizontal - Single-cylinder - Double-acting - Single-stage (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| | **Piston Rod Diameter in Percent of Piston Diameter** | **Percent Unbalance** | | | |
| 191 | 30 | 4½ | 18 and over | 24.0 and over | 39.5 and over |
| 192 | 40 | 8 | 21 and over | 28.5 and over | 49.0 and over |
| 193 | 50 | 12½ | 25 and over | 35.5 and over | 62.0 and over |
| 194 | 60 | 18 | 30 and over | 43.5 and over | 78.0 and over |
| **$CO_2$ - Horizontal - Two-cylinder - Double-acting - Single-stage, with Cranks at 90 Degrees (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| | **Piston Rod Diameter in Percent of Piston Diameter** | **Percent Unbalance** | | | |
| 211 | 30 | 2¼ | 14 and over | 18.0 and over | 26.0 and over |
| 212 | 40 | 4 | 17 and over | 23.0 and over | 35.5 and over |
| 213 | 50 | 6¼ | 20 and over | 27.0 and over | 45.0 and over |
| 214 | 60 | 9 | 23 and over | 32.0 and over | 55.0 and over |
| **$CO_2$ - Horizontal - Two-cylinder - Double-acting - Single-stage, with Cranks at 180 Degrees (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| 231 | All. (The unbalance of one cylinder is offset by that of the other cylinder.) | | 8.5 and over | 13.5 and over | 23.0 and over |
| **$CO_2$ - Horizontal or Vertical - Two-cylinder - Double-acting - Single-stage (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| 251 | Compressor with 30-percent clearance pockets each head-end, any unloading, with cranks at 180 degrees. | | 17 and over | 23.0 and over | 36.5 and over |
| **$CO_2$ - Horizontal or Vertical - Three-cylinder - Double-acting - Single-stage (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| 271 | Compressors without clearance pockets balanced operation. | | 2.0 and over | 3.5 and over | 5.0 and over |
| 273 | Compressor with 30-percent clearance pockets on each head-end, any unloading. | | 3.5 to 7.0 or 12.0 and over | 14.5 and over | 21.0 and over |
| **$CO_2$ - Vertical - Single-stage - Equal suction (Based on 300 to 450 Psi suction and 900 to 1500 Psi Discharge Pressure)** | | | | | |
| 291 | Two-cylinder, single-acting, with cranks at 180 degrees. | | 9 and over | 14.0 and over | 25.0 and over |
| 293 | Twin, two-cylinder, single-acting, for twin operation only, with cranks of the two compressors set at 90 degrees. | | 2.5 and over | 4.0 and over | 7.0 and over |
| 295 | Twin, Two-cylinder, single-acting, with cranks of the two machines set at 90 degrees as in Application 293, except when used for single compressor operation, that is, motor arranged for driving only one compressor. (When both compressors are operating this becomes equivalent to Application 293 and the current variation will generally be less and will never exceed the values given for Application 295. | | 6.0 and over | 8.0 and over | 15.0 and over |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 23

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section III
# LARGE MACHINES
# Part 23
# LARGE MACHINES—DC MOTORS
# LARGER THAN 1.25 HORSEPOWER PER RPM, OPEN TYPE

## CLASSIFICATION

### 23.1 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 23 of Section III cover direct-current motors built in frames larger than that having a continuous dripproof rating, or equivalent capacity, of 1.25 horsepower per rpm, open type.

### 23.2 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS

These motors are designed for all general industrial service (excepting metal rolling mill service) and may be designed, when specified, for operation at speeds above base speed by field weakening as indicated in Table 23-3 and Table 23-5.

### 23.3 METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS

These motors are designed particularly for metal rolling mill service (except for reversing hot-mill service, see 23.4) and are known as either Class N or Class S metal rolling mill motors. They may be designed for operation with a single direction of rotation (nonreversing) or, if required, they may be designed for either direction of rotation (reversing). These motors differ in design from general industrial motors because of the requirements for this service which are as follows:

a. Continuous overload capability (see 23.10.2)
b. Heavy mechanical construction
c. High momentary overload (see 23.10)
d. Close speed regulation

#### 23.3.1 Class N Metal Rolling Mill Motors

Class N metal rolling mill motors are normally designed for operation at a given base speed but, when specified, may be designed for operation at speeds above base speeds by field weakening as indicated in Table 23-3 and Table 23-5.

#### 23.3.2 Class S Metal Rolling Mill Motors

Still higher speeds than those attained for Class N metal rolling mill motors by field weakening can be obtained, when specified, on metal rolling mill motors by using higher strength material, additional banding, and bracing. Such motors are known as Class S metal rolling mill motors. The maximum speeds recommended for operation of these motors are given in Table 23-4 and Table 23-6.

### 23.4 REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS

These motors are designed particularly for application to reversing hot mills, such as blooming and stabbing mills. They are characterized by:

a. No continuous overload capability
b. Mechanical construction suitable for rapid reversal and for the sudden application of heavy loads
c. Higher momentary overload capacity (see 23.10.3)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## RATINGS

### 23.5 BASIS OF RATING

Direct-current motors covered by this Part 23 shall be rated on a continuous-duty basis unless otherwise specified. The rating shall be expressed in horsepower available at the shaft at rated speed (or speed range) and voltage.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 23.6 HORSEPOWER, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 23.6.1 General Industrial Motors and Metal Rolling Mill Motors, Classes N and S

Horsepower, base speed, and voltage ratings for these motors shall be those shown in Table 23-1.

**Table 23-1**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | 850 | 650 | 500 | 450 | 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 225 | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 50 |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 600 | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 700 | ... | ... | A | A | A | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 800 | ... | ... | A | A | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... |
| 900 | ... | A | A | A | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... |
| 1000 | ... | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 1250 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* |
| 1500 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* |
| 1750 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* | C* |
| 2000 | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* | C* |
| 2250 | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* | C* | C* |
| 2500 | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* | C* | C* | C* |
| 3000 | ... | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C* | C* | C* | C* | C* |
| 3500 | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 4000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 4500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 5000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 6000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 7000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |
| 8000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* | D* |

*These ratings are based on forced ventilation.
"A" indicates voltage rating at either 250 or 500 volts.
"B" indicates voltage ratings at either 250, 500, or 700 volts.
"C' indicates voltage rating at either 500 or 700 volts
"D" indicates voltage rating at 700 volts, only.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 23.6.2 Reversing Hot Mill Motors

Horsepower, base speed, and voltage ratings for these motors shall be those shown in Table 23-2.

**Table 23-2**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hp | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 50 | 45 | 40 | 35 | 30 |
| 500 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 600 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 700 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 800 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 900 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 1000 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 1250 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 1500 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 1750 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 2000 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 2250 | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 2500 | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 3000 | ... | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 3500 | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 4000 | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 4500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 5000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 6000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 7000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 8000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 9000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 10000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |

"C" indicates voltage rating at either 500 or 700 volts.
"D" indicates voltage rating at 700 volts, only.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 23.7 SPEED RATINGS BY FIELD CONTROL FOR 250-VOLT DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

Speed ratings by field control shall be permitted to vary between the base speed and the speeds listed in Tables 23-3 and 23-4.

**Table 23-3**
**GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS (SEE 23.2) AND METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS, CLASS N (SEE 23.3)**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 650 | 500 | 450 | 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 225 | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm - Nonreversing Service* | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 725 | 660 | 585 | 540 | 510 |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 820 | 760 | 700 | 630 | 560 | 520 | 490 |
| 400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 910 | 810 | 765 | 710 | 650 | 595 | 525 | 490 | 460 |
| 500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 930 | 855 | 765 | 720 | 670 | 615 | 565 | 500 | 465 | 440 |
| 600 | ... | ... | 990 | 940 | 880 | 805 | 725 | 690 | 640 | 590 | 540 | 480 | 445 | 425 |
| 700 | ... | 975 | 935 | 890 | 830 | 765 | 690 | 655 | 615 | 560 | 515 | 460 | 430 | 410 |
| 800 | ... | 925 | 890 | 840 | 795 | 735 | 660 | 630 | 590 | 540 | 500 | 450 | 420 | 395 |
| 900 | 1000 | 875 | 845 | 800 | 760 | 700 | 630 | 605 | 570 | 525 | 480 | 435 | 405 | 385 |
| 1000 | 965 | 840 | 800 | 770 | 725 | 675 | 615 | 585 | 550 | 505 | 460 | 420 | 395 | 370 |

**Table 23-4**
**METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS, CLASS S (SEE 23.3)**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 650 | 500 | 450 | 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 225 | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm - Nonreversing Service* | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 850 | 775 | 690 | 640 | 600 |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 960 | 890 | 820 | 745 | 660 | 615 | 580 |
| 400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1060 | 950 | 890 | 830 | 765 | 695 | 620 | 575 | 545 |
| 500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1075 | 990 | 890 | 840 | 785 | 720 | 660 | 590 | 550 | 520 |
| 600 | ... | ... | 1135 | 1080 | 1010 | 930 | 840 | 800 | 745 | 690 | 630 | 565 | 525 | 500 |
| 700 | ... | 1105 | 1070 | 1020 | 960 | 885 | 800 | 760 | 715 | 660 | 600 | 540 | 505 | 480 |
| 800 | ... | 1040 | 1010 | 960 | 910 | 840 | 765 | 730 | 685 | 630 | 580 | 525 | 490 | 465 |
| 900 | 1110 | 985 | 950 | 915 | 870 | 805 | 735 | 700 | 660 | 610 | 560 | 510 | 475 | 450 |
| 1000 | 1050 | 935 | 905 | 870 | 830 | 775 | 710 | 675 | 640 | 590 | 540 | 490 | 460 | 435 |

*Speed ratings by field control of motors designed for reversing service (operation with either direction of rotation) shall be permitted to vary between the base speed and a speed equal to 90 percent of the value listed in the table.

NOTE—The speeds indicated in the above tables take into consideration both electrical and mechanical limitations. Operation at speeds above those indicated by increasing the armature voltage is not recommended.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 23.8 SPEED RATINGS BY FIELD CONTROL FOR 500- OR 700-VOLT DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

Speed ratings by field control shall be permitted to vary between the base speed and the speeds listed in Tables 23-5, 23-6, and 23-7. (See 23.6 for the voltage ratings for the horsepower ratings listed.)

**Table 23-5**
**GENERAL INDUSTRIAL MOTORS (SEE MG 23.2) AND METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS, CLASS N (SEE 23.3)**

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 850 | 650 | 500 | 450 | 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 225 | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 50 |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm - Nonreversing Service* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1140 | 1030 | 960 | 890 | 820 | 730 | 645 | 590 | 550 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1190 | 1090 | 990 | 920 | 855 | 790 | 700 | 620 | 570 | 530 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | ... | ... | 1290 | 1250 | 1200 | 1110 | 1020 | 920 | 860 | 800 | 735 | 655 | 580 | 540 | 500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | ... | 1400 | 1220 | 1170 | 1110 | 1040 | 960 | 870 | 810 | 750 | 700 | 625 | 550 | 510 | 480 | 450 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 600 | ... | 1330 | 1160 | 1120 | 1060 | 980 | 910 | 830 | 775 | 720 | 660 | 590 | 530 | 490 | 455 | 430 | 400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 700 | 1370 | 1270 | 1110 | 1065 | 1010 | 940 | 870 | 790 | 740 | 690 | 640 | 570 | 510 | 470 | 440 | 415 | 385 | 350 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 800 | 1320 | 1220 | 1070 | 1020 | 970 | 900 | 830 | 760 | 710 | 660 | 610 | 550 | 490 | 450 | 425 | 400 | 370 | 340 | 315 | 300 | ... | ... |
| 900 | 1270 | 1170 | 1030 | 980 | 930 | 870 | 805 | 730 | 690 | 640 | 590 | 530 | 475 | 440 | 410 | 385 | 360 | 330 | 305 | 285 | 260 | ... |
| 1000 | 1220 | 1130 | 990 | 950 | 900 | 840 | 780 | 710 | 660 | 620 | 570 | 515 | 460 | 425 | 400 | 375 | 350 | 320 | 295 | 275 | 255 | 240 |
| 1250 | 1115 | 1030 | 920 | 870 | 830 | 770 | 720 | 660 | 620 | 575 | 530 | 480 | 430 | 400 | 385 | 350 | 330 | 300 | 280 | 260 | 240 | 225 |
| 1500 | 1030 | 960 | 850 | 810 | 770 | 720 | 670 | 610 | 580 | 540 | 500 | 450 | 410 | 380 | 355 | 330 | 310 | 285 | 265 | 250 | 230 | 215 |
| 1750 | 960 | 900 | 800 | 760 | 720 | 670 | 630 | 575 | 540 | 510 | 475 | 430 | 358 | 360 | 340 | 315 | 300 | 270 | 250 | 235 | 220 | 205 |
| 2000 | ... | 840 | 750 | 720 | 675 | 630 | 590 | 540 | 515 | 485 | 450 | 410 | 370 | 340 | 320 | 300 | 285 | 260 | 240 | 225 | 210 | 200 |
| 2250 | ... | 795 | 710 | 680 | 640 | 600 | 560 | 515 | 490 | 460 | 430 | 390 | 350 | 330 | 310 | 290 | 275 | 250 | 230 | 220 | 205 | 195 |
| 2500 | ... | 750 | 675 | 650 | 600 | 570 | 535 | 490 | 470 | 440 | 410 | 370 | 340 | 315 | 300 | 280 | 260 | 240 | 225 | 210 | 200 | 190 |
| 3000 | ... | ... | 610 | 585 | 540 | 510 | 490 | 450 | 430 | 405 | 380 | 340 | 315 | 295 | 280 | 260 | 245 | 225 | 210 | 200 | 190 | 180 |
| 3500 | ... | ... | ... | 530 | 490 | 470 | 445 | 410 | 395 | 380 | 350 | 320 | 295 | 275 | 260 | 245 | 230 | 210 | 200 | 190 | 180 | 170 |
| 4000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 450 | 430 | 410 | 380 | 365 | 350 | 330 | 300 | 275 | 260 | 250 | 235 | 220 | 200 | 190 | 180 | 170 | 160 |
| 4500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 390 | 380 | 355 | 340 | 330 | 310 | 285 | 260 | 245 | 235 | 220 | 205 | 190 | 180 | 170 | 165 | 155 |
| 5000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 350 | 330 | 320 | 310 | 290 | 270 | 250 | 235 | 225 | 210 | 195 | 180 | 170 | 165 | 160 | 150 |
| 6000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 260 | 240 | 225 | 210 | 205 | 190 | 180 | 165 | 155 | 150 | 145 | 140 |
| 7000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 220 | 205 | 195 | 190 | 175 | 165 | 155 | 145 | 140 | 135 | 130 |
| 8000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 190 | 180 | 170 | 160 | 150 | 140 | 135 | 130 | 128 | 125 |

*Speed ratings by field control of motors designed for reversing service (operation with either direction of rotation) shall be permitted to vary between the base speed and a speed equal to 90 percent of the value listed in the table.

NOTE—The speeds indicated in Table 23-5 take into consideration both electrical and mechanical limitations. Operation at speeds above those indicated by increasing the armature voltage is not recommended.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## Table 23-6
## METAL ROLLING MILL MOTORS, CLASS S (SEE 23.3)

| | Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 850 | 650 | 500 | 450 | 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 225 | 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 50 |
| Hp | Speed by Field Control, Rpm - Nonreversing Service* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 250 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1340 | 1200 | 1130 | 1050 | 965 | 860 | 760 | 700 | 650 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 300 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 1390 | 1280 | 1160 | 1085 | 1010 | 930 | 825 | 730 | 675 | 625 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 400 | ... | ... | 1480 | 1440 | 1390 | 1290 | 1200 | 1075 | 1010 | 940 | 860 | 775 | 680 | 635 | 590 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 500 | ... | 1590 | 1400 | 1350 | 1310 | 1210 | 1120 | 1020 | 950 | 880 | 820 | 735 | 650 | 600 | 565 | 525 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 600 | ... | 1500 | 1320 | 1280 | 1220 | 1130 | 1060 | 965 | 905 | 840 | 775 | 695 | 620 | 575 | 535 | 505 | 470 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 700 | 1510 | 1420 | 1260 | 1210 | 1160 | 1085 | 1010 | 915 | 860 | 805 | 740 | 670 | 600 | 550 | 515 | 490 | 455 | 410 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 800 | 1460 | 1330 | 1215 | 1160 | 1110 | 1030 | 960 | 880 | 825 | 770 | 710 | 645 | 575 | 530 | 500 | 470 | 435 | 400 | 370 | 350 | ... | ... |
| 900 | 1400 | 1310 | 1165 | 1110 | 1060 | 1000 | 930 | 850 | 800 | 745 | 685 | 620 | 555 | 515 | 480 | 450 | 420 | 390 | 360 | 335 | 310 | ... |
| 1000 | 1330 | 1260 | 1120 | 1080 | 1025 | 960 | 900 | 820 | 765 | 720 | 660 | 600 | 540 | 500 | 470 | 435 | 400 | 375 | 350 | 325 | 300 | 275 |
| 1250 | 1210 | 1140 | 1040 | 1020 | 1000 | 875 | 825 | 765 | 715 | 670 | 615 | 560 | 500 | 470 | 450 | 410 | 385 | 350 | 325 | 300 | 285 | 265 |
| 1500 | 1100 | 1050 | 950 | 920 | 870 | 820 | 765 | 700 | 670 | 625 | 580 | 525 | 475 | 440 | 415 | 385 | 365 | 335 | 310 | 295 | 270 | 255 |
| 1750 | 1030 | 980 | 885 | 850 | 810 | 755 | 720 | 660 | 620 | 585 | 550 | 500 | 445 | 415 | 395 | 365 | 350 | 315 | 295 | 275 | 260 | 240 |
| 2000 | ... | 910 | 830 | 800 | 755 | 720 | 670 | 625 | 590 | 555 | 520 | 475 | 430 | 395 | 370 | 350 | 330 | 300 | 285 | 265 | 245 | 235 |
| 2250 | ... | 855 | 785 | 750 | 715 | 670 | 635 | 585 | 560 | 525 | 490 | 450 | 405 | 380 | 360 | 335 | 320 | 290 | 270 | 255 | 240 | 230 |
| 2500 | ... | 800 | 740 | 710 | 665 | 635 | 600 | 550 | 530 | 500 | 465 | 425 | 390 | 365 | 345 | 325 | 300 | 280 | 260 | 245 | 235 | 220 |
| 3000 | ... | ... | 660 | 635 | 590 | 565 | 540 | 510 | 485 | 460 | 430 | 390 | 360 | 340 | 325 | 300 | 280 | 260 | 245 | 230 | 220 | 210 |
| 3500 | ... | ... | ... | 570 | 530 | 515 | 490 | 460 | 445 | 430 | 395 | 365 | 335 | 315 | 300 | 285 | 265 | 240 | 230 | 220 | 210 | 200 |
| 4000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | 480 | 465 | 450 | 420 | 405 | 395 | 370 | 335 | 310 | 295 | 285 | 270 | 250 | 230 | 220 | 210 | 195 | 185 |
| 4500 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 420 | 410 | 390 | 375 | 355 | 340 | 320 | 295 | 280 | 270 | 250 | 235 | 220 | 205 | 195 | 190 | 180 |
| 5000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 370 | 360 | 350 | 340 | 320 | 300 | 280 | 265 | 255 | 240 | 225 | 210 | 195 | 190 | 185 | 175 |
| 6000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 285 | 265 | 250 | 240 | 230 | 215 | 205 | 190 | 180 | 170 | 165 | 160 |
| 7000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 240 | 230 | 220 | 215 | 195 | 185 | 175 | 165 | 160 | 155 | 150 |
| 8000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 210 | 200 | 190 | 180 | 170 | 160 | 155 | 150 | 145 | 140 |

*Speed ratings by field control of motors designed for reversing service (operation with either direction of rotation) shall be permitted to vary between the base speed and a speed equal to 90 percent of the value listed in the table.

## Table 23-7
## REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS (SEE 23.4)

| Base Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 200 | 175 | 150 | 125 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 50 | 45 | 40 | 35 | 30 |
| Speed by Field Control, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 400 | 350 | 300 | 250 | 220 | 200 | 180 | 160 | 140 | 130 | 120 | 110 | 100 | 90 | 80 | 70 | 60 |

NOTE–The speeds indicated in Tables 23-6 and 23-7 take into consideration both electrical and mechanical limitations. Operation at speeds above those indicated by increasing the armature voltage is not recommended.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 23.9 TEMPERATURE RISE

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the motor, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in the following table. The temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the table are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113.[1]

**OBSERVABLE TEMPERATURE RISES, DEGREES C**

| | | | General Industrial Service | | | | | | | | Metal Rolling Mill Service | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | | | Metal Rolling Mills, Excluding Reversing Hot Mills | | | | | | Reversing Hot Mills | | |
| | | | Semi-enclosed | | | | Totally-enclosed | | | | Forced-ventilated or Totally-enclosed Water-air-cooled | | | | | | Forced-ventilated or Totally-enclosed Water-air-cooled | | |
| | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | 2 Hours† 125% Load | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | |
| | | | Insulation Class | | | | Insulation Class | | | | Insulation Class | | | Insulation Class | | | Insulation Class | | |
| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination* | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H | B | F | H | B | F | H | B | F | H |
| 1 | Armature windings and all other windings other than those given in items 2 and 3 | Thermometer | 50 | 70 | 90 | 110 | 55 | 75 | 95 | 115 | 40 | 60 | 75 | 55 | 75 | 95 | 50 | 70 | 90 |
| | | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 60 | 90 | 110 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 2 | Multilayer field windings | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 120 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 3 | Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings | Thermometer | 60 | 80 | 105 | 130 | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 | 50 | 70 | 90 | 65 | 85 | 110 | 60 | 80 | 105 |
| | | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 60 | 90 | 110 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 4 | Commutator and collector rings | Thermometer | 65 | 85 | 105 | 125 | 65 | 85 | 105 | 125 | 55 | 75 | 90 | 65 | 85 | 105 | 65 | 85 | 105 |
| 5 | The temperatures attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

*Where two methods of temperature measurement are listed, a temperature rise within the values listed in the table measured by either method demonstrates conformity with the standard.
†Temperature limits apply at end of 2-hour operation at 125-percent load following operation at rated load long enough to reach a stable temperature.
NOTE 1 - See 1.65 for description of classes of insulation.
NOTE 2 - Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation.

[1] See 1.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the Nation‹ ctrical Manufacturers Association.

### 23.9.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 23.9 are based on a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that dc motors may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of the motors in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the motors given in 23.9 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C.

(Exception—for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a. On machines designed for cooling water temperature of 5°C to 30°C—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.

b. On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises for the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in 23.9 by the number of degrees that the temperature of the air leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C.)

### 23.9.2 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in 23.9 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

### 23.9.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 23.9 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled dc motors may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled dc motor is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 23.9 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For dc motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 23.9 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 23.9 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For dc motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 23.9 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 23.9 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 120 | 150 | 180 | 205 |

*Note: This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 23.9

For example: A dc motor for general industrial service with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 180°C and from 23.9 the Temperature Rise Limit is 130°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{180^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\circ}\text{C} + 130^{\circ}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\circ}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\circ}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 23.9 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 130°C + 13°C = 143°C.

## 23.10 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY

### 23.10.1 General Industrial Motors

These motors shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, the following momentary (1 minute) loads:

| Percent of Base Speed* | Percent of Rated Horsepower Load | |
|---|---|---|
| | Occasionally Applied** | Frequently Applied** |
| 100 | 150 | 140 |
| 200 | 150 | 130 |
| 300 and over | 140 | 125 |

*At intermediate speeds the variation in momentary load capability is linear with respect to speed.
**See 23.11.

These motors have no continuous overload capability.

### 23.10.2 Metal Rolling Mill Motors (Excluding Reversing Hot Mill Motors)—Open, Forced-Ventilated, and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled

These motors shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, the following loads:

a. 115 percent of rated-horsepower load continuously at rated voltage, throughout the rated-speed range. Under this load, the temperature rises will be higher and other characteristics may differ from those specified for operation under rated conditions

b. 125 percent of rated-horsepower load for 2 hours at rated voltage throughout the rated-speed range, following continuous operation at rated load, without exceeding the temperature rises specified in 23.9 for this operating condition. Other characteristics may differ from those specified for operation under rated conditions

c. The following momentary (1 minute) loads:

| Percent of Base Speed* | Percent of Rated Horsepower Load | |
|---|---|---|
| | Occasionally Applied** | Frequently Applied** |
| 100 | 200 | 175 |
| 200 | 200 | 160 |
| 300 and over | 175 | 140 |

*At intermediate speeds the variation in momentary load capability is linear with respect to speed.
**See 23.11.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 23.10.3 Reversing Hot Mill Motors—Forced-Ventilated and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled

These motors shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, the following momentary (1-minute) loads:

| | Occasionally Applied Load* | | Frequently Applied Load* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Percent of Base Speed | Percent of Rated Base Speed Torque | Percent of Rated Horsepower | Percent of Rated Base Speed Torque | Percent of Rated Horsepower |
| 93** | 275 | 256 | ... | ... |
| 95** | ... | ... | 225 | 214 |
| 125 | 199 | 248.5 | 166 | 207.5 |
| 150 | 162 | 242.5 | 135 | 202 |
| 175 | 135 | 236.5 | 112 | 196.5 |
| 200 | 115 | 230 | 95.5 | 191 |
| 225 | 99.5 | 224 | 82.5 | 185.5 |
| 250 | 87.5 | 218 | 72 | 180 |
| 275 | 77 | 212 | 63.5 | 174.5 |
| 300 | 68.5 | 206 | 56.3 | 169 |

*See 23.11.
**Approximate speed attained at load shown with motor field adjusted for 100-percent base speed at 100-percent load.

These motors have no continuous overload capability.

## 23.11 MOMENTARY LOAD CAPACITY

Occasionally applied momentary load capacity denotes the ability of a motor to carry loads in excess of its continuous rating for a period not to exceed 1 minute on an infrequent or emergency basis. It is recommended that the circuit breaker instantaneous-trip setting correspond to the occasionally applied momentary load capacity.

Frequently applied momentary load capacity denotes the ability of the motor to carry loads in excess of its rating on a repetitive basis, such as a part of a regular duty cycle.

Operation at the momentary load capacity should be followed by light load operation such that the rms load value of the complete load cycle does not exceed the continuous motor rating. Also, the time of operation at momentary load capacity must be limited to a period such that the rated temperature rise is not exceeded to ensure that the insulation life is not reduced.

## 23.12 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION

Successful commutation is attained if neither the brushes nor the commutator are burned or injured in the conformance test or in normal service to the extent that abnormal maintenance is required. The presence of some visible sparking is not necessarily evidence of unsuccessful commutation.

## 23.13 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be in accordance with IEEE Std 113. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, and speed. In the case of adjustable-speed motors, the base speed shall be used unless otherwise specified.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of series windings
c. $I^2R$ loss of shunt field
d. Core loss
e. Stray load loss
f. Brush contact loss
g. Brush friction loss
h. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from the shaft of the machine

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

i. Ventilating loss

j. Friction and windage loss[1]

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. Where the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degree C |
|---|---|
| A | 85 |
| B | 110 |
| F | 135 |
| H | 155 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class insulation system (e.g., motors for metal rolling mill service), the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

## 23.14 TYPICAL REVERSAL TIME OF REVERSING HOT MILL MOTORS

The maximum time typically required for reversing hot mill motors to reverse their direction of rotation, when operating at no load and with suitable control and power supply, is given in the following table:

| Motor Speed (Forward and Reverse), Percent of Base Speed | Reversal Time, Seconds |
|---|---|
| Horsepower x base speed (rpm) not over 250,000 and speed ratio not over 2:1 | |
| 100 | 1.5 |
| 150 | 2.5 |
| 200 | 4 |
| Horsepower x base speed (rpm) over 250,000 or speed ratio over 2:1 | |
| 100 | 2 |
| 150 | 3 |
| 200 | 5 |
| 240 | 7 |
| 300 | 12 |

## 23.15 IMPACT SPEED DROP OF A DIRECT-CURRENT MOTOR

The impact speed drop of a direct-current motor is defined as the initial transient speed drop (from the time of impact to the first point of zero slope on the transient speed-time curve), expressed as a percentage of the speed prior to the speed change, when full load is suddenly applied under conditions of fixed line and shunt field excitation voltages while the motor is operating at no-load and rated voltage with shunt field excitation required to produce rated base speed at rated load and rated voltage.

NOTE—In actual operation, the resultant speed drop of the motor is affected by the stability of the applied voltage, the added inertia of the connected load and the operation of any control equipment.

## 23.16 OVERSPEED

Direct-current motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand an overspeed of 25 percent above rated full-load speed without mechanical injury.

[1] In the case of motors furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the motor itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.

In the case of motors furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings, and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 23.17 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE

### 23.17.1 Steady State

Direct-current motors covered by this Part 23 shall operate successfully at rated load up to and including 110 percent of rated direct-current armature or field voltage, or both, provided the maximum speed is not exceeded.

Performance within this voltage variation will not necessarily be in accordance with the standards established for operation at rated voltage. For operation below base speed at reduced armature voltage, see 23.27.

### 23.17.2 Transient Voltages of Microsecond Duration

Direct-current motors shall withstand transient peak voltages of 160 percent of rated voltage for repetitive transients and 200 percent of rated voltage for random transients.

## 23.18 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS

The following data for direct-current motors may be required by the control manufacturer:

a. Manufacturer's name
b. Requisition or order number
c. Frame designation
d. Serial number
e. Horsepower output
f. Shunt or compound-wound
g. Rated speed in rpm
h. Rated voltage
i. Rated current
j. Excitation voltage
k. Resistance of shunt field at 25°C
l. Field amperes to obtain:

| | |
|---|---|
| 100% speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| ____ speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| 200% speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| ____ speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| 300% speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| 400% speed at full load .................... | __________ |
| ____ speed at full load .................... | __________ |

NOTE—The above table is to be followed only up to the speed that agrees with the maximum speed rating of the motor.

Indicate if values given are calculated or taken from tests.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 23.19 ROUTINE TESTS

The following tests shall be performed in accordance with IEEE Std 113:

a. Measurement of resistance of all windings
b. Potential drop and polarity of field coils
c. Brush setting
d. Commutation adjustment
e. Speed-limit-switch adjustment
f. Air gap measurement
g. High-potential test in accordance with 23.20

## 23.20 HIGH-POTENTIAL TEST

### 23.20.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure

See 3.1.

### 23.20.2 Test Voltage

The test voltage shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine.

## 23.21 MECHANICAL VIBRATION

See Part 7.

## 23.22 METHOD OF MEASURING THE MOTOR VIBRATION

See 7.7, except that series motors shall be checked at rated operating speed only.

## 23.23 CONDITIONS OF TEST FOR SPEED REGULATION

For conditions of test for speed regulation, see IEEE Std 113.

# MANUFACTURING

## 23.24 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Horsepower output
c. Time rating
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Rpm at rated load
f. Voltage
g. Amperes at rated load
h. Winding—shunt, compound, or series

---

[1] As an alternative marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following.

a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the machine is designed.
b. Insulation system designation (if field and armature use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the field being given first).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# APPLICATION DATA

## 23.25 SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 23.25.1 General

Motors should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to this Part 23 are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driven equipment and the motor manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 23.25.2 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a. An ambient temperature in the range of 0°C to 40°C or, when water cooling is used, in the range of 5°C to 40°C
b. An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. A location or supplementary enclosures, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the motor

### 23.25.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the motor. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
    1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
    2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
    3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
    4. Nuclear radiation
    5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
    6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
    7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
    8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the motor shaft

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

b. Operation where:
   1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage (see 23.17)
   2. Low noise levels are required
c. Operation at:
   1. Speeds above highest rated speed
   2. Standstill with any winding continuously energized
d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position
e. Operation where subjected to:
   1. Torsional impact loads
   2. Repetitive abnormal overloads

## 23.26 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS ON RECTIFIED ALTERNATING CURRENT

### 23.26.1 General

When a direct-current motor is operated from a rectified alternating-current supply, its performance may differ materially from that of the same motor when operated from a direct-current source of supply having the same effective value of voltage. At the same load, its temperature rise, speed regulation, and noise level may be increased, and successful commutation may not be achieved. The degree of difference will depend upon the effect of the rectified voltage on the motor current and is more likely to be significant when the rectifier pulse number is less than 6 or when the rectifier current is phase controlled to produce an output voltage of 85 percent or less of the maximum possible rectified output voltage.

### 23.26.2 Operation on Power Supply with Ripple

If the power supply for a direct-current motor has a continuous pulsation or ripple in its output voltage, a similar ripple will appear in the motor armature current. The performance standards for direct-current motors in this Part 23 are based upon operation from a direct-current source of supply, such as a generator or battery, and do not necessarily apply if the magnitude of the ripple current (peak-to-peak), expressed in percent of rated-load current, exceeds six percent at rated load, rated armature voltage, and rated base speed.

The inductance of the motor armature winding is a major component of the impedance limiting the flow of ripple current. The approximate inductance in henries can be calculated from the formula:

$$L_a = \frac{19.1 \times V_o}{P \times N_1 \times I_a} \times C_x$$

Where:

$L_a$ = Armature circuit inductance in henries

$V_o$ = Rated motor voltage in volts

$P$ = Number of poles

$N_1$ = Base speed in rpm

$I_a$ = Rated motor current in amperes

$C_x$ = Per unit value of armature circuit reactance at base speed frequency. (Typically, the armature circuit reactance, at base speed frequency, has a per unit value which will equal or exceed 0.1 for motors having compensating windings and 0.4 for motors without compensating windings.)

Since the value of $C_x$ varies with machine construction, the armature circuit inductance calculated by this formula is an approximation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

The manufacturer should be contacted if a more accurate value of the saturated inductance is required. Besides the armature circuit inductance, the current ripple calculation may include the effects of cable inductance, series inductor(s) (either integral with, or separate from, the power supply), and the inductance of the supply transformer.

### 23.26.3 Bearing Currents

When a direct-current motor is operated from some unfiltered rectifier power supplies, bearing currents may result. Ripple currents, transmitted by capacitive coupling between the rotor winding and core, may flow to ground. While these currents are small in magnitude, they may cause damage to either antifriction or sleeve bearings under certain circumstances. It is recommended that manufacturers be consulted to determine whether bearing currents may be a problem and, if so, what measures can be taken to minimize them.

## 23.27 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT MOTORS BELOW BASE SPEED BY REDUCED ARMATURE VOLTAGE

When a direct-current motor is operated below base speed by reduced armature voltage, it may be necessary to reduce its torque load below rated full-load torque to avoid overheating of the motor.

## 23.28 RATE OF CHANGE OF LOAD CURRENT

Direct-current motors can be expected to operate successfully with repetitive changes in load current such as those which occur during a regular duty cycle provided that, for each change in current, the factor K, as defined in the following formula, does not exceed 15.

$$K = \frac{(\text{Change in current / rated} - \text{load current})^2}{\text{Equivalent time in seconds for current change to occur}}$$

In the formula, the equivalent time for the current change to occur is the time which would be required for the change if the current increased or decreased at a uniform rate equal to the maximum rate at which it actually increases or decreases (neglecting any high-frequency ripple).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 24

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section III
# LARGE MACHINES
# Part 24
# LARGE MACHINES—DC GENERATORS LARGER THAN 1.0 KILOWATT PER RPM, OPEN TYPE CLASSIFICATION

## 24.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 24 of Section III cover direct-current generators built in frames larger than that having a continuous dripproof rating, or equivalent capacity, of 1.0 kilowatt per rpm, open type.

## 24.1 GENERAL INDUSTRIAL GENERATORS

These generators are designed for all general industrial service (excepting metal rolling mill service).

## 24.2 METAL ROLLING MILL GENERATORS

These generators are designed particularly for metal rolling mill service (except for reversing hot mill service, see 24.3). These generators differ in design from general industrial generators because of the requirements for this service which are as follows:

a. Continuous overload capability (see 24.41).
b. High momentary overload (see 24.41).

## 24.3 REVERSING HOT MILL GENERATORS

These generators are designed particularly for application to reversing hot mills, such as blooming and slabbing mills. They are characterized by:

a. No continuous overload capability
b. Higher momentary overload capacity (see 24.41)

## RATINGS

## 24.9 BASIS OF RATING

Direct-current generators covered by this Part 24 shall be rated on a continuous-duty basis unless otherwise specified. The rating shall be expressed in kilowatts available at the terminals at rated speed and voltage.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 24.10 KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS

Kilowatt, speed, and voltage ratings shall be as shown in Table 24-1.

**Table 24-1**
**KILOWATT, SPEED, AND VOLTAGE RATINGS FOR DC GENERATORS LARGER THAN 1.0 KILOWATT PER RPM, OPEN TYPE**

| | Speed, Rpm | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **kW** | **900** | **720** | **600** | **514** | **450** | **400** | **360** | **327** | **300** | **277** | **257** | **240** | **225** | **200** |
| 125 | For smaller ratings, see 15.10 | | | | | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 170 | | | | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 200 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 240 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A |
| 320 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A |
| 400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A |
| 480 | ... | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A |
| 560 | ... | ... | ... | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A |
| 640 | ... | ... | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 720 | ... | ... | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 800 | ... | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 1000 | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 1200 | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 1400 | C | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 1600 | C | C | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 1800 | ... | C | C | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 2000 | ... | C | C | C | C | C | B | B | B | B | B | B | B | B |
| 2400 | ... | ... | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C | C |
| 2800 | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 3200 | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 3600 | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 4000 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 4800 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 5600 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D | D |
| 6400 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | D | D | D | D |

"A" indicates voltage rating at either 250 or 500 volts.
"B" indicates voltage ratings at either 250, 500, or 700 volts.
"C" indicates voltage rating at either 500 or 700 volts.
"D" indicates voltage rating at 700 volts only.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## TESTS AND PERFORMANCE

### 24.40 TEMPERATURE RISE

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the generator, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in the following table. The temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the table are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113.

| Item | Machine Part | Method of Temperature Determination* | Observable Temperature Rises, Degrees C | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | General Industrial Service | | | | | | | | Metal Rolling Mill Service | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Metal Rolling Mills, Excluding Reversing Hot Mills | | | | | | Reversing Hot Mills | | |
| | | | Semi-enclosed | | | | Totally-enclosed | | | | Forced-ventilated or Totally-enclosed Water-air-cooled | | | | | | Forced-ventilated or Totally-enclosed Water-air-cooled | | |
| | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | | 2 Hours† 125% Load | | | Continuous Rated 100% Load | | |
| | | | Insulation Class | | | | Insulation Class | | | | Insulation Class | | | Insulation Class | | | Insulation Class | | |
| | | | A | B | F | H | A | B | F | H | B | F | H | B | F | H | B | F | H |
| 1 | Armature windings and all other windings other than those given in items 2 and 3 | Thermometer | 50 | 70 | 90 | 110 | 55 | 75 | 95 | 115 | 40 | 60 | 75 | 55 | 75 | 95 | 50 | 70 | 90 |
| | | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 60 | 90 | 110 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 2 | Multilayer field windings | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 60 | 90 | 110 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 3 | Single-layer field windings with exposed uninsulated surfaces and bare copper windings | Thermometer | 60 | 80 | 105 | 130 | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 | 50 | 70 | 90 | 65 | 85 | 110 | 60 | 80 | 105 |
| | | Resistance | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 70 | 100 | 130 | 155 | 60 | 90 | 110 | 80 | 110 | 135 | 70 | 100 | 130 |
| 4 | Commutator and collector rings | Thermometer | 65 | 85 | 105 | 125 | 65 | 85 | 105 | 125 | 55 | 75 | 90 | 65 | 85 | 105 | 65 | 85 | 105 |
| 5 | The temperatures attained by cores, commutators, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

*Where two methods of temperature measurement are listed, a temperature rise within the values listed in the table measured by either method demonstrates conformity with the standard.
†Temperature limits apply at end of 2-hour operation at 125-percent load following operation at rated load long enough to reach a stable temperature.

NOTE
1– See 1-1.66 for description of classes of insulation.
2— Abnormal deterioration of insulation may be expected if the ambient temperature of 40°C is exceeded in regular operation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 24.40.1 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher than 40°C

The temperature rises given in 24.40 are based on a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that dc generators may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of the generators in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the generators given in 24.40 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C.

(Exception—for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a) On machines designed for cooling water temperature of 5°C to 30°C—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.

b) On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures—the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises for the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in 24.40 by the number of degrees that the temperature of the air leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C.)

### 24.40.2 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in 24.40 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

### 24.40.3 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in 24.40 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled dc generators may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled dc generator is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in 24.40 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 24.40 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in 24.40 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in 24.40 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in 24.40 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 120 | 150 | 180 | 205 |

*Note—This requirement does not include water- cooled machines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to 24.40

For example: A dc generator for general industrial service with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 180°C and from 24.40 the Temperature Rise Limit based on resistance is 130°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{180^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\text{O}}\text{C} + 130^{\text{O}}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\text{O}}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\text{O}}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from 24.40 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 130°C + 13°C = 143°C.

## 24.41 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY

### 24.41.1 General Industrial Generators

These generators shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, a load of 150 percent of rated-load amperes for 1 minute with the rheostat set for rated load excitation and with no temperature rise specified. These generators have no continuous overload capability.

### 24.41.2 Metal Rolling Mill Generators (Excluding Reversing Hot Mill Generators)—Open, Forced-Ventilated, and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled

These generators shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, the following loads:

a. 115 percent of rated current continuously, when operating at rated speed and rated or less than rated voltage, with no temperature rise specified.
b. 125 percent of rated current for 2 hours, at rated speed and rated or less than rated voltage, following continuous operation at rated load without exceeding the temperature rises specified in 24.40 for this operating condition.
c. 200 percent of rated-load amperes for 1 minute with the rheostat set for rated load or lower excitation and with no temperature rise specified.

### 24.41.3 Reversing Hot Mill Generators—Forced-Ventilated and Totally Enclosed Water-Air-Cooled

These generators shall be capable of carrying, with successful commutation, a load of 275 percent of rated-load amperes for 1 minute with the rheostat set for rated-load excitation and with no temperature rise specified. These generators have no continuous overload capability.

## 24.42 MOMENTARY LOAD CAPACITY

Occasionally-applied momentary load capacity denotes the ability of a generator to carry loads in excess of its continuous rating for a period not to exceed 1 minute on an infrequent basis. It is recommended that the circuit breaker instantaneous-trip setting correspond to the occasionally-applied momentary load capacity.

Frequently-applied momentary load capacity denotes the ability of a generator to carry loads in excess of its rating on a repetitive basis, such as a part of a regular duty cycle.

Operation at the momentary load capacity should be followed by light load operation such that the rms load value of the complete load cycle does not exceed the continuous generator rating. Also, the time of operation at momentary load capacity must be limited to a period such that the rated temperature rise is not exceeded to ensure that the insulation life is not reduced.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 24.43 SUCCESSFUL COMMUTATION

Successful commutation is attained if neither the brushes nor the commutator are burned or injured in the conformance test or in normal service to the extent that abnormal maintenance is required. The presence of some visible sparking is not necessarily evidence of unsuccessful commutation.

## 24.44 OUTPUT AT REDUCED VOLTAGE

When operated at less than rated voltage, generators shall carry load currents equal to those corresponding to their kilowatt and voltage ratings.

## 24.45 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 113; efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, and speed.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of series windings
c. $I^2R$ loss of shunt field
d. Core loss
e. Stray load loss
f. Brush contact loss
g. Brush friction loss
h. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from the shaft of the machine
i. Friction and windage loss[1]

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. Where the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature.

---

1 In the case of generators furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the machine itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be specified.

In the case of generators furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculation.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Class of Insulation System* | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| A | 85 |
| B | 110 |
| F | 135 |
| H | 155 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system (e.g., generators for metal rolling mill service), the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

## 24.46 OVERSPEED

Direct-current generators shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand an overspeed of 25 percent without mechanical injury.

## 24.47 FIELD DATA FOR DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS

The following field data for direct current generators may be required by control manufacturers.

a. Manufacturer's name
b. Requisition or order number
c. Frame designation
d. Serial number
e. kW output
f. Shunt or compound-wound
g. Rated speed in rpm
h. Rated voltage
i. Rated current
j. Excitation voltage, or self-excited
k. Resistance of shunt field at 25°C
l. Recommended value of resistance for rheostat for hand or regulator control
m. N.L. saturation

| | Percent Rated Armature Voltage | Field Current Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| Max. field rheostat out | | |
| | | |
| | 100 | |
| | 50 | |
| Shunt field current at rated voltage and load | | |

## 24.48 ROUTINE TESTS

a. Field current at no load, rated voltage, and rated speed
b. Field current at rated load, rated voltage, and rated speed (commutation to be observed)
c. Voltage regulation curve
d. High-potential tests in accordance with 24.49

All tests shall be made in accordance with IEEE Std 113

## 24.49 HIGH POTENTIAL TESTS

### 24.49.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedure

See 3.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 24.49.2 Test Voltage

The test voltage shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine.

## 24.50 CONDITIONS OF TESTS FOR VOLTAGE REGULATION

For conditions of test for voltage regulation, see IEEE Std 113.

## 24.51 MECHANICAL VIBRATION

See Part 7.

# MANUFACTURING

## 24.61 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be given on all nameplates. For abbreviations see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Kilowatt output
c. Time rating (see 24.40)
d. Temperature rise[1]
e. Overload[2]
f. Time rating of overload[2]
g. Temperature rise for overload[1, 2]
h. Rated speed in rpm
i. Voltage rating[3]
j. Rated current in amperes
k. Winding—series, shunt or compound

# APPLICATION DATA

## 24.80 SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 24.80.1 General

Generators should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to this Part 24 are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such

---

[1] As an alternative marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following.

a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the machine is designed (see 20.40.1).
b. Insulation system designation (if field and armature use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the field being given first).

[2] Applies only to generators having overload capabilities for which temperature rises are given.

[3] Both rated and no-load voltage to be given for compound-wound generators.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driving equipment and the generator manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 24.80.2 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a. An ambient temperature not less than 10°C nor more than 40°C
b. An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. A location or supplementary enclosures, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the generator

### 24.80.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the generator. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
   1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
   2. Lint or very dirty conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
   3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
   4. Nuclear radiation
   5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
   6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
   7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
   8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the generator shaft
b. Operation at:
   1. Voltages above rated voltage
   2. Speeds other than rated speed
   3. Standstill with any winding continuously energized
c. Operation where low noise levels are required
d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position
e. Operation in parallel with other power sources

## 24.81 RATE OF CHANGE OF LOAD CURRENT

Direct-current generators can be expected to operate successfully with repetitive changes in load current such as those which occur during a regular duty cycle provided that, for each change in current, the factor K, as defined in the following formula, does not exceed 15.

In the formula, the equivalent time for the current change to occur is the time which would be required for the change if the current increased or decreased at a uniform rate equal to the maximum rate at which it actually increases or decreases (neglecting any high-frequency ripple).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

$$K = \frac{(\text{Change in current / rated} - \text{load current})^2}{\text{Equivalent time in seconds for current change to occur}}$$

## 24.82 SUCCESSFUL PARALLEL OPERATION OF GENERATORS

Successful parallel operation is attained if the load of any generator does not differ more than plus or minus 15 percent of its rated kilowatt load from its proportionate share, based on the generator ratings of the combined load, for any change in the combined load between 20 percent and 100 percent of the sum of the rated load of all of the generators. Successful parallel operation is considered to be obtained when the following conditions are met:

a. The generators should be at their normal operating temperatures.

b. The speed of the generators should be constant or decreasing with the change in speed proportional to the change in load to agree with the speed regulation of the prime mover.

c. For compound-wound machines, the voltage drop at rated-load current across the series-field circuit (including the series-field proper, cables between series field, and main bus) of all machines should be made by the insertion of resistance if necessary.

d. Between any two compound wound machines, the equalizer connection circuit should have a resistance not exceeding 20 percent of the resistance of the series-field circuit of the smaller machine. However, lower values of resistance are desirable.

## 24.83 OPERATION OF DIRECT-CURRENT GENERATORS IN PARALLEL WITH RECTIFIED ALTERNATING-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY

### 24.83.1 General

When a direct-current generator is operated in parallel with a rectified alternating-voltage power supply, its performance may differ materially from that of the same generator when operated individually or in parallel with another direct-current generator. At the same time, its temperature rise, voltage regulation, and noise level may be increased, and successful commutation may not be achieved. The degree of difference will depend upon the magnitude of the ripple voltage impressed upon the commutator and is more likely to be significant when the rectifier pulse number is less than 6 or the amount of phase control is more than 15 percent or both.

### 24.83.2 Operation in Parallel with Power Supply with Ripple

If the rectified alternating-voltage power supply has a continuous pulsation or ripple in its output voltage, this ripple voltage will be impressed across the generator commutator. The performance standards for direct-current generators in this Part 24 are based on individual operation or operation in parallel with a generator or battery and do not necessarily apply if the generator is operated in parallel with a power supply in which the magnitude of the resultant ripple current (peak to peak), expressed in percent of rated generator current, exceeds 6 percent at rated load and rated armature voltage.

### 24.83.3 Bearing Currents

When a direct-current generator is operated in parallel with some unfiltered rectifier power supplies, bearing currents may result. Ripple currents, transmitted by capacitive coupling between the rotor winding and core, may flow to ground. While these currents are small in magnitude, they may cause damage to either antifriction or sleeve bearings under certain circumstances. It is recommended that manufacturers be consulted to determine whether bearing currents may be a problem and, if so, what measures can be taken to minimize them.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 24.84 COMPOUNDING

### 24.84.1 Flat Compounding

Flat-compounded generators should have the series winding so proportioned that the terminal voltage at no load is essentially the same as at rated load when the generator is operated at rated speed and normal operating temperature and with the field rheostat set to obtain rated voltage at rated load and left unchanged.

### 24.84.2 Other

Other compounding of generators may be required to provide individual characteristics. Over-compounded generators should have the series windings so proportioned that the terminal voltage at rated load is greater than at no load when the generator is operated at rated speed and normal operating temperature and with the field rheostat set to obtain rated voltage at rated load and left unchanged. A dropping voltage-current characteristic curve where the voltage at rated load in less than the no-load voltage is used for some applications and may require the series windings to be connected in differential with respect to the shunt field.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 30

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section IV
# PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 30
# APPLICATION CONSIDERATIONS FOR CONSTANT SPEED MOTORS USED ON A SINUSOIDAL BUS WITH HARMONIC CONTENT AND GENERAL PURPOSE MOTORS USED WITH ADJUSTABLE-VOLTAGE OR ADJUSTABLE-FREQUENCY CONTROLS OR BOTH

## 30.0 SCOPE

The information in this Section applies to 60 Hz NEMA Designs A and B squirrel-cage motors covered by Part 12 and to motors covered by Part 20 rated 5000 horsepower or less at 7200 volts or less, when used on a sinusoidal bus with harmonic content, or when used with adjustable-voltage or adjustable-frequency controls, or both.

NEMA Designs C and D motors and motors larger than 5000 horsepower and voltages greater than 7200 volts are excluded from this section and the manufacturer should be consulted regarding their application.

For motors intended for use in hazardous (classified) locations refer to 30.2.2.10.

## 30.1 APPLICATION CONSIDERATIONS FOR CONSTANT SPEED MOTORS USED ON A SINUSOIDAL BUS WITH HARMONIC CONTENT

### 30.1.1 Efficiency

Efficiency will be reduced when a motor is operated on a bus with harmonic content. The harmonics present will increase the electrical losses which, in turn, decrease efficiency. This increase in losses will also result in an increase in motor temperature, which further reduces efficiency.

### 30.1.2 Derating for Harmonic Content

Harmonic currents are introduced when the line voltages applied to a polyphase induction motor include voltage components at frequencies other than nominal (fundamental) frequency of the supply. Consequently, the temperature rise of the motor operating at a particular load and per unit voltage harmonic factor will be greater than that for the motor operating under the same conditions with only voltage at the fundamental frequency applied.

When a motor is operated at its rated conditions and the voltage applied to the motor consists of components at frequencies other than the nominal frequency, the rated horsepower of the motor should be multiplied by the factor shown in Figure 30-1 to reduce the possibility of damage to the motor. This curve is developed under the assumption that only harmonics equal to odd multiples (except those divisible by three) of the fundamental frequency are present. It is assumed that any voltage unbalance or any even harmonics, or both, present in the voltage are negligible. This derating curve is not intended to apply when the motor is operated at other than its rated frequency nor when operated from an adjustable voltage or an adjustable frequency power supply, or both.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

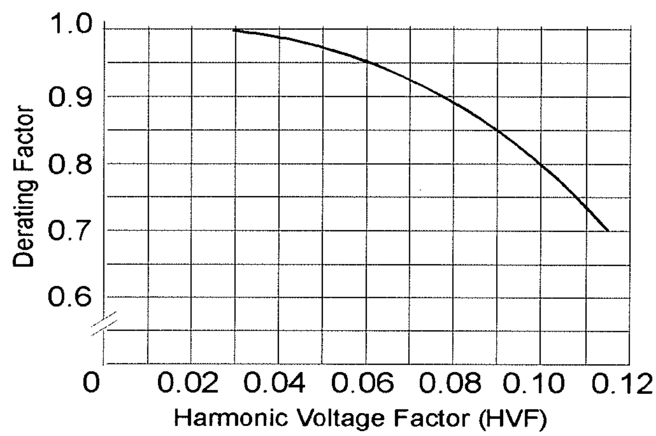



**Figure 30-1**
**DERATING CURVE FOR HARMONIC VOLTAGES**

### 30.1.2.1 Harmonic Voltage Factor (HVF) Defined

The harmonic voltage factor (HVF) is defined as follows:

$$\sqrt{\sum_{n=5}^{n=\infty} \frac{V_n^2}{n}}$$

Where:

n = order of odd harmonic, not including those divisible by three
$V_n$ = the per-unit magnitude of the voltage at the $n^{th}$ harmonic frequency

Example: With per-unit voltages of 0.10, 0.07, 0.045, and 0.036 occurring at the 5, 7, 11, and 13th harmonics, respectively, the value of the HVF is:

$$\sqrt{\frac{0.10^2}{5} + \frac{0.07^2}{7} + \frac{0.045^2}{11} + \frac{0.036^2}{13}} = 0.0546$$

### 30.1.3 Power Factor Correction

The proper application of power capacitors to a bus with harmonic currents requires an analysis of the power system to avoid potential harmonic resonance of the power capacitors in combination with transformer and circuit inductance. For power distribution systems which have several motors connected to a bus, power capacitors connected to the bus rather than switched with individual motors are recommended to minimize potentially resonant combinations of capacitance and inductance, and to simplify the application of any tuning filters that may be required. This requires that such bus-connected capacitor banks be sized so that proper bus voltage limits are maintained. (See 14.44 or 20.34.)

## 30.2 GENERAL PURPOSE MOTORS USED WITH ADJUSTABLE-VOLTAGE OR ADJUSTABLE-FREQUENCY CONTROLS OR BOTH

### 30.2.1 Definitions

### 30.2.1.1 Base Rating Point

Base rating point for motors defines a reference operating point at a specified speed, fundamental voltage, and torque or horsepower.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 30.2.1.2 Breakaway Torque (Motor)

The torque that a motor produces at zero speed when operating on a control.

#### 30.2.1.3 Constant-Horsepower Speed Range (Drive)

The portion of its speed range within which the drive is capable of maintaining essentially constant horsepower.

#### 30.2.1.4 Constant-Torque Speed Range (Drive)

The portion of its speed range within which the drive is capable of maintaining essentially constant torque.

#### 30.2.1.5 Control

The term "control" applies to devices that are also called inverters and converters. They are electronic devices that convert an input AC or DC power into a controlled output AC voltage or current.

#### 30.2.1.6 Drive

The equipment used for converting available electrical power into mechanical power suitable for the operation of a machine. A drive is a combination of a power converter (control), motor, and any motor mounted auxiliary devices.

Examples of motor mounted auxiliary devices are encoders, tachometers, thermal switches and detectors, air blowers, heaters, and vibration sensors.

#### 30.2.1.7 (Drive) Speed-Range

All the speeds that can be obtained in a stable manner by action of part (or parts) of the control equipment governing the performance of the motor.

#### 30.2.1.8 (Drive) System Response

The total (transient plus steady state) time response resulting from a sudden change from one level of control input to another.

#### 30.2.1.9 Magnetizing Current (Motor)

The reactive current which flows in a motor operating at no load.

#### 30.2.1.10 Maximum Operating Speed (Motor)

Maximum operating speed is the upper limit of the rotational velocity at which a motor may operate based on mechanical considerations.

#### 30.2.1.11 Motor Output Capability

The mechanical output capability of the motor when operated on a control. Generally the motor is capable of producing constant torque (horsepower proportional to speed) at and below base rated speed, and constant horsepower (torque inversely proportional to speed) at and above base rated speed, except where limited by the following:

a. Effect of reduced speed on cooling (see 30.2.2.2.2);
b. Additional losses introduced by harmonic content (under consideration);
c. Torque produced when operated within the limitations of the control output power (see 30.2.2.2.3).

#### 30.2.1.12 Overload Capability (Motor)

The maximum load a motor can carry for a specified period of time without permanent damage or significant performance deterioration.

#### 30.2.1.13 Pulsating Torque

The single amplitude of variation in torque from the average torque.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**30.2.1.14 Pulse Frequency**

Pulse frequency (also called carrier frequency, switching frequency, and chopping frequency) is the frequency of the switching pulses used by a control to generate the output voltage or current wave form.

**30.2.1.15 Pulse Width Modulated Control**

A control where the frequency and magnitude of the output voltage or current are accomplished by pulse modulation in which the duration of the pulses is varied.

**30.2.1.16 Rated Temperature**

The maximum allowable winding temperature of the motor when the drive is delivering rated output at any speed within the rated speed range for a defined and specified period of time.

**30.2.1.17 Regeneration**

The process of returning energy to the power source.

**30.2.1.18 Regenerative Braking**

A form of dynamic braking in which the kinetic energy of the motor and driven machinery is returned to the power supply system.

**30.2.1.19 Rise Time (Voltage)**

The time required for the voltage to make the change from 10% of the steady-state value to 90% of the steady-state value, either before overshoot or in the absence of overshoot. See Figure 30-5.

**30.2.1.20 Six Step Control**

A control where the frequency and magnitude of the output voltage or current are accomplished by creating a wave form made up of 6 discrete steps.

**30.2.1.21 Slip**

Slip is the quotient of (A) the difference between synchronous speed and the actual speed of the rotor to (B) the synchronous speed, expressed as a ratio or as a percentage.

**30.2.1.22 Slip Rpm**

Slip rpm is the difference between the speed of a rotating magnetic field (synchronous speed) and that of a rotor, expressed in revolutions per minute.

**30.2.1.23 Speed Stability**

Speed stability is the amplitude of the variation in speed from the average speed, expressed in percent, throughout the entire speed range when the drive is connected to the driven equipment.

**30.2.1.24 Variable -Torque Speed Range (Drive)**

The portion of its speed range within which the drive is capable of maintaining a varying level of torque (for the defined time rating) generally increasing with speed. It is common for the term variable-torque to be used when referring to a torque which varies as the square of the speed and hence the power output varies as the cube of the speed.

**30.2.1.25 Voltage Boost**

An additional amount of control output voltage, above the value based on constant volts per hertz, applied at any frequency. It is generally applied at lower frequencies to compensate for the voltage drop in the stator winding.

**30.2.1.26 Volts/Hertz Ratio (Base)**

The base volts/hertz ratio is the ratio of fundamental voltage to frequency at the base rating point.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 30.2.2 Application Considerations

#### 30.2.2.1 Base Rating Point (Motor)

When a motor is applied to a control, the nameplate data shall be its base rating point.

#### 30.2.2.2 Torque

##### 30.2.2.2.1 Motor Torque During Operation Below Base Speed

To develop constant torque below base speed by maintaining constant air-gap flux the motor input voltage should be varied to maintain approximately rated volts per hertz. At frequencies below approximately 30 hertz, an increase in the volts per hertz ratio (boost voltage) may be required to maintain constant air-gap flux (i.e., constant torque). For applications that require less than rated torque below base speed, system economics may be improved by operation at a reduced volts per hertz ratio.

##### 30.2.2.2.2 Torque Derating Based on Reduction in Cooling

Induction motors to be operated in adjustable-speed drive applications should be derated due to the reduction in cooling resulting from any reduction in operating speed. This derating should be in accordance with Figure 30-2. This derating may be accomplished by or inherent in the load speed-torque characteristics, or may require selection of an oversized motor. The curves are applicable only to the NEMA frame sizes and Design types as indicated, and as noted, additional derating for harmonics may be required. For larger NEMA frames or other Design types consult the motor manufacturer.

The curves in Figure 30-2 represent the thermal capability of Design A and B motors under the conditions noted, and are based on non-injurious heating which may exceed the rated temperature rise for 1.0 service factor motors (see 12.44) for the class of insulation. This is analogous to operation of a 1.15 service factor motor at service factor load (with rated voltage and frequency applied) as evidenced by the 115 percent point at 60 hertz for a 1.15 service factor motor.

##### 30.2.2.2.3 Torque Derating During Control Operation

Induction motors to be operated in adjustable-speed drive applications should also be derated as a result of the effect of additional losses introduced by harmonics generated by the control. The torque available from the motor for continuous operation is usually lower than on a sinusoidal voltage source. The reduction results from the additional temperature rise due to harmonic losses and also from the voltage-frequency characteristics of some controls.

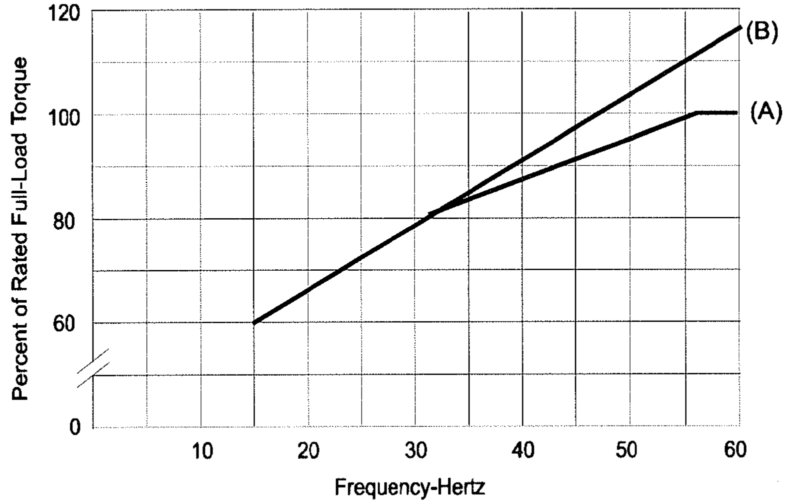
The temperature rise at any load-speed point depends on the individual motor design, the type of cooling, the effect of the reduction in speed on the cooling, the voltage applied to the motor, and the characteristics of the control. When determining the derating factor, the thermal reserve of the particular motor is important. Taking all of these matters into account, the derating factor at rated frequency ranges from 0 to 20 percent.

Figure 30-3 shows examples of a derating curve for a typical motor for which the thermal reserve of the motor at rated frequency is less than the additional temperature rise resulting from operation on a control and one for which the thermal reserve is greater. It is not possible to produce a curve which applies to all cases. Other motors with different thermal reserve, different methods of cooling (self-circulation cooling or independent cooling), and used with other types of controls will have different derating curves.

There is no established calculation method for determining the derating curve for a particular motor used with a particular control that can be used by anyone not familiar with all of the details of the motor and control characteristics. The preferred method for determining the derating curve for a class of motors is to test representative samples of the motor design under load while operating from a representative sample of the control design and measure the temperature rise of the winding.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

OPEN DRIPPROOF NEMA FRAMES 500 AND SMALLER




TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED NEMA FRAMES 500 AND SMALLER

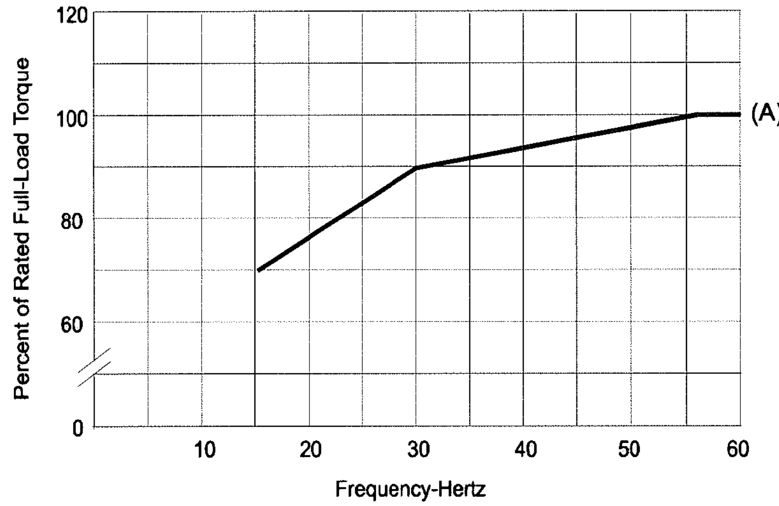



**Figure 30-2**
**THE EFFECT OF REDUCED COOLING ON THE TORQUE CAPABILITY AT REDUCED SPEEDS OF 60 HZ NEMA DESIGN A AND B MOTORS**

NOTES—

1. Curve identification
   a. Limit for Class B 80°C or Class F 105°C rise by resistance, 1.0 service factor.
   b. Limit for Class B 90°C or Class F 115°C rise by resistance, 1.15 service factor
2. All curves are based on a sinusoidal wave shape, rated air-gap flux. Additional derating for harmonic voltages should be applied as a multiplier to the above limits.
3. All curves are based on non-injurious heating which may exceed rated temperature rise.
4. Curves are applicable only to frame sizes and design types indicated. For larger frames or other design types consult the motor manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

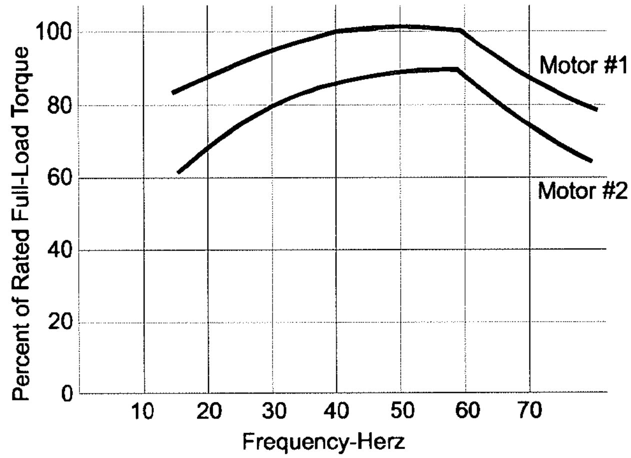



**Figure 30-3**
**EXAMPLES OF TORQUE DERATING OF NEMA MOTORS WHEN USED WITH ADJUSTABLE FREQUENCY CONTROLS**

NOTES—

1. Curve identification
    a. Motor #1: motor thermal reserve greater than the additional temperature rise resulting from operation on a control
    b. Motor #2: motor thermal reserve less than the additional temperature rise resulting from operation on a control

#### 30.2.2.2.4 Motor Torque During Operation Above Base Speed

Above base speed, a motor input voltage having a fundamental component equal to rated motor voltage (which may be limited by the control and its input power) as frequency increases will result in constant horsepower operation (torque reducing with reduced volts per hertz). The maximum (breakdown) torque capability of the motor within this speed range will limit the maximum frequency (and speed) at which constant horsepower operation is possible.

The curves in Figure 30-4 represent the load which the defined motor is capable of carrying above base speed. The curves represent operation at constant horsepower for 1.0 service factor motors and similar performance for 1.15 service factor motors. The maximum frequency of 90 hertz is established based on the approximate peak torque capability of greater than 175 percent for NEMA Design A and B motors assuming operation at a constant level of voltage equal to rated voltage from 60 to 90 hertz. For the capability of motors for which the minimum breakdown torque specified in 12.39.1 or 12.39.2 is less than 175 percent, consult the motor manufacturer.

For operation above 90 hertz at a required horsepower level, it may be necessary to utilize a motor with a greater horsepower rating at 60 hertz.

However, the maximum speed at which a motor can safely operate may be limited to some speed below the maximum speed related to its load carrying capability because of mechanical considerations (see 30.2.2.3).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

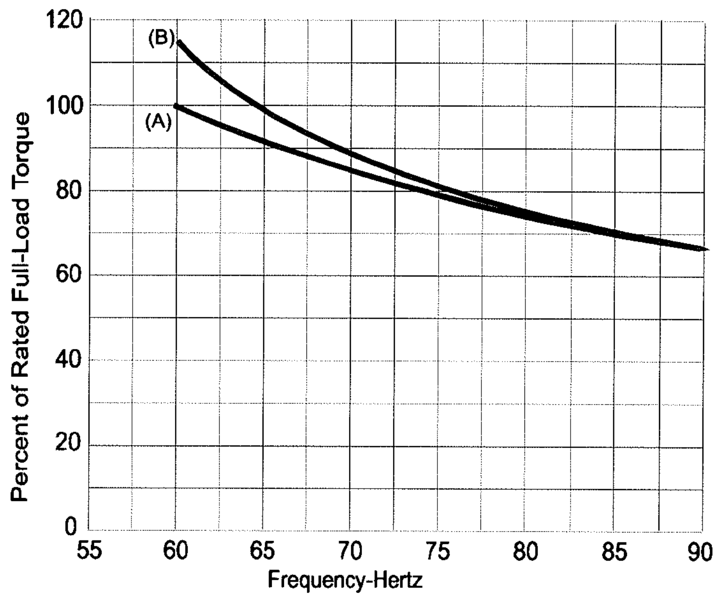



**Figure 30-4**
**TORQUE CAPABILITY ABOVE BASE SPEED**

NOTES—

1. Curve identification

   a. Limit for Class B 80°C or Class F 105°C rise by resistance, 1.0 service factor.
   b. Limit for Class B 90°C or Class F 115°C rise by resistance, 1.15 service factor

2. All curves are based on a sinusoidal wave shape, constant voltage equal to rated voltage. Additional derating for harmonic voltages should be applied as a multiplier to the above limits.
3. All curves are based on non-injurious heating which may exceed rated temperature rise.
4. Curves are applicable to NEMA Design A and B motors having breakdown torques of not less that 175 percent at 60 hertz.
5. See 30.2.2.3 for any additional limitations on the maximum operating speed.

### 30.2.2.3 Maximum Safe Operating Speeds

The maximum safe operating speed of a direct-coupled motor at 0–40°C ambient temperature should not exceed the values given in Table 30-1. For possible operation at speeds greater than those given in Table 30-1 or conditions other than those stated consult the motor manufacturer. For motors not covered by Table 30-1, refer to 12.53.1 or 20.13.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 30-1**
**MAXIMUM SAFE OPERATING SPEEDS FOR DIRECT-COUPLED MOTORS USED ON ADJUSTABLE FREQUENCY CONTROLS**

| | Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled | | | Open Dripproof | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Synchronous Speed at 60 Hz | | | | | |
| | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 | 3600 | 1800 | 1200 |
| Horsepower | Maximum Safe Operating Speed | | | | | |
| 1/4 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/3 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1/2 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3/4 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 1.5 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 2 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 3 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 5 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 7.5 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 7200 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 10 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 15 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 20 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 | 5400 | 3600 | 2400 |
| 25 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 30 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 40 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 5400 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 50 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 60 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 | 4500 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 75 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 | 3600 | 2700 | 2400 |
| 100 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 125 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 150 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 200 | 3600 | 2250 | 1800 | 3600 | 2700 | 1800 |
| 250 | 3600 | 2250 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 300 | 3600 | 2250 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 350 | 3600 | 1800 | 1800 | 3600 | 2300 | 1800 |
| 400 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 2300 | - |
| 450 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 2300 | - |
| 500 | 3600 | 1800 | - | 3600 | 2300 | - |

NOTES—

a. Standard NEMA Design A and B motors in frames per Part 13.

b. The permissible overspeed value is 10 percent above values in Table 30-1 (not to exceed 2 minutes in duration) except where the maximum safe operating speed is the same as the synchronous speed at 60 Hz, where the overspeeds referenced in 12.52.1 apply.

c. TS shaft over 250 frame size.

d. The values in the table are based on mechanical limitations. Within the operating limits noted in the table, the motor is capable of constant horsepower from 60 through 90 hertz. Above approximately 90 hertz the motor may not provide sufficient torque based on specified voltage to reach stable speeds while under load.

e. Operation above nameplate speed may require refined balance.

f. Contact the manufacturer for speeds and ratings not covered by the table.

g. Considerations:

1. Noise limits per 12.53 and vibration limits per Part 7 are not applicable.
2. Bearing life will be affected by the length of time the motor is operated at various speeds.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 30.2.2.4 Current

#### 30.2.2.4.1 Running Current

Controls are generally rated in terms of a continuous output current capability, a short term output current, and a peak output current. To properly choose the size of control required in an application, consideration should be given to the peak and transient values in addition to the rms value of motor current, and the manner in which the system is to be operated. Because some level of current will exist at each of the harmonic frequencies characteristic of the particular type of control, the total rms sum of current required by the motor at full load may be from 5 percent to 10 percent greater than that level of current corresponding to operation on a sinusoidal power source. The magnitude of the peak values of the current waveform may vary from 1.3 to 2.5 times the rms value of the current, depending on the type of control considered and the motor characteristics. An additional margin from 10 percent to 50 percent in the current rating of the control should be considered to allow for possible overload conditions on the motor so as not to trip the control on such short time overcurrent demand. When the motor and control are used in a system where sudden changes in load torque or frequency might occur, the control should be sized based on the peak value of the transient current which results from the sudden change. Also, when changing from one operating speed to another, if the rate of change in frequency is greater than the possible rate of change in motor speed and if the slip increases beyond the value of slip at rated load, then the amount of rms current or peak current required from the control may exceed that of the steady state requirements.

#### 30.2.2.4.2 Starting Current

In a stall condition, the amount of current drawn by an induction motor is primarily determined by the magnitude and frequency of the applied voltage and the impedance of the motor. Under adjustable frequency control, motors are normally started by applying voltage to the motor at a low frequency (less than 3 hertz). The current drawn by the motor under this condition is mainly a function of the equivalent stator and rotor resistances since the reactive impedance is small because of the low frequency. In order to provide sufficient starting torque, it is necessary to provide an increase in voltage (voltage boost) at low frequencies in order to overcome this resistive drop in the motor. This voltage boost is the product of the required phase current (for the level of breakaway torque needed) and the stator phase resistance and the square root of 3 (to convert phase quantity to line-to-line value). A wye connection is assumed. For rated torque at start it will be necessary to adjust the voltage boost to have at least rated current. Since stator and rotor resistances vary with temperature, the actual starting current will be a function of the machine temperature.

CAUTION — Continued application of boosted motor voltage at low frequencies under no load conditions will increase motor heating. When voltage boost is required to achieve a breakaway torque greater than 140 percent of rated torque, the motor should not be operated under voltage boost condition at frequencies less than 10 hertz for more than 1 minute without consulting the manufacturer.

### 30.2.2.5 Efficiency

Motor efficiency will be reduced when it is operated on a control. The harmonics present will increase the electrical losses, which decrease efficiency. This increase in losses will also result in an increase in motor temperature, which further reduces efficiency.

### 30.2.2.6 Sound

Sound levels should be considered when using induction motors with an adjustable frequency and voltage power supply. The sound level is dependent upon the construction of the motor, the number of poles, the pulse pattern and pulse frequency, and the fundamental frequency and resulting speed of the motor. The response frequencies of the driven equipment should also be considered. Sound levels produced thus will be higher than published values when operated above rated speed. At certain frequencies mechanical resonance or magnetic noise may cause a significant increase in sound levels, while a change in frequency and/or voltage may reduce the sound level.

Experience has shown that typically an increase in the A-weighted noise level by up to 6dB can occur at rated frequency when motors are used with non-PWM (pulse width modulated) controls, in comparison with operation on sinusoidal supply voltage and frequency. An increase of up to 5dB to 15dB can occur at rated frequency in the case when motors are used with PWM controls. For other frequencies the noise levels may be higher

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 30.2.2.7 Resonances, Sound, Vibration

When an induction motor is operated from a control, torque ripple at various frequencies may exist over the operating speed range. Consideration should be given to identifying the frequency and amplitude of these torques and determining the possible effect upon the motor and the driven equipment. It is of particular importance that the equipment not be operated longer than momentarily at a speed where a resonant condition exists between the torsional system and the electrical system (i.e., the motor electrical torque). For example, if the control is of the six step type then a sixth harmonic torque ripple is created which would vary from 36 to 360 hertz when the motor is operated over the frequency range of 6 to 60 hertz. At low speeds, such torque ripple may be apparent as observable oscillations of the shaft speed or as torque and speed pulsations (usually termed "cogging"). It is also possible that some speeds within the operating range may correspond to the natural mechanical frequencies of the load or support structure and operation other than momentarily could be damaging to the motor and or load and should be avoided at those speeds.

### 30.2.2.8 Voltage Stress

The exact quantitative effects of peak voltage and rise time on motor insulation are not fully understood. It can be assumed that when the motor is operated under usual service conditions (14.2 or 20.28.2) there will be no significant reduction in service life due to voltage stress, if the following voltage limit values at the motor terminals are observed.

Motors with base rating voltage $V_{rated} \leq 600$ volts:

$V_{peak} \leq 1kV$

Rise time $\geq 2\ \mu s$

See Figure 30-5 for a typical voltage response at the motor terminals for an illustration of $V_{peak}$ and rise time.

Motors with base rating voltage $V_{rated} > 600$ volts:

$V_{peak} \leq 2.04 * V_{rated}$

Rise time $\geq 1\ \mu s$

Where:

$V_{peak}$ is a single amplitude zero-to-peak line-to-line voltage.

CAUTION—When the input voltage to the control exceeds the rated voltage, care must be taken in determining the maximum peak voltage ($V_{peak}$) that will be applied to the motor by the control.

For suitability when values are outside these limits contact the manufacturer for guidance. A definite purpose motor per Part 31 may be required. Filters, chokes, or other voltage conditioning devices, applied with guidance from the control manufacturer may also be required.

### 30.2.2.9 Power Factor Correction

The use of power capacitors for power factor correction on the load side of an electronic control connected to an induction motor is not recommended. The proper application of such capacitors requires an analysis of the motor, electronic control, and load characteristics as a function of speed to avoid potential over-excitation of the motor, harmonic resonance, and capacitor over-voltage. For such applications the electronic control manufacturer should be consulted.

### 30.2.2.10 Operation in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

WARNING — Motors operated from adjustable frequency or adjustable voltage power supplies or both, should not be used in any Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations unless the motor is identified on the nameplate as acceptable for such operation when used in Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations.

For motors to be used in any Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

Failure to comply with this warning could result in an unsafe installation that could cause damage to property or serious injury or death to personnel, or both.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

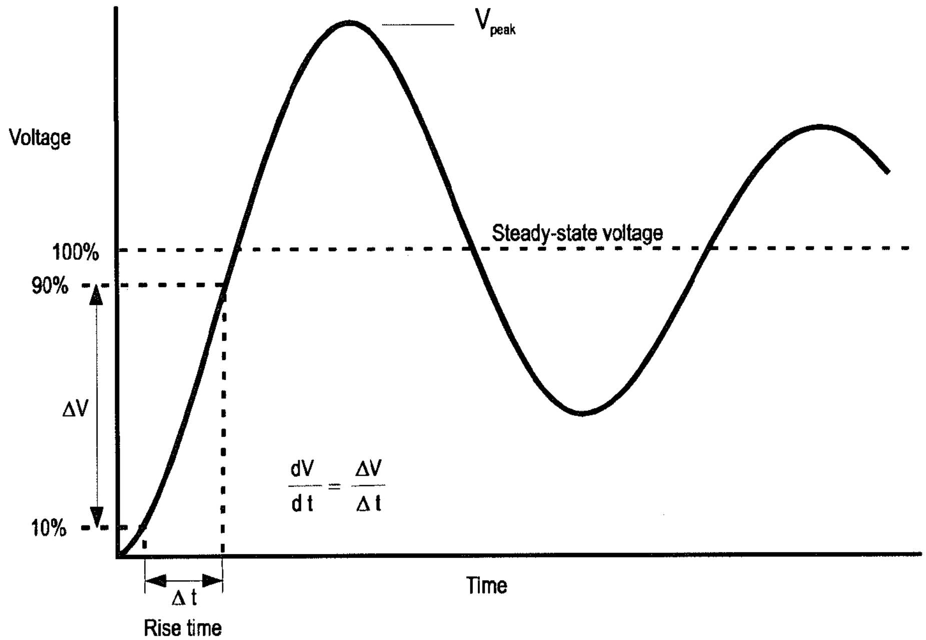



**Figure 30-5**
**TYPICAL VOLTAGE RESPONSE AT MOTOR TERMINALS**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 31

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section IV
# PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 31
# DEFINITE-PURPOSE INVERTER-FED POLYPHASE MOTORS

## 31.0 SCOPE

The information in this Section applies to definite purpose polyphase squirrel-cage induction motors rated 5000 horsepower or less at 7200 volts or less, intended for use with adjustable-voltage and adjustable-frequency controls, commonly referred to as inverters.

## 31.1 SERVICE CONDITIONS

### 31.1.1 General

Machines should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to Part 31 of this publication are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Special machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although past experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driven or driving equipment or the manufacturer of the machine, or both, should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and, as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 31.1.2 Usual Service Conditions

a. An ambient temperature in the range of -15°C to 40°C for machines with grease lubricated bearings, 0°C to 40°C for machines with oil lubricated bearings or, when water cooling is used, in the range of 5°C to 40°C
b. An altitude which does not exceed 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. Installation on a rigid mounting surface
d. Installation in areas or supplementary enclosures which do not seriously interfere with the ventilation of the machine
e. For medium motors
    1. V-belt drive in accordance with 14.67
    2. Flat-belt, chain, and gear drives in accordance with 14.7

### 31.1.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the motor. Among such conditions are:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

a. Exposure to:
    1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
    2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt may interfere with normal ventilation
    3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
    4. Nuclear radiation
    5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
    6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
    7. Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
    8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the motor shaft
b. Operation where:
    1. Low noise levels are required
    2. The voltage at the motor terminals is unbalanced by more than one percent
c. Operation at speeds above the highest rated speed
d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position
e. Operation where subjected to:
    1. Torsional impact loads
    2. Repetitive abnormal overloads
    3. Reversing or electric braking
f. Belt, gear, or chain drives for machines not covered by 31.1.2e
g. Multi-motor applications:

    Special consideration must be given to applications where more than one motor is used on the same control. Some of these considerations are:
    1. Possible large variation in load on motors where load sharing of two or more motors is required
    2. Protection of individual motors
    3. Starting or restarting of one or more motors
    4. Interaction between motors due to current perturbations caused by differences in motor loading

### 31.1.4 Operation in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

WARNING — Motors operated from inverters should not be used in any Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations unless the motor is identified on the nameplate as acceptable for such operation when used in Division 1 hazardous (classified) locations.

For motors to be used in any Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations, the motor manufacturer should be consulted.

Failure to comply with this warning could result in an unsafe installation that could cause damage to property or serious injury or death to personnel, or both.

## 31.2 DIMENSIONS, TOLERANCES, AND MOUNTING FOR FRAME DESIGNATIONS

Frame designations for medium definite-purpose inverter-fed motors shall be in accordance with Part 4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 31.3 RATING

### 31.3.1 Basis of Rating

Definite-purpose inverter-fed ac induction motors covered by this Part shall be rated based on identification of the applicable load points selected from the four load points shown in and defined in Figure 31-1. The base rating shall be defined coincident with point (3) in Figure 31-1 by specifying the motor voltage, speed, and horsepower or torque, at that point.

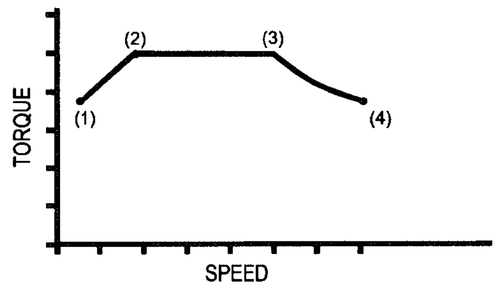



**Figure 31-1**
**BASIS OF RATING**

NOTES—
1 = Torque at minimum speed based on temperature considerations and voltage boost
2 = Lowest speed of the constant torque range based on temperature considerations
3 = Base rating point at upper end of constant torque range
4 = Maximum operating speed based on constant horsepower and any limitation on rotational speed

When the voltage ratings at reference points 3 and 4 are different, then, unless otherwise specified, the voltage is assumed to reach the maximum value at a frequency between points 3 and 4 per a constant volts to Hertz relationship equal to the voltage at point 3 divided by the frequency at point 3.

### 31.3.2 Base Horsepower and Speed Ratings

Preferred horsepower and speed ratings shall be as shown in Table 31-1.

NOTE—It is not practical to build induction motors of all horsepower ratings at all speeds.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 31-1**
**PREFERRED HORSEPOWER AND SPEED RATINGS**

| Output Horsepower | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/2 | 10 | 75 | 400 | 1250 | 4000 |
| 3/4 | 15 | 100 | 450 | 1500 | 4500 |
| 1 | 20 | 125 | 500 | 1750 | 5000 |
| 1-1/2 | 25 | 150 | 600 | 2000 | - |
| 2 | 30 | 200 | 700 | 2250 | - |
| 3 | 40 | 250 | 800 | 2500 | - |
| 5 | 50 | 300 | 900 | 3000 | - |
| 7-1/2 | 60 | 350 | 1000 | 3500 | - |

| Speed (RPM) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 300 | 650 | 1750 | 5000 |
| 400 | 850 | 2500 | 7000 |
| 500 | 1150 | 3500 | 10000 |

### 31.3.3 Speed Range

Defined speed ranges illustrated by the points shown in Figure 31-1 are based on the base rating point (3) speed for a given machine.

#### 31.3.3.1 Lowest Speed of Constant Torque Range—Point (2)

The preferred ratio of speed at base rating point (3) to that at point (2) shall be 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 10, 20, or 100, except where point (2) is zero rpm, in which case the ratio is undefined. (Example: expressed as 6 to 1, 6:1.)

#### 31.3.3.2 Maximum Operating Speed—Point (4)

The preferred ratio of speed at point (4) to that of base rating point (3) shall be 1, 1-1/2, 2, 2-1/2, 3, or 4.

#### 31.3.3.3 Minimum Speed—Point (1)

The minimum speed may be zero.

NOTE— It is not practical to build induction motors of all horsepower ratings at all speed ranges or combinations of speed ranges.

#### 31.3.3.4 Other Speed Ranges

Other speed ranges may be specified by agreement between the purchaser and manufacturer.

### 31.3.4 Voltage

Preferred voltages shall be 115, 230, 460, 575, 2300, 4000, 4600, 6600, and 7200 volts. These voltage ratings apply to the maximum level of the rms fundamental voltage to be applied to the motor over the rated speed range.

NOTE—It is not practical to build induction motors of all horsepower ratings at all voltages.

### 31.3.5 Number of Phases

The preferred number of phases is three (3).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 31.3.6 Direction of Rotation

a. F1 or F2 arrangement, foot mounted:

The standard direction of rotation for definite purpose inverter-fed motors having an F1 or F2 arrangement and foot mounting is counter-clockwise when phase sequence 1, 2, and 3 of the power from the control is applied to terminals T1, T2, and T3 of the motor, respectively, when facing the end of the motor for which the conduit box is on the right and the feet are down.

b. Other arrangements:

The standard direction of rotation for definite purpose inverter-fed motors having arrangements other than F1 or F2 is counter-clockwise when phase sequence 1, 2, and 3 of the power from the control is applied to terminals T1, T2, and T3 of the motor, respectively, when facing the opposite drive end.

WARNING—The phase sequence of the output power from the control may not be the same as the phase sequence of the power into the control. Direction of rotation should be checked by momentary application of voltage to the motor before connecting the motor to the driven equipment.

### 31.3.7 Service Factor

A motor covered by this Part 31 shall have a service factor of 1.0.

### 31.3.8 Duty

#### 31.3.8.1 Variable Speed

The motor is intended for varied operation over the defined speed range and not for continuous operation at a single or limited number of speeds.

#### 31.3.8.2 Continuous

The motor can be operated continuously at any single speed within the defined speed range.

## 31.4 PERFORMANCE

### 31.4.1 Temperature Rise

#### 31.4.1.1 Maximum Temperature Rise for Variable Speed Duty

The maximum intermittent temperature rise of the windings, above the temperature of the cooling medium, shall not exceed the values given in Table 31-2 when tested at any rated load within the rated speed range with the identified control. The relative equivalent temperature rise $T_E$ for a defined load/speed cycle as determined according to 31.4.1.2 shall not exceed the values given in the table. All temperature rises in the table are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C.

The temperature attained by cores, squirrel-cage windings, and miscellaneous parts shall not injure the insulation of the machine in any respect.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 31-2**
**TEMPERATURE RISE**

| Insulation Class | Maximum Intermittent Winding Temperature Rise Degrees C — Method of Temperature Determination: Resistance | Maximum Intermittent Winding Temperature Rise Degrees C — Method of Temperature Determination: Embedded Detector | Relative Equivalent Temperature Rise ($T_E$) Degrees C — Method of Temperature Determination: Resistance | Relative Equivalent Temperature Rise ($T_E$) Degrees C — Method of Temperature Determination: Embedded Detector |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | 70 | 80 | 60 | 70 |
| B | 100 | 110 | 80 | 90 |
| F* | 130 | 140 | 105 | 115 |
| H* | 155 | 170 | 125 | 140 |

* Where a Class F or H insulation system is used, special consideration should be given to bearing temperature, lubrication etc.

### 31.4.1.2 Relative Equivalent Temperature Rise For Variable Speed Duty

The load cycle of the definite purpose inverter-fed motor may be comprised of varying load conditions at varying speeds within the defined speed range. The minimum load within a load cycle may have the value zero.

The reference to a load cycle, given in this standard, is to be considered as integral figures over a long period of time such that thermal equilibrium is reached. It is not necessary that each cycle be exactly the same as another (which would be periodic duty, which implies times too short for thermal equilibrium to be reached). They will be similar and can be integrated to give a nominal pattern with the same thermal life expectancy. An example of a load cycle based on temperature and time of operation is shown in Figure 31-2.

The rate of thermal aging of the insulation system will be dependent on the value of the temperature and the duration of operation at the different loads and speeds within the load cycle. A thermal life expectancy of the motor operating over the load cycle can be derived in relation to that for the motor operating continuously at a temperature equal to that for the temperature classification of the insulation system. This relative thermal life expectancy can be calculated by the following equation:

$$\frac{1}{TL} = \Delta t_1 \times 2^{\frac{\Delta T_1}{K}} + \Delta t_2 \times 2^{\frac{\Delta T_2}{K}} + \ldots + \Delta t_n \times 2^{\frac{\Delta T_n}{K}}$$

Where:

TL = relative thermal life expectancy for the load cycle related to the thermal life expectancy for continuous operation at the temperature rating of the insulation class

$\Delta T_1 \ldots \Delta T_n$ = difference between the temperature rise of the winding at each of the various loads within the load cycle and the permissible temperature rise for the insulation class

$\Delta t_1 \ldots \Delta t_n$ = period of time for operation at the various loads expressed as a per unit value of the total time for the load cycle

k = 10°C = difference in temperature rise which results in a shortening of the thermal life expectancy of the insulation system by 50%

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

A relative equivalent temperature rise based on continuous operation at that temperature rise for the load cycle time and resulting in the same level of relative thermal life expectancy for the defined load cycle can be determined as follows:

$$T_E = k \times LOG_2\left(\frac{1}{TL}\right) + T_R$$

$$[or\ T_E = K \times 3.322 \times Log_{10}\left(\frac{1}{TL}\right) + T_R]$$

Where:

$T_E$ = relative equivalent temperature rise

$T_R$ = permissible temperature rise for insulation class (Figure 31-2; for example see 12.43, 12.44, or 20.8)

### 31.4.1.3 Maximum Temperature Rise for Continuous Duty

The maximum temperature rise of the windings, above the temperature of the cooling medium, shall not exceed the values given for relative equivalent temperature rise in Table 31-2.

### 31.4.1.4 Temperature Rise for Ambients Higher Than 40°C

The temperature rises given in Table 31-2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that induction machines may be required to operate in an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of induction machines in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the machines given in Table 31-2 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. When a higher ambient temperature than 40°C is required, preferred values of ambient temperatures are 50°C , 65°C , 90°C , and 115°C.

### 31.4.1.5 Temperature Rise for Altitudes Greater than 3300 Feet (1000 Meters)

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in Table 31-2 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

Preferred values of altitude are 3300 feet (1000 meters), 6600 feet (2000 meters), 9900 feet (3000 meters), and 13200 feet (4000 meters).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

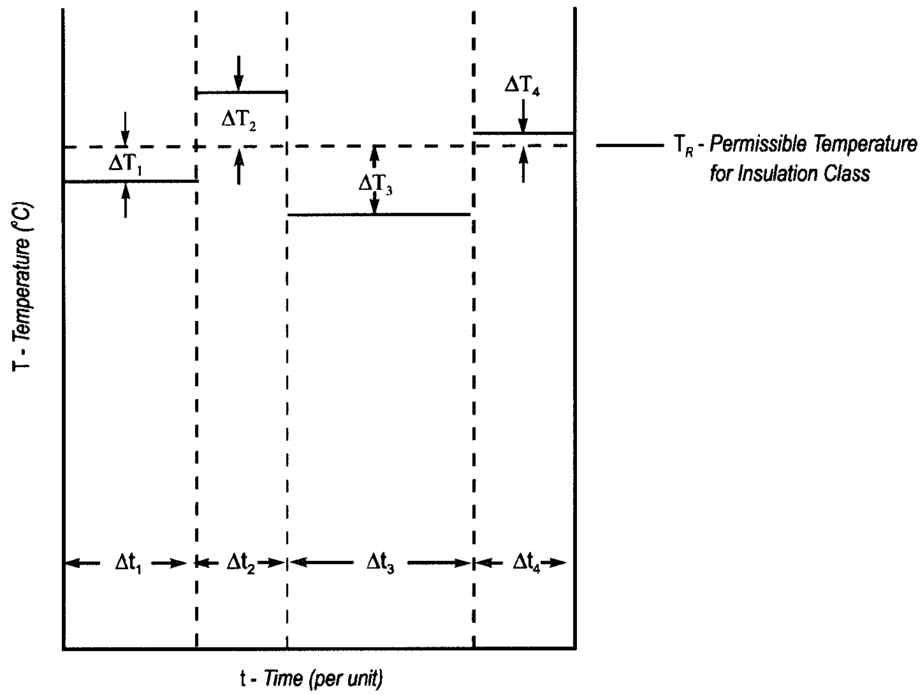



**Figure 31-2**
**LOAD CYCLE BASED ON TEMPERATURE AND TIME OF OPERATION**

#### 31.4.1.6 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in Table 31-2 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled induction motors may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled induction motor is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in table 31-2 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 31-2 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 31-2 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For motors for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 31-2 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 31-2 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 120 | 150 | 180 | 205 |

*Note—This requirement does not include water-cooled machines.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to Table 31-2

For example: An inverter-fed induction motor with a Class F insulation system is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 180°C and from Table 31-2 the Temperature Rise Limit is 130°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{180^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\circ}\text{C} + 130^{\circ}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\circ}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\circ}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from Table 31-2 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 130°C + 13°C = 143°C.

### 31.4.2 Torque

#### 31.4.2.1 Breakaway Torque

The motor should be capable of producing a breakaway torque of at least 140% of rated torque requiring not more than 150% rated current when the voltage boost is adjusted to develop rated flux in the motor and when the inverter is able to produce the required minimum fundamental frequencies.

For frequencies below 5 hertz rated flux occurs approximately when:

$$V_{LL} = \sqrt{3} \times I_L \times \frac{(R_{LL})}{2} + V_{LLrated} \times \frac{f}{f_{rated}}$$

Where:

$V_{LL}$ = line-to-line rms fundamental voltage at the motor terminals
$I_L$ = line current (rms) corresponding to the desired level of breakaway torque
$R_{LL}$ = line-to-line stator winding resistance at operating temperature
f = frequency

The voltage boost should not be adjusted to exceed a value of $V_{LL}$ based on $I_L$ equal to 1.5 times rated full load current to achieve higher breakaway torque without special consideration.

CAUTION — Continued application of boosted motor voltage at low frequencies under no load conditions will increase motor heating. When voltage boost is required to achieve a breakaway torque greater than 140 percent of rated torque, the motor should not be operated under voltage boost condition at frequencies less than 10 hertz for more than 1 minute without consulting the manufacturer.

#### 31.4.2.2 Breakdown Torque

The breakdown torque at any frequency within the defined frequency range shall be not less than 150 percent of the rated torque at that frequency when rated voltage for that frequency is applied.

### 31.4.3 Operating Limitations

#### 31.4.3.1 Starting Requirements

While definite-purpose motors may be capable of being started across-the-line, the level of locked rotor current at line frequency and voltage may exceed that for general-purpose motors. The torque versus speed profile during across the line starting of the definite-purpose motor also may be different from that of the general-purpose motors and may not be suitable for the requirements of the load. For large motors the stator end-winding support may be inadequate. If across-the-line starting capability is required by the application, these factors should be considered when selecting the motor and controls.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 31.4.3.2 Variations From Rated Voltage

The rated motor fundamental line voltage as a function of motor speed is defined at the base rating point and implied at the various operating conditions in 31.3. Definite purpose inverter-fed motors shall operate successfully throughout their defined speed range when the applied fundamental voltage does not vary from the rated value at any operating point by more than plus or minus 10 percent. Performance with this variation will not necessarily be in accordance with operation at the rated voltage.

### 31.4.3.3 Occasional Excess Current

Definite purpose inverter-fed motors shall be capable of withstanding an occasional excess current for a period of not less than 1 minute when the motor is initially at normal operating temperature. The magnitude of the current and the time in minutes between successive applications of this current are as follows:

| Momentary Overload as a Percent of Base Current | Time Interval Between Overloads (minutes) |
|---|---|
| 110 | ≥ 9 |
| 125 | ≥ 28 |
| 150 | ≥ 60 |

Repeated overloads may result in operation where winding temperatures are above the maximum values given by 31.4.1.1 which will result in reduced insulation life. If the overload is part of the normal duty cycle, the relative equivalent temperature rise must be calculated per 31.4.1.2 to ensure that the limits in 31.4.1.1 are not exceeded.

### 31.4.3.4 Power Factor Correction Or Surge Suppression

The use of power capacitors for power factor correction or surge suppression on the load side of an inverter connected to an induction motor is not recommended. Line reactors or filter networks for inverter voltage spike suppression may be acceptable. For such applications the control manufacturer should be consulted.

### 31.4.3.5 Overspeeds

Definite purpose inverter-fed motors shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical damage, overspeeds above the maximum operating speed (see Figure 31-1) in accordance with the following:

| Maximum Operating Speed, RPM | Overspeed, Percent of Maximum Operating Speed |
|---|---|
| 3601 and over | 15 |
| 1801 - 3600 | 20 |
| 1800 and below | 25 |

## 31.4.4 Insulation Considerations

### 31.4.4.1 Leakage Currents

High frequency harmonics of inverters can cause an increase in the magnitudes of leakage currents in the motor due to a reduction in the capacitive reactance of the winding insulation at higher frequencies. Established and safe grounding practices for the motor frame should therefore be followed.

### 31.4.4.2 Voltage Spikes

Inverters used to supply adjustable frequency power to induction motors do not produce sinusoidal output voltage waveforms. In addition to lower order harmonics, these waveforms also have superimposed on them steep-fronted, single-amplitude voltage spikes. Turn-to-turn, phase-to-phase, and ground insulation of stator

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

windings are subjected to the resulting dielectric stresses. Suitable precautions should be taken in the design of drive systems to minimize the magnitude of these spikes.

When operated under usual service conditions (31.1.2), where the inverter input nominal voltage does not exceed rated motor voltage, stator winding insulation systems for definite purpose inverter fed motors shall be designed to operate under the following limits at the motor terminals.

Motors with base rating voltages $V_{rated}$ ≤600 volts:

$$V_{peak} \leq 1.1 * 2 * \sqrt{2} * V_{rated} = 3.1 * V_{rated}$$

Rise time $\geq 0.1\ \mu s$

See Figure 30-5 for a typical voltage response at the motor terminals for an illustration of $V_{peak}$ and rise time.

Motors with base rating voltage $V_{rated}$ >600 volts:

$$V_{peak} \leq 2.5 \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}}\right) V_{rated} = 2.04 * V_{rated}$$

Rise time $\geq 1\ \mu s$

Where: $V_{peak}$ is a single amplitude zero-to-peak line-to-line voltage.

$V_{ratred}$ is the rated line-to-line voltage.

CAUTION — When the input voltage to the inverter exceeds the rated voltage, care must be taken in determining the maximum peak voltage ($V_{peak}$) that will be applied to the motor by the inverter.

**31.4.4.3 Shaft Voltages and Bearing Insulation**

Shaft voltages can result in the flow of destructive currents through motor bearings, manifesting themselves through pitting of the bearings, scoring of the shaft, and eventual bearing failure. In larger frame size motors, usually 500 frame and larger, these voltages may be present under sinusoidal operation and are caused by magnetic dissymmetries in the construction of these motors. This results in the generation of a shaft end-to-end voltage. The current path in this case is from the motor frame through a bearing to the motor shaft, down the shaft, and through the other bearing back to the motor frame. This type of current can be interrupted by insulating one of the bearings. If the shaft voltage is larger than 300 millivolts peak when tested per IEEE 112, bearing insulation should be utilized.

More recently, for some inverter types and application methods, potentially destructive bearing currents have occasionally occurred in much smaller motors. However, the root cause of the current is different. These drives can be generators of a common mode voltage which shifts the three phase winding neutral potentials significantly from ground. This common mode voltage oscillates at high frequency and is capacitively coupled to the rotor. This results in peak pulses as high as 10-40 volts from shaft to ground. The current path could be through either or both bearings to ground. Interruption of this current therefore requires insulating both bearings. Alternately, shaft grounding brushes may be used to divert the current around the bearing. It should be noted that insulating the motor bearings will not prevent the damage of other shaft connected equipment.

At this time, there has been no conclusive study that has served to quantify the relationship of peak voltage from inverter operation to bearing life or failure. There is also no standard method for measuring this voltage. Because of this, the potential for problems cannot consistently be determined in advance of motor installation.

**31.4.4.4 Neutral Shift**

When inverters are applied to motors, the motor windings can be exposed to higher than normal line-to-ground voltages due to the neutral shift effect. Neutral shift is the voltage difference between the source neutral and the motor neutral. Its magnitude is a function of the total system design and in the case of some types of current source inverters can be as high as 2.3 per unit ($1pu = \sqrt{2}/\sqrt{3}V_{LL}$), resulting in motor

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

line-to-ground voltages of up to 3.3 per unit, or 3.3 times the crest of the nominal sinusoidal line-to-ground voltage. In the case of a typical voltage source inverter, the magnitude of the line-to-ground voltage can be as high as $\sqrt{3}$ times the crest of the nominal sinusoidal line-to-ground voltage.

The magnitude of the neutral voltage can be reduced if the inverter is connected to an ungrounded power source or, if this is not possible, by isolating it from the source ground by using an isolation transformer, by using separate reactors in both the positive and the negative direct current link, or by connecting the motor neutral to the ground through a relatively low impedance. Proper selection of the method to reduce motor line-to-ground voltage should be coordinated with the system designer.

### 31.4.5 Resonances, Sound, Vibration

#### 31.4.5.1 General

The motor and the driven equipment (system) have natural resonant frequencies in the lateral, axial, and torsional modes. When an inverter is applied to the motor, the system is excited by a spectrum of harmonics coming from the inverter. This can affect the sound level, vibration level, and torsional response of the system. The system integrator should take these effects into consideration to ensure successful system performance.

#### 31.4.5.2 Sound and Vibration

Machine sound and vibration are influenced by the following parameters:

a. Electromagnetic design

b. Type of inverter

c. Resonance of frame structure and enclosure

d. Integrity, mass, and configuration of the base mounting structure.

e. Reflection of sound and vibration originating in or at the load and shaft coupling

f. Windage

It is recognized that it is a goal that motors applied on inverter type supply systems for variable speed service should be designed and applied to optimize the reduction of sound and vibration in accordance with the precepts explained above. However, since many of these influencing factors are outside of the motor itself, it is not possible to address all sound and vibration concerns through the design of the motor alone.

#### 31.4.5.3 Torsional Considerations

When an induction motor is operated from an inverter, torque ripple at various frequencies may exist over the operating speed range. Consideration should be given to identifying the frequency and amplitude of these torques and determining the possible effect upon the motor and the driven equipment. It is of particular importance that the equipment not be operated longer than momentarily at a speed where a resonant condition exists between the torsional system and the electrical system (i.e., the motor electrical torque). For example, if the inverter is of the six-step type then a sixth harmonic torque ripple is created which would vary from 36 to 360 Hz when the motor is operated over the frequency range of 6 to 60 Hz. At low speeds, such torque ripple may be apparent as observable oscillations of the shaft speed or as torque and speed pulsations (usually termed "cogging"). It is also possible that some speeds within the operating range may correspond to the natural mechanical frequencies of the load or support structure and operation other than momentarily should be avoided at those speeds.

### 31.4.6 Bearing Lubrication at Low and High Speeds

Successful operation of the bearings depends on their ability to function within acceptable temperatures. Above a certain operating speed, depending on the design, size, and load, the losses in an oil lubricated sleeve bearing may increase to a point that the temperature exceeds the permissible limits with self-lubrication. Below a certain speed, self-lubrication may not be adequate and may result in abnormal wear or high temperature or both. In either case, forced lubrication will be required.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Grease-lubricated anti-friction bearings do not have similar problems at low speeds. Maximum operating speed for these bearings is limited due to temperature considerations and is a function of the bearing design, its size, the load and other considerations.

The maximum and minimum operating speeds should be taken into consideration in the selection of the bearing and lubrication systems for motors covered by this Part.

## 31.5 NAMEPLATE MARKING

### 31.5.1 Variable Torque Applications

The following minimum information necessary to characterize the motor for variable torque applications in which the maximum operating speed does not exceed the speed corresponding to the base rating point (3) defined in Figure 31-1 shall be given on all nameplates. All performance data is to be based on a sine wave power supply. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's name, serial number or date code, type, frame, and enclosure
b. The following data corresponding to base rating point (3) defined in Figure 31-1
    1. Horsepower
    2. Voltage
    3. Current
    4. Speed—RPM
    5. Frequency
c. Number of phases
d. Ambient temperature—degrees C
e. Insulation class
f. Duty rating

### 31.5.2 Other Applications

For applications other than variable torque, the appropriate items selected from the following list should be given in addition to that stated in 31.5.1.

a. The following data corresponding to base rating points (1), (2), or (4) defined in Figure 31-1
    1. Horsepower
    2. Voltage
    3. Current
    4. Speed—RPM
    5. Frequency
    6. Torque
b. Equivalent circuit parameters for R1, R2, X1, X2, Xm (see 1.61.6) in Ohms per phase (Wye equivalent) at 25°C for the base rating. For reconnectable winding multi-voltage motors the parameters are to be based on the higher voltage connection.
c. Rotor $Wk^2$

## 31.6 TESTS

### 31.6.1 Test Method

The method of testing definite purpose inverter-fed motors shall be in accordance with IEEE Standard 112.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 31.6.2 Routine Tests

a. Measurement of winding resistance.

b. No-load readings of current, power, and speed at base rating voltage and frequency (point (3) of Figure 31-1) using sinusoidal voltage. For motors with the base rating at other than 60 Hertz, these readings shall be permitted to be taken at 60 Hertz at the appropriate voltage for 60 Hertz.

c. High-potential test in accordance with 3.1, 12.3, or 20.17.

### 31.6.3 Performance Tests

Performance tests, when required, shall be conducted on a sinusoidal power supply unless otherwise specified by mutual agreement between the manufacturer and the user.

## 31.7 ACCESSORY MOUNTING

When provided, a Type FC face for the mounting of tachometers, resolvers, encoders or similar accessories on the end opposite the drive end of definite purpose inverter-fed motors shall be per 4.4.5 based on FAK dimensions of 4.50 or 8.50 in.

Care should be used in the selection of the accessory coupling to ensure it is able to accommodate any misalignment likely to be encountered in the assembly. If the driven accessory is a tachometer, resolver, or encoder, it also may be necessary to ensure that the coupling has adequate torsional stiffness for the desired response, resolution and stability in the intended application.

If the motor has an insulated bearing or similar means to guard against bearing currents (see 31.4.4.3), it may be necessary to provide an insulated coupling or other means to prevent such shaft potentials from being applied to connected accessories.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 32

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section IV
# PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 32
# SYNCHRONOUS GENERATORS (EXCLUSIVE OF GENERATORS COVERED BY ANSI STANDARDS C50.12, C50.13, C50.14, AND C50.15 ABOVE 5000 kVA) RATINGS

## 32.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 32 of Section IV cover synchronous generators of the revolving-field type at speeds and in ratings covered by Tables 32-1 and 32-2.

## 32.1 BASIS OF RATING

Synchronous generators shall be rated on a continuous duty basis, and the rating shall be expressed in kilovoltamperes available at the terminals at 0.8-power-factor lagging (overexcited). The corresponding kilowatts shall also be stated. General purpose synchronous generators may have a standby continuous rating in accordance with 32.35.

## 32.2 KILOVOLT-AMPERE (KVA) AND (KW) RATINGS

The ratings for 60- and 50-hertz, 0.8-power-factor lagging (overexcited) synchronous generators shall be as shown in Table 32-1.

**Table 32-1**
**KILOVOLT-AMPERE AND KILOWATT RATINGS**

| kVA | kW | kVA | kW | kVA | kW |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.25 | 1.0 | 250 | 200 | 4375 | 3500 |
| 2.5 | 2.0 | 312 | 250 | 5000 | 4000 |
| 3.75 | 3.0 | 375 | 300 | 5625 | 4500 |
| 6.25 | 5 | 438 | 350 | 6250 | 5000 |
| 9.4 | 7.5 | 500 | 400 | 7500 | 6000 |
| 12.5 | 10 | 625 | 500 | 8750 | 7000 |
| 18.7 | 15 | 750 | 600 | 10000 | 8000 |
| 25 | 20 | 875 | 700 | 12500 | 10000 |
| 31.3 | 25 | 1000 | 800 | 15625 | 12500 |
| 37.5 | 30 | 1125 | 900 | 18750 | 15000 |
| 50 | 40 | 1250 | 1000 | 25000 | 20000 |
| 62.5 | 50 | 1563 | 1250 | 31250 | 25000 |
| 75 | 60 | 1875 | 1500 | 37500 | 30000 |
| 93.8 | 75 | 2188 | 1750 | 43750 | 35000 |
| 125 | 100 | 2500 | 2000 | 50000 | 40000 |
| 156 | 125 | 2812 | 2250 | 62500 | 50000 |
| 187 | 150 | 3125 | 2500 | 75000 | 60000 |
| 219 | 175 | 3750 | 3000 | | |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings at all speeds and for all voltage ratings.

## 32.3 SPEED RATINGS

Speed ratings shall be as shown in Table 32-2.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 32-2**
**SPEED RATINGS**

| | Speed, Rpm | |
|---|---|---|
| **Number of Poles** | **60 Hertz** | **50 Hertz** |
| 2 | 3600 | 3000 |
| 4 | 1800 | 1500 |
| 6 | 1200 | 1000 |
| 8 | 900 | 750 |
| 10 | 720 | 600 |
| 12 | 600 | 500 |
| 14 | 514 | 429 |
| 16 | 450 | 375 |
| 18 | 400 | 333 |
| 20 | 360 | 300 |
| 22 | 327 | 273 |
| 24 | 300 | 250 |
| 26 | 277 | 231 |
| 28 | 257 | 214 |
| 30 | 240 | 200 |
| 32 | 225 | 188 |
| 36 | 200 | 167 |
| 40 | 180 | 150 |
| 44 | 164 | 136 |
| 48 | 150 | --- |
| 52 | 138 | --- |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings at all speeds and for all voltage ratings.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 32.4 VOLTAGE RATINGS

### 32.4.1 Voltage Ratings for 60 Hz Circuits, Volts

| Three-Phase Broad Voltage | Three-Phase Discrete Voltage | Single-Phase Discrete Voltage |
|---|---|---|
| 208-240/416-480 | 208Y/120 | 120 |
| | 240 | 120/240 |
| | 480 | 240 |
| | 480Y/277 | |
| | 240/480 | |
| | 600 | |
| | 2400 | |
| | 4160Y/2400 | |
| | 4800 | |
| | 6900 | |
| | 13800 | |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings for all of these voltage ratings.

### 32.4.2 Voltage Ratings for 50 Hz Circuits, Volts

| Three-Phase Broad Voltage | Single-Phase Broad Voltage | Three-Phase Discrete Voltage | Single-Phase Discrete Voltage |
|---|---|---|---|
| 190-220/380-440 | 110-120/220-240 | 190 | 127 |
| | | 200Y/115 | 115/230 |
| | | 220Y/127 | 220 |
| | | 380 | 250 |
| | | 400Y/230 | |
| | | 415 | |
| | | 440 | |
| | | 690 | |
| | | 3300Y/1905 | |
| | | 6000 | |
| | | 11000 | |
| | | 12470 | |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings for all of these voltage ratings.

### 32.4.3 Excitation Voltages

The excitation voltages for field windings shall be 62-1/2, 125, 250, 375, and 500 volts direct current. These excitation voltages do not apply to generators of the brushless type with direct-connected exciters.

NOTE—It is not practical to design all KVA ratings of generators for all of the excitation voltages.

## 32.5 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

## 32.6 TEMPERATURE RISE

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the synchronous generator, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in Table 32-3. The temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the table are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Temperature rises in Table 32-3 are based upon generators rated on a continuous duty basis. Synchronous generators may be rated on a stand-by duty basis (see 32.35). In such cases, it is recommended that temperature rises not exceed those in Table 32-3 by more than 25°C under continuous operation at the standby rating.

Temperature rises given in Table 32-3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that synchronous generators may be required to operate at an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of generators in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the generators given in Table 32-3 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C.

(Exception: for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a. On machines designed for cooling water temperature from 5°C to 30°C – the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.
b. On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures – the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises of the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in Table 32-3 by the number of degrees that the temperature of the air leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C. )

**Table 32-3**
**TEMPERATURE RISE**

| | | | Temperature Rise, Degrees C Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Item** | **Machine Part** | **Method of Temperature Determination** | **A** | **B** | **F*** | **H**** |
| a. | Armature windings | Resistance | | | | |
| | 1. All kVA ratings | Resistance | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| | 2. 1563 kVA and less | Embedded detector* | 70 | 90 | 115 | 140 |
| | 3. Over 1563 kVA | | | | | |
| | a. 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector* | 65 | 85 | 110 | 135 |
| | b. Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector* | 60 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| b. | Field winding | Resistance | 65 | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| c. | The temperature attained by the cores, amortisseur windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brusholders, brushes, pole tips, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | | |

*Embedded detectors are located within the slot of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For machines equipped with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard. (See 20.27.)

** For machines operating at Class F or Class H temperature rises, consideration should be given to bearing temperatures, lubrication, etc.

**32.6.1** For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13000 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in the foregoing table by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 32.6.2 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in Table 32-3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled synchronous generators may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled synchronous generator is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in Table 32-3 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 32-3 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 32-3 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 32-3 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 32-3 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |

*Note: This requirement does not include water-cooled generators.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to Table 32-3

For example: A synchronous generator with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from Table 32-3 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}C - 25^{\circ}C\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{\circ}C - \left(40^{O}C + 105^{O}C\right)}{80^{O}C}\right\} = 13^{O}C$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from Table 32-3 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

## 32.7 MAXIMUM MOMENTARY OVERLOADS

Synchronous generators shall be capable of carrying a 1-minute overload with the field set for normal rated load excitation in accordance with the following:

| Synchronous Speed, Rpm | Armature Current, Percent of Normal Rated Current |
|---|---|
| 1801 and over | 130 |
| 1800 and below | 150 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

It is recognized that the voltage and power factor will differ from the rated load values when generators are subjected to this overload condition. Also, since the heating effect in the machine winding varies approximately as the product of the square of the current and the time for which this current is being carried, the overload condition will result in increased temperatures and a reduction in insulation life. The generator should therefore not be subjected to this extreme condition for more than a few times in its life. It is assumed that this excess capacity is required only to coordinate the generator with the control and protective devices.

## 32.8 OVERLOAD CAPABILITY

General-purpose synchronous generators and their exciters (if provided) shall be suitable for operation at a generator overload of 10 percent for 2 hours out of any consecutive 24 hours of operation. When operated at any load greater than rated load the temperature rise will increase and may exceed the temperature rises specified in Table 32-3.

## 32.9 OCCASIONAL EXCESS CURRENT

Generators shall be capable of withstanding a current equal to 1.5 times the rated current for not less than 30 seconds when the generator is initially at normal operating temperature.

## 32.10 MAXIMUM DEVIATION FACTOR

The deviation factor of the open-circuit line-to-line terminal voltage of synchronous generators shall not exceed 0.1.

## 32.11 TELEPHONE INFLUENCE FACTOR (TIF)

The telephone influence factor of a synchronous generator is the measure of the possible effect of harmonics in the generator voltage wave on telephone circuits.

**32.11.1** The balanced telephone influence factor (TIF) based on the weighting factors given in 32.11.3 shall not exceed the following values:

| kVA Rating of Generator | TIF |
|---|---|
| 6.25 to 62 | 250 |
| 62.5 to 4999 | 150 |
| 5000 to 19999 | 100 |
| 20000 and above | 70 |

**32.11.2** The residual component telephone influence factor based on the weighting factors given in 32.11.3 shall not exceed the following values. The residual component applies only to those generators having voltage ratings of 2000 volts and higher.

| kVA Rating of Generator | TIF |
|---|---|
| | Residual |
| 1000 to 4999 | 100 |
| 5000 to 19999 | 75 |
| 20000 and above | 50 |

**32.11.3** The single-frequency telephone influence weighting factors ($TIF_f$), according to the 1960 single frequency weighting are as listed in Table 32-4.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 32-4**
**$TIF_f$ — ACCORDING TO THE 1960 SINGLE FREQUENCY WEIGHTING**

| Frequency | $TIF_f$ | Frequency | $TIF_f$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 60 | 0.5 | 1860 | 7820 |
| 180 | 30 | 1980 | 8330 |
| 300 | 225 | 2100 | 8830 |
| 360 | 400 | 2160 | 9080 |
| 420 | 650 | 2220 | 9330 |
| 540 | 1320 | 2340 | 9840 |
| 660 | 2260 | 2460 | 10340 |
| 720 | 2760 | 2580 | 10600 |
| 780 | 3360 | 2820 | 10210 |
| 900 | 4350 | 2940 | 9820 |
| 1000 | 5000 | 3000 | 9670 |
| 1020 | 5100 | 3180 | 8740 |
| 1080 | 5400 | 3300 | 8090 |
| 1140 | 5630 | 3540 | 6730 |
| 1260 | 6050 | 3660 | 6130 |
| 1380 | 6370 | 3900 | 4400 |
| 1440 | 6650 | 4020 | 3700 |
| 1500 | 6680 | 4260 | 2750 |
| 1620 | 6970 | 4380 | 2190 |
| 1740 | 7320 | 5000 | 840 |
| 1800 | 7570 | | |

**32.11.4** The telephone influence factor shall be measured in accordance with IEEE Std 115.

TIF shall be measured at the generator terminals on open circuit at rated voltage and frequency.

## 32.12 EFFICIENCY

Efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115. The efficiency shall be determined at rated conditions.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a. $I^2R$ loss of armature
b. $I^2R$ loss of field
c. Core loss
d. Stray-load loss
e. Friction and windage loss
f. Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from shaft of machine

Power required for auxiliary items, such as external pumps or fans, that are necessary for the operation of the generator shall be stated separately.

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees °C |
|---|---|
| A | 75 |
| B | 95 |
| F | 115 |
| H | 130 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

In the case of generators which are furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself shall be included in the friction and windage loss for efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.

In the case of generators which are furnished with less than a full set of bearings, the efficiency may be determined by testing with shop test bearings. Friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

## 32.13 SHORT-CIRCUIT REQUIREMENTS

A synchronous generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, a 30-second, three-phase short circuit at its terminals when operating at rated kVA and power factor, at 5-percent over-voltage, with fixed excitation. The generator shall also be capable of withstanding, without damage, at its terminals any other short circuit of 30 seconds or less provided:

a. The machine phase currents under fault conditions are such that the negative-phase-sequence current, ($I_2$), expressed in per unit of stator current at rated kVA, and the duration of the fault in seconds, t, are limited to values which give an integrated product, $(I_2)^2t$, equal to or less than
   1. 40 for salient-pole machines
   2. 30 for air-cooled cylindrical rotor machines
b. The maximum phase current is limited by external means to a value which does not exceed the maximum phase current obtained from the three-phase fault.

NOTE—Generators subjected to faults between the preceding values of $(I_2)^2t$ and 200 percent of these values may suffer varying degrees of damage; for faults in excess of 200 percent of these limits, serious damage should be expected.

**32.13.1** With the voltage regulator in service, the allowable duration, t, of the short circuit shall be determined from the following equation in situations where the regulator is designed to provide ceiling voltage continuously during a short circuit:

$$t = \left(\frac{\text{nominal field voltage}}{\text{exciter ceiling voltage}}\right)^2 * 30 \text{ seconds}$$

Where:

Nominal field voltage is the voltage across the generator field winding at rated load condition.

## 32.14 CONTINUOUS CURRENT UNBALANCE

A synchronous generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, the effects of a continuous current unbalance corresponding to a negative-phase sequence current $I_2$ of the following values, providing the rated kVA is not exceeded and the maximum current does not exceed 105 percent of rated

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

current in any phase. (Negative-phase-sequence current is expressed as a percentage of rated stator current.)

| Type of Generator | Permissible $I_2$ Percent |
|---|---|
| Salient pole | |
| a. With connected amortisseur winding | 10 |
| b. With nonconnected amortisseur winding | 8 |
| Air-cooled cylindrical rotor | 10 |

These values also express the negative-phase-sequence current capability at reduced generator kVA capabilities, as a percentage of the stator current corresponding to the reduced capability.

### 32.15 OPERATION WITH NON-LINEAR OR ASYMMETRIC LOADS

Non-linear loads result in a distortion of the current from a pure sinewave shape when sinusoidal voltage is applied. A synchronous generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, the effects of continuous operation at rated load on such a circuit provided the instantaneous value of the current does not differ from the instantaneous value of the fundamental current by more than 5 percent of the amplitude of the fundamental, and when neither the negative-sequence nor zero-sequence component of current exceeds 5 percent of the positive-sequence component when any unbalance between phases is present.

The foregoing levels of current distortion may result in generator output voltage distortion levels beyond user limits.

### 32.16 OVERSPEEDS

Synchronous generators and their exciters (if provided) shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical damage overspeeds above synchronous speed in accordance with the following:

| Synchronous Overspeed, Percent of | Speed, Rpm Synchronous Speed |
|---|---|
| 1801 and over | 20 |
| 1800 and below | 25 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 32.17 VARIATION FROM RATED VOLTAGE

### 32.17.1 Broad Voltage Range

Synchronous generators shall be capable of delivering rated output (kVA) at rated frequency and power factor, at any voltage within the broad range (see 32.4) in accordance with the standards of performance established in this Part 32.

### 32.17.2 Discrete Voltage

Synchronous generators shall be capable of delivering rated output (kVA) at rated frequency and power factor, at any voltage not more than 5 percent above or below rated voltage but not necessarily in accordance with the standards of performance established for operation at rated voltage (see 32.4).

## 32.18 SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR VOLTAGE REGULATION (VOLTAGE DIP)

### 32.18.1 General

When a synchronous generator is subjected to a sudden load change there will be a resultant time-varying change in terminal voltage. One function of the exciter-regulator system is to detect this change in terminal voltage and to vary the field excitation as required to restore the terminal voltage. The maximum transient deviation in output voltage that occurs is a function of (1) the magnitude, power factor, and rate of change of the applied load; (2) the magnitude, power factor, and current versus voltage characteristic of any initial load; (3) the response time and voltage forcing capability of the exciter-regulator system; and (4) the prime mover speed versus time following the sudden load change. Transient voltage performance is therefore a system performance criterion involving the generator, exciter, regulator, and prime mover and cannot be established based on generator data alone. The scope of this section is only the generator and exciter-regulator system. Performance of the prime mover, its governor, and associated controls are outside the scope of NEMA standards.

In selecting or applying synchronous generators, the maximum transient voltage deviation (voltage dip) following a sudden increase in load is often specified or requested. When requested by the purchaser, the generator manufacturer should furnish expected transient voltage regulation, assuming either of the following criteria applies:

a. Generator, exciter, and regulator furnished as integrated package by the generator manufacturer
b. Complete data defining the transient performance of the regulator (and exciter if applicable) is made available to the generator manufacturer

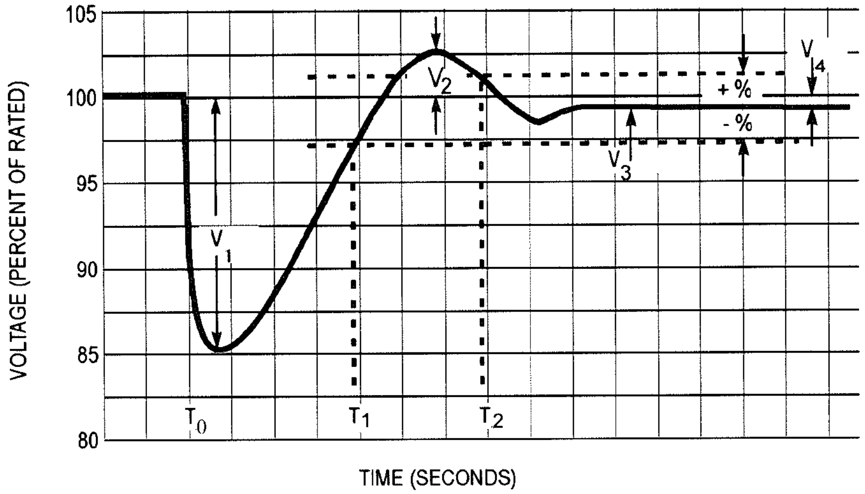
When furnishing expected transient voltage regulation, the following conditions should be assumed unless otherwise specified:

a. Constant speed (rated)
b. Generator, exciter, regulator initially operating at no load, rated voltage, starting from ambient temperature
c. Application of a constant impedance linear load as specified

### 32.18.2 Definitions

See Figure 32-1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.




$V_1$ = Voltage dip
$V_2$ = Maximum transient voltage overshoot
$V_3$ = Recovery voltage
$V_4$ = Steady-state regulator

$T_0$ = Point at which load is applied
$T_1$ = Time to recover to a specified band
$T_2$ = Time to recover to and remain within the specified band

**Figure 32-1**
**GENERATOR TRANSIENT VOLTAGE VERSUS TIME FOR SUDDEN LOAD CHANGE**

### 32.18.2.1 Transient Voltage Regulation

Transient voltage regulation is the maximum voltage deviation that occurs as the result of a sudden load change.

NOTE—Transient voltage regulation may be voltage rise or a voltage dip and is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 32.18.2.2 Voltage Dip

Voltage dip is the transient voltage regulation that occurs as the result of a sudden increase in load. (See Figure 32-1.)

NOTE—Voltage dip is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 32.18.2.3 Transient Voltage Overshoot

Transient voltage overshoot is the maximum voltage overshoot above rated voltage that occurs as a result of the response of the exciter-regulator system to a sudden increase in load. (See Figure 32-1.)

NOTE—Transient voltage overshoot is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 32.18.2.4 Steady-state Voltage Regulation

Steady-state voltage regulation is the settled or steady-state voltage deviation or excursion that occurs as the result of a load change after all transients due to the load change have decayed to zero. (See Figure 32-1.)

NOTE—Steady-state voltage regulation is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage for any load between no load and rated load with the range of unity (1.0) to rated power factor.

### 32.18.2.5 Recovery Voltage

Recovery voltage is the maximum obtainable voltage for a specified load condition.

NOTE—Recovery voltage is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage. For loads in excess of rated, recovery voltage is limited by saturation and field forcing capability.

### 32.18.2.6 Recovery Time

Recovery time is the time interval required for the output voltage to return to a specified condition following a specified sudden load change. (See Figure 32-1.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 32.18.3 Voltage Recorder Performance

The voltage recorder used for making measurements shall meet the following specifications:

a. Response time $\leq$ 1 millisecond

b. Sensitivity $\geq$ 1 percent per millimeter

NOTES

1–When peak-to-peak recording instruments are used, readings of the steady-state terminal voltage before and after load application should be made with an rms-indicating instrument in order to determine minimum transient voltage (see Figure 32-2).

2–See IEEE Std 115 for care in calibration of oscillograph.

### 32.18.4 Examples

A strip chart of output voltage as a function of time demonstrates the transient performance of the generator, exciter. and regulator system to sudden changes in load. The entire voltage envelope should be recorded to determine the performance characteristics.

An example of a voltage recorder strip chart is illustrated in Figure 32-2. The labeled charts and sample calculations should be used as a guide in determining generator-exciter-regulator performance when subjected to a sudden load change.

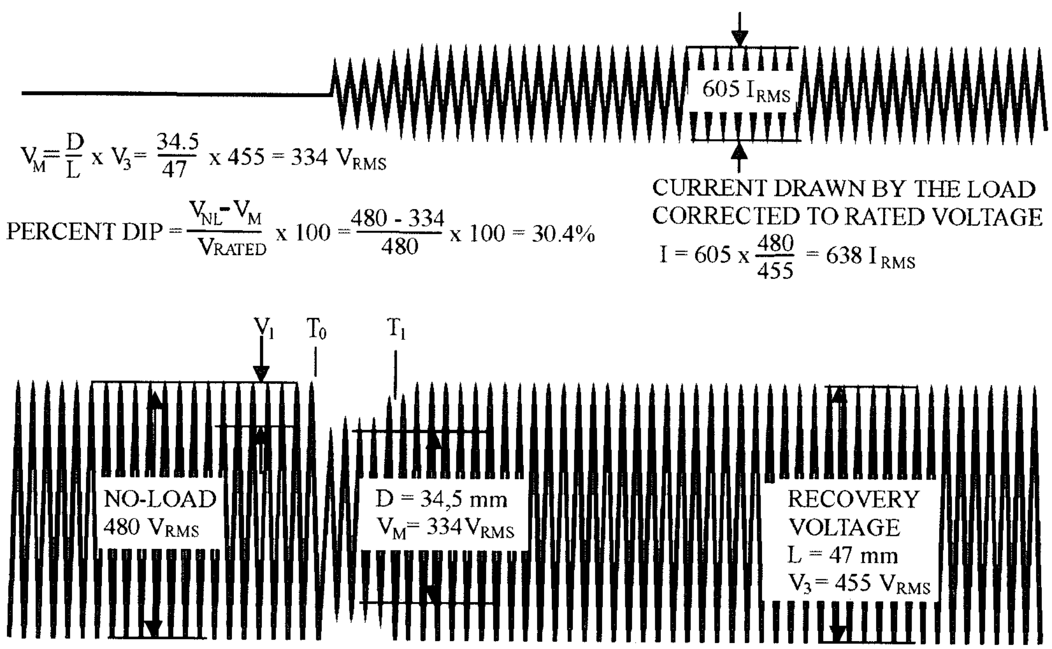



**Figure 32-2**
**GENERATOR TRANSIENT VOLTAGE VERSUS TIME FOR SUDDEN LOAD CHANGE**

### 32.18.5 Motor Starting Loads

The following test procedure and presentation of data is recommended for evaluating the motor starting capability of a synchronous generator, exciter, and regulator system.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**32.18.5.1 Load Simulation**

a. Constant impedance (non-saturable reactive load)

b. Power factor $\leq$ 0.3 lagging

NOTE—The current drawn by the simulated motor starting load should be corrected by the following ratio whenever the generator terminal voltage fails to return to rated voltage:

$$\frac{V(\text{rated voltage})}{V\ (\text{recovery voltage})}$$

This value of current and rated terminal voltage should be used to determine the actual kVA load applied.

**32.18.5.2 Temperature**

The test should be conducted with the generator and excitation system initially at ambient temperature.

**32.18.5.3 Presentation of Data**

Transient voltage regulation performance curves should be identified as "Voltage Dip" (in percent of rated voltage) versus "kVA Load" (see Figure 32-3).

The performance characteristics will vary considerably for broad voltage range generators (see 32.4.1) when operating over the broad voltage adjust range. (See Figure 32-3.) Therefore, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve provided for broad voltage range generators should show the performance at the extreme ends of the operating range; i.e 208/416V and 240/480V. For discrete voltage generators, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve should show the performance at the discrete rated voltage(s).

Unless otherwise noted, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve should provide a voltage recovery to at least 90 percent of rated voltage. If the recovery voltage is less than 90 percent of rated voltage, a point on the voltage dip curve beyond which the voltage will not recover to 90 percent of voltage should be identified or a separate voltage recovery versus kVA load curve should be provided.

In the absence of manufacturers' published information, the value of voltage dip may be estimated from machine constants, subject to the conditions set forth in 32.18.1 and the following:

a. Voltage regulator response time $\leq$ 17 milliseconds

b. Excitation system ceiling voltage* > 1.5

c. Rated field voltage

$$\text{Voltage dip} = \frac{X'_d}{X_L + X'_d}, \text{ percent}$$

Where:

$X'_d$= direct axis transient reactance, per unit

$X_L$= applied load, per unit on generator kVA base

$$\text{or } X_L = \frac{\text{kVA rated}}{\text{kVA (low power factor load)}}$$

Data estimated in accordance with the above calculation should be identified as "Calculated Voltage Dip."

* See IEEE Std 421

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

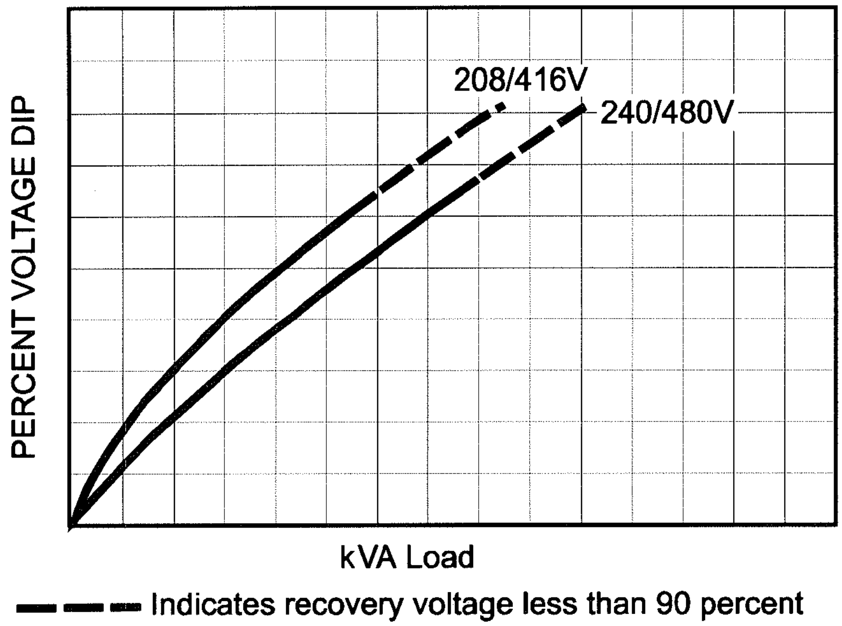



**Figure 32-3**
**PERFORMANCE CURVES (PF ≤ 0.3) (STEP LOADING)**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 32.19 PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION FORMS

### 32.19.1 Slip-ring Synchronous Generators

The specification form for listing performance data on synchronous generators with slip rings shall be as follows:

Date ___________________

**SLIP-RING SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR RATING**

| kVA | Power Factor | kW | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes | Frame |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

Is amortisseur winding included?_________

| | | Temperature Rise (°C) Not to Exceed | | | Excitation Requirements (Maximum) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | | |
| kVA | Power Factor | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | Resistance | kW | Exciter Rated Voltage |
| | | | | | | |

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding _____ degrees C and altitude not exceeding _________feet (meters). High-potential test in accordance with 32.20. The rotor of the generator and the armature of the direct-connected exciter, when used, will stand an overspeed of _____ percent without mechanical damage.

| Maximum Efficiencies | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kVA | Power Factor | kW | | Full Load | ¾ load | ½ Load | |
| | | | | | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature winding at _______°C and field windings at _____°C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.* Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

*1. In the case of a generator furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

2. In the case of generator furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

| Approximate Data | | | Approximate Weight, Pounds | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $Wk^2$ of the Generator | Pr. Synchronizing Power per Electrical Radian | | Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 32.19.2 BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS GENERATORS

The specification form for listing performance data on brushless synchronous generators shall be as follows.

Date ____________________

**BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR RATING**

| kVA | Power Factor | kW | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes | Frame |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

Is amortisseur winding included?_________

| kVA | Power Factor | Temperature Rise (° C) Not to Exceed | | | | Excitation Requirements* (2) (Maximum) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | | |
| | | | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | Resistance | Watts | Exciter Rated Field Voltage |
| | | Generator | | | | | |
| | | Exciter* (1) | | | | | |

*For rotating transformer give (1) data for equivalent winding temperatures and (2) input kVA and voltage instead of excitation for exciter.

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding _____°C and altitude not exceeding ____ feet (meters). High-potential test in accordance with ______ . The rotor of the generator and the armature of the direct-connected exciter, when used, will stand an overspeed of _____ percent without mechanical damage.

| Maximum Efficiencies | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kVA | Power Factor | kW | | Full Load | ¾ load | ½ Load | |
| | | | | | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature windings at _______°C and field windings at _____°C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.** Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

**1. In the case of a generator furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

2. In the case of generator furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

| Approximate Data | |
|---|---|
| $Wk^2$ of the Generator | Pr. Synchronizing Power per Electrical Radian |
| | |

| Approximate Weight, Pounds | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 32.20 ROUTINE FACTORY TESTS

### 32.20.1 Generators Not Completely Assembled in the Factory

The following tests shall be made on all generators (and exciters if provided) which are not completely assembled in the factory, including those furnished without a shaft or a complete set of bearings, or neither:

a. Resistance of armature and field windings
b. Polarity of field coils
c. High-potential test in accordance with 32.21

### 32.20.2 Generators Completely Assembled in the Factory

The following tests shall be made on generators (and exciters, if provided) which are completely assembled in the factory and furnished with a shaft and a complete set of bearings:

a. Resistance of armature and field windings
b. If brushless exciter is not provided, check generator field current at no load with normal voltage and frequency on the generator. On generators having brushless excitation systems, check instead the exciter field current at no load with normal voltage and frequency on the generator.
c. High-potential test in accordance with 32.21

## 32.21 HIGH-POTENTIAL TESTS

### 32.21.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedures

See 3.1.

### 32.21.2 Test Voltage—Armature Windings

The test voltage for all generators shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine but in no case less than 1500 volts.

A direct instead of an alternating voltage is sometimes used for high-potential tests on primary windings of machines. In such cases, a test voltage equal to 1.7 times the alternating-current test voltage (effective value) as given in 32.21.2 and 32.21.3 is recommended. Following a direct-voltage high-potential test, the tested winding should be thoroughly grounded. The insulation rating of the winding and the test level of the voltage applied determine the period of time required to dissipate the charge and, in many cases, the ground should be maintained for several hours to dissipate the charge to avoid hazard to personnel.

### 32.21.3 Test Voltage—Field Windings, Generators with Slip Rings

The test voltage for all generators with slip rings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Rated excitation voltage $\leq$ 500 volts direct current—ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts
b. Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current—4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage

### 32.21.4 Test Voltage—Assembled Brushless Generator Field Winding and Exciter Armature Winding

The test voltage for all assembled brushless generator field windings and exciter armature windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Rated excitation voltage $\leq$ 500 volts direct current—ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts
b. Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current—4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

The brushless circuit components (diodes, thyristors, etc.) on an assembled brushless exciter and synchronous machine field wiring shall be short-circuited (not grounded) during the test.

**32.21.5 Test Voltage—Brushless Exciter Field Winding**

The test voltage for all brushless exciter field windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a. Rated excitation voltage ≤ 500 volts direct current—ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts
b. Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current—4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage
c. Exciters with alternating-current excited stators (fields) shall be tested at 1000 volts plus twice the rated alternating-current voltage of the stator, but in no case less than 1500V

## 32.22 MACHINE SOUND SYNCHRONOUS (GENERATORS)

**32.22.1 Sound Quality**

Sound quality, the distribution of effective sound intensities as a function of frequency, affects the acceptability of the sound.

A measurement of total sound does not completely define sound acceptability because machines with the same overall decibel sound level may have a different sound quality. It may be necessary, in some cases, to describe sound profile in more detail, including octave band values.

**32.22.2 Sound Measurement**

Machine sound should be measured in accordance with Part 9 in overall sound power levels using the A-weighting network and stated in decibels (reference = $10^{-12}$ watts).

Generator sound tests should be taken at rated voltage no load. The generator should be isolated from other sound sources.

Sound power values are related to the sound source and are not affected by environmental conditions. They are calculated from test data taken under prescribed conditions and the values can be repeated. Field measurements are measured in sound pressure. Measurements of sound pressure levels of generators installed in the field can be correlated to sound power levels using corrections to environmental conditions as outlined in NEMA Standards Publication No. MG 3.

## 32.23 VIBRATION

See Part 7 for evaluation of vibration for two-bearing generators. Vibration limits and test methods for single-bearing machines are by agreement between the user and the manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**MANUFACTURING DATA**

## 32.24 NAMEPLATE MARKING

The following information shall be provided. The items need not all be on the same plate. For abbreviations, see 1.79. For some examples of additional information that may be included on the nameplate see 1.70.2.

a. Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b. Kilovolt-ampere output
c. Power factor
d. Time rating
e. Temperature rise[1]
f. Rated speed in rpm
g. Voltage
h. Rated current in amperes per terminal
i. Number of phases
j. Frequency
k. Rated field current[2]
l. Rated excitation voltage[2]

Additional information that may be included on the nameplate:

a. Connection diagram located near or inside the terminal box, if more than 3 leads
b. Minimum ambient if other than that in 32.33.2.a

## 32.25 SHAFT EXTENSION KEY

When the machine shaft extension is provided with a keyway it should be provided with a full key.

## 32.26 GENERATOR TERMINAL HOUSING

**32.26.1** When generators covered by this Part are provided with terminal housings for wire-to-wire connections, the housings shall have the following dimensions and usable volumes:

---

[1] As an alternate marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following:

a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the generator is designed (see 32.6).
b. Insulation system designation (if armature and field use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the armature being given first).

[2] Applies to exciter in case of brushless machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Voltage | kVA | Minimum Usable Volume Cu. In. | Minimum Dimension, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0–599 | <20 | 75 | 2.5 | |
| 0–599 | 21–45 | 250 | 4 | |
| 0-599 | 46–200 | 500 | 6 | |
| | 201-312, incl. | 600 | 7 | |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | |
| 600–2399 | 201-312, incl.. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | ... |
| 2400–4159 | 251-625, incl. | 180 | 5 | ... |
| | 626-1000, incl. | 330 | 6 | ... |
| | 1000-1563, incl. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 1564-2500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 2501-3750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| 4160–6899 | 351-1250, incl. | 2000 | 8 | 12.5 |
| | 1251-5000, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 5001-7500, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| 6900–13800 | 876-3125, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 3126-8750, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of generator leads.

Terminal housings containing surge capacitors, surge arrestors, current transformers, or potential transformers require individual consideration.

**32.26.2** For generators rated above 600 volts, accessory leads shall terminate in a terminal box or boxes separate from the generator terminal housing. As an exception, current and potential transformers located in the generator terminal housing shall be permitted to have their secondary connections terminated in the generator terminal housing if separated from the generator leads by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact.

**32.26.3** For generators rated 601 volts and higher, the termination of leads of accessory items normally operating at a voltage of 50 volts (rms) or less shall be separated from leads of higher voltage by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact, or shall be terminated in a separate box.

## 32.27 EMBEDDED TEMPERATURE DETECTORS

See 20.28.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## APPLICATION DATA

### 32.29 PARALLEL OPERATION

Many of the factors which affect the parallel operation of generators are contained in the prime mover, and the characteristics of the equipment connected to the system with which the generator is to operate in parallel also impose conditions which should be taken into account in parallel operation:

When requested, the generator manufacturer should furnish the following and any other information as may be required, in determining the system requirements for successful parallel operation.

a. Synchronizing torque coefficient $P_r$—unless otherwise specified the value of $P_r$ should correspond to a pulsation frequency of one-half the rpm (see 21.36);
b. $Wk^2$ of the generator rotor.
c. Generator third harmonic line-neutral voltage at no load.

### 32.30 CALCULATION OF NATURAL FREQUENCY

See 21.36.

### 32.31 TORSIONAL VIBRATION

Excessive torsional vibration may result in overstressed shafts, couplings, and other rotating parts. Torsional vibration is difficult to determine and measure, and it is recommended that torsional stresses be investigated when generators are to be driven by prime movers producing periodic torque pulsations.

While the factors which affect torsional vibration are primarily contained in the design of the prime mover, the design of the generator rotor should also be considered. When requested, the generator manufacturer should furnish the $Wk^2$ and weight of the generator rotor, and any other information, such as the stiffness of the spider, as may be required to make a successful design of the combined unit.

Before the generator spider and such part of the shaft as may be furnished by the generator manufacturer are manufactured, the final drawings of the same should be submitted for approval insofar as their design affects torsional vibration.

### 32.32 MACHINES OPERATING ON AN UNGROUNDED SYSTEM

Alternating-current machines are intended for continuous operation with the neutral at or near ground potential. Operation on ungrounded systems with one line at ground potential should be done only for infrequent periods of short duration, for example as required for normal fault clearance. If it is intended to operate the machine continuously or for prolonged periods in such conditions, a special machine with a level of insulation suitable for such operation is required. The generator manufacturer should be consulted before selecting a generator for such an application.

Auxiliary equipment connected to the generator may not be suitable for use on an ungrounded system and should be evaluated independently.

### 32.33 SERVICE CONDITIONS

#### 32.33.1 General

Generators should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to this Part 32 are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driving equipment and the generator manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and , as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

### 32.33.2 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a. Exposure to an ambient temperature in the range of -15°C to 40°C or, when water cooling is used, an ambient temperature range of 5°C (to prevent freezing of water) to 40°C, except for machines rated less than 600 watts and all machines other than water-cooled having commutator or sleeve bearings for which the minimum ambient temperature is 0°C
b. An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c. A location or supplementary enclosure, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the generator
d. Installation on a rigid mounting surface

### 32.33.3 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the generator. Among such conditions are:

a. Exposure to:
    1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
    2. Lint or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
    3. Chemical fumes, flammable or explosive gases
    4. Nuclear radiation
    5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
    6. Damp or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
    7. Abnormal shock or vibration from external sources
    8. Abnormal axial or side thrust imposed on the generator shaft
b. Operation where:
    1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage (see 32.17)
    2. Low noise levels are required
    3. Generator neutral will be solidly grounded (see 32.34)
c. Operation at speeds other than rated speed
d. Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position
e. Operation where subjected to:
    1. Torsional vibration (see 32.31)
    2. Out-of-phase paralleling

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

3. Excessive unbalanced load
4. Excessive current distortion (see 32.15)
5. Excessive non-linear loads (see 32.15)

f. Applications where generators are belt, chain or gear driven

**32.34 NEUTRAL GROUNDING**

For safety of personnel and to reduce over-voltages to ground, the generator neutral is often either grounded solidly or grounded through a resistor or reactor. When the neutral is grounded through a resistor or reactor properly selected in accordance with established power systems practices, there are no special considerations required in the generator design or selection unless the generator is to be operated in parallel with other power supplies. The neutral of a generator should not be solidly grounded unless the generator has been specifically designed for such operation. With the neutral solidly grounded, the maximum line-to-ground fault current may be excessive (see 32.13), and in parallel systems excessive circulating harmonic currents may be present in the neutrals.

**32.35 STAND-BY GENERATOR**

Synchronous generators may at times be assigned a standby rating where the application is an emergency back-up power source and is not the prime power supply. Under such conditions, temperature rises up to 25°C above those for continuous-duty operation may occur per 32.6. Operation at these stand-by temperature rise values causes the generator insulation to age thermally at about four to eight times the rate that occurs at the continuous-duty temperature rise values, i.e., operating 1 hour at stand-by temperature rise values is approximately equivalent to operating 4 to 8 hours at continuous-duty temperature rise values.

**32.36 GROUNDING MEANS FOR FIELD WIRING**

When generators are provided with terminal housings for wire-to-wire connections or fixed terminal connections, a means for attachment of an equipment grounding conductor termination shall be provided inside, or adjacent with accessibility from, the terminal housing. Unless its intended use is obvious, it shall be suitably identified. The termination shall be suitable for the attachment and equivalent fault current ampacity of a copper grounding conductor as shown in Table 32-5. A screw, stud, or bolt intended for the termination of a grounding conductor shall be not smaller than shown in Table 32-5. For generator full-load currents in excess of 30 amperes ac or 45 amperes dc, external tooth lockwashers, serrated screw heads, or the equivalent shall not be furnished for a screw, bolt, or stud intended as a grounding conductor termination.

When a generator is provided with a grounding terminal, this terminal shall be the solderless type and shall be on a part of the machine not normally disassembled during operation or servicing.

When a terminal housing mounting screw, stud, or bolt is used to secure the grounding conductor to the main terminal housing, there shall be at least one other equivalent securing means for attachment of the terminal housing to the machine frame.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 32-5**
**MINIMUM SIZE GROUNDING CONDUCTOR TERMINATION**

| Motor Full Load Current ≤ | Maximum Size of Grounding Conductor Termination | Minimum Size of Screw, Stud, or Bolt | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ac | Attachment Means, AWG | Steel | Bronze |
| 12 | 14 | #6 | --- |
| 16 | 12 | #8 | --- |
| 30 | 10 | #10 | --- |
| 45 | 8 | #12 | #10 |
| 70 | 6 | 5/16" | #12 |
| 110 | 4 | 5/16" | 5/16" |
| 160 | 3 | 3/8" | 5/16" |
| 250 | 1 | 1/2" | 3/8" |
| 400 | 2/0 | --- | 1/2" |
| 600 | 3/0 | --- | 1/2" |
| 800 | 4/0 | --- | 1/2" |
| 1000 | 250 kcmil | --- | 1/2" |
| 1250 | 350 kcmil | --- | 1/2" |
| 1500 | 400 kcmil | --- | 1/2" |
| 2000 | 500 kcmil | --- | 1/2" |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# MG 1-2009
# Part 33

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

# Section IV
# PERFORMANCE STANDARDS APPLYING TO ALL MACHINES
# Part 33
# DEFINITE PURPOSE SYNCHRONOUS GENERATORS FOR GENERATING SET APPLICATIONS

## 33.0 SCOPE

The standards in this Part 33 of Section IV establish the principal characteristics of synchronous generators of the revolving field type when used for reciprocating internal combustion engine driven generating set applications. This Part covers the use of such generators for land and marine use, but excludes those used on aircraft or used to propel land vehicles and locomotives.

## 33.1 DEFINITIONS

For the purpose of this Part, the following definitions apply.

### 33.1.1 Rated Output Power

#### 33.1.1.1 Rated Output Power S

The product of the rated line-to-line rms voltage, the rated rms current and a constant m, divided by 1000, expressed in kilo volt-ampere (kVA), where

m = 1 for single-phase;
m = $\sqrt{2}$ for two-phase;
m = $\sqrt{3}$ for three-phase

#### 33.1.1.2 Rated Active Power P

The product of the rated line-to-line rms voltage, the in-phase component of the rated rms current and a constant m, divided by 1000 expressed in kilowatts (kW), where

m = 1 for single-phase;
m = $\sqrt{2}$ for two-phase;
m = $\sqrt{3}$ for three-phase.

#### 33.1.1.3 Rated Reactive Power Q

The vector difference of the rated output power and the rated active power expressed in kilovolt-amperes reactive (kVAr) or its decimal multiples.

$$Q = \sqrt{(S^2 - P^2)}$$

#### 33.1.1.4 Rated Power Factor cos $\phi$

The ratio of the rated active power P to the rated output power S.

$$\cos\varphi = P / S$$

#### 33.1.1.5 Continuous Power (Prime Power)

Continuous power is that which a generator is capable of delivering continuously between stated maintenance intervals and under the stated altitude and ambient conditions, the maintenance being carried out as prescribed by the manufacturer.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.1.1.6 Standby Power

Synchronous generators may at times be assigned a standby rating where the application is an emergency back-up power source and is not the prime power supply.

### 33.1.2 Rated Speed of Rotation n

The speed of the rotation necessary for voltage generation at rated frequency.

$$n = 120\, f / p$$

Where:
n = speed in rpm;
p is the number of poles;
f is the rated frequency.

### 33.1.3 Voltage Terms

These terms relate to a generator running at constant (rated) speed under the control of the normal excitation and voltage control system.

### 33.1.3.1 Rated Voltage V

The line-to-line voltage at the terminals of the generator at rated frequency and rated output.

NOTE—Rated voltage is the voltage assigned by the manufacturer for operating and performance characteristics.

### 33.1.3.2 No-load Voltage $V_{nl}$

The line-to-line voltage at the terminals of the generator at rated frequency and no load.

### 33.1.3.3 Range of Voltage Setting $\Delta V_r$

The range of possible upward and downward adjustment of voltage at generator terminals ($V_{up}$ and $V_{do}$ where $V_{up}$ is the upper limit of voltage setting and $V_{do}$ is the lower limit of voltage setting) at rated frequency, for all loads between no-load and rated output.

$$\Delta V_r = \Delta V_{up} + \Delta V_{do}$$

The voltage setting range is expressed as a percentage of the rated voltage.

a) Upward range, $\Delta V_{up}$

$$\Delta V_{up} = (V_{up} - V) \times 100 / V$$

b) Downward range, $\Delta V_{do}$

$$\Delta V_{do} = (V - V_{do}) \times 100 / V$$

### 33.1.3.4 Steady-state Voltage Bandwidth $\Delta V$

The agreed voltage band about the steady-state voltage that the voltage may reach within a given voltage recovery time after a specified sudden increase or decrease of load.

### 33.1.3.5 Transient Voltage Regulation

Transient voltage regulation is the maximum voltage deviation that occurs as the result of a sudden load change.

NOTE—Transient voltage regulation may be voltage rise or a voltage dip and is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 33.1.3.6 Voltage Dip ($V_1$)

Voltage dip is the transient voltage regulation that occurs as the result of a sudden increase in load. (See Figure 33-1).

NOTE—Voltage dip is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.1.3.7 Voltage Rise

Voltage rise is the transient voltage regulation that occurs as the result of a sudden decrease in load.

NOTE—Voltage rise is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 33.1.3.8 Transient Voltage Overshoot ($V_2$)

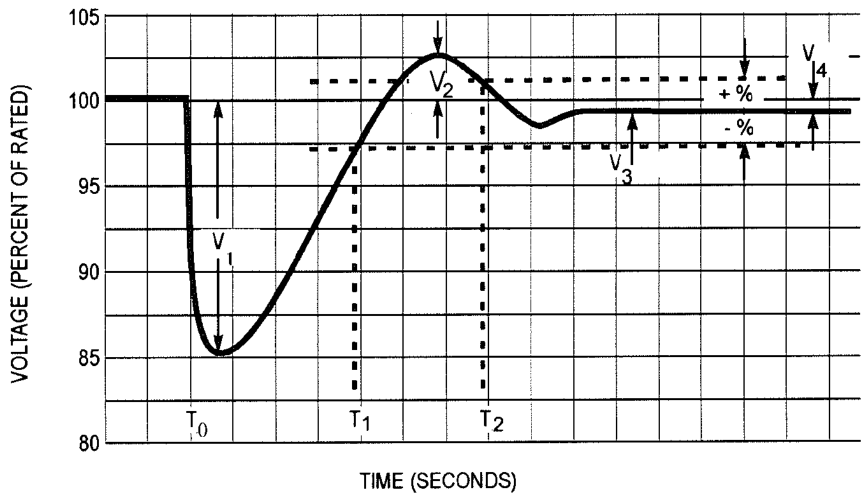
Transient voltage overshoot is the maximum voltage overshoot above rated voltage that occurs as a result of the response of the exciter-regulator system to a sudden increase in load. (See Figure 33-1.)

NOTE—Transient voltage overshoot is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage.

### 33.1.3.9 Steady-state Voltage Regulation ($V_4$)

Steady-state voltage regulation is the settled or steady-state voltage deviation or excursion that occurs as the result of a load change after all transients due to the load change have decayed to zero. (See Figure 33-1.)

NOTE—Steady-state voltage regulation is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage for any load between no load and rated load with the range of unity (1.0) to rated power factor.




$V_1$ = Voltage dip
$V_2$ = Maximum transient voltage overshoot
$V_3$ = Recovery voltage
$V_4$ = Steady-state regulator

$T_0$ = Point at which load is applied
$T_1$ = Time to recover to a specified band
$T_2$ = Time to recover to and remain within the specified band

**Figure 33-1**
**GENERATOR TRANSIENT VOLTAGE VERSUS TIME FOR SUDDEN LOAD CHANGE**

### 33.1.3.10 Recovery Voltage ($V_3$)

Recovery voltage is the maximum obtainable voltage for a specified load condition

NOTE—Recovery voltage is normally expressed as a percent of rated voltage. For loads in excess of rated, recovery voltage is limited by saturation and field forcing capability.

### 33.1.3.11 Recovery Time ($T_1$)

Recovery time is the time interval required for the output voltage to return to a specified band following a specified sudden load change. (See Figure 33-1.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.1.3.12 Voltage Modulation $V_{mod}$

The quasi-periodic voltage variation (peak-to-peak) about steady-state voltage having typical frequencies below the fundamental generation frequency expressed as a percentage of average voltage of the modulating voltage of one phase.

$$V_{mod} = 2 \times (V_{modmax} - V_{modmin}) / (V_{modmax} + V_{modmin}) \times 100$$

### 33.1.3.13 Voltage Unbalance

Voltage unbalance in percentage is defined as:

Percent voltage unbalance = 100 x (maximum voltage deviation from average voltage) / average voltage where average voltage is the average of the three line-to-line voltages.

### 33.1.3.14 Voltage Regulation Characteristics

Curves of terminal voltage expressed as a function of load current at a given power factor under steady-state conditions at rated speed without any manual adjustment of the voltage regulation system.

### 33.1.3.15 Total Harmonic Distortion (THD)

Percent THD is the square root of the sum of the squares of the rms harmonic voltages divided by the rms fundamental voltage, multiplied by 100.

### 33.1.3.16 Telephone Harmonic Factor (THF)

Telephone Harmonic factor (THF %) of a voltage wave is 100 multiplied by the ratio of the square root of the sum of the squares of the weighted root mean square (rms) values of all the sine wave components including both the fundamental and harmonics to the rms value (unweighted) of the entire wave.

### 33.1.3.17 Telephone Influence Factor (TIF)

Telephone Influence factor of a voltage wave is the ratio of the square root of the sum of the squares of the weighted root mean square (rms) values of all the sine wave components including both fundamental and harmonics to the rms value (unweighted) of the entire wave.

### 33.1.3.18 Deviation Factor

The deviation factor of a wave is the ratio of the maximum difference between corresponding ordinates of the wave and of the equivalent sine wave to the maximum ordinate of the equivalent sine wave when the waves are superimposed in such a way as to make this maximum difference as small as possible. The equivalent sine wave is defined as having the same frequency and the same rms value as the wave being tested.

## 33.1.4 Performance Classes

Four performance classes are specified to cover the various requirements of the supplied electrical systems.

### 33.1.4.1 Performance Class G1

This is required for application where the connected loads are such that only basic parameters of voltage and frequency need to be specified.

Examples: General purpose applications (lighting and other simple electrical loads).

### 33.1.4.2 Performance Class G2

This is required for applications where the demands on voltage characteristics are very much the same as for the commercial power system. When load change occurs, there may be temporary but acceptable deviation of voltage and frequency.

Examples: Lighting systems; pumps, fans and hoists.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.1.4.3 Performance Class G3

This is required for applications where the connected equipment may make severe demands on the frequency, voltage and waveform characteristics.

Examples: Telecommunications and thyristor-controlled loads. It should be especially recognized that both rectifier and thyristor-controlled loads may need special consideration with respect to their effect on generator-voltage waveform.

### 33.1.4.4 Performance Class G4

This is required for applications where the demands made on the frequency, voltage and waveform characteristics are exceptionally severe.

Examples: Data-processing equipment or computer systems.

## 33.2 RATINGS

### 33.2.1 Power Factor

The preferred value of power factor is 0.8 lagging.

### 33.2.2 Kilovolt - Ampere (kVA) and Kilowatt (kW) Ratings

The ratings for 60- and 50-hertz, 0.8-power-factor lagging (overexcited) synchronous generators shall be as shown in Table 33-1.

**Table 33-1**
**KILOVOLT-AMPERE AND KILOWATT RATINGS**

| kVA | kW | kVA | kW | kVA | kW |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.25 | 1.0 | 250 | 200 | 4375 | 3500 |
| 2.5 | 2.0 | 312 | 250 | 5000 | 4000 |
| 3.75 | 3.0 | 375 | 300 | 5625 | 4500 |
| 6.25 | 5 | 438 | 350 | 6250 | 5000 |
| 9.4 | 7.5 | 500 | 400 | 7500 | 6000 |
| 12.5 | 10 | 625 | 500 | 8750 | 7000 |
| 18.7 | 15 | 750 | 600 | 10000 | 8000 |
| 25 | 20 | 875 | 700 | 12500 | 10000 |
| 31.3 | 25 | 1000 | 800 | 15625 | 12500 |
| 37.5 | 30 | 1125 | 900 | 18750 | 15000 |
| 50 | 40 | 1250 | 1000 | 25000 | 20000 |
| 62.5 | 50 | 1563 | 1250 | | |
| 75 | 60 | 1875 | 1500 | | |
| 93.8 | 75 | 2188 | 1750 | | |
| 125 | 100 | 2500 | 2000 | | |
| 156 | 125 | 2812 | 2250 | | |
| 187 | 150 | 3125 | 2500 | | |
| 219 | 175 | 3750 | 3000 | | |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings at all speeds and for all voltage ratings.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.2.3 Speed

Speed ratings shall be as shown in Table 33-2.

**Table 33-2**
**SPEED RATINGS**

| | Speed, Rpm | |
|---|---|---|
| **Number of Poles** | **60 Hertz** | **50 Hertz** |
| 2 | 3600 | 3000 |
| 4 | 1800 | 1500 |
| 6 | 1200 | 1000 |
| 8 | 900 | 750 |
| 10 | 720 | 600 |
| 12 | 600 | 500 |
| 14 | 514 | 429 |
| 16 | 450 | 375 |
| 18 | 400 | 333 |
| 20 | 360 | 300 |
| 22 | 327 | 273 |
| 24 | 300 | 250 |
| 26 | 277 | 231 |
| 28 | 257 | 214 |
| 30 | 240 | 200 |
| 32 | 225 | 188 |
| 36 | 200 | 167 |
| 40 | 180 | 150 |
| 44 | 164 | 136 |
| 48 | 150 | --- |
| 52 | 138 | --- |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings at all speeds and for all voltage ratings.

### 33.2.4 Voltage

#### 33.2.4.1 Broad Voltage Ratings, Volts

**Three Phase 60 Hz**

208-240/416-480

**Three Phase 50 Hz**

190-220/380-440

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.2.4.2 Discrete Voltage Ratings, Volts

| Three-Phase 60 Hz | Single-Phase 60 Hz | Three-Phase 50 Hz | Single-Phase 50 Hz |
|---|---|---|---|
| 208Y/120 | 120 | 190 | 127 |
| 240 | 120/240 | 200Y/115 | 115/230 |
| 480 | 240 | 220Y/127 | 220 |
| 480Y/277 | | 380 | 250 |
| 240/480 | | 400Y/230 | |
| 600 | | 415 | |
| 2400 | | 440 | |
| 4160Y/2400 | | 690 | |
| 4800 | | 3300Y/1905 | |
| 6900 | | 6000 | |
| 13800 | | 11000 | |
| | | 12470 | |

NOTE—It is not practical to build synchronous generators of all kVA ratings for all of these voltage ratings.

## 33.2.5 FREQUENCIES

Frequencies shall be 50 and 60 hertz.

## 33.3 PERFORMANCE

### 33.3.1 Voltage and Frequency Variation

### 33.3.1.1 Variation From Rated Voltage

#### 33.3.1.1.1 Broad Voltage Range

Synchronous generators shall be capable of delivering rated output (kVA) at rated frequency and power factor at any voltage within the broad voltage range (see 33.2.4.1) in accordance with the standards of performance established in this Part. Voltage variations beyond this range may cause damage to the generator and to connected loads.

#### 33.3.1.1.2 Discrete Voltages

Synchronous generators with discrete voltage ratings shall be capable of delivering rated output (kVA) at rated frequency and power factor at any voltage not more than 5 percent above or below rated voltage (see 33.2.4.2), but not necessarily in accordance with the standards of performance established for operation at rated voltage.

### 33.3.1.2 Variation From rated Frequency

#### 33.3.1.2.1 Steady-state

The steady-state frequency variations depend mainly on the performance of the engine speed governor. The generators shall be capable of delivering its rated output (kVA) at rated power factor within ± 2 percent frequency range. The voltage under these conditions may not necessarily be the rated voltage.

#### 33.3.1.2.2 Transient

The dynamic frequency characteristics, i.e., the response to load changes, depend on the combined behavior of all the system components (for example on the engine torque characteristics, including type of turbocharging system, the characteristics of the load, the inertias, the damping, etc.) and thus on the individual design of all the relevant components. The dynamic frequency behavior of the generating set may be related directly to the generator speed.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

The transient frequency and voltage characteristics of the generating set to sudden load change depend on such influences as the following:

a) the turbo-charging system of the RIC engine,
b) brake mean effective pressure of the RIC engine at declared power,
c) speed governor behavior,
d) generator design,
e) alternator excitation system characteristics,
f) voltage regulator behavior,
g) rotational inertia of the whole generating set, and
h) the applied load, the power factor of the applied load, and existing loads on the generator set.

**33.3.2 Limits of Temperature and Temperature Rise**

**33.3.2.1 Continuous Rating**

The observable temperature rise under rated-load conditions of each of the various parts of the synchronous generator, above the temperature of the cooling air, shall not exceed the values given in Table 33-3. The temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the external air as it enters the ventilating openings of the machine, and the temperature rises given in the table are based on a maximum temperature of 40°C for this external air. Temperatures shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115.

Temperature rises given in Table 33-3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C. However, it is recognized that synchronous generators may be required to operate at an ambient temperature higher than 40°C. For successful operation of generators in ambient temperatures higher than 40°C, the temperature rises of the generators given in Table 33-3 shall be reduced by the number of degrees that the ambient temperature exceeds 40°C. (Exception—for totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines, the temperature of the cooling air is the temperature of the air leaving the coolers. Totally enclosed water-air-cooled machines are normally designed for the maximum cooling water temperature encountered at the location where each machine is to be installed. With a cooling water temperature not exceeding that for which the machine is designed:

a) On machines designed for cooling water temperature from 5°C to 30°C, the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall not exceed 40°C.

b) On machines designed for higher cooling water temperatures, the temperature of the air leaving the coolers shall be permitted to exceed 40°C provided the temperature rises of the machine parts are then limited to values less than those given in Table 33-3 by the number of degrees that the temperature of the air leaving the coolers exceeds 40°C.)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 33-3**
**TEMPERATURE RISE**

| | | | Temperature Rise. Degrees C | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Class of Insulation System | | |
| **Item** | **Machine Part** | **Method of Temperature Determination** | **B** | **F*** | **H*** |
| a. | Armature Windings | | | | |
| | 1. All kVA ratings | Resistance | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| | 2. 1563 kVA and less | Embedded detector ** | 90 | 115 | 140 |
| | 3. Over 1563 kVA | | | | |
| | a. 7000 volts and less | Embedded detector** | 85 | 110 | 135 |
| | b. Over 7000 volts | Embedded detector** | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| b. | Field winding | Resistance | 80 | 105 | 125 |
| c. | The temperatures attained by cores, amortisseur windings, collector rings, and miscellaneous parts (such as brushholders, brushes, etc.) shall not injure the insulation or the machine in any respect. | | | | |

*Where a class F or H insulation system is used, special consideration should be given to bearing temperatures, lubrication, etc.

**Embedded detectors are located within the slot of the machine and can be either resistance elements or thermocouples. For machines with embedded detectors, this method shall be used to demonstrate conformity with the standard (see 33.3.2.2).

### 33.3.2.2 Embedded Temperature Detectors

Embedded temperature detectors are resistance temperature detectors or thermocouples built into the machine during construction at points which are inaccessible after the machine is built.

Unless otherwise specified, when machines are equipped with embedded detectors they shall be of the resistance temperature detector type. The resistance element shall have a minimum width of 0.25 inch, and the detector length shall be approximately as follows.

| Core Length, Inches | Approximate Detector Length, Inches |
|---|---|
| 12 or less | 6 |
| Greater than 12 and less than 40 | 10 |
| 40 or greater | 20 |

For generators rated less than 5000 kVA the minimum number of detectors shall equal the number of phases for which the machine is wound (i.e., three detectors for a three-phase machine). For generators rated 5000 kVA or higher the minimum number of detectors shall be six. The detectors shall be suitably distributed around the circumference, located between the coil sides, and in positions having normally the highest temperature along the length of the slot.

The detector shall be located in the center of the slot (with the respect to the slot width) and in intimate contact with the insulation of both the upper and lower coil sides whenever possible; otherwise, it shall be in contact with the insulation of the upper coil side (that is, the coil side nearest the air gap). Each detector shall be installed, and its leads brought out, so that the detector is effectively protected from contact with the cooling medium. If the detector does not occupy the full length of the core, suitable packing shall be inserted between the coils to the full length of the core to prevent the cooling medium from directly contacting the detector.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.3.2.3 Standby Duty

The temperature rise, above the temperature of the cooling medium, for each of the various parts of the generator shall not exceed the values given in 33.3.2.1 by more than 25°C when the generator is operated continuously at the standby rating (see 33.1.1.6). Operation at these stand-by temperature rise values causes the generator insulation to age thermally at about four to eight times the rate that occurs at the continuous-duty temperature rise values, i.e., operating 1 hour at stand-by temperature rise values is approximately equivalent to operating 4 to 8 hours at continuous-duty temperature rise values.

### 33.3.2.4 Altitude

For machines which operate under prevailing barometric pressure and which are designed not to exceed the specified temperature rise at altitudes from 3300 feet (1000 meters) to 13200 feet (4000 meters), the temperature rises, as checked by tests at low altitudes, shall be less than those listed in 33.3.2.1 by 1 percent of the specified temperature rise for each 330 feet (100 meters) of altitude in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters).

### 33.3.2.5 Temperature Rise for Air-Cooled Machines for Ambients Lower than 40° C, but Not Below 0° C*

The temperature rises given in Table 33-3 are based upon a reference ambient temperature of 40°C to cover most general environments. However, it is recognized that air-cooled synchronous generators may be operated in environments where the ambient temperature of the cooling air will always be less than 40°C. When an air-cooled synchronous generator is marked with a maximum ambient less than 40°C then the allowable temperature rises in Table 33-3 shall be increased according to the following:

a) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 33-3 is less than or equal to 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 33-3 shall be increased by the amount of the difference between 40°C and the lower marked ambient temperature.

b) For generators for which the difference between the Reference Temperature and the sum of 40°C and the Temperature Rise Limit given in Table 33-3 is greater than 5°C then the temperature rises given in Table 33-3 shall be increased by the amount calculated from the following expression:

Increase in Rise = {40°C - Marked Ambient} x { 1 – [Reference Temperature – (40°C + Temperature Rise Limit)] / 80°C}

Where:

| | Class of Insulation System | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | F | H |
| Reference Temperature, Degrees C | 105 | 130 | 155 | 180 |

*NOTE—This requirement does not include water-cooled generators.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Temperature Rise Limit = maximum allowable temperature rise according to Table 33-3

For example: A synchronous generator with a Class F insulation system and using resistance as the method of determining the rated temperature rise is marked for use in an ambient with a maximum temperature of 25°C. From the Table above the Reference Temperature is 155°C and from Table 33-3 the Temperature Rise Limit is 105°C. The allowable Increase in Rise to be added to the Temperature Rise Limit is then:

$$\text{Increase in Rise} = \left\{40^{\circ}\text{C} - 25^{\circ}\text{C}\right\} \times \left\{1 - \frac{155^{\circ}\text{C} - \left(40^{\circ}\text{C} + 105^{\circ}\text{C}\right)}{80^{\circ}\text{C}}\right\} = 13^{\circ}\text{C}$$

The total allowable Temperature Rise by Resistance above a maximum of a 25°C ambient is then equal to the sum of the Temperature Rise Limit from Table 33-3 and the calculated Increase in Rise. For this example that total is 105°C + 13°C = 118°C.

### 33.3.3 Special Load Conditions

#### 33.3.3.1 Overload Capability

A continuous duty synchronous generator and exciter (if provided) shall be suitable for operation at a generator overload of 10 percent for 2 hours out of any consecutive 24 hours of operation.

When operated at any load greater than rated load the temperature rise will increase and may exceed the temperature rises specified in 33.3.2.1.

#### 33.3.3.2 Occasional Excess Current

Generators shall be capable of withstanding a load current equal to 1.5 times the rated current for not less than 30 seconds.

#### 33.3.3.3 Continuous Current Unbalance

A generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, the effects of a continuous current unbalance corresponding to a negative-phase-sequence current $I_2$ of the following values, providing the rated kVA is not exceeded and the maximum current does not exceed 105 percent of rated current in any phase. (Negative-phase-sequence current is expressed as a percentage of rated stator current.).

| Type of Generator | Permissible $I_2$, Percent |
|---|---|
| Salient pole | |
| a. With connected amortisseur winding | 10 |
| b. With nonconnected amortisseur winding | 8 |
| Air-cooled cylindrical rotor | 10 |

These values also express the negative-phase-sequence current capability at reduced generator kVA capabilities, as a percentage of the stator current corresponding to the reduced capability.

#### 33.3.3.4 Short-circuit Current

A synchronous generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, a 30-second, three-phase short circuit at its terminals when operating at rated kVA and power factor, at 5-percent over-voltage for generators with discrete voltage ratings and at the maximum voltage for generators with broad voltage

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

ratings, with fixed excitation. The generator shall also be capable of withstanding, without damage, at its terminals any other short circuit of 30 seconds or less provided:

a) The machine phase currents under fault conditions are such that the negative-phase-sequence current, ($I_2$), expressed in per unit of stator current at rated kVA, and the duration of the fault in seconds, t, are limited to values which give an integrated product, $(I_2)^2t$, equal to or less than:
   1. 40 for salient-pole machines
   2. 30 for air-cooled cylindrical rotor machines

b) The maximum phase current is limited by external means to a value which does not exceed the maximum phase current obtained from a three-phase fault.

NOTE—Generators subjected to faults between the preceding values of $(I_2)^2t$ and 200 percent of these values may suffer varying degrees of damage; for faults in excess of 200 percent of these limits, serious damage should be expected.

With the voltage regulator in service, the allowable duration, t, of the short circuit shall be determined from the following equation in situations where the regulator is designed to provide ceiling voltage continuously during a short circuit.

$$t = \left( \frac{\text{nominal field voltage}}{\text{exciter ceiling voltage}} \right)^2 \times 30 \text{ seconds}$$

### 33.3.3.5 Operation with Non-linear or Asymmetric Loads

Non-linear loads result in a distortion of the current from a pure sinewave shape when sinusoidal voltage is applied. A synchronous generator shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, the effects of continuous operation at rated load on such a circuit provided the instantaneous value of the current does not differ from the instantaneous value of the fundamental current by more than 5 percent of the amplitude of the fundamental, and when neither the negative-sequence nor zero-sequence component of the current exceeds 5 percent of the positive-sequence component when any unbalance between phases is present.

The foregoing levels of current distortion may result in generator output voltage distortion levels beyond user limits.

### 33.3.4 Power Quality

### 33.3.4.1 Telephone Influence Factor (TIF)—60 Hz only

The telephone influence factor of a synchronous generator is the measure of the possible effect of harmonics in the generator voltage wave on telephone circuits.

### 33.3.4.1.1 Balanced TIF

The balanced telephone influence factor (TIF) based on the weighting factors given in 33.3.4.1.3 shall not exceed the following values:

| kVA Rating of Generator | Balanced TIF |
|---|---|
| 6.25 to 62 | 250 |
| 62.5 to 4999 | 150 |
| 5000 to 19999 | 100 |
| 20000 and above | 70 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.3.4.1.2 Residual Component TIF

The residual component telephone influence factor based on the weighting factors given in 33.3.4.1.3 shall not exceed the following values. The residual component applies only to those generators having voltage ratings of 2000 volts and higher.

| kVA Rating of Generator | Residual TIF |
|---|---|
| 1000 to 4999 | 100 |
| 5000 to 19999 | 75 |
| 20000 and above | 50 |

### 33.3.4.1.3 Weighting Factors

The single-frequency telephone influence weighting factors ($TIF_f$), according to the 1960 single frequency weighting are as listed in Table 33-4.

### 33.3.4.1.4 Test Conditions

The telephone influence factor shall be measured in accordance with IEEE Std 115. TIF shall be measured at the generator terminals on open circuit at rated voltage and frequency.

### 33.3.4.2 Telephone Harmonic Factor (THF)—50 hertz only

### 33.3.4.2.1 THF Limits

When tested on open-circuit and at rated speed and voltage, the telephone harmonic factor (THF) of the line-to-line terminal voltage as measured according to the methods laid down in 33.3.4.2.2 shall not exceed the following values:

| kVA Rating of Generator | THF |
|---|---|
| 6.25 - 62.5 | 8% |
| 63.0 - 1 000 | 5% |
| 1 001 - 5 000 | 3% |
| above 5 000 | 1.5% |

NOTES—

1. Limiting values of individual harmonics are not specified as it is considered that machines which meet the above requirements will be operationally satisfactory.

2 Where the synchronous machine is to be connected to the system in an unusual manner (e.g. where the start point of the machine is connected to ground and the machine is not linked to the system via a transformer), the waveform requirements should be agreed between manufacturer and purchaser.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 33-4**
**$TIF_F$ — ACCORDING TO THE 1960 SINGLE FREQUENCY WEIGHTING**

| Frequency | $TIF_f$ | Frequency | $TIF_f$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 60 | 0.5 | 1860 | 7820 |
| 180 | 30 | 1980 | 8330 |
| 300 | 225 | 2100 | 8830 |
| 360 | 400 | 2160 | 9080 |
| 420 | 650 | 2220 | 9330 |
| 540 | 1320 | 2340 | 9840 |
| 660 | 2260 | 2460 | 10340 |
| 720 | 2760 | 2580 | 10600 |
| 780 | 3360 | 2820 | 10210 |
| 900 | 4350 | 2940 | 9820 |
| 1000 | 5000 | 3000 | 9670 |
| 1020 | 5100 | 3180 | 8740 |
| 1080 | 5400 | 3300 | 8090 |
| 1140 | 5630 | 3540 | 6730 |
| 1260 | 6050 | 3660 | 6130 |
| 1380 | 6370 | 3900 | 4400 |
| 1440 | 6650 | 4020 | 3700 |
| 1500 | 6680 | 4260 | 2750 |
| 1620 | 6970 | 4380 | 2190 |
| 1740 | 7320 | 5000 | 840 |
| 1800 | 7570 | | |

### 33.3.4.2.2 Tests

Type tests shall be carried out on ac generators to verify compliance with 33.3.4.2.1.

The range of frequencies measured shall cover all harmonics from rated frequency up to 5000 Hz.

Either the THF may be measured directly by means of a meter and associated network specially designed for the purpose, or each individual harmonic shall be measured and from the measured values the THF shall be computed using the following formula:

$$THF\,(\%) = \frac{100}{V}\sqrt{E_1^2\lambda_1^2 + E_2^2\lambda_2^2 + E_3^2\lambda_3^2 + \ldots E_n^2\lambda_n^2}$$

Where:

$E_n$ is the rms value of $n^{th}$ harmonic line-to-line terminal voltage;
$V$ is the rms value line-to-line terminal voltage of machine;
$\lambda_n$ is the weighting factor for frequency corresponding to $n^{th}$ harmonic.

Numerical values of the weighting factor for different frequencies shall be obtained from Table 33-5; the curve in Figure 33-2 may be used as an aid to interpolation.

### 33.3.4.3 Total harmonic distortion (THD)

The total harmonic distortion of the open-circuit line-to-line terminal voltage shall not exceed 5%.

### 33.3.4.4 Deviation Factor

The deviation factor of the open-circuit line-to-line terminal voltage of synchronous generators shall not exceed 0.1.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 33-5**
**HARMONIC WEIGHTING FACTORS FOR THF**

| Frequency Hz | Weighting factor λ | Frequency Hz | Weighting factor λ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 16.66 | 0.00000117 | 2050 | 1.79 |
| 50 | 0.0000444 | 2100 | 1.81 |
| 100 | 0.00112 | 2150 | 1.82 |
| 150 | 0.00665 | 2200 | 1.84 |
| 200 | 0.0233 | 2250 | 1.86 |
| 250 | 0.0556 | 2300 | 1.87 |
| 300 | 0.111 | 2350 | 1.89 |
| 350 | 0.165 | 2400 | 1.90 |
| 400 | 0.242 | 2450 | 1.91 |
| 450 | 0.327 | 2500 | 1.93 |
| 500 | 0.414 | 2550 | 1.93 |
| 550 | 0.505 | 2600 | 1.94 |
| 600 | 0.595 | 2650 | 1.95 |
| 650 | 0.691 | 2700 | 1.96 |
| 700 | 0.790 | 2750 | 1.96 |
| 750 | 0.895 | 2800 | 1.97 |
| 800 | 1.000 | | |
| 850 | 1.10 | 2850 | 1.97 |
| 900 | 1.21 | 2900 | 1.97 |
| 950 | 1.32 | 2950 | 1.97 |
| 1000 | 1.40 | 3000 | 1.97 |
| 1050 | 1.46 | 3100 | 1.94 |
| 1100 | 1.47 | 3200 | 1.89 |
| 1150 | 1.49 | 3300 | 1.83 |
| 1200 | 1.50 | 3400 | 1.75 |
| 1250 | 1.53 | 3500 | 1.65 |
| 1300 | 1.55 | 3600 | 1.51 |
| 1350 | 1.57 | 3700 | 1.35 |
| 1400 | 1.58 | 3800 | 1.19 |
| 1450 | 1.60 | 3900 | 1.04 |
| 1500 | 1.61 | 4000 | 0.890 |
| 1550 | 1.63 | 4100 | 0.740 |
| 1600 | 1.65 | 4200 | 0.610 |
| 1650 | 1.66 | 4300 | 0.496 |
| 1700 | 1.68 | 4400 | 0.398 |
| 1750 | 1.70 | 4500 | 0.316 |
| 1800 | 1.71 | 4600 | 0.252 |
| 1850 | 1.72 | 4700 | 0.199 |
| 1900 | 1.74 | 4800 | 0.158 |
| 1950 | 1.75 | 4900 | 0.125 |
| 2000 | 1.77 | 5000 | 0.100 |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

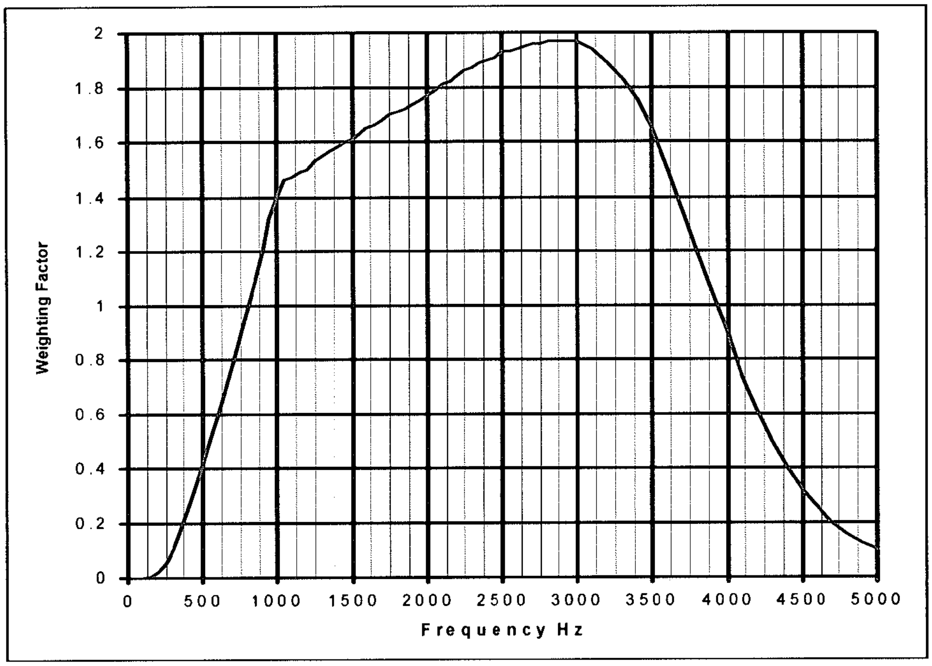



**Figure 33-2**
**WEIGHTING CURVE FOR COMPUTING THF[1]**

### 33.3.4.5 Electromagnetic Compatibility

#### 33.3.4.5.1 General

Electromagnetic emissions may be radiated or conducted. Electromagnetic compatibility of a device refers to its successful operation in an environment exposed to these emissions and the device not producing emissions at a higher than accepted level. It is necessary that the device does not produce electromagnetic emissions at a level that might affect the operation of other devices in its vicinity (i.e., emissions, conducted and radiated), and that the operation of the device is not affected by the emissions it receives from other sources (i.e., immunity from conducted and radiated emissions).

#### 33.3.4.5.2 Generator Defined

The EMC requirements apply to synchronous generators with rated voltage not exceeding 1000 volts. In this context, the synchronous generator includes all electronic components mounted inside the machine and essential for its operation. Examples of this are the rotating diodes installed between the exciter and the main generator.

Control devices such as voltage regulators, monitoring devices, etc., whether mounted inside or outside the generator are outside the scope of this standard.

#### 33.3.4.5.3 Immunity

Synchronous generators are inherently immune from conducted and radiated emissions defined by Tables 33-6 and 33-7 and paragraphs 33.3.4.1, 33.3.4.2, 33.3.4.3 and 33.3.4.4.

[1] Reproduced with permission of the IEC, which retains the copyright.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

#### 33.3.4.5.4 Radiated Emission limits

When supplying a circuit which is virtually non-deforming and virtually balanced, synchronous generators under steady-state load conditions do not radiate disturbances higher than the limits in Table 33-6 for brushless designs or higher than Table 33-7 for designs with slip rings and brushes.

A circuit is considered to be virtually non-deforming if, when supplied by a sinusoidal voltage, the current is virtually sinusoidal, i.e., none of the instantaneous values differ from instantaneous value of the same phase of the fundamental wave by more than 5% of the amplitude of the latter.

A polyphase circuit is considered to be virtually balanced if, when supplied by a balanced system of voltages, the system of currents is virtually balanced, i.e., neither the negative-sequence components nor the zero-sequence component exceeds 5% of the positive-sequence component.

#### 33.3.4.5.5 Conducted Emission Limits

Conducted high frequency limits are covered by Tables 33-6 and 33-7. Conducted low frequency limits are covered by Paragraphs 33.3.4.1 and 33.3.4.2.

#### 33.3.4.5.6 Tests

#### 33.3.4.5.6.1 Immunity

Tests are not required to demonstrate compliance with 33.3.4.5.3.

#### 33.3.4.5.6.2 Emissions

Tests for conducted low frequency emissions shall be carried out to verify compliance with 33.3.4.1 and 33.3.4.2. No other tests are required to demonstrate EMC compliance.

**Table 33-6**
**ELECTROMAGNETIC DISTURBANCE LIMITS FOR BRUSHLESS GENERATORS**

| | Frequency range | Limits |
|---|---|---|
| Radiated Disturbance | 30 MHz to 230 MHz<br><br>230 MHz to 1000 MHz | 30 dB (μV/m) quasi peak measured at 10 m distance[1]<br><br>37 dB (μV/m) quasi peak measured at 10 m distance[1] |
| | 0.15 MHz to 0.5 MHz Limits decrease linearly with logarithm frequency | 66 to 56 dB (μV) quasi peak<br><br>54 to 46 dB (μV) average |
| Conducted Disturbance on a.c. supply terminals | 0.5 MHz to 5 MHz | 56 dB (μV) quasi peak<br><br>46 dB (μV) average |
| | 5 MHz to 30 MHz | 60 dB (μV) quasi peak<br><br>50 dB (μV) average |

1. May be measured at 3 m distance using the limits increased by 10 dB

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**Table 33-7**
**ELECTROMAGNETIC DISTURBANCE LIMITS FOR GENERATORS WITH BRUSHES**

| | Frequency range | Limits |
|---|---|---|
| Radiated Disturbance | 30 MHz to 230 MHz | 30 dB (μV/m) quasi peak measured at 30 m distance[1] |
| | 230 MHz to 1000 MHz | 37 dB (μV/m) quasi peak measured at 30 m distance[1] |
| Conducted Disturbance on a.c. supply terminals | 0.15 MHz to 0.5 MHz | 79 dB (μV) quasi peak<br>66 dB (μV) average |
| | 0.5 MHz to 30 MHz | 73 dB (μV) quasi peak<br>60 dB (μV) average |

1. May be measured at 10 m distance using the limits increased by 10 dB or measured at 3 m distance using the limits increased by 20 dB

## 33.3.5 Overspeed

Synchronous generators and their exciters (if provided) shall be so constructed that, in an emergency not to exceed 2 minutes, they will withstand without mechanical damage overspeeds above synchronous speed in accordance with the following:

| Synchronous Speed, rpm | Overspeed, Percent of Synchronous Speed |
|---|---|
| 1801 and over | 20 |
| 1800 and below | 25 |

## 33.3.6 Machine Sound

### 33.3.6.1 Sound Quality

Sound quality, the distribution of effective sound intensities as a function of frequency, affects the acceptability of the sound.

A measurement of total sound does not completely define sound acceptability because machines with the same overall decibel sound level may have a different sound quality. It may be necessary, in some cases, to describe sound profile in more detail, including octave band values.

### 33.3.6.2 Sound Measurement

Machine sound should be measured in accordance with Part 9 in overall sound power levels using the A-weighting network and stated in decibels (reference = $10^{-12}$ watts).

Generator sound tests should be taken at rated voltage on no load. The generator should be isolated from other sound sources.

Sound power values are related to the sound source and are not affected by environmental conditions. They are calculated from test data taken under prescribed conditions and the values can be repeated. Field measurements are measured in sound pressure. Measurements of sound pressure levels of generators installed in the field can be correlated to sound power levels using corrections to environmental conditions as outlined in MG 3.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

**33.3.6.3 Sound Level**

If the sound level is to be limited, then a special agreement shall be made between the manufacturer and the customer.

**33.3.7 Linear Vibration**

**33.3.7.1 Tests**

See Part 7 for evaluation of two-bearing generators. Vibration limits and test methods for single-bearing machines are by agreement between the user and the manufacturer.

**33.3.7.2 Imposed Vibration**

Typical features of reciprocating internal combustion engines are oscillating masses, torque fluctuations and pulsating forces. All these features exert considerable alternating forces on the main supports of the genset components. Generators operating in gensets are thus exposed to higher levels of vibration compared with those running independently. It is the responsibility of the genset manufacturer to ensure compatibility of the genset components and to eliminate structural resonances to minimize vibration.

**33.3.8 Testing**

**33.3.8.1 Routine Factory Tests**

**33.3.8.1.1 Generators Not Completely Assembled in the Factory**

The following tests shall be made on all generators (and exciters if provided) which are not completely assembled in the factory, including those furnished without a shaft or a complete set of bearings.

a) Resistance of armature and field windings
b) Polarity of field coils
c) High-potential test in accordance with 33.3.8.2.

**33.3.8.1.2 Generators Completely Assembled in the Factory**

The following tests shall be made on generators (and exciters if provided) which are completely assembled in the factory and furnished with a shaft and a complete set of bearings.

a) Resistance of armature and field windings
b) If brushless exciter is not provided, check generator field current at no load with normal voltage and frequency on the generator. On generators having brushless excitation systems, check instead the exciter field current at no load with normal voltage and frequency on the generator.
c) High-potential test in accordance with 33.3.8.2.

**33.3.8.2 High Potential Tests**

**33.3.8.2.1 Safety Precautions and Test Procedures**

See Part 3, paragraph 3.1.

**33.3.8.2.2 Test Voltage—Armature Windings**

The test voltage for all generators shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is 1000 volts plus twice the rated voltage of the machine but in no case less than 1500 volts.

**33.3.8.2.3 Test Voltage—Field Windings, Generators with Slip Rings**

The test voltage for all generators with slip rings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

a) Rated excitation voltage $\leq$ 500 volts direct current; ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts

b) Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current; 4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage.

### 33.3.8.2.4 Test Voltage—Assembled Brushless Generator Field Winding and Exciter Armature Winding

The test voltage for all assembled brushless generator field windings and exciter armature windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows:

a) Rated excitation voltage $\leq$ 500 volts direct current; ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts

b) Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current; 4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage

The brushless circuit components (diodes, thyristors, etc.) on an assembled brushless exciter and synchronous machine field wiring shall be short-circuited (not grounded) during the test.

### 33.3.8.2.5 Test Voltage—Brushless Exciter Field Winding

The test voltage for all brushless exciter field windings shall be an alternating voltage whose effective value is as follows.

a) Rated excitation voltage $\leq$ 500 volts direct current; ten times the rated excitation voltage but in no case less than 1500 volts

b) Rated excitation voltage > 500 volts direct current; 4000 volts plus twice the rated excitation voltage

c) Exciters with alternating-current excited stators (fields) shall be tested at 1000 volts plus twice the rated alternating-current voltage of the stator, but in no case less than 1500V.

### 33.3.8.2.6 DC Test Voltage

A direct instead of alternating voltage is sometimes used for high-potential tests. In such cases, a test voltage equal to 1.7 times the alternate-current test voltage (effective value) as given in 33.3.8.2.2, 33.3.8.2.3, 33.3.8.2.4, and 33.3.8.2.5 is recommended. Following a direct voltage high-potential test, the test winding should be thoroughly grounded. The insulation rating of the winding and the test level of the voltage applied determine the period of time required to dissipate the charge and, in many cases, the ground should be maintained for several hours to dissipate the charge to avoid hazard to personnel.

### 33.3.8.3 Efficiency

When testing for efficiency is required, efficiency and losses shall be determined in accordance with IEEE Std 115. The efficiency shall be determined at rated output, voltage, frequency, and balanced load conditions.

The following losses shall be included in determining the efficiency:

a) $I^2R$ loss of armature

b) $I^2R$ loss of field

c) Core loss

d) Stray-load loss

e) Friction and windage loss

f) Exciter loss if exciter is supplied with and driven from shaft of machine

Power required for auxiliary items, such as external pumps or fans, that are necessary for the operation of the generator shall be stated separately.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

In determining $I^2R$ losses at all loads, the resistance of each winding shall be corrected to a temperature equal to an ambient temperature of 25°C plus the observed rated-load temperature rise measured by resistance. When the rated-load temperature rise has not been measured, the resistance of the winding shall be corrected to the following temperature:

| Class of Insulation System | Temperature, Degrees C |
|---|---|
| B | 95 |
| F | 115 |
| H | 130 |

If the rated temperature rise is specified as that of a lower class of insulation system, the temperature for resistance correction shall be that of the lower insulation class.

In the case of generators which are furnished with thrust bearings, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself shall be included in the efficiency calculation. Alternatively, a calculated value of efficiency, including bearing loss due to external thrust load, shall be permitted to be specified.

In the case of generators which are furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses which are representative of the actual installation shall be determined by (1) calculation or (2) experience with shop test bearings and shall be included in the efficiency calculations.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.3.9 Performance Specification Forms

### 33.3.9.1 Slip-ring Synchronous Generators

The specification form for listing performance data on synchronous generators with slip rings shall contain at least the following information.

Date ____________________

**SLIP-RING SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR RATING**

| kVA | Power Factor | kW | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes | Frame |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

Is amortisseur winding included?_________

| kVA | Power Factor | Temperature Rise (Degrees C) Not to Exceed | | | Excitation Requirements (Maximum) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | kW | Exciter Rated Voltage |
| | | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding _____°C and altitude not exceeding ____feet (meters). High-potential test in accordance with 33.3.8.2. The rotor of the generator and the armature of the direct-connected exciter, when used, will withstand an overspeed of _____ percent without mechanical damage.

| Efficiencies | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kVA | Power Factor | kW | | Full Load | ¾ load | ½ Load | |
| | | | | | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature winding at ______°C and field windings at _____°C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.* Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

*1. In the case of a generator furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

2. In the case of a generator furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

| **Approximate Data** | | | **Approximate Weight, Pounds** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $Wk^2$ of the rotor | Pr, Synchronizing Power per Electrical Radian | | Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.3.9.2 Brushless Synchronous Generators

The specification form for listing performance data on brushless synchronous generators shall contain at least the following information.

Date ____________________

**BRUSHLESS SYNCHRONOUS GENERATOR RATING**

| kVA | Power Factor | kW | Rpm | Number of Poles | Phase | Hertz | Volts | Amperes | Frame |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |

Description:

Is amortisseur winding included?_________

| | | | Temperature Rise (Degrees C) Not to Exceed | | | Excitation Requirements*(2) (Maximum) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Armature Winding | | Field Winding | Watts | Exciter Rated Voltage |
| kVA | Power Factor | | Resistance | Embedded Temperature Detector | | | |
| | | Generator | | | | | |
| | | Exciter* (1) | | | | | |

*For rotating transformer give (1) data for equivalent winding temperatures and (2) input kVA and voltage instead of excitation for exciter.

Rating and temperature rise are based on cooling air not exceeding_____°C and altitude not exceeding_____feet (meters). High-potential test in accordance with 33.3.8.2. The rotor of the generator and the armature of the direct-connected exciter, when used, will withstand an overspeed of _____ percent without mechanical damage.

| Efficiencies | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kVA | Power Factor | kW | | Full Load | ¾ load | ½ Load | |
| | | | | | | | |

Efficiencies are determined by including $I^2R$ losses of armature windings at ____°C and field windings at _____°C, core losses, stray-load losses, and friction and windage losses.** Exciter loss is included if supplied with and driven from shaft of machine. Field rheostat losses are not included.

**1. In the case of a generator furnished with a thrust bearing, only that portion of the thrust bearing loss produced by the generator itself is included in the efficiency calculation.

2. In the case of a generator furnished with less than a full set of bearings, friction and windage losses representative of the actual installation are included as determined by (a) calculation or (b) experience with shop test bearings.

| Approximate Data | | | Approximate Weight, Pounds | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $Wk^2$ of the rotor | Pr, Synchronizing Power per Electrical Radian | | Total Net | Rotor Net | Heaviest Part for Crane Net | Total Shipping |
| | | | | | | |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## 33.4 APPLICATIONS

### 33.4.1 Service Conditions

Generators should be properly selected with respect to their service conditions, usual or unusual, both of which involve the environmental conditions to which the machine is subjected and the operating conditions. Machines conforming to this Part are designed for operation in accordance with their ratings under usual service conditions. Some machines may also be capable of operating in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. Definite-purpose or special-purpose machines may be required for some unusual conditions.

Service conditions, other than those specified as usual, may involve some degree of hazard. The additional hazard depends upon the degree of departure from usual operating conditions and the severity of the environment to which the machine is exposed. The additional hazard results from such things as overheating, mechanical failure, abnormal deterioration of the insulation system, corrosion, fire, and explosion.

Although experience of the user may often be the best guide, the manufacturer of the driving equipment and the generator manufacturer should be consulted for further information regarding any unusual service conditions which increase the mechanical or thermal duty on the machine and , as a result, increase the chances for failure and consequent hazard. This further information should be considered by the user, his consultants, or others most familiar with the details of the application involved when making the final decision.

#### 33.4.1.1 Usual Service Conditions

Usual service conditions include the following:

a) Exposure to an ambient temperature in the range of -15°C to 40°C or, when water cooling is used, an ambient temperature range of 5°C (to prevent freezing of water) to 40°C, except for machines rated less than 600 watts and all machines other than water cooled having commutator or sleeve bearings for which the minimum ambient temperature is 0°C.
b) An altitude not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 meters)
c) A location or supplementary enclosure, if any, such that there is no serious interference with the ventilation of the generator
d) Installation on a rigid mounting surface.

#### 33.4.1.2 Unusual Service Conditions

The manufacturer should be consulted if any unusual service conditions exist which may affect the construction or operation of the generator. Among such conditions are:

a) Exposure to:
    1. Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dusts
    2. Lint, sand, or very dirty operating conditions where the accumulation of dirt will interfere with normal ventilation
    3. Chemical fumes, or flammable or explosive gases
    4. Nuclear radiation
    5. Steam, salt-laden air, or oil vapor
    6. Damp, humid, or very dry locations, radiant heat, vermin infestation, or atmospheres conducive to the growth of fungus
    7. Abnormal shock or vibration imposed from external sources

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

8. Abnormal-axial or side thrust imposed on the generator shaft
9. Extremes in ambient temperature
10. Locations at altitudes in excess of 3300 feet (1000 meters)

b) Operation where:
   1. There is excessive departure from rated voltage (see 33.3.1.1)
   2. Low noise levels are required
   3. Generator neutral will be solidly grounded (see 33.4.4.1)

c) Operation at speeds other than rated speed

d) Operation in a poorly ventilated room, in a pit, or in an inclined position

e) Operation where subjected to:
   1. Torsional vibration (see 33.4.3)
   2. Out-of-phase paralleling
   3. Excessive unbalanced load
   4. Excessive current distortion (see 33.3.3.5)
   5. Excessive non-linear loads (see 33.3.3.5)

f) Applications where generators are belt, chain, or gear driven

### 33.4.2 Transient Voltage Performance

### 33.4.2.1 Synchronous Generator Voltage Regulation (Voltage Dip)

#### 33.4.2.1.1 General

When a synchronous generator is subjected to a sudden load change there will be a resultant time-varying change in terminal voltage. One function of the exciter-regulator system is to detect this change in terminal voltage and to vary the field excitation as required to restore the terminal voltage. The maximum transient deviation in output voltage that occurs is a function of (1) the magnitude, power factor. and rate of change of the applied load; (2) the magnitude, power factor, and current versus voltage characteristic of any initial load; (3) the response time and voltage forcing capability of the exciter-regulator system; and (4) the prime mover speed versus time following the sudden load change. Transient voltage performance is therefore a system performance criterion involving the generator, exciter, regulator, and prime mover and cannot be established based on generator data alone. The scope of this section is only the generator and exciter-regulator system. Performance of the prime mover, its governor, and associated controls are outside the scope of NEMA standards.

In selecting or applying synchronous generators, the maximum transient voltage deviation (voltage dip) following a sudden increase in load is often specified or requested. When requested by the purchaser, the generator manufacturer should furnish expected transient voltage regulation, assuming either of the following criteria applies:

a) Generator, exciter, and regulator furnished as integrated package by the generator manufacturer
b) Complete data defining the transient performance of the regulator (and exciter if applicable) is made available to the generator manufacturer

When furnishing expected transient voltage regulation, the following conditions should be assumed unless otherwise specified:

c) Constant speed (rated)

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

d) Generator, exciter, regulator initially operating at no load, rated voltage, starting from ambient temperature

e) Application of a constant impedance linear load as specified

### 33.4.2.2 Voltage Recorder Performance

The voltage recorder used for making measurements shall meet the following specifications:

a) Response time $\leq$ 1 millisecond

b) Sensitivity $\geq$ 1 percent per millimeter

NOTES

1—When peak-to-peak recording instruments are used, readings of the steady-state terminal voltage before and after load application should be made with an rms-indicating instrument in order to determine minimum transient voltage (see Figure 33-3).

2—See IEEE Std 115 for care in calibration of oscillograph.

### 33.4.2.3 Examples

Strip charts of the output voltage as a function time demonstrate the transient performance of the generator, exciter, and regulator system to sudden changes in load. The entire voltage envelope should be recorded to determine the performance characteristics.

An example of a voltage recorder strip chart is illustrated in Figure 33-3. The labeled charts and sample calculations should be used as a guide in determining generator-exciter-regulator performance when subjected to a sudden load.

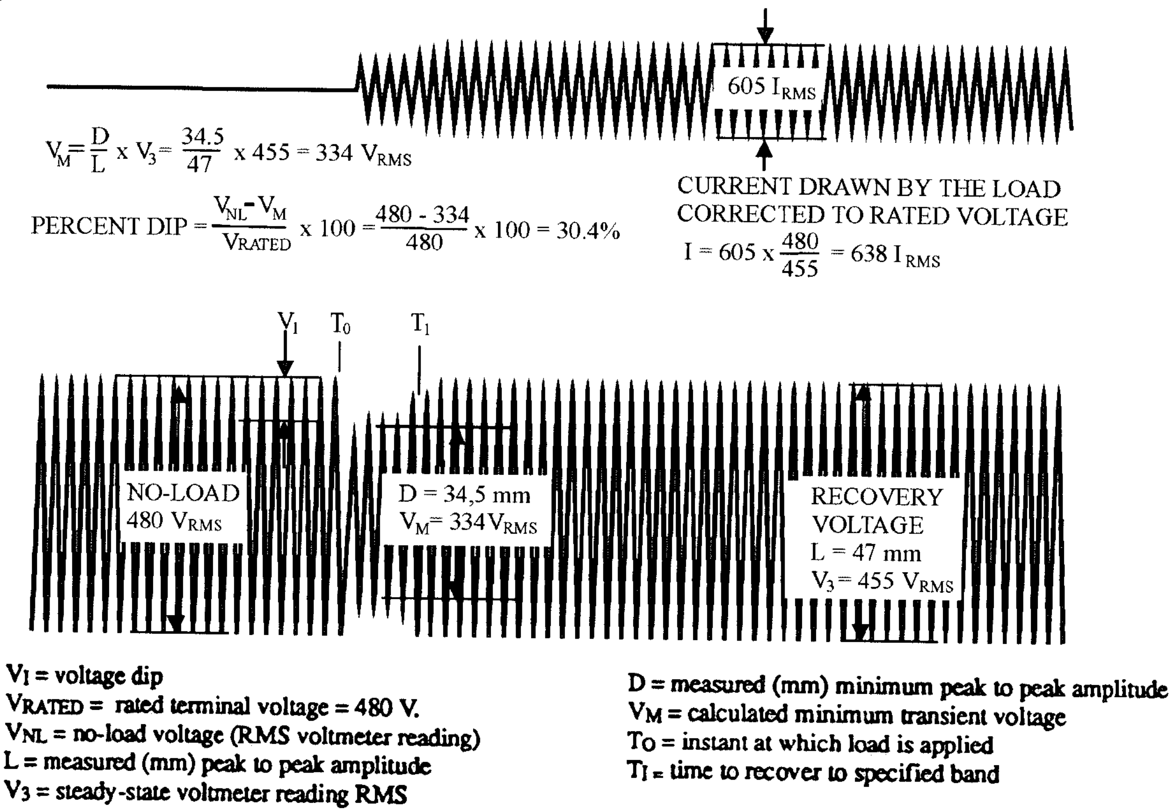



**Figure 33-3**
**GENERATOR TRANSIENT VOLTAGE VERSUS TIME FOR SUDDEN LOAD CHANGE**

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.4.2.4 Motor Starting Loads

The following procedure and presentation of data is recommended for evaluating the motor starting capability of a synchronous generator, exciter, and regulator system.

#### 33.4.2.4.1 Load Simulation

a) Constant impedance (non-saturable reactive load.)

b) Power factor $\leq$ 0.3 lagging

NOTE—The current drawn by the simulated motor starting load should be corrected by the following ratio whenever the generator terminal voltage fails to return to rated voltage:

$$\frac{\text{V(rated voltage)}}{\text{V (recovery voltage)}}$$

This value of current and rated terminal voltage should be used to determine the actual kVA load applied.

#### 33.4.2.4.2 Temperature

The test should be conducted with the generator and excitation system initially at ambient temperature.

#### 33.4.2.4.3 Presentation of Data

Transient voltage regulation performance curves should be identified as "Voltage Dip" (in percent of rated voltage) versus "kVA Load" (see Figure 33-4).

The performance characteristics will vary considerably for broad voltage range generators (see 33.2.4.1) when operating over the broad voltage adjust range. Therefore, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve provided for broad voltage range generators should show the performance at the extreme ends of the operating range; i.e., 208/416 and 240/480V. For discrete voltage generators, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve should show the performance at the discrete rated voltage(s).

Unless otherwise noted, the percent voltage dip versus kVA load curve should provide a voltage recovery to at least 90 percent of rated voltage. If the recovery voltage is less than 90 percent of rated voltage, a point on the voltage dip curve beyond which the voltage will not recover to 90 percent of voltage should be identified or a separate voltage recovery versus kVA load curve should be provided.

In the absence of manufacturers' published information, the value of voltage dip may be estimated from machine constants, subject to the conditions set forth in 33.4.2.1 and the following:

a) Voltage regulator response time $\leq$ 17 milliseconds

b) Excitation system ceiling voltage $\geq$ 1.5 x rated field voltage

c) Voltage dip = $\frac{X'd}{XL + X'd} \times 100$

Where:

$X_L$= (kVA rated) / kVA (low power factor load)

$X'_d$ = direct axis transient reactance, per unit

Data estimated in accordance with the above calculation should be identified as "Calculated Voltage Dip."

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

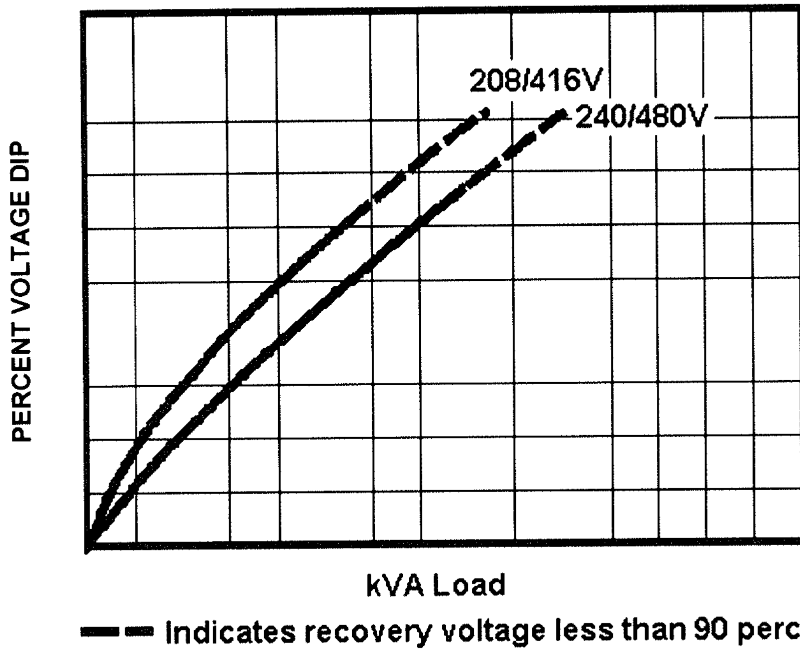



**Figure 33-4**
**PERFORMANCE CURVES (PF ≤ 0.3) (STEP LOADING)**

### 33.4.2.5 Performance Limits

The following values apply only to the generator, at constant (rated) speed and at ambient temperature. The effect of the prime mover speed regulation may cause these values to differ from those given in the following table:

| Parameter | Load Change | Lagging Power Factor | Performance Class | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | G1 | G2 | G3 | G4 |
| Steady-State Voltage Regulation % | All loads between no-load and rated output. | Rated | ≤5 | ≤2.5 | ≤1 | By Agreement |
| Transient Voltage Dip % | Rated Load Application | Rated | ≤30 | ≤24 | ≤18 | By Agreement |
| Transient Voltage Rise % | Rated Load rejection | Rated | ≤35 | ≤25 | ≤20 | By Agreement |
| Voltage Recovery Time, S[1] | Application or Rejection | Rated | ≤2.5 | ≤1.5 | ≤1.5 | By Agreement |
| Maximum Voltage Unbalance % | All loads between no-load and rated output. | Rated | ≤1.0 | ≤1.0 | ≤1.0 | By Agreement |

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.4.3 Torsional Vibration

Excessive torsional vibration may result in over stressed shafts, couplings, and other rotating parts. Torsional vibration is difficult to determine and measure, and it is recommended that torsional stresses be investigated when generators are to be driven by prime movers producing periodic torque pulsations.

While the factors which affect torsional vibration are primarily contained in the design of the prime mover, the design of the generator rotor should also be considered. When requested, the generator manufacturer should furnish the $Wk^2$ and weight of the generator rotor, and any other information, such as the stiffness of the spider, as may be required to make a successful design of the combined unit.

Before the generator spider and such part of the shaft as may be furnished by the generator manufacturer are manufactured, the final drawings of the same should be submitted for approval insofar as their design affects torsional vibration.

### 33.4.4 Generator Grounding

#### 33.4.4.1 Neutral Grounding

For safety of personnel and to reduce over-voltages to ground, the generator neutral is often either grounded solidly or grounded through a resistor or reactor. When the neutral is grounded through a resistor or reactor properly selected in accordance with established power system practices, there are no special considerations required in the generator design or selection, unless the generator is to be operated in parallel with other power supplies. The neutral of a generator should not be solidly grounded unless the generator has been specifically designed for such operation. With the neutral solidly grounded, the maximum line-to-ground fault current may be excessive and in parallel systems excessive circulating harmonic currents may be present in the neutrals.

#### 33.4.4.2 Ground-Fault Protection

Ground-fault protection may be applied to the generating set or to the system to which it is connected. The applicable relaying scheme mainly depends upon the given neutral grounding methods of the system. Ground-fault protection is the responsibility of the user.

Ground-fault protection is typically provided by one of three relaying schemes detecting the zero-sequence current.

a) Residual relaying scheme (See ISO 8528-4.)
Ground-fault current is detected by sensing the current remaining in the secondary of the three-phase summation current transformer. A ground-fault relay in the current transformer neutral connection carries current only when a ground-fault occurs.

b) Ground sensor scheme
A window-type core-balance current transformer encircles all phase conductors (cable current transformer). The ground-fault relay detects unbalance and catches the zero-sequence current component. For loads connected line-to-neutral, the core-balance current transformer also encloses the neutral conductor.

c) Neutral ground scheme
Ground-fault current is sensed by an ground-fault protection relay as transformed by a zero-sequence current transformer connected in a resistance-ground system neutral grounding conductor.

To obtain selectivity, restricted ground-fault protection is usually employed. This form of protection monitors only a specific zone, normally the generator stator windings, up to the points where the detecting current transformers are fitted. Ground faults outside this protected zone are restrained from tripping by directional ground-fault relaying. In the case of low-resistance neutral grounding, relay

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

polarization is done by zero-sequence current and, in the case of high-resistance neutral grounding, by zero-sequence voltage.

Unrestricted ground-fault protection may be provided as for a single independent generating set.

For fixed high-voltage generating sets it is advisable to have the benefit of ground-fault protection.

Special care shall be taken in the case of single low-voltage generating sets operating independently for temporary supply.

Coordination of ground-fault protective devices may be the subject of an agreement between the authority having jurisdiction, the customer and the generating set manufacturer.

### 33.4.5 Cyclic Irregularity

Cyclic irregularity is the periodic fluctuation of speed caused by the irregularity of the reciprocating-type prime mover. It is the ratio of the difference between the maximum and minimum angular velocity to the mean angular velocity at the generator shaft at any constant load. In the case of single operation, the cyclic irregularity is evident in a corresponding modulation in generator voltage and can be determined by measuring the variation in generated voltage.

NOTES—

1. It is possible to alter the cyclic irregularity of rotational speed at the generator relative to the measured value of the cyclic irregularity at the internal combustion engine by installing a resilient coupling between the internal combustion engine and the generator and/or by modifying the mass moment of inertia.
2. Special consideration is to be given for generating sets working in parallel with low-speed (100 RPM to 180 RPM) sets in order to avoid resonance between engine torque irregularity and electromechanical frequency oscillation of the set (see also ISO 8528-3: 1993, clause 11).

### 33.4.6 Application Criteria

#### 33.4.6.1 Modes of Operation

The mode of operation of the generating set may affect reliable operation of the generator. The mode of operation shall be agreed upon by the user and the manufacturer.

##### 33.4.6.1.1 Continuous Operation

Continuous operation is operation of a generating set without a time limit, but allowing for maintenance periods.

##### 33.4.6.1.2 Standby Operation

Standby operation is operation of the generating set for a limited time.

The demand for electrical power is supplied from the power mains and only in the event of failure of the latter is it supplied by an internal generating set. If there is a failure in the normal power supply, the internal generating set, operating as a back-up or emergency supply, provides a supply temporarily or for a limited time for:

a) Safety equipment (e.g. during the evacuation of the building);
b) Connected equipment which is important for the purposes of operation, to maintain emergency operations;
c) The entire group of connected equipment or part thereof.
d) Standby power is also used for the following:
e) The electric power generated is used to cover a peak demand (peak-load operation);
f) There is no normal supply from power mains and the generating set is only operated from time to time.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

### 33.4.6.2 Single and Parallel Operation

Generating sets may be operated as a single unit or in parallel, defined as follows:

#### 33.4.6.2.1 Single Operation

Single operation refers to a generating set, irrespective of its configuration or modes of start-up and control, which will operate as the sole source of electrical power and without the support of other sources of electrical supply.

#### 33.4.6.2.2 Parallel Operation

Parallel operation refers to the electrical connection of a generating set to another source of electrical supply with the same voltage, frequency and phase to provide the power for the connected network. The characteristics of the main supply, including range and variation of voltage, frequency, impedance of the network, etc., shall be stated by the customer. Many of the factors which affect the parallel operation of generator sets are contained in the engine. However, the characteristics of the equipment controlling the system in which the set is to operate also impose conditions which should be taken into account.

When requested, the generator manufacturer should furnish the following and any other information which may be required to determine the system requirements for successful parallel operation.

a) Synchronizing torque coefficient $P_r$. Unless otherwise specified, the value of $P_r$ should correspond to a pulsation frequency of one-half the rpm.
b) $Wk^2$ of the generator rotor.
c) Third harmonic voltage, at no load and full load.

##### 33.4.6.2.2.1 Parallel Operation of Generating Sets

In this type of operation, two or more generating sets are electrically connected (not mechanically connected) after having been brought into synchronism. Generating sets with different output power ratings and speeds can be used.

##### 33.4.6.2.2.2 Operation in Parallel with Power Mains

In this type of operation, one or more parallel-operating generating sets are electrically connected to the main supply.

### 33.4.6.3 Site Criteria

#### 33.4.6.3.1 Land Use

Land use covers generating sets, either fixed, transportable or mobile, which are used on land.

#### 33.4.6.3.2 Marine Use

Marine use covers generating sets used onboard ships and offshore installations.

### 33.4.6.4 System Short Circuit Fault Protection

Under short circuit conditions, it may be necessary to sustain a minimum value of current for a sufficient time to ensure operation of system protective devices, if installed. Compliance with this need may require either a permanent magnet exciter or a device such as the series boost to ensure that adequate field excitation is available as the generator voltage collapses. These options and their provision are a matter of agreement between the manufacturer and the user.

### 33.4.6.5 Calculation of Natural Frequency of Synchronous Machines Directly Connected to Reciprocating Machinery

The undamped natural frequency of oscillation of a synchronous machine connected to an infinite system is:

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

$$f_n = (35200/n) \times \sqrt{P_r{*} f / Wk^2}$$

Where:

$f_n$ = natural frequency in cycles per minute

n = synchronous speed in revolutions per minute

$P_r$ = synchronizing torque coefficient

f = frequency of generator output in hertz

W = weight of all rotating parts in pounds

k = radius of gyration of rotating parts in feet

When a pulsating torque is applied to its shaft, the synchronous machine rotor will oscillate about its average angular position in the rotating magnetic field produced by the currents in the stator. As a result of this oscillation, a pulsating torque will be developed at the air gap, a component of which is proportional to the angular displacement of the rotor from its average position. The proportionality factor is the synchronizing torque coefficient, $P_r$. It is expressed in kilowatts, at synchronous speed, per electrical radian.

The value of $P_r$, for a given machine, is dependent upon (1) the voltage and frequency of the generator, (2) the magnitude of the applied load, (3) the operating power factor, (4) the power system impedance, and (5) the frequency of the torque pulsations. It is recommended that, unless other conditions are specified, the value of $P_r$ submitted be that corresponding to operation at rated voltage, frequency, load and power factor, with negligible system impedance and a pulsation frequency, in cycles per minute, equal to one-half the rpm for synchronous generators.

## 33.5 MANUFACTURING

### 33.5.1 Nameplate Marking

The following information shall be given on all nameplates.

a) Manufacturer's type and frame designation
b) Kilovolt-ampere output
c) Power factor
d) Time rating
e) Temperature rise[1]
f) Rated speed in rpm
g) Voltage
h) Rated current in amperes per terminal
i) Number of phases
j) Frequency
k) Rated field current[2]
l) Rated excitation voltage[2]

---

[1] As an alternate marking, this item shall be permitted to be replaced by the following.

a. Maximum ambient temperature for which the generator is designed (see 33.3.2).
b. Insulation system designation (if armature and field use different classes of insulation systems, both insulation systems shall be given, that for the armature being given first).

[2] Applies to exciter in case of brushless machine.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Some examples of additional information that may be required on the nameplate are:

m) Enclosure or IP code
n) Manufacturer's name, mark, or logo
o) Manufacturer's plant location
p) Serial number or date of manufacture
q) Applicable rating and performance standards
r) Connection diagram near or inside the terminal box, if more than 3 leads
s) Maximum momentary overspeed
t) Maximum ambient if greater than 40°C
u) Maximum water temperature for water-air-cooled machines if greater than 30°C
v) Minimum ambient if other than that in 33.4.1.1.a
w) Altitude if greater than 3300 ft (1000 m)
x) Approximate weight
y) Direction of rotation for unidirectional machines, by an arrow

**33.5.2 Terminal Housings**

**33.5.2.1 Dimensions and Usable Volumes**

When generators covered by this Part are provided with terminal housings for generator leads, the housings shall have the following dimensions and usable volumes.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

| Voltage | KVA | Minimum Usable Volume Cu. In. | Minimum Opening Dimension, Inches | Minimum Centerline Distance,* Inches |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0-599 | <20 | 75 | 2.5 | |
| | 21-45, incl. | 250 | 4 | |
| | 46-200, incl. | 500 | 6 | |
| | 201-312, incl. | 600 | 7 | |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | |
| 600 –2399 | 201-312, incl. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 313-500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 501-750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| | 751-1000, incl. | 3200 | 10 | ... |
| 2400 -4159 | 251-625, incl. | 180 | 5 | ... |
| | 626-1000, incl. | 330 | 6 | ... |
| | 1000-1563, incl. | 600 | 7 | ... |
| | 1564-2500, incl. | 1100 | 8 | ... |
| | 2501-3750, incl. | 2000 | 8 | ... |
| 4160 -6899 | 351-1250, incl. | 2000 | 8 | 12.5 |
| | 1251-5000, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 5001-7500, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |
| 6900 –13800 | 876-3125, incl. | 5600 | 14 | 16 |
| | 3126-8750, incl. | 8000 | 16 | 20 |

*Minimum distance from the entrance plate for conduit entrance to the centerline of generator leads.

Terminal housings containing surge capacitors, surge arresters, current transformers, or potential transformers require individual consideration.

### 33.5.2.2 Accessory Leads

For generators rated greater than 600 volts, accessory leads shall terminate in a terminal box or boxes separate from the generator main terminal housing. As an exception, current and potential transformers located in the generator terminal housing shall be permitted to have their secondary connections terminated in the generator terminal housing if separated from the generator leads by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact.

### 33.5.2.3 Accessory Items

For generators rated greater than 600 volts, the termination of leads of accessory items normally operating at a voltage of 50 volts (rms) or less shall be separated from leads of higher voltage by a suitable physical barrier to prevent accidental contact, or shall be terminated in a separate box.

§

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

# INDEX

The NEMA Standards Publication for Motors and Generators is logically arranged and contains cues and cross-references to help the reader locate desired information. The text is divided into four major sections: Section I, "Standards Applying to All Machines," with green tabs; Section II "Small and Medium Machines," with yellow labs; Section III, "Large Machines," with orange tabs; and Section IV, "Performance Standards Applying to All Machines," with blue tabs. The 4 major sections are divided into a total of twenty-eight general "Parts" with a characteristic paragraph number series and subject title marked on the colored labs. According to-the-paragraph number series, the "Part" number precedes the decimal point and the sequence number follows the decimal point. For example: under the keyword "efficiency," paragraphs numbered in the 1.XX series will indicate general definition information; the 12.XX and 15.XX series indicates efficiency information for integral horsepower machines; the 20.XX series for large synchronous generators; the 23.XX series for large dc motors; and the 24.XX series for large dc generators. The index is provided to identify and cross-reference individual paragraphs by a topic or keyword.

## A

abbreviations – *See* 1.79
accessories
  high-potential tests - See 3.18
  lead terminations - *See* 20.26.3, 21.26.3
  mounting dimensions
    ac motors - *See* 4.4.5
    dc motors - *See* 4.5.9
    inverter fed motors – *See* 31.7
acoustic analysis – *See* 9.2
adjustable-speed motor - *See* 1.32
adjustable varying-speed motor – *See* 1.34
adjustable-frequency controls – *See* 30.0, 30.2, 31.0
adjustable-speed-drive – *See* 14.32.1, 21.18
adjustable-voltage – *See* 30.0, 31.0
air conditioning condensers – *See* 18.45
alternating-current generators – *See* 1.22
  direction of rotation – *See* 2.24
alternating-current large machine – *See* 1.5.1
alternating-current medium machine – *See* 1.4.1
alternating-current windings – *See* 2.30
altitude - *See* 14.2.1, 14.4, 20.28.2, 20.8.4, 21.10.4, 31, 4.1.5
  preferred values – *See* 14.4.4
  above 3300 feet – *See* 14.4.3
ambient temperature - *See* 1.56, 10.38, 14.2.1, 20.28.2, 20.8.3, 21.10.3, 31.4.1.4
antifriction bearings – *See* 14.42
armature
  form factor - *See* 10.60.1, 14.60.2
  inductance - *See* 23.62.2
  ripple - *See* 10.61, 14.62, 23.62.2
armature lead – *See* 2.10.2
articulated probe - *See* 1.25.4
aseismatic capability – *See* 20.31
assembly symbols – *See* 4.3, Figure 4-6
asynchronous machine – *See* 1.17.3.1, 1.17.3.3
auxiliary devices - *See* 2.1, 2.2, 2.42, 2.43, 2.45
auxiliary equipment – *See* 9.43, 21.39, 32.32
auxiliary winding – *See* 1.20.3, 2.40.1, 2.40.2, 2.46.1
axial centering force - *See* 1.59, 20.29.2

## B

ball bearings – *See* 14.39.1, 14.42.2, 18.144
barrier – *See* 4.19.2.3, 5.1, 20.26.2, 20.26.3, 21.26.2, 21.26.3, 32.26.2, 32.26.3, 33.5.2.2, 33.5.2.3
base rating – *See* 30.2.2.8, 31.3.1, 31.4.4.2, 31.5.131.5.2, 31.6.2, 30.2.1.1, 30.2.2.1, 31.3.3
base speed - *See* 1.33, 10.62.2, 12.69.1, 23.3.1
basis of rating – *See* 10.34.1, 10.60, 10.61.1
bearing. *See* also sheaves.
  losses - *See* 12.7
bearing currents – *See* 14.65, 23.26.3, 24.83.3, 31.4.4.3, 31.7
bearing failure – *See* 31.4.4.3
bearing insulation – *See* 31.4.4.3
bearings – *See* 7.2, 14.39.1, 14.42, 20.16.2, 31.4.4.3, 31.4.6, 32.20.1
belts - *See* 14.7.1, 14.67.2, 14.67.3, 20.32. See also sheaves; drives.
belted-type generator – *See* 1.61.1, 1.62.1
blade terminals - *See* 4.18.2, 18.117
blower motors – *See* 18.33
boosted motor voltage – *See* 30.2.2.4.2, 31.4.2.1
breakaway torque – *See* 30.2.1.2, 30.2.2.4.2, 31.4.2.1
breakdown torque - *See* 1.50, 10.34.1, 12.32.1, 12.37, 12.39, 20.24.3, 30.2.2.2.4, 31.4.2.2
broad voltage – *See* 10.39.5, 32.4.1, 32.4.2, 32.17.1
bus transfer – *See* 14.3, 14.45, 20.33, 21.34

## C

Capacitance – *See* 1.58, 14.44.4, 30.1.3
capacitor – *See* 2.42, 2.43
capacitor motor – *See* 1.20.3.3, 1.58
capacitor motors - *See* also Table of Contents for Part 18.
carbonator pump motors - *See* 18.270-18.281
center of gravity location – See 20.23
chain drive – *See* 14.2.2, 14.7.1, 14.7.2, 14.67.1, 20.32, 21.31
classes of insulation systems – *See* 1.66
cleanliness test - *See* 18.13.5
clearance holes - *See* 1.63.2, 1.63.3, 4.8
close-coupled pump motors - *See* 18.239—18.250
code letter – *See* 1.71, 10.37, 10.37.4, 10.37.6, 10.37.7,

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

10.39.1, 10.40.1, 20.9
cogging – *See* 30.2.2.7, 31.4.5.3
coil insulation – *See* 1.65.1
color assignment – *See* 2.41
color coding – *See* 2.1
commutator motor – *See* 1.18.3, 1.21.1
commutation - *See* 12.73, 12.76, 15.42, 23.10.1, 23.12, 24.43
compensated series-wound motor – *See* 1.21.2
compounding - *See* 1.43.1, 15.45, 24.84
compound-wound generator – *See* 1.24.2, 15.61
compound-wound motor – *See* 1.23.3, 12.74.2, 12.74.3
compressor factors - *See* 21.37, Table 21-9
connection diagrams - *See* 2.13, 2.14
constant-speed motor - *See* 1.30, 10.62.1.1, 30.1
continuous rating – 1.40.1, 10.63, 33.3.2.1
control – *See* 30.2.1.5, 30.2.2.4.1
converters – *See* 30.2.1.5
coolant – *See* 6.1, 6.2.1, 6.2.2
coolant pumps – *See* 18.133
coolant pump motors - *See* 18.143, 18.144
coupled-type generator – *See* 1.61.3, 1.62.3
coupling - *See* 14.39, 14.65, 20.29.1, 21.30, 21.81
crane motors - *See* 18.212
current distortion – *See* 32.15, 33.3.3.5
current transformers – *See* 3.1.8, 33.4.4.2
current unbalance – *See* 14.36, 20.24, 21.19, 32.14
current unbalance (gensets) – *See* 33.3.3.3
cyclic irregularity (gensets) – *See* 33.4.5

## D

deep well pump motors
  4-inch - *See* 18.145—18.157
  6-inch - *See* 18.158—18.170
  8-inch - *See* 18.171—18.181
    definite purpose, Part 18
    industrial, Part 15
    application data, Part 14
    definitions, 1.21, 1.61
    dimensions, Part 11
    direction of rotation, 2.11, 15.60
    large, Part 24
    terminal markings, 2.10-2.13
  motors
    definite purpose. Part 18
    large, Part 23
    small and medium
      application data, Part 14, 14.60, 14.60-14.67
      definitions, 1.03, 1.06—1.08, 1.18—1.20
      dimensions, Part 11, 11.60-11.68
      direction of rotation, 2.11, 14.06
      ratings, Part 10, 10.60—10.66
      tests and performance. Part 12
    terminal markings, 2.10-2. 13
deep well pomp motors
  4-inch, 18.376—18.388
  6-inch, 18.401—18.413
  8-inch, 18.414—18.424
definite-purpose motors, 1.11, Part 18
definitions, Part 1
delta-connected, 2.62, 2.64
derating factor, 20.24, 21.29
deviation factor, 1.78, 32.10, 33.1.3.18, 33.3.4.4
dielectric
  high potential tests, 3.1, 12.3, 12.4
dimensions, Part 4, Part 18.
  ac machines, Part 4
    face-mounting. 4.4.4, 4.4.5
    flange-mounting, 4.4.6
    foot-mounted, 4.4.1-4.4.3 1.33
  de machines, Part 4
    base for type P and PH, 4.5.8
    face-mounting, 4.5.4-4.5.6, 4.5.9
    flange-mounting, 4.5.7
    foot-mounted, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
    small, 4.5.1
    vertical, 4.5.8
  frame designation, 4.2
  lettering, 4.1
  terminal housings. See terminal housing.
  through-bolt mounting, 14.8
direction of rotation. See rotation.
dripproof, 1.25.1
drives, 20.32, 21.31
dryer motors, 18.107-18.118
dual voltage, 2.40, 2.62
dust-ignition-proof, 1.26.11
dynamic balance. See balance

## E

eccentricity of mounting surfaces, 4.11
efficiency
  definition, 1.41
  large machines
    de generators, 24.45
    de motors, 23.13
    induction motors, 20.21
    synchronous generators, 32.12, 33.3.8.3
    synchronous motors, 21.14
medium machines
    ac motors, 12.58-12.60, 30.1.1, 30.2.2.5
    de generators, 15.52
    dc motors, 12.78
    synchronous generators, 32.12, 33.3.8.3
  power factor, 14.44
elevator motors
  ac, 18.202-18.211
  dc, 18.182-18.192
  motor-generator sets, 18.193-18.201
embedded detectors, 20.27, 21.27, 32.27, 33.3.3.2
encapsulated windings, 1.27, 12.62
enclosed machine, 1.26
end-lay. See coupling.
equalizer leads, 15.61
evaporator fan motors, 18.45-18.65
excitation voltage, 21.7, 32.4.3
exciters, 15.10, 21.9
explosion-proof. 1.26.10

## F

face-mounting. Sec dimensions.
face runout, 4.11
fan motors
  belted, 18.33-18.44
  shaft-mounted, 18.19-18.32
field control, 23.7, 23.8
field data format. See also test forms.
  de generators, 15.50, 24.47
  de motors, 12.75, 23.18

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

flanges. See also dimensions. See also definite-purpose machines.
Type C, 4.4.4, 4.5.4-4.5.6
Type D, 4.4.6, 4.5.7
Type FC, 4.4.5, 4.5.9
flat compounding. 15.45, 24.84.1
fractional-horsepower machines. See small machines.
frame designation, 4.2
frequency
large machines
induction motors, 20.6, 20.14, 20.23
synchronous generators, 32.5, 32.30, 32.2.5, 33.3.1.2, 31.4.6.5
synchronous motors, 21.6. 21.17, 21.35
small and medium machines
ac motors, 10.31, 12.44, 14.30
synchronous generators, 32.5, 33.2.5, 33.3.1.2, 33.4.6.5
universal motors, 10.31
underfrequency, 14.4
variable, 14.32
variations, 12.44, 14.30, 20.14, 21.17
full-load torque. See torque.

## G

gasoline pump motors, 18.79-18.92
gear motors, 14.40
gears, 14.7. See also drive.
general industrial motor, 1.12, 23.2
general standards. See Section I.
grounding, 4.20, 32.34, 32.36, 33.4.4
guarded machine, 1.25.4

## H

heating. See also temperature.
dc machines
shuntfield, 14.64
speed variation, 12.70, 18.190
voltage variation, 15.44
hermetic motors, 18.2-18.18
high-potential test, Part 3. See also Table of Contents for Part 18
definitions, 1.57
large machines
dc generators, 24.49
dc motors, 23.20
induction motors, 20.17
synchronous generators, 32.21, 33.3.8.2
synchronous motors, 21.22
small and medium machines, 12.3, 15.48, 32.21, 33.3.8.2
horsepower. See also Part 18.
large motors
dc, 23.6
induction, 20.3, 20.4
synchronous, 21.3
small and medium motors
ac, 10.32-10.34
dc, 10.62

## I

impedance protection, 10.39.2.h
induction motor, 1.18.1. See also ac motors.
industrial. See Part 18.
insulation classification, 1.65, 1.66
See also efficiency.
See also healing.
See also temperature.
See also temperature rise.
instantaneous peak inrush current, 12.36
integral-horsepower machines. See medium machines.
IP designation, 5.3

## J

jet pump motors, 18.119-18.132

## K

keyseats, 4.9, 4.10. See also dimensions; Table of Contents for Part 18.
kilowatt ratings
dc generators, 15.10,24.10
synchronous generators, 32.2, 33.2.2
synchronous motors, 21.9
knockout diameters, 4.8
kVA, 1.79, 10.37, 32.2, 33.2.2

## L

labeling. See nameplate markings.
large machines. See Section III.
laundry motors, 18.107—18.118
lettering, 1.79,4.1. See also nameplate markings.
load. See also overload.
capacity, large machines
dc generators, 24.41, 24.42
dc motors, 23.10, 23.11
current, large machines
dc generators, 24.81
dc motors, 23.28
short-time, 10.36
$Wk^2$
induction, 12.54, 20.11
synchronous, 21.11
locked-rotor current
definition, 1.53
small and medium machines, 12.33—12.36
locked-rotor torque. See torque.

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

## M

machine-tool motors, 18.231—18.236
magnetic pull, 1.59
marking. See abbreviations. See nameplate marking. See terminal marking.
medium machines. See Section II.
mill motors, 21.36, 23.3, 23.4
motor-generator sets, 2.3.3, 18.193—18.201, Part 33
mounting, Part 4. See also Table of Contents for Part 18; dimensions.
multispeed motor, 1.35

## N

nameplate markings. See Table of Contents for Part 18.
  large machines
    dc generators, 24.61
    dc motors, 23.24
    induction, 20.25
    synchronous generators, 32.24, 33.5.1
    synchronous motors, 21.25
  small and medium machines
    ac motors, 10.38—10.40
    dc generators, 15.11, 15.12
    dc motors, 10.63—10.66
    synchronous generators, 32.24, 33.5.1
noise. See sound.

## O

oil burner motors, 18.93—18.106
open machine, 1.25
oscillation, 21.35, 33.4.6.5
overload. See also service factor.
  dc generators, 15.43, 24.41
  dc motors, 12.72, 23.10
  synchronous generators, 32.8, 33.3
overspeed. See also speed.
  large machines
    dc generators, 24.46
    dc motors, 23.16
    induction motors, 20.13, 31.4.3.5
    synchronous generators. 32.16, 33.3.5
    synchronous motors, 21.15
  small and medium machines
    ac motors, 12.52, 30.2.2.3, 31.4.3.5
    dc generators, 15.47
    dc motors, 12.74
    synchronous generators, 32.16, 33.3.5
overtemperature, 1.74, 12.56-12.57, 12.80

## P

parallel operation. 24.82, 24.83, 32.29, 33.4.6.2.2
part-winding-start motor, 1.75, 14.38
performance. See tests; ac machines; de machines.
permanent-magnet generator, 18.253-18.267
permanent-split capacitor motor. See capacitor motors.
phase-sequence, 2.21,2.22,2.25
phasors, 2.23
polarity, 2.25
polyphase motors, 1.19. See also ac motors.
power factor
  correction, 14.44, 20.34, 30.1.3, 30.2.2.9, 31.4.3.4
  large synchronous motors, 21.4,21.16
  small and medium motors, 14.44
power supply, 10.61,12.65
probes, 1.25, 1.26
protection and cooling, 1.25—1.27, 1.72—1.74
pulleys, 14.7. See also sheaves.
pull-in torque, pull-out torque; pull-up torque. See torque.
pulsation. See also ripple.
  armature current, 21.32
  stator current, 20.30
  torque, 21.33
pump motors. See Table of Contents for Part 18.

## R

ratings. See ac machines; dc machines
reciprocating machinery, 21.35, 33.4.6.5
reclosing, 14.45, 20.33,21.34
rectified ac. See ripple.
referenced standards, 1.1
refrigeration motors, 18.2—18.18, 18.45—18.65
regulation. See voltage; speed
repulsion motors, 1.20.4, 2.52
resistance-start motor, 1.20.3.2
reverse rotation. Sec rotation.
reversing mill motors, 23.4, 23.14
ripple
  large dc machines
    rectified ac, 23.26. 24.83
  small and medium dc machines
    rectified ac, 14.60—14.62, 14.66
    test power, 12.66
rodent protection, 14.9
rotation. See also terminal markings; Table of Contents for Part 18.
  ac machines, 2.3, 2.24
  dc machines, 2.3, 2.12, 14.6
  phasors. 2.23
  reverse, 2.12, 2.25
rotor float. See coupling.
routine tests. See tests.

## S

safety warning, 3.01
schematic diagrams. See terminal markings.
sealed windings, 1.27 12.62, 14.41, 20.18
secondary data, 10.35, 18.215
secondary voltage. 1.465
series-wound motor, 1.18.3, 1.23.2
service conditions
  large machines

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

dc generators, 24.80
dc motors, 23.25
induction motors, 20.28
synchronous generators, 32.33, 33.04
synchronous motors, 21.28
small and medium machines, 14.01—14.03
air condenser motors, 18.65
evaporator fan motors, 18.65
service factor, 1.42
inverter-fed motors, 31.3.7
large machines
induction motors, 20.07, 20.08
small and medium machines, 12.51, 14.04, 14.34, 14.37
synchronous motors, 21.08, 21.10
shaded-pole motor. See capacitor motors.
shaft extensions, 4.04-4.06, 4.09. See also dimensions.
sheaves
application, 14.07
dimensions
ac motors, 14.42
dc motors, 14.67
shell-type motors, 18.231 – 18.236
short-circuit, synchronous generators 32.13
shunt-wound machines, 1.23.1, 1.24.1, 12.69
single-phase motor, 1.20, 2.40
size, classification, 1.02 – 1.05
slip, 14.30.5, 14.34.1, 14.35.3
definition, 30.2.1.21
small motors
application data, Part 14; definite purpose, Part 18
definition, 1.03, 1.06, 1.08
dimensions, Part 4
ratings, Part 10
terminal markings, Part 2
tests and performance, Part 12
sound
all machines, part 9
general purpose motors on adjustable-freq drives 30.02.2.6
inverter-fed motors 31.4.5
synchronous generators 32.22, 33.36
sparking (commutator) 12.73, 23.12, 24.43
speed. See also overspeed. See also Table of Contents for Part 18.
maximum speed on adjustable frequency drives, 30.2.2.3
base, 1.33, 14.63
classifications, 1.30—1.35, 1.43
definite-purpose machines, Part 18
large machines
dc generators, 24.10
dc motors, 23.06 - 23.08, 23.10
induction motors, 20.3
inverter fed motors 31.3, 31.4.6
regulation, 1.43, 23.23
synchronous generators, 32.3
synchronous motors, 21.3
terminal markings, part 2
variation, 12.46, 12.69—12.71
small and medium machines
ac motors, 10.32, 14.34.1
dc generators, 15.10, 24.10
dc motors, 10.62
speed ratings (gensets) 33.2.3
splash-proof machine, 1.25
split-phase motor, 1.20.3.1, 2.47
sprockets, 14.7
squirrel-cage motors, 1.18.1.1, See also ac motors.
stability, 12.79
standards, referenced, 1.01
stand-by-generator, 32.35
start, part-winding, 1.75, 10.37.7, 14.38
starts, 12.54, 20.12, 21.13
static torque. See torque.
submergence test, 20.18
submersible motors, 18.145 - 18.180
sump pump motors. 18.66 – 18.78
surge test, 12. 5
symbols. See abbreviations.
synchronous machines. See also Table of Contents for Part 18.
definitions,
machine, 1.17.3.4
motor, 1.18.2
generator, 1.22.2, 1.61
generators, Part 32
gensets, Part 33
motors, Part 21

## T

tachometer generators, 18.253 - 18.267
telephone influence factor (TIF), 32.11
temperature. See also insulation classification; service conditions.
ambient, 1.56
bearing, 4.17
embedded detectors, 20.27, 21.27
overtemperature protection 1.74, 12.57, 12.80
ratings
ac small and universal motors, 10.38
dc motors, 10.65
tests, 1.55
thermal protection,
definition, 1.73
medium motors, 12.56
thermal protector, 1.72
temperature rise. See also service factor, Table of Contents for
Part 18; insulation classification.
large machines
dc gencrators, 24.40
dc motors, 23.9
induction motors, 20.8
synchronous generators, 32.6
synchronous motors, 21.10
small and medium machines
ac motors, 12.42, 12.43, 14.04
dc generators, 15.41
dc motors, 12.67, 14.04
gensets 33.3.2
inverter-fed motors, 31.4.1
synchronous generators, 32.6
universal motors, 12.42
terminal connections, 4.18
terminal housing
dimensions
gen sets, 33.5.2
induction motors, 20.26
small and med ac and dc motors, 4.19
knockout diameters and clearance holes, 4.8
location, 4.3
synchronous generators, 32.26
synchronous motors, 21.26
terminal markings, Part 2. See also Table of Contents for Part 18.
ac machines, 2.20—2.66
generators and synchronous motors, 2.25-2.30

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

polyphase induction, 2.60-2.66
single-phase. 2.40-2.53
color, 2.41
dc machines, 2.10-2.14
direction of rotation, 2.3, 2.21-2.24
location, 2.1
markings, 2.2
schematic diagrams, 2.47—2.53
universal motors, 2.51
test forms. See also field data forms.
large machines
induction, 20.20
synchronous. 21.19,21.20
small and medium machines 12.61, 12.77, 15.51
synchronous generators, 32.19,33.3.9
tests. See also Table of Contents for Part 18.
definite-purpose inverter-fed motors, 31.6
high-potential, 3.1
large machines
dc generators, 24.40-24.51
dc motors, 23.9-23.23
induction motors, 20.8-20.24
synchronous motors, 21.10-21.24
small and medium machines, Part 12
ac motors, 12.30-12.63
dc generators, 15.40-15.52
dc motors, 12.65-12.78
synchronous generators, 32.6-32.23, 33.3
thermal protection. See temperature.
thermal protector
definition, 1.72
hermetic motors, 18.17
through-bolt mounting, 14.8, 18.29
thrust capacity, 18.155. 18.168, 18.180
time constants, 1.60
time ratings
definition, 1.40
large machines
dc motors, 23.14
induction, 20.2
small and medium machines
ac motors, 10.36, 14.5
dc generators, 15.11
dc motors, 10.63, 10.64, 12.67
tolerances, 4.7-4.13. See also dimensions.
torque. See also Table of Contents for Part 18.
breakdown
large motors
induction, 20.10,20.24.3
small and medium motors, 12.32, 12.37, 12.39, 12.41, 14.34.2, 14.36.3
constant, 10.33
definitions, 1.46—1.52
locked-rotor
large motors
induction, 20.10, 20.2.3
synchronous 21.11, 21.29, 21.33, 21.36
small and medium motors, 12.32, 12.38. 14.34.2, 14.36.3
motors, 18.268-18.269
pull-in and pull-out
large synchronous motors, 21.11, 21.29, 21.33, 21.36
pull-up
large motors
induction, 20.10
small and medium motors, 12.32, 12.40
pulsation, 21.33,21.35, 33.4.6
torque motors, 18.268-18.269
variable, 10.33
torsional vibration, 32.31, 33.4.3
totally-enclosed machines, 1.26
transient voltage, 32.18.2, 33.1.3, 33.4
trip current, 12.56.2
turbine pump motors, 18.237-18.238

## U

unbalance. See voltage.
underfrequency, 14.34
universal motors
definition, 1.21
direction of rotation, 14.6
frequencies, 10.31
high-potential test, 12.3
ratings, 10.32.5
schematic, 2.51
shaft extensions, 4.6
temperature rise, 12.42.2

## V

variation. See voltage; frequency; speed.
varying speed motor, 1.34
velocity. See speed.
vertical motors, 4.5.8. See also ac machines; dc machines.
vertical turbine pump motors, 18.237.18.238
vibration, Part 7. See also balance.
voltage
boost 30.2.1.25
deviation factor, 1.78, 32.10, 33.1.3.18, 33.3.4.4
dip, 32.18, 33.1.3.6, 33.4.2.1
excitation, 21.7, 32.4.3
high potential, 3.1, 12.3, 20.17, 15.48, 21.22, 23.20, 24.49, 32.21
overvoltage, 14.33
ratings
definite-purpose machines, Part 18
large machines
dc generators, 24.10
dc motors, 23.6
induction motors, 20.5
synchronous generators, 32.4, 33.2.4
synchronous motors, 21.5
small and medium machines
ac motors, 10.30
dc generators, 15.10
dc motors, 10.62
regulation, 1.44, 15.46, 24.50, 32.18
tests. See tests.
unbalance, 12.45, 14.36, 20.24, 21.29
undervoltage, 14.35, 24.44
variable, 14.32, 14.63, 20.15, Part 30
variation. See also heating.
large machines
de motors, 23.17
induction motors, 20.14

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

synchronous motors, 21.17
small and medium machines
ac motors, 12.44, 14.30
dc generators, 15.44
dc motors, 12.68
synchronous generators, 32.17, 33.3

## W

warnings, 3.1.1, 14.32.1, 14.44.3, 14.63, 20.34, 30.2.2.10, 31.1.4, 31.3.6
water-cooled, 1.26
water-proof. 1.26
weather-protected, 1.25
winding. See also terminal markings.
application, 14.41
encapsulated. 1.27, 12.62
part-winding-start. 1.75, 14.38
sealed, 1.27, 12.62, 14.41, 20.18
temperature, 12.42, 12.43, 12.67, 15.41, 20.8, 21.10, 23.9, 24.40, 31.4.1, 32.6, 33.3.2
wiring diagrams. See terminal markings.
$Wk^2$. See load.
woodworking motors, 18.231-18.236
wound-rotor. 1.18, 12.41. Sec also ac motors.

## Y

Y-connected, 2.61, 2.62, 2.64

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

< This page is intentionally left blank. >

© Copyright 2009 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.